ISSN 1007-9327 (print)
ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

World Journal of *Gastroenterology*

World J Gastroenterol 2022 December 21; 28(47): 6619-6790

Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Contents

Weekly Volume 28 Number 47 December 21, 2022

OPINION REVIEW

6619 How to avoid overtreatment of benign colorectal lesions: Rationale for an evidence-based management
Bustamante-Balén M

REVIEW

6632 Mucosal imaging in colon polyps: New advances and what the future may hold
Young EJ, Rajandran A, Philpott HL, Sathananthan D, Hoile SF, Singh R

6662 Acute liver injury in COVID-19 patients hospitalized in the intensive care unit: Narrative review
Polyzogopoulou E, Amoiridou P, Abraham TP, Ventoulis I

6689 Alterations of the gut microbiota in coronavirus disease 2019 and its therapeutic potential
Xiang H, Liu QP

MINIREVIEWS

6702 Microbiota in the stomach and application of probiotics to gastroduodenal diseases
Koga Y

6716 Liver injury in COVID-19: A minireview
Hu WS, Jiang FY, Shu W, Zhao R, Cao JM, Wang DP

6732 Obstructive and secretory complications of diverting ileostomy
Tsujinaka S, Suzuki H, Miura T, Sato Y, Shibata C

6743 Role of the combination of biologics and/or small molecules in the treatment of patients with inflammatory bowel disease
Balderramo D

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Basic Study

6752 Interleukin-34 deficiency aggravates development of colitis and colitis-associated cancer in mice
Liu ZX, Chen WJ, Wang Y, Chen BQ, Liu YC, Cheng TC, Luo LL, Chen L, Ju LL, Liu Y, Li M, Feng N, Shao JG, Bian ZL

6769 Dickkopf-related protein 1/cytoskeleton-associated protein 4 signaling activation by *Helicobacter pylori*-induced activator protein-1 promotes gastric tumorigenesis *via* the PI3K/AKT/mTOR pathway
Luo M, Chen YJ, Xie Y, Wang QR, Xiang YN, Long NY, Yang WX, Zhao Y, Zhou JJ

LETTER TO THE EDITOR

6788 The potential role of the three-dimensional-bioprinting model in screening and developing drugs

Deng CL, Wu B

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Weekly Volume 28 Number 47 December 21, 2022

Contents

ABOUT COVER

Editorial Board of *World Journal of Gastroenterology*, Guy D Eslick, DrPH, PhD, FACE, Professor, NHMRC Centre for Research Excellence in Digestive Health, The Hunter Medical Research Institute (HMRI), The University of Newcastle, Newcastle 2300, NSW, Australia. guy.eslick@newcastle.edu.au

AIMS AND SCOPE

The primary aim of *World Journal of Gastroenterology* (*WJG*, *World J Gastroenterol*) is to provide scholars and readers from various fields of gastroenterology and hepatology with a platform to publish high-quality basic and clinical research articles and communicate their research findings online. *WJG* mainly publishes articles reporting research results and findings obtained in the field of gastroenterology and hepatology and covering a wide range of topics including gastroenterology, hepatology, gastrointestinal endoscopy, gastrointestinal surgery, gastrointestinal oncology, and pediatric gastroenterology.

INDEXING/ABSTRACTING

The *WJG* is now abstracted and indexed in Science Citation Index Expanded (SCIE, also known as SciSearch®), Current Contents/Clinical Medicine, Journal Citation Reports, Index Medicus, MEDLINE, PubMed, PubMed Central, Scopus, Reference Citation Analysis, China National Knowledge Infrastructure, China Science and Technology Journal Database, and Superstar Journals Database. The 2022 edition of Journal Citation Reports® cites the 2021 impact factor (IF) for *WJG* as 5.374; IF without journal self cites: 5.187; 5-year IF: 5.715; Journal Citation Indicator: 0.84; Ranking: 31 among 93 journals in gastroenterology and hepatology; and Quartile category: Q2. The *WJG*'s CiteScore for 2021 is 8.1 and Scopus CiteScore rank 2021: Gastroenterology is 18/149.

RESPONSIBLE EDITORS FOR THIS ISSUE

Production Editor: *Yi-Xuan Cai*; **Production Department Director:** *Xiang Li*; **Editorial Office Director:** *Jia-Ru Fan.*

NAME OF JOURNAL
World Journal of Gastroenterology

ISSN
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

LAUNCH DATE
October 1, 1995

FREQUENCY
Weekly

EDITORS-IN-CHIEF
Andrzej S Tarnawski

EDITORIAL BOARD MEMBERS
http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/editorialboard.htm

PUBLICATION DATE
December 21, 2022

COPYRIGHT
© 2022 Baishideng Publishing Group Inc

INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/gerinfo/204

GUIDELINES FOR ETHICS DOCUMENTS
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/GerInfo/287

GUIDELINES FOR NON-NATIVE SPEAKERS OF ENGLISH
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/gerinfo/240

PUBLICATION ETHICS
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/GerInfo/288

PUBLICATION MISCONDUCT
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/gerinfo/208

ARTICLE PROCESSING CHARGE
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/gerinfo/242

STEPS FOR SUBMITTING MANUSCRIPTS
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/GerInfo/239

ONLINE SUBMISSION
https://www.f6publishing.com

© 2022 Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved. 7041 Koll Center Parkway, Suite 160, Pleasanton, CA 94566, USA
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com https://www.wjgnet.com

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Gastroenterol 2022 December 21; 28(47): 6619-6631

DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6619

ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

OPINION REVIEW

How to avoid overtreatment of benign colorectal lesions: Rationale for an evidence-based management

Marco Bustamante-Balén

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Provenance and peer review: Invited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): B, B, B
Grade C (Good): 0
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: Cho YS, South Korea; Gao F, China; von Renteln D, Canada

Received: September 13, 2022
Peer-review started: September 13, 2022
First decision: October 3, 2022
Revised: October 10, 2022
Accepted: November 27, 2022
Article in press: November 27, 2022
Published online: December 21, 2022

Marco Bustamante-Balén, Gastrointestinal Endoscopy Unit, Gastrointestinal Endoscopy Research Group, Hospital Universitari I Politècnic La Fe, Health Research Institute Hospital La Fe (IISLaFe), Valencia 46026, Spain

Corresponding author: Marco Bustamante-Balén, MD, PhD, Doctor, Gastrointestinal Endoscopy Unit, Gastrointestinal Endoscopy Research Group, Hospital Universitari I Politècnic La Fe, Health Research Institute Hospital La Fe (IISLaFe), Avda. Fernando Abril Martorell, 106, Valencia 46026, Spain. bustamante_mar@gva.es

Abstract

Implementing population-based screening programs for colorectal cancer has led to an increase in the detection of large but benign histological lesions. Currently, endoscopic mucosal resection can be considered the standard technique for the removal of benign lesions of the colon due to its excellent safety profile and good clinical results. However, several studies from different geographic areas agree that many benign colon lesions are still referred for surgery. Moreover, the referral rate to surgery is not decreasing over the years, despite the theoretical improvement of endoscopic resection techniques. This article will review the leading causes for benign colorectal lesions to be referred for surgery and the influence of the endoscopist experience on the referral rate. It will also describe how to categorize a polyp as complex for resection and consider an endoscopist as an expert in endoscopic resection. And finally, we will propose a framework for the accurate and evidence-based treatment of complex benign colorectal lesions.

Key Words: Colorectal polyps; Endoscopic mucosal resection; Colorectal surgery

©The Author(s) 2022. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core Tip: Despite endoscopic treatment being of choice for the treatment of large benign colorectal neoplasms, many lesions are still being referred to surgery. Problems in identifying a polyp as complex to resect, too much self-confidence of the endoscopists, and the lack of a referral pathway may be causes underlying this situation. The organization of a structured referral network may be the main step to reducing the overtreatment of benign lesions. Decisive support from Medical Societies and Public Administration is warranted to set up this paradigm change.

Citation: Bustamante-Balén M. How to avoid overtreatment of benign colorectal lesions: Rationale for an evidence-based management. *World J Gastroenterol* 2022; 28(47): 6619-6631
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v28/i47/6619.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6619

INTRODUCTION

The implementation of population-based screening programs for colorectal cancer (CRC) has led to an increase in the detection of large lesions with benign histology. For example, in a French study of a population screening program based on fecal occult blood testing, 5% of the polyps found were larger than 3 cm[1]. Many of these patients are asymptomatic and of intermediate age, and removal of the lesions should be performed with the goal of maximum efficacy (complete resections, few recurrences) and maximum safety (few adverse effects). Traditionally, most polyps considered "large" were biopsied and then referred to surgery for segmental resection of the colon. However, in recent years, with the improvement of endoscopes and the development of new techniques, endoscopic treatment can be considered the treatment of choice. However, too many benign lesions are still being referred to surgery, with associated morbidity and increased costs. In this review, we will justify the selection of endoscopic therapy as the treatment of choice, dig into the main causes for referring benign lesions to surgery, and propose an organizational solution for this situation. Most of the evidence that will be reviewed here focuses on endoscopic mucosal resection (EMR) because is the endoscopic technique of choice in most instances, while other endoscopic techniques [*e.g.*, endoscopic submucosal dissection (ESD) or full-thickness resection] are indicated for a more specific type of lesions.

WHY SHOULD ENDOSCOPIC RESECTION AND NOT SURGERY BE THE THERAPY OF CHOICE FOR THE TREATMENT OF BENIGN COLONIC LESIONS?

EMR can currently be considered the standard technique for the removal of benign lesions of the colon due to its excellent safety profile and good clinical results. Large series of patients, especially from the Australian endoscopic resection group, support this claim. Moss *et al*[2] performed a prospective evaluation of all patients referred for EMR of polyps ≥ 20 mm. In this cohort of particularly complex polyps, complete resection was achieved in a single session in 89.2% of patients with a recurrence rate of 20.4%. This recurrence was mostly minute and easily treated endoscopically. As for adverse effects, the same group reported a clinically significant bleeding frequency of 6.0%, of which only 44% required endoscopy and only one case required embolization[3]. The proportion of deep mural damage or perforation was only 3% and 0.6%, treated in all cases by endoscopic methods[4].

At least two meta-analyses confirm these results. The first, which evaluated the endoscopic management of lateral spreading tumors, and which analyzed separately EMR and DSE, reported a proportion of complete resections for the former of 99.5%, and a proportion of recurrences of 12.6%, most of which were manageable endoscopically. In terms of adverse effects, there was an aggregate proportion of perforation of 1.2% and bleeding of 9.6%[5]. In the second meta-analysis, the proportion of surgeries attributable to complications of EMR was less than 1%[6]. Therefore, we have an effective and safe endoscopic technique for the treatment of benign colon lesions.

The therapeutic alternative to endoscopic resection is surgery, which has classically been the treatment of choice. However, even with current techniques, surgery is not free of complications. The overall rate of adverse effects at 30 days is between 14% and 25% in the most modern series (Table 1)[7-10]. In general, the proportion of adverse effects is higher in open surgery, and as the age of the patient increases[7,8,10]. Surgery is also associated with a non-negligible risk of mortality which, although it is usually somewhat less than 1% (Table 1), in patients > 80 years of age can reach almost 3%[7].

No randomized studies are comparing both therapeutic strategies and such a study is unlikely to be performed due to ethical problems. One way to overcome this is the use of propensity score matching. Wickham *et al*[11] evaluated 95 patients referred because of endoscopically unresectable colorectal lesions and compared them to 190 propensity score-matched controls. Endoscopic resection was achieved in 66 (70%) of patients with a reduced hospital stay, a lower unplanned 30-day readmission rate, and fewer postoperative complications (4.2% *vs* 33.9%; $P < 0.001$) compared to surgery. Another attempt to make this comparison has been made using theoretical models. Ahlenstiel *et al*[12] compared the theoretical mortality of colon surgery, calculated using a proprietary Association of Surgeons of Great Britain and Ireland score, with the actual mortality from EMR of benign lesions in a cohort of 1,061 patients. While the theoretical mortality from surgery was 3.3%, there were no deaths in the first 30 days after EMR. The NNT to prevent one death was only 30. A recent Dutch study, using a microsimulation system and taking into account fatal complications of surgery, compared expert endoscopic resection of benign lesions *vs* laparoscopic surgery. Referral to an expert reduced from 2.1 surgeries for

Table 1 Main recent series on the morbidity and mortality of surgery for benign colorectal lesions

Ref.	Year	Country	Data source	N	Mortality (%)	Colostomy/ Ileostomy (%)	Major adverse event (%)	Readmission (%)	Surgical re-intervention (%)
Peery *et al* [7]	2018	USA	National Inpatient Sample[1]	12.732	0.7	2.2	14.0	7.8	3.6
Zogg *et al* [8]	2016	USA	National Inpatient Sample[1]	68.462[2]	-	-	14.7	-	1.0
de Neree *et al*[9]	2019	Netherlands	Systematic Review	139.897	0.7	-	24.0	-	0-8.9
Ma *et al* [10]	2019	USA	National Inpatient Sample[1]	262.843	0.8		25.3	-	-

[1]All-payer inpatient healthcare database.

[2]Overall colon surgery (not only colorrectal epithelial lesions): % of adverse events are specific for surgery of benign colorectal lesions.

benign polyps/1000 individuals to 0.2/1000 reducing also the number of deaths[13]. Some observational studies performed in Eastern countries and focused on ESD confirm that the latter has a shorter hospital length stay, an inferior 30-day readmission rate, and a lower complication rate[14,15].

Furthermore, endoscopic treatment is cost-effective compared to surgery. At least four studies in different countries and contexts have compared endoscopic resection with surgery in terms of cost-effectiveness (Table 2). All agree that endoscopic resection (EMR or ESD) is cost-effective compared to surgery, and this difference widens if the complications of surgery are taken into account[13,16-19]. The development of adverse effects after surgery has been associated with a 106% increase in the average length of stay and a 91% increase in the average cost of hospitalization[10].

Therefore, and this is reflected in the clinical practice guidelines[20,21], it seems clear that endoscopic treatment should be the first-choice treatment for benign colonic lesions, provided that quality standards are maintained[21].

WHAT IS THE SITUATION IN ACTUAL CLINICAL PRACTICE?

Several studies from different geographic areas agree that many benign colon lesions are still referred to surgery. In a French study conducted in a population-based screening program with fecal occult blood test, out of 4,251 patients with at least one polyp, 4.1% were referred to surgery[1]. In a study conducted in the USA, 47% of colorectal lesions sent for surgery were benign polyps[22]. In the aforementioned study by Zogg *et al*[8] the mean number of annual colectomies performed for benign pathology in the United States was around 22,000. A study of the British CRC screening program showed that, in the period from 2006 to 2009, 21.7% of the polyps sent for surgery were directly operated on, without a prior endoscopic attempt. Depending on the centers, the use of surgery as the first therapeutic option varied between 7% and 36%[23]. Finally, a recent Australian survey study showed that 16.7% of respondents would send directly to surgery a 45 mm benign polyp[24]. Saade *et al*[25], in a retrospective review of 144 patients with surgical resection for benign colorectal polyps found that 82% were referred for surgery without attempting an endoscopic resection. Of those, 22% had polyps < 2 cm, a size that should be resected en bloc by an average endoscopist[21].

But in addition, the rate of referral to surgery is not decreasing over the years, despite the theoretical improvement in endoscopic resection techniques. In a retrospective review of a national surgical database also in the United States, it was found that the incidence rate of surgery for benign polyps increased significantly over time, from 5.9 *per* 100,000 patients in 2000 to 9.4 *per* 100,000 patients in 2014, while during this same period the rate of surgery for CRC decreased. This increase was significantly greater in urban academic hospitals, which is just where one would expect it to decrease[26]. A Dutch study reviewed a national database of anatomic pathology reports looking for all cases of benign colon lesions removed by surgery. They showed that the ratio of the number of resections for benign lesions to the total number of colonoscopies performed was significant and remained constant over the last decade (2005-2015), ranging from 0.37 to 0.26[27].

Table 2 Cost-effectiveness studies, endoscopic therapy *vs* surgery

Ref.	Year	Country	Endoscopic technique	Design	Comparison	Costs analyzed	Results
Swan *et al*[19]	2009	Australia	EMR	Observational monocentric	Endoscopy *vs* surgery, Considering surgery without major complications	Direct costs including a 1-day hospital stay for EMR, Loss of utility not considered	EAC: $2051 pp, SAC: $9041
Jayanna *et al*[16]	2016	Australia	EMR	Observational multicentric	Endoscopy *vs* surgery, Considering surgery with and without complications	Direct costs including hospital stay and adverse events, 1st surveillance endoscopy	EAC: $4668 pp, SAC: $12720, If surgery 7.5% complications -> SAC: $45530
Law *et al*[17]	2016	USA	EMR	Decision analysis tree (hybrid Markov model)	Endoscopy (resection + surveillance, surgery if recurrence at 12 mo) *vs* laparoscopic surgery, Considering complications in both arms	Direct costs, Loss of utility considered, QALY, Sensitivity analysis	EAC: $5570 ppEndoscopy QALY: 9.64, SAC: $18717 pp, Surgery QALY: 9.58, Laparoscopy is cost-effective if complete EMR < 75.8%, EMR adverse events rate > 12% and laparoscopy cost < $14.000
Dahan *et al*[18]	2019	France	ESD	Observational monocentric	Endoscopy *vs* surgery, Considering complications in both arms	Direct costs including hospital stay and endoscopy costs	EAC: €3190, SAC: €8490
Buskermolen *et al*[13]	2022	Netherlands	Non-specified	Microsimulation screening analysis (MISCAN-colon)	Surgery *vs* attempted removal by an expert endoscopist, Considering complications in both arms	Direct costs, Loss of utility considered, QALY, Sensitivity analysis	EAC: €60.200, SAC: €72.700, Endoscopy QALY: 33.1/1000 individuals, Surgery QALY: 32.9/1000 individuals

EMR: Endoscopic mucosal resection; ESD: Endoscopic submucosa dissection; QUALY: Quality adjusted life years; EAC: Endoscopy average cost; SAC: Surgical average cost; pp: Per patient.

WHAT IS THE MAIN REASON THAT BENIGN LESIONS ARE STILL BEING SENT DIRECTLY FOR SURGERY? THE ENDOSCOPIST FACTOR.

Le Roy *et al*[1] evaluated different variables related to referral to surgery. Size, location, and histology (villous component and high-grade dysplasia) were influential. The most relevant factor was size > 20 mm. These data have been confirmed in a recent meta-analysis, in which the most frequent causes of referral to surgery were polyp location (right colon), size (median size = 4 cm), and sessile morphology [9].

However, the assessment of the relative importance of these factors when deciding whether to perform endoscopic or surgical resection is highly subjective and dependent on the endoscopist. In fact, in the study by Le Roy *et al*[1] great variability was found among endoscopists when referring the patient to surgery, a difference that was maximal for polyps > 20 mm (0 to 46.6%). These results were confirmed in a study in which 154 endoscopists of different expertise (residents, gastroenterologists, surgeons, and experts in polyp resection) responded to a survey on how to treat 6 polyps presented in video format. Endoscopists specializing in complex resections referred the patient to surgery at a significantly lower percentage than other specialists (3.1% *vs* 13.3% non-specialists endoscopists *vs* 17.2% surgeons). In the univariate analysis that took into account the size of the polyp, its location, the patient's ASA, and the type of specialist, the fact that the endoscopist was not a specialist in the resection of complex polyps was the only variable related to the probability of referring the patient to surgery [odds ratio (OR) 4.93, 95%CI (1.5-16.26)][28].

This variability in clinical practice has direct practical consequences. A retrospective review of the Dutch pathology registry reviewed the medical reports of patients referred for surgery for benign polyps over 9 years. Three expert endoscopists reviewed the records to assess whether the patient could have benefited from endoscopic treatment. The conclusion was that 73% of the cases could have been treated endoscopically. This referral to surgery as a primary elective treatment was more frequent in county hospitals than in tertiary referral centers[29]. In other words, the endoscopist is perhaps the most influential factor in whether a patient is referred for surgery, and experience in complex resections seems to be the fundamental characteristic.

IS IT EFFECTIVE TO REFER THE PATIENT TO AN ENDOSCOPIST WITH EXPERTISE IN COMPLEX ENDOSCOPIC RESECTIONS?

The possibility of reducing surgeries if the patient was referred to an expert endoscopist has also been demonstrated in practice. In one study, 58 patients referred to surgery for colorectal polyps were collected. An expert endoscopist re-evaluated these lesions in a new colonoscopy to decide whether endoscopic resection was possible. Of these 48 could be resected endoscopically although 5 of them underwent surgery later either because of malignancy in the specimen (4 cases) or recurrence (1 case). In any case, surgery could be avoided in 43 (74.1%)[30]. Other studies of similar design agree that surgery is avoidable in 30-70% of cases when the polyp is reviewed by an expert endoscopist, including up to 26% of lesions with previously attempted resection[31-33].

WHY IS AN EXPERT ENDOSCOPIST MORE EFFECTIVE?

The main advantage of an experienced endoscopist when removing complex lesions is that he or she will have a higher proportion of complex resections with a lower frequency of adverse effects.

Few studies are comparing the results of EMR in terms of efficacy according to the experience of the endoscopist. The St. Marks group evaluated the proportion of successful resection between a group of expert and non-expert endoscopists. Experts were successful in 76% of cases while non-experts were successful in only 40%[34]. A retrospective study showed that the performance of resection by an expert endoscopist was protective against incomplete resection in the presence of other risk factors for incomplete resection [adjusted OR 0.13, 95%CI (0.04-0.41)][35]. The CARE study demonstrated that the rate of incomplete resection in polyps that, in the judgment of the endoscopist, were assumed to be completely removed was high (10.1%), increased with polyp size, and was highly dependent on the endoscopist. These findings suggest that technical skill in complex resections is not universal[36].

The experience of the endoscopist is also a key factor for adverse effects. In a study of 97,091 colonoscopies performed on an outpatient basis, the OR for bleeding or perforation increased significantly when the endoscopist performed fewer than 300 colonoscopies per year[37]. In a similar study of 24,509 endoscopies, the complication rate was significantly higher for endoscopists performing fewer than 200 procedures per year [RR 2 95%CI (1.1-3.7)][38]. Finally, a study of 2,315,126 colonoscopies confirmed that endoscopists performing fewer than 300 colonoscopies per year had a higher rate of bleeding and perforation[39].

HOW DO WE KNOW THAT AN ENDOSCOPIST IS AN EXPERT? THE EGO OF ENDOSCOPISTS.

Some of the studies evaluating the rate of surgery for benign polyps have found that this rate is higher in urban teaching hospitals, hospitals that often have experts or units specialized in endoscopic resection[7]. There may be too much self-confidence in the endoscopist (*e.g.*, "if I cannot resect this lesion, nobody can") or there may be some feeling of shame in referring a lesion to a colleague.

The endoscopists' perception of their expertise is often not supported by objective criteria. This fact was elegantly highlighted in a study in which 268 surveys were conducted among endoscopists asking them, among other things, about their experience in resection and their surgical referral practices. Eighty-one (30%) of them considered themselves capable of performing complex resections on lesions that could perfectly well have been referred to surgery. However, of this group of "experts" 17% had never removed a polyp > 5 cm and 32% did not perform more than 20 EMRs per year. In other words, a significant number of endoscopists considered themselves experts in resection when there was no objective evidence of this. And this had consequences for patient management because endoscopists who considered themselves non-experts tended to send patients to another colleague, while "experts" more frequently sent them to surgery (26% *vs* 68%)[40].

Inappropriately mischaracterizing oneself as an expert endoscopist directly affects patient management in three key ways: (1) The endoscopist will initiate a resection that he or she cannot complete, and complications are possible; (2) If resection is not attempted the patient is more likely to be sent to surgery than a more expert colleague; and (3) As a consequence of the previous two, the patient is more likely to be incorrectly sent to surgery.

The definition of some objective criteria to classify an endoscopist as an expert in resections could help in this situation, reassuring the less-experienced endoscopist to refer the lesion to a better-prepared endoscopist. However, there are no established criteria to identify the expert endoscopist in performing EMR, perhaps due to the lack of structured training for this technique.

WHAT LESIONS SHOULD BE REFERRED AND TO WHOM? HOW TO TRANSFORM SUBJECTIVITY INTO OBJECTIVITY

As we have seen, the assessment of the difficulty of resection of a particular polyp depends primarily on polyp factors (size, morphology, location, suspicion of submucosal invasion, *etc.*) that may seem rather subjective in their evaluation. It seems logical, therefore, to develop systems that are as objective as possible to define which polyp should be sent to an expert endoscopist, in such a way as to help endoscopists of varying degrees of experience to make the decision. On the other hand, it seems necessary to have criteria for evaluating endoscopists to define, as objectively as possible, what is an expert endoscopist, aimed to easily identify referral specialists. Finally, the expertise of the individual endoscopist is not enough. His or her work environment must allow for comprehensive treatment of benign colon lesions, with the use of different resection techniques depending on the case, and must have sufficient casuistry to maintain the skills acquired. In this section, we will review these three sides of the management of large colorectal lesions: The complex polyp, the expert endoscopists, and the reference endoscopy unit.

The "complex" polyp

To avoid or at least reduce individual subjectivity in the assessment of the difficulty of resection, objective evaluation criteria are necessary. A group of experts, following the Delphi methodology, defined a score to classify the theoretical difficulty in the resection of colon polyps. This score ("SMSA" scoring system) has four parameters (Site, Morphology, Site, and endoscopic Access), and assigns different scores to the values adopted by each one. Thus, a polyp > 4 cm, with a flat morphology, located in the right colon, and with difficult access obtains the highest score (17 points). All polyps scoring > 12 points are considered level 4, and appropriate for truly expert endoscopists[41].

The British Society of Gastroenterology (BSG) suggests other lesion´s objective features that anticipate a complex resection, grouped into three areas: Increased risk of malignancy evidenced by optical diagnosis, increased risk of incomplete resection, and increased risk of adverse effects (Table 3). Notably, the experience of the endoscopist is included as a criterium for defining a complex polyp because of an increased risk of adverse events[42]. The definition of a complex polyp, therefore, involves a judicious and sensible evaluation of the endoscopist´s expertise.

The categorization of a polyp as complex involves more than the difficulty in its removal. The management of a complex polyp may also need, to some extent, and depending on the lesion´s characteristics, the need for expert, interdisciplinary management. In this sense, the European Society of Gastrointestinal Endoscopy (ESGE) recommends sending the lesion to be evaluated in an expert center, besides the aforementioned criteria, when superficial submucosal invasion is suspected[21].

The "expert" endoscopist

The level of experience required of endoscopists to resect polyps is not objectively defined. The ASGE guidelines indicate that all endoscopists should be able to resect pedunculated or sessile polyps < 2 cm [43], but resection of complex polyps requires special skill, specific learning, and experience, and it seems unreasonable to expect this from all centers[44].

The most objective criterion could be the number of resections performed. However, this particular number has not been defined yet. Several studies place the experience necessary to perform EMR with adequate quality standards between 100 and 125 resections[45,46]. Other authors, based on a retrospective study of a new EMR unit for 4 years, suggest a number of 30 EMRs per year, but the SMSA level of their lesions was not described [47]. This figure seems a bit low when dealing with SMSA level 4 Lesions. The BSG broadly suggests that the number of resections per year should be enough to maintain acceptable quality and safety standards, but also indicates that there is no evidence to recommend a specific figure[42]. Regarding ESD, there is also a high variability in the reported number of cases needed to achieve proficiency ranging from 20 to 250 cases[48]. To maintain proficiency, the ESGE curriculum recommends performing at least 25 cases per year[49].

Some more objective methods to evaluate polypectomy competency have been developed, like the Direct Observation of Competence Skills (DOPyS). This instrument assesses several items, like optimal polyp position, determining the full extent of the lesion, polypectomy technique, *etc.* Using this tool Duloy *et al*[50] described significant variation in polypectomy competency rates (30% to 90%) with rates decreasing for larger polyps. However, it has not been designed specifically for EMR. The BSG has proposed auditable indicators to assess the ability of endoscopists to perform EMR, focusing on efficacy (% recurrences), safety (% complications), and annual case volume (Table 3)[42].

The implementation of structured learning tools or courses could help to evaluate who may be competent in endoscopic resection techniques. *In vivo* and virtual tools have been described for EMR and ESD[51,52], and a formal curriculum for ESD has been developed by the ESGE[49]. However, there is not a similar curriculum for EMR training, which has essentially been limited to that obtained during residency and has repeatedly proven to be insufficient[53].

Table 3 Objective parameters for assessing lesions, endoscopists, and units

Complex polyp	Expert endoscopist	Reference endoscopy unit
SMSA score ≥ 12 (Level 4)[41]	BSG criteria[42]	BSG criteria[42]
BSG criteria[42]	500 independent colonoscopies	Ensure that endoscopists undertake a sufficient number of procedures a year to maintain acceptable standards[4]
Increased risk of malignancy	100-125 EMR to obtain competence	
Kudo´s pit pattern V	A non-defined number[1] of EMR procedures to maintain competence	
Paris 0-IIc/0-IIa+IIc		Time from referral to definitive management: < 8 wk
LST-NG/LST-Gm (dominant nodule)	Fulfilling key performance indicators	
NICE 3/Sano III	Presence of recurrence/residual polyp at 12 mo < 10%	Geraghty *et al*[40]
Increased risk of incomplete resection/recurrence		Provided endoscopy list time for the additional workload with a dedicated list
Size ≥ 40 mm	EMR perforation rate: < 2%	
Difficult location (ileocecal valve, appendix, diverticulum, dentate line)	Post-polypectomy bleeding rate: < 5%	Staff to include at least two endoscopists that can cover each other and endoscopy nurses with training in complex polypectomy
Within an inflamed segment of the colon	DOPyS[2]	
Prior failed resection attempt	ESGE[3] curriculum for optical diagnosis[59]	
Non-lifting sign	Assessing competence: ≥ 80 % accuracy for identifying submucosal invasion in large (≥ 20 mm lesions), Maintaining competence: *in vivo* audit and review of at least 10 large (≥ 20 mm) lesions within a year	Equipment: including necessary snares and hemostatic devices
Increased risk of adverse events		Surgeons for discussion in the MDT and case of operative treatment of adverse events
Cecum		
Endoscopist´s expertise		Robust referral system including administrative staff support and tools for virtual MDT
ESGE criteria[21]		
Difficult location or poor access (ileocecal valve, periapendicular, anorectal junction)		
Prior failed resection attempts		
Non-lifting sign		
SMSA level 4		

[1]Enough to maintain quality standards.
[2]Direct Observation of Competence Skills (not specific for EMR).
[3]For achieving competence in optical diagnosis of early colorectal cancer.
[4]Review in conjunction with other key performance indicators.
BSG: British Society of Gastroenterology; EMR: Endoscopic mucosal resection; LST-NG: Non-granular lateral spreading tumor; LST-Gm: Granular mixed lateral spreading tumor; NICE: NBI International Colorectal Endoscopic classification; ESGE: European Society of Gastrointestinal Endoscopy; MDT: Multi-disciplinary team; DOPyS: Direct Observation of Competence Skills; SMSA: Site, Morphology, Size, Access.

Moreover, for increasingly larger polyps, with flat morphology, in difficult locations, or patients with previous colon pathology such as inflammatory bowel disease, the endoscopist must also master alternative mucosal resection techniques such as the underwater technique, or fragmented cold loop resection, and know how to choose between them by changing the initial resection plan. Strategies to decrease the recurrence rate, like margin ablation, margin marking, or hybrid argon plasma coagulation [54-56] should be mastered as well. Finally, an endoscopist specializing in endoscopic resection of larger lesions must also know and apply optical diagnosis (use of NICE and JNET classifications, use of dyes, use of magnification, *etc.*) to identify those that, due to a higher probability of superficial submucosal invasion, require an en bloc resection, using ESD or full-thickness resection[20,57]. And also, those that, due to a high probability of deep submucosal invasion, must be surgically removed[58]. Following, for instance, the BSG guidelines, these skills are needed to correctly classify a polyp as complex (Table 3) [42]. Mastering optical diagnosis also needs proper training and practice to obtain and maintain competence[59].

The "reference" endoscopy unit

It seems that the number of procedures is the single most important factor influencing on efficacy and safety results of an endoscopy unit specialized in complex resections. In the aforementioned Australian study on risk factors for post-polypectomy bleeding, the unit (one that had performed fewer than 75 procedures) was directly related to the likelihood of immediate post-polypectomy bleeding [adjusted OR 3.78 (2.35-6.10)] and to bleeding occurring beyond the first 48 h[60]. And immediate post-polypectomy bleeding was related to the probability of recurrence at the first endoscopic control. Other studies describe a lower rate of complications in colonoscopies performed in a hospital center than in an outpatient clinic[39]. It thus appears that units that accumulate a larger number of cases are more effective in the treatment of complex colon lesions. This has also been shown in studies on newly developing EMR units, in which the rate of complications decreased as experience time was gained[47]. The frequency of SMSA level 4 Lesions in a single institution is unlikely to be enough to maintain competency, therefore a centralized referral system seems advisable[40].

But in addition to the experience and casuistry of the units, the adequate management of complex colon lesions requires adequate infrastructure. High-definition endoscopes that allow precise optical diagnosis, electrosurgical units with automatic microprocessors, CO_2 insufflation, specific pumps for lavage channels, *etc.*[21]. They also need the availability of a variety of resection devices (snares, knives, injection substances, hemostatic, *etc.*) allowing switching resection techniques and dealing with complications. Resections of complex polyps lengthen the procedure time beyond that required for a conventional colonoscopy[61], prolongation which is closely related to the size of the polyp in question. Therefore, the unit will have to have the facility to adjust the citation slots to the performance of longer and more complex procedures. Finally, the work of this kind of unit must be integrated into a background with experienced surgeons, a multidisciplinary team for the management of complex lesions[40], and all the infrastructure (computed tomography scanning, *etc.*) to handle possible adverse events.

The BSG has also proposed measurable domains for accrediting Endoscopy Units for performing EMR (Table 3). Regarding ESD, the American Society of Gastrointestinal Endoscopy recommends setting up an "ESD cart" with the necessary equipment for the procedure and the management of adverse events. The presence of experienced nurses and technicians is also addressed[48].

IS IT TRULY EFFICIENT IN REAL PRACTICE TO REFER COMPLEX POLYPS TO EXPERIENCED UNITS?

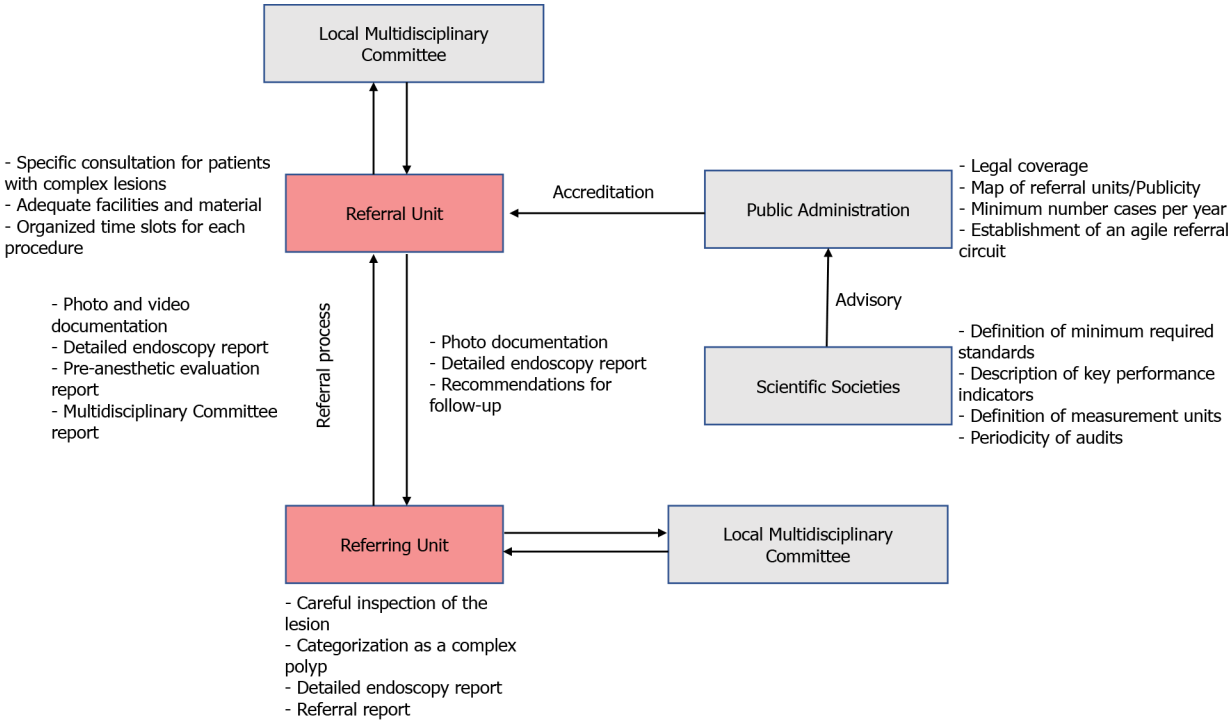
We have learned that an appropriate referral of complex polyps to an expert endoscopist increases the rate of successful endoscopic treatment and reduces adverse events compared to surgery. We have also learned how a referral endoscopy unit should be to ensure efficacy. How has this been translated onto clinical practice?

The Australian group was the first to demonstrate the efficacy of a referral unit for the treatment of large colorectal lesions. Out of 174 patients referred for 193 complex polyps, 90% avoided surgery with a procedural success of 95% excluding those patients with invasive cancer[19]. Another Australian retrospective study comparing the surgical rate of benign colorectal lesions before and after the introduction of a specific EMR service in a tertiary referral center showed a 56% reduction in the number of patients referred to surgery[62]. More recently, in France, a study evaluated the evolution of surgical management of benign polyps > 2 cm after the implementation of a regional referral network for the management of these lesions. This regional care network included two specialized endoscopists in the referral center with direct access by e-mail or by phone to all general gastroenterologists in the region and with twice-a-year regular meetings with general gastroenterologists. The surgical management rate of benign lesions decreased significantly after the implementation of the referral network from 14.6% in 2012 to 5% in 2017[63]. Similarly, in the Northwest of the Netherlands, a reference panel of expert endoscopists for the general endoscopist to consult was organized. Eleven centers participated and 88 patients were evaluated by the panel. Overall, 43.2% of consulting endoscopist changed their initial management strategy after consultation, and in 56 cases (63.3%), the patient was referred to another endoscopy center[64].

In conclusion, setting up a referral system for the management of complex polyps is efficient and translates into immediate clinical advantages.

HOW TO SET UP A REFERRAL ENDOSCOPY UNIT FOR THE MANAGEMENT OF COMPLEX POLYPS: PRACTICAL TIPS AND AN ORGANIZATION PROPOSAL

To achieve the objective of an adequate and comprehensive treatment of large benign colon lesions, several actors must be involved: The Administration, the Scientific Societies, the Units themselves, and



DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6619 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2022.

Figure 1 Organizational proposal for the management of complex benign colorectal lesions.

finally the referring endoscopists (Figure 1).

One side of the referral network is the referral endoscopy unit. Having established the main characteristics that a referral unit must have to be considered as such, a certification system should be put in place. For instance, using criteria similar to that of the BSG plus others adapted to the specific background, periodical audits of the organization and key performance indicators should be performed. The local Endoscopy Societies should collaborate in the design of the certification protocol (definition of key indicators, measurement units, audit´s periodicity, *etc.*). An example of this kind of collaborative effort, although not applied to complex resections, is the Qualiscopia initiative in Spain, which aimed to monitor and certify endoscopy units and endoscopists in quality in colorectal screening colonoscopy [65]. Ideally, the endoscopy unit has to establish an internal Quality Management Program, including the definition of a system for recording staff´s initial competency and continued competency on an annual basis. Working together with the referral unit there should be a multidisciplinary team in place, made up of surgeons, oncologists, radiologists, and every specialist that could be involved in the management of complex polyps, especially when facing a deep submucosal invasion or dealing with adverse events. Finally, the referral unit should have enough administrative staff to handle the communication and documentation workload from and to the referring units. Clean communication systems should be established (e-mail, telephone, videoconference, *etc.*).

The Administration should, in agreement with the Societies, should give legal cover to the concept of Referral Unit, should establish a map of referral units according to population needs, ensure a minimum number of cases per unit to maintain competence, and should participate in the establishment of an agile regional referral circuit[21,42]. It is the Administration that should make available for all possible referring physicians a list with the accredited Units.

The other face of the referral network is the referring endoscopist. These endoscopists have to carefully evaluate and characterize the lesion using the usual classifications (NICE, Paris, *etc.*), categorize it as a "complex lesion" and decide if he/she can resect it. If not, the lesion should not be biopsied (unless an invasive carcinoma is suspected), and a tattoo should be placed not too close to the lesion[66]. Several pictures and videos should be taken. All this information should be provided in a detailed and structured endoscopy report. Ideally, a Multidisciplinary Committee (including at least an endoscopist and surgeons) should evaluate the patient and make a report that should be incorporated into the referral report.

The referral process should be detailed including clinical and administrative data from the patient, photo and video documentation of the lesion, a detailed endoscopic report including size, location, and morphology of the lesion, if biopsies were taken or if there was any resection attempt. The reason for referring the lesion should also be described. In correspondence, once the lesion has been treated in the referral unit, a thorough report of the applied treatment should be done, again with photo documentation. The technical result of this treatment (success/failure) should be provided. Finally,

recommendations for patient follow-up should be attached to the report. It is mandatory to maintain fluid communication between referring and referral units during the therapeutic process. Al the steps back and forth in the referral process should be subjected to the Quality Management Program and should be auditable.

CONCLUSION

Endoscopic resection is the treatment of choice for large colorectal lesions. However, overtreatment is still an important issue in many countries. Organizing a network of specialized endoscopy units in complex resections seems to be the main approach to tackling this situation. This development should be accompanied by the organization of an accreditation system and a Quality Management Program, a process in which endoscopy units, endoscopists, Scientific Societies, and the Public Administration should be involved.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Bustamante-Balén M conceived the idea for the manuscript, performed the literature review, and drafted the manuscript.

Conflict-of-interest statement: All the authors report no relevant conflicts of interest for this article.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article that was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution NonCommercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: https://creativecommons.org/Licenses/by-nc/4.0/

Country/Territory of origin: Spain

ORCID number: Marco Bustamante-Balén 0000-0003-2019-0158.

Corresponding Author's Membership in Professional Societies: European Society of Gastrointestinal Endoscopy.

S-Editor: Liu GL
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Liu GL

REFERENCES

1 **Le Roy F**, Manfredi S, Hamonic S, Piette C, Bouguen G, Riou F, Bretagne JF. Frequency of and risk factors for the surgical resection of nonmalignant colorectal polyps: a population-based study. *Endoscopy* 2016; **48**: 263-270 [PMID: 26340603 DOI: 10.1055/s-0034-1392976]

2 **Moss A**, Bourke MJ, Williams SJ, Hourigan LF, Brown G, Tam W, Singh R, Zanati S, Chen RY, Byth K. Endoscopic mucosal resection outcomes and prediction of submucosal cancer from advanced colonic mucosal neoplasia. *Gastroenterology* 2011; **140**: 1909-1918 [PMID: 21392504 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2011.02.062]

3 **Burgess NG**, Williams SJ, Hourigan LF, Brown GJ, Zanati SA, Singh R, Tam W, Butt J, Byth K, Bourke MJ. A management algorithm based on delayed bleeding after wide-field endoscopic mucosal resection of large colonic lesions. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2014; **12**: 1525-1533 [PMID: 24480678 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2014.01.026]

4 **Burgess NG**, Bassan MS, McLeod D, Williams SJ, Byth K, Bourke MJ. Deep mural injury and perforation after colonic endoscopic mucosal resection: a new classification and analysis of risk factors. *Gut* 2017; **66**: 1779-1789 [PMID: 27464708 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2015-309848]

5 **Russo P**, Barbeiro S, Awadie H, Libânio D, Dinis-Ribeiro M, Bourke M. Management of colorectal laterally spreading tumors: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Endosc Int Open* 2019; **7**: E239-E259 [PMID: 30705959 DOI: 10.1055/a-0732-487]

6 **Hassan C**, Repici A, Sharma P, Correale L, Zullo A, Bretthauer M, Senore C, Spada C, Bellisario C, Bhandari P, Rex DK. Efficacy and safety of endoscopic resection of large colorectal polyps: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Gut* 2016; **65**: 806-820 [PMID: 25681402 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2014-308481]

7 **Peery AF**, Shaheen NJ, Cools KS, Baron TH, Koruda M, Galanko JA, Grimm IS. Morbidity and mortality after surgery for nonmalignant colorectal polyps. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2018; **87**: 243-250.e2 [PMID: 28408327 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2017.03.1550]

8 **Zogg CK**, Najjar P, Diaz AJ, Zogg DL, Tsai TC, Rose JA Jr, Scott JW, Gani F, Alshaikh H, Canner JK, Schneider EB, Goldberg JE, Haider AH. Rethinking Priorities: Cost of Complications After Elective Colectomy. *Ann Surg* 2016; **264**: 312-322 [PMID: 26501705 DOI: 10.1097/SLA.0000000000001511]

9 **de Neree Tot Babberich MPM**, Bronzwaer MES, Andriessen JO, Bastiaansen BAJ, Mostafavi N, Bemelman WA, Fockens P, Tanis PJ, Dekker E. Outcomes of surgical resections for benign colon polyps: a systematic review. *Endoscopy* 2019; **51**: 961-972 [PMID: 31330557 DOI: 10.1055/a-0962-9780]

10 **Ma C**, Teriaky A, Sheh S, Forbes N, Heitman SJ, Jue TL, Munroe CA, Jairath V, Corley DA, Lee JK. Morbidity and Mortality After Surgery for Nonmalignant Colorectal Polyps: A 10-Year Nationwide Analysis. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2019; **114**: 1802-1810 [PMID: 31634261 DOI: 10.14309/ajg.0000000000000407]

11 **Wickham CJ**, Wang J, Mirza KL, Noren ER, Shin J, Lee SW, Cologne KG. "Unresectable" polyp management utilizing advanced endoscopic techniques results in high rate of colon preservation. *Surg Endosc* 2022; **36**: 2121-2128 [PMID: 33890178 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-021-08499-7]

12 **Ahlenstiel G**, Hourigan LF, Brown G, Zanati S, Williams SJ, Singh R, Moss A, Sonson R, Bourke MJ; Australian Colonic Endoscopic Mucosal Resection (ACE) Study Group. Actual endoscopic versus predicted surgical mortality for treatment of advanced mucosal neoplasia of the colon. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2014; **80**: 668-676 [PMID: 24916925 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2014.04.015]

13 **Buskermolen M**, Naber SK, Toes-Zoutendijk E, van der Meulen MP, van Grevenstein WMU, van Leerdam ME, Spaander MCW, Lansdorp-Vogelaar I. Impact of surgical versus endoscopic management of complex nonmalignant polyps in a colorectal cancer screening program. *Endoscopy* 2022; **54**: 871-880 [PMID: 35130576 DOI: 10.1055/a-1726-9144]

14 **Fung TLD**, Chan PT, Lee HM, Kwok KH. Case-Matched Analysis Comparing Endoscopic Submucosal Dissection and Surgical Removal of Difficult Colorectal Polyps. *J Laparoendosc Adv Surg Tech A* 2018; **28**: 1188-1191 [PMID: 29727254 DOI: 10.1089/lap.2018.0112]

15 **Inoue T**, Koyama F, Kuge H, Ueda T, Obara S, Nakamoto T, Sasaki Y, Nakamura Y, Sho M. Short-term outcomes of endoscopic submucosal dissection versus laparoscopic surgery for colorectal neoplasms: An observational study. *J Anus Rectum Colon* 2018; **2**: 97-102 [PMID: 31559350 DOI: 10.23922/jarc.2017-027]

16 **Jayanna M**, Burgess NG, Singh R, Hourigan LF, Brown GJ, Zanati SA, Moss A, Lim J, Sonson R, Williams SJ, Bourke MJ. Cost Analysis of Endoscopic Mucosal Resection *vs* Surgery for Large Laterally Spreading Colorectal Lesions. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2016; **14**: 271-8.e1 [PMID: 26364679 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2015.08.037]

17 **Law R**, Das A, Gregory D, Komanduri S, Muthusamy R, Rastogi A, Vargo J, Wallace MB, Raju GS, Mounzer R, Klapman J, Shah J, Watson R, Wilson R, Edmundowicz SA, Wani S. Endoscopic resection is cost-effective compared with laparoscopic resection in the management of complex colon polyps: an economic analysis. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2016; **83**: 1248-1257 [PMID: 26608129 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2015.11.014]

18 **Dahan M**, Pauliat E, Liva-Yonnet S, Brischoux S, Legros R, Tailleur A, Carrier P, Charissoux A, Valgueblasse V, Loustaud-Ratti V, Taibi A, Durand-Fontanier S, Valleix D, Sautereau D, Kerever S, Jacques J. What is the cost of endoscopic submucosal dissection (ESD)? *United European Gastroenterol J* 2019; **7**: 138-145 [PMID: 30788126 DOI: 10.1177/2050640618810572]

19 **Swan MP**, Bourke MJ, Alexander S, Moss A, Williams SJ. Large refractory colonic polyps: is it time to change our practice? *Gastrointest Endosc* 2009; **70**: 1128-1136 [PMID: 19748615 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2009.05.039]

20 **Kaltenbach T**, Anderson JC, Burke CA, Dominitz JA, Gupta S, Lieberman D, Robertson DJ, Shaukat A, Syngal S, Rex DK. Endoscopic Removal of Colorectal Lesions-Recommendations by the US Multi-Society Task Force on Colorectal Cancer. *Gastroenterology* 2020; **158**: 1095-1129 [PMID: 32122632 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2019.12.018]

21 **Ferlitsch M**, Moss A, Hassan C, Bhandari P, Dumonceau JM, Paspatis G, Jover R, Langner C, Bronzwaer M, Nalankilli K, Fockens P, Hazzan R, Gralnek IM, Gschwantler M, Waldmann E, Jeschek P, Penz D, Heresbach D, Moons L, Lemmers A, Paraskeva K, Pohl J, Ponchon T, Regula J, Repici A, Rutter MD, Burgess NG, Bourke MJ. Colorectal polypectomy and endoscopic mucosal resection (EMR): European Society of Gastrointestinal Endoscopy (ESGE) Clinical Guideline. *Endoscopy* 2017; **49**: 270-297 [PMID: 28212588 DOI: 10.1055/s-0043-102569]

22 **Moon N**, Aryan M, Khan W, Jiang P, Madhok I, Wilson J, Ruiz N, Ponniah SA, Westerveld DR, Gupte A, Pooran N, Qumseya B, Forsmark CE, Draganov PV, Yang D. Effect of referral pattern and histopathology grade on surgery for nonmalignant colorectal polyps. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2020; **92**: 702-711.e2 [PMID: 32334014 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2020.04.041]

23 **Lee TJ**, Rees CJ, Nickerson C, Stebbing J, Abercrombie JF, McNally RJ, Rutter MD. Management of complex colonic polyps in the English Bowel Cancer Screening Programme. *Br J Surg* 2013; **100**: 1633-1639 [PMID: 24264787 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.9282]

24 **Tate DJ**, Desomer L, Heitman SJ, Forbes N, Burgess NG, Awadie H, Gralnek IM, Geldof J, De Looze D, Rex D, Anderson J, Bourke MJ. Clinical implications of decision making in colorectal polypectomy: an international survey of Western endoscopists suggests priorities for change. *Endosc Int Open* 2020; **8**: E445-E455 [PMID: 32118117 DOI: 10.1055/a-1079-4298]

25 **Saade R**, Tsang T, Kmeid M, Miller D, Fu Z, Litynski J, Young P, Anderson JC, Lee H, Tadros M. Overutilization of surgical resection for benign colorectal polyps: analysis from a tertiary care center. *Endosc Int Open* 2021; **9**: E706-E712 [PMID: 33937512 DOI: 10.1055/a-1380-3017]

26 **Peery AF**, Cools KS, Strassle PD, McGill SK, Crockett SD, Barker A, Koruda M, Grimm IS. Increasing Rates of Surgery for Patients With Nonmalignant Colorectal Polyps in the United States. *Gastroenterology* 2018; **154**: 1352-1360.e3 [PMID: 29317277 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2018.01.003]

27 **Bronzwaer MES**, Koens L, Bemelman WA, Dekker E, Fockens P; COPOS study group. Volume of surgery for benign colorectal polyps in the last 11 years. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2018; **87**: 552-561.e1 [PMID: 29108978 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2017.10.032]

28 **Aziz Aadam A**, Wani S, Kahi C, Kaltenbach T, Oh Y, Edmundowicz S, Peng J, Rademaker A, Patel S, Kushnir V, Venu M, Soetikno R, Keswani RN. Physician assessment and management of complex colon polyps: a multicenter video-based survey study. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2014; **109**: 1312-1324 [PMID: 25001256 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2014.95]

29 **van Nimwegen LJ**, Moons LMG, Geesing JMJ, Arensman LR, Laclé M, Broeders IAMJ, Viergever PP, Groen JN, Kessels K, Schwartz MP. Extent of unnecessary surgery for benign rectal polyps in the Netherlands. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2018; **87**: 562-570.e1 [PMID: 28713061 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2017.06.027]

30 **Church JM**. Avoiding surgery in patients with colorectal polyps. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2003; **46**: 1513-1516 [PMID: 14605571 DOI: 10.1007/s10350-004-6805-9]

31 **Cruz RA**, Ragupathi M, Pedraza R, Pickron TB, Le AT, Haas EM. Minimally invasive approaches for the management of "difficult" colonic polyps. *Diagn Ther Endosc* 2011; **2011**: 682793 [PMID: 21747655 DOI: 10.1155/2011/682793]

32 **Lipof T**, Bartus C, Sardella W, Johnson K, Vignati P, Cohen J. Preoperative colonoscopy decreases the need for laparoscopic management of colonic polyps. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2005; **48**: 1076-1080 [PMID: 15933894 DOI: 10.1007/s10350-004-0908-1]

33 **Friedland S**, Banerjee S, Kochar R, Chen A, Shelton A. Outcomes of repeat colonoscopy in patients with polyps referred for surgery without biopsy-proven cancer. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2014; **79**: 101-107 [PMID: 23916398 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2013.06.034]

34 **Brooker JC**, Saunders BP, Shah SG, Williams CB. Endoscopic resection of large sessile colonic polyps by specialist and non-specialist endoscopists. *Br J Surg* 2002; **89**: 1020-1024 [PMID: 12153628 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2168.2002.02157.x]

35 **Tavakkoli A**, Law RJ, Bedi AO, Prabhu A, Hiatt T, Anderson MA, Wamsteker EJ, Elmunzer BJ, Piraka CR, Scheiman JM, Elta GH, Kwon RS. Specialist Endoscopists Are Associated with a Decreased Risk of Incomplete Polyp Resection During Endoscopic Mucosal Resection in the Colon. *Dig Dis Sci* 2017; **62**: 2464-2471 [PMID: 28600656 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-017-4643-6]

36 **Pohl H**, Srivastava A, Bensen SP, Anderson P, Rothstein RI, Gordon SR, Levy LC, Toor A, Mackenzie TA, Rosch T, Robertson DJ. Incomplete polyp resection during colonoscopy-results of the complete adenoma resection (CARE) study. *Gastroenterology* 2013; **144**: 74-80.e1 [PMID: 23022496 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2012.09.043]

37 **Rabeneck L**, Paszat LF, Hilsden RJ, Saskin R, Leddin D, Grunfeld E, Wai E, Goldwasser M, Sutradhar R, Stukel TA. Bleeding and perforation after outpatient colonoscopy and their risk factors in usual clinical practice. *Gastroenterology* 2008; **135**: 1899-1906, 1906.e1 [PMID: 18938166 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2008.08.058]

38 **Singh H**, Penfold RB, DeCoster C, Kaita L, Proulx C, Taylor G, Bernstein CN, Moffatt M. Colonoscopy and its complications across a Canadian regional health authority. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2009; **69**: 665-671 [PMID: 19251007 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2008.09.046]

39 **Chukmaitov A**, Bradley CJ, Dahman B, Siangphoe U, Warren JL, Klabunde CN. Association of polypectomy techniques, endoscopist volume, and facility type with colonoscopy complications. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2013; **77**: 436-446 [PMID: 23290773 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2012.11.012]

40 **Geraghty J**, O'Toole P, Anderson J, Valori R, Sarkar S. National survey to determine current practices, training and attitudes towards advanced polypectomy in the UK. *Frontline Gastroenterol* 2015; **6**: 85-93 [PMID: 28839795 DOI: 10.1136/flgastro-2014-100516]

41 **Gupta S**, Miskovic D, Bhandari P, Dolwani S, McKaig B, Pullan R, Rembacken B, Riley S, Rutter MD, Suzuki N, Tsiamoulos Z, Valori R, Vance ME, Faiz OD, Saunders BP, Thomas-Gibson S. A novel method for determining the difficulty of colonoscopic polypectomy. *Frontline Gastroenterol* 2013; **4**: 244-248 [PMID: 28839733 DOI: 10.1136/flgastro-2013-100331]

42 **Rutter MD**, Chattree A, Barbour JA, Thomas-Gibson S, Bhandari P, Saunders BP, Veitch AM, Anderson J, Rembacken BJ, Loughrey MB, Pullan R, Garrett WV, Lewis G, Dolwani S. British Society of Gastroenterology/Association of Coloproctologists of Great Britain and Ireland guidelines for the management of large non-pedunculated colorectal polyps. *Gut* 2015; **64**: 1847-1873 [PMID: 26104751 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2015-309576]

43 **Rex DK**, Schoenfeld PS, Cohen J, Pike IM, Adler DG, Fennerty MB, Lieb JG 2nd, Park WG, Rizk MK, Sawhney MS, Shaheen NJ, Wani S, Weinberg DS. Quality indicators for colonoscopy. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2015; **81**: 31-53 [PMID: 25480100 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2014.07.058]

44 **Moss A**. From gastroenterologist to surgeon to gastroenterologist for management of large sessile colonic polyps: something new under the sun? *Gastrointest Endosc* 2014; **79**: 108-110 [PMID: 24342589 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2013.08.037]

45 **Chawla S**, Qayed E. Learning curve for EMR of large nonpolypoid colorectal neoplasia: an alternative analysis method using longitudinal models. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2017; **85**: 1309-1310 [PMID: 28522020 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2016.12.018]

46 **Bhurwal A**, Bartel MJ, Heckman MG, Diehl NN, Raimondo M, Wallace MB, Woodward TA. Endoscopic mucosal resection: learning curve for large nonpolypoid colorectal neoplasia. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2016; **84**: 959-968.e7 [PMID: 27109458 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2016.04.020]

47 **Lamb CA**, Barbour JA. Developing an endoscopic mucosal resection service in a district general hospital. *Frontline Gastroenterol* 2012; **3**: 272-277 [PMID: 23904969 DOI: 10.1136/flgastro-2012-100212]

48 **Aihara H**, Dacha S, Anand GS, Byrne KR, Chahal P, James T, Kowalski TE, Repaka A, Saadi M, Sheth SG, Taylor JR, Williams RL, Wagh MS. Core curriculum for endoscopic submucosal dissection (ESD). *Gastrointest Endosc* 2021; **93**: 1215-1221 [PMID: 33820649 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2021.01.026]

49 **Pimentel-Nunes P**, Pioche M, Albéniz E, Berr F, Deprez P, Ebigbo A, Dewint P, Haji A, Panarese A, Weusten BLAM, Dekker E, East JE, Sanders DS, Johnson G, Arvanitakis M, Ponchon T, Dinis-Ribeiro M, Bisschops R. Curriculum for endoscopic submucosal dissection training in Europe: European Society of Gastrointestinal Endoscopy (ESGE) Position Statement. *Endoscopy* 2019; **51**: 980-992 [PMID: 31470448 DOI: 10.1055/a-0996-0912]

50 **Duloy AM**, Kaltenbach TR, Keswani RN. Assessing colon polypectomy competency and its association with established quality metrics. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2018; **87**: 635-644 [PMID: 28882577 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2017.08.032]

51 **Küttner-Magalhães R**, Dinis-Ribeiro M, Bruno MJ, Marcos-Pinto R, Rolanda C, Koch AD. Training in endoscopic mucosal resection and endoscopic submucosal dissection: Face, content and expert validity of the live porcine model. *United European Gastroenterol J* 2018; **6**: 547-557 [PMID: 29881610 DOI: 10.1177/2050640617742484]

52 **Pioche M**, Rivory J, Nishizawa T, Uraoka T, Touzet S, O'Brien M, Saurin JC, Ponchon T, Denis A, Yahagi N. Randomized comparative evaluation of endoscopic submucosal dissection self-learning software in France and Japan. *Endoscopy* 2016; **48**: 1076-1083 [PMID: 27706526 DOI: 10.1055/s-0042-116946]

53 **Garg S**, Inamdar S, Tharian B, Muniraj T, Aslanian HR. Education and gastroenterology fellow knowledge about endoscopic mucosal resection of colon adenomas: a survey-based study. *Endosc Int Open* 2021; **9**: E1227-E1233 [PMID: 34447869 DOI: 10.1055/a-1490-8255]

54 **Rotermund C**, Djinbachian R, Taghiakbari M, Enderle MD, Eickhoff A, von Renteln D. Recurrence rates after endoscopic resection of large colorectal polyps: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2022; **28**: 4007-4018 [PMID: 36157546 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i29.4007]

55 **Yang D**, Draganov PV, King W, Liu N, Sarheed A, Bhat A, Jiang P, Ladna M, Ruiz NC, Wilson J, Gorrepati VS, Pohl H. Margin marking before colorectal endoscopic mucosal resection and its impact on neoplasia recurrence (with video). *Gastrointest Endosc* 2022; **95**: 956-965 [PMID: 34861250 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2021.11.023]

56 **Motchum L**, Levenick JM, Djinbachian R, Moyer MT, Bouchard S, Taghiakbari M, Repici A, Deslandres É, von Renteln D. EMR combined with hybrid argon plasma coagulation to prevent recurrence of large nonpedunculated colorectal polyps (with videos). *Gastrointest Endosc* 2022; **96**: 840-848. e2 [PMID: 35724695 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2022.06.018]

57 **Tanaka S**, Kashida H, Saito Y, Yahagi N, Yamano H, Saito S, Hisabe T, Yao T, Watanabe M, Yoshida M, Kudo SE, Tsuruta O, Sugihara KI, Watanabe T, Saitoh Y, Igarashi M, Toyonaga T, Ajioka Y, Ichinose M, Matsui T, Sugita A, Sugano K, Fujimoto K, Tajiri H. JGES guidelines for colorectal endoscopic submucosal dissection/endoscopic mucosal resection. *Dig Endosc* 2015; **27**: 417-434 [PMID: 25652022 DOI: 10.1111/den.12456]

58 **Puig I**, Mármol C, Bustamante M. Endoscopic imaging techniques for detecting early colorectal cancer. *Curr Opin Gastroenterol* 2019; **35**: 432-439 [PMID: 31246596 DOI: 10.1097/MOG.0000000000000570]

59 **Dekker E**, Houwen BBSL, Puig I, Bustamante-Balén M, Coron E, Dobru DE, Kuvaev R, Neumann H, Johnson G, Pimentel-Nunes P, Sanders DS, Dinis-Ribeiro M, Arvanitakis M, Ponchon T, East JE, Bisschops R. Curriculum for optical diagnosis training in Europe: European Society of Gastrointestinal Endoscopy (ESGE) Position Statement. *Endoscopy* 2020; **52**: 899-923 [PMID: 32882737 DOI: 10.1055/a-1231-5123]

60 **Burgess NG**, Metz AJ, Williams SJ, Singh R, Tam W, Hourigan LF, Zanati SA, Brown GJ, Sonson R, Bourke MJ. Risk factors for intraprocedural and clinically significant delayed bleeding after wide-field endoscopic mucosal resection of large colonic lesions. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2014; **12**: 651-61.e1 [PMID: 24090728 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2013.09.049]

61 **Kang H**, Thoufeeq MH. Size of colorectal polyps determines time taken to remove them endoscopically. *Endosc Int Open* 2018; **6**: E610-E615 [PMID: 29756019 DOI: 10.1055/a-0587-4681]

62 **Worland T**, Cronin O, Harrison B, Alexander L, Ding N, Ting A, Dimopoulos S, Sykes R, Alexander S. Clinical and financial impacts of introducing an endoscopic mucosal resection service for treatment of patients with large colonic polyps into a regional tertiary hospital. *Endosc Int Open* 2019; **7**: E1386-E1392 [PMID: 31673609 DOI: 10.1055/a-0970-8828]

63 **Rodrigues R**, Geyl S, Albouys J, De Carvalho C, Crespi M, Tabouret T, Taibi A, Durand-Fontanier S, Legros R, Dahan M, Carrier P, Sautereau D, Loustaud-Ratti V, Kerever S, Jacques J. Effect of implementing a regional referral network on surgical referral rate of benign polyps found during a colorectal cancer screening program: A population-based study. *Clin Res Hepatol Gastroenterol* 2021; **45**: 101488 [PMID: 32723672 DOI: 10.1016/j.clinre.2020.06.014]

64 **Zwager LW**, Bastiaansen BAJ, Dekker E, Fockens P; Expert Panel Group. Setting up a regional expert panel for complex colorectal polyps. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2022; **96**: 84-91.e2 [PMID: 35150664 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2022.02.003]

65 **AEG/SEED**. Qualiscopia-Programa de Calidad de la Colonoscopia.[Internet] [accessed 12 November 2019]. Availabe from: https://qualiscopia.org/images/site/Gu%C3%ADa_Qualiscopia_para_Unidades_de_Endoscopia.pdf

66 **Medina-Prado L**, Hassan C, Dekker E, Bisschops R, Alfieri S, Bhandari P, Bourke MJ, Bravo R, Bustamante-Balen M, Dominitz J, Ferlitsch M, Fockens P, van Leerdam M, Lieberman D, Herráiz M, Kahi C, Kaminski M, Matsuda T, Moss A, Pellisé M, Pohl H, Rees C, Rex DK, Romero-Simó M, Rutter MD, Sharma P, Shaukat A, Thomas-Gibson S, Valori R, Jover R. When and How To Use Endoscopic Tattooing in the Colon: An International Delphi Agreement. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2021; **19**: 1038-1050 [PMID: 33493699 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2021.01.024]

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Gastroenterol 2022 December 21; 28(47): 6632-6661

DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6632

ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

REVIEW

Mucosal imaging in colon polyps: New advances and what the future may hold

Edward John Young, Arvinf Rajandran, Hamish Lachlan Philpott, Dharshan Sathananthan, Sophie Fenella Hoile, Rajvinder Singh

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Provenance and peer review: Invited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

P-Reviewer: Osera S, Japan; Romo JA, Colombia; Tadros M, United States

Received: September 3, 2022
Peer-review started: September 3, 2022
First decision: October 20, 2022
Revised: October 23, 2022
Accepted: November 22, 2022
Article in press: November 22, 2022
Published online: December 21, 2022

Edward John Young, Arvinf Rajandran, Hamish Lachlan Philpott, Dharshan Sathananthan, Sophie Fenella Hoile, Rajvinder Singh, Department of Gastroenterology, Lyell McEwin Hospital, Northern Adelaide Local Health Network, Elizabeth Vale 5031, South Australia, Australia

Edward John Young, Hamish Lachlan Philpott, Dharshan Sathananthan, Sophie Fenella Hoile, Rajvinder Singh, Faculty of Health and Medical Sciences, University of Adelaide, Adelaide 5000, South Australia, Australia

Corresponding author: Rajvinder Singh, FRACP, FRCP, MBBS, MPhil, MRCP, Professor, Department of Gastroenterology, Lyell McEwin Hospital, Northern Adelaide Local Health Network, Haydown Road, Elizabeth Vale 5031, South Australia, Australia.
rajvinder.singh@sa.gov.au

Abstract

An expanding range of advanced mucosal imaging technologies have been developed with the goal of improving the detection and characterization of lesions in the gastrointestinal tract. Many technologies have targeted colorectal neoplasia given the potential for intervention prior to the development of invasive cancer in the setting of widespread surveillance programs. Improvement in adenoma detection reduces miss rates and prevents interval cancer development. Advanced imaging technologies aim to enhance detection without significantly increasing procedural time. Accurate polyp characterisation guides resection techniques for larger polyps, as well as providing the platform for the "resect and discard" and "do not resect" strategies for small and diminutive polyps. This review aims to collate and summarise the evidence regarding these technologies to guide colonoscopic practice in both interventional and non-interventional endoscopists.

Key Words: Colonoscopy; Colorectal cancer; Mucosal imaging; Chromoendoscopy; Polyp surveillance; Polyp characterization

©The Author(s) 2022. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core Tip: Advanced mucosal imaging enhances polyp detection and characterization. This detailed review summarises existing advanced mucosal imaging technologies to guide everyday colonoscopic practice for interventional and non-interventional endoscopists.

Citation: Young EJ, Rajandran A, Philpott HL, Sathananthan D, Hoile SF, Singh R. Mucosal imaging in colon polyps: New advances and what the future may hold. *World J Gastroenterol* 2022; 28(47): 6632-6661
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v28/i47/6632.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6632

INTRODUCTION

Colorectal cancer (CRC) accounts for 10% of cancer incidence and is the third leading cause of cancer-related death worldwide[1]. Whilst CRC incidence and mortality are increasing globally, there is now tangible evidence of the evolving efficacy of screening programs in developed countries including Australia, the United States, Iceland, New Zealand and Japan, where there have been improvements in both CRC incidence and mortality[2,3]. While these decreases are multifactorial and partly a result of lifestyle modification (reduction in smoking, weight loss, dietary changes), the implementation of population CRC screening programs has been integral to the prevention and early detection of CRC[4,5].

CRC develops through a well-documented adenoma-carcinoma cascade consisting of multiple differing pathways. Although underlying genetic mutations are diverse and heterogenous, most CRCs arise as either traditional tubular adenomas or serrated adenomas. Eventually these adenomas acquire additional carcinogenic mutations sufficient to develop invasive potential[6]. This sequence forms the basis of colonoscopic screening and surveillance programs. Not only can cancers be detected at an early stage where curative and non-invasive treatment is possible, but in many cases these pre-cancerous adenomas can be resected prior to their differentiation into carcinomas with invasive potential.

Unfortunately, interval CRCs still develop in patients who have undergone appropriate colonoscopic screening, accounting for 4.8%-7.9% of all CRCs[7-11]. Given that most adenomas take an estimated 5-15 years to develop into CRC, these interval cancers likely represent adenomas missed at the time of colonoscopy[12]. In fact, a 2019 meta-analysis found miss rates for adenomas to be as high as 26%[13]. Studies have consistently demonstrated that location in the proximal colon leads to an increased chance of missed adenomas, with interval cancers more than twice as likely to be proximally located[11]. Multiple factors contribute to this risk, as proximally located polyps are more likely to be flat, more likely to be sessile serrated polyps, more dysplastic whilst smaller and less likely to be hyperplastic polyps without malignant potential[14-16].

While certain polyp-related factors contribute to the likelihood of missed adenomas, overall adenoma detection rates (ADRs) are also highly operator-dependent. For example, a retrospective propensity-score matched study demonstrated an ADR of 44% for "high-ADR endoscopists" *vs* 26.9% for "low-ADR endoscopists" in the same Japanese screening population[17]. In this study, "high-ADR endoscopists" were more likely to detect proximal, non-protruding and high-risk adenomas. It is therefore not surprising that studies have demonstrated an inverse correlation between endoscopists" ADR and interval cancer development, with each 1% increase in ADR resulting in a 3% reduction in interval cancer risk[18,19]. Kaminski *et al*[19] also demonstrated an increase in interval cancer development in endoscopists with an ADR < 20%. Accordingly, societal guidelines recommend a minimum ADR of 25% (20% in women, 30% in men) as a means of ensuring quality control among colonoscopists[20]. More recently, the mean number of adenomas detected during colonoscopy has been raised as a possible alternative quality indicator, as the number of adenomas detected directly impacts surveillance intervals. Denis *et al*[21] found that even endoscopists with an ADR of more than 35% had considerable variation in mean adenoma detection over 42817 surveillance colonoscopies, from 0.36 to 0.98. The adenoma miss rate has also been demonstrated to vary considerably between high ADR endoscopists, instead correlating strongly with adenomas detected per colonoscopy[22].

Given the heterogeneity among proceduralists and the ongoing prevalence of interval CRCs, multiple add-on devices and techniques have been developed to increase mucosal visualisation and reduce adenoma miss rates. A 2020 network meta-analysis demonstrated that add-on devices such as "Endocuff vision" and techniques such as water-immersion colonoscopy do improve adenoma detection [relative risk (RR) 1.53 and 1.41 respectively] however they require additional equipment and cost while often increasing procedure times[23]. The addition of a transparent cap attached to the tip of the colonoscope has been demonstrated to improve adenoma detection while also reducing caecal intubation time[24-26]. However, a 2012 meta-analysis found the impact of these measures to be small, with a RR of 1.08 for adenoma detection and a mean 0.64 min reduction in caecal intubation time[27]. In the context of expansive population screening programs, small changes in equipment costs and procedure times have a considerable impact on a larger scale.

Advanced mucosal imaging techniques function by either improving image definition, application of dyes/altering the light source to enhance certain tissue features, digitally enhancing images in real time, or by providing "alerts" to the proceduralist for abnormal findings detected by artificial intelligence (AI). In doing so, these technologies aim to improve detection and characterisation of polyps without increasing equipment costs. This review aims to consider and summarise the numerous available advanced imaging technologies and examine their efficacy in both polyp detection and polyp characterisation. Whilst this is not a formal systematic review, it has been based largely on a structured interrogation of existing literature using Pubmed and Embase, with abstracts screened for relevance and reference lists searched for additional pertinent studies.

POLYP DETECTION

Standard and high-definition white light imaging

White light imaging (WLI) is the original unenhanced form of endoscopic imaging. Standard definition (SD-WLI) endoscopes produce a signal of up to 100000 to 400000 pixels, compared to high-definition (HD-WLI) endoscopes which produce from 850000 to more than 1 million pixels[28]. Despite this considerable improvement in image quality, studies comparing HD-WLI to SD-WLI have found an only marginal benefit in adenoma detection, with a 2020 meta-analysis of 6 randomised-controlled trials (RCTs) involving 4594 patients finding an ADR of 40% for HD-WLI *vs* 35% for SD-WLI (RR 1.13, P = 0.001)[29-31]. However, various studies have demonstrated a more significant increase in detection of flat adenomas (8.2%-9.5% *vs* 2.4%-3.8%), right sided adenomas (34% *vs* 19%) and sessile serrated polyps (RR 1.55, P = 0.03) with HD-WLI[29,31,32]. In the context of inflammatory bowel disease (IBD) where dysplasia detection is notoriously difficult, HD-WLI leads to increased likelihood of dysplasia on targeted biopsies, with an adjusted prevalence ratio of 2.99 (CI 1.16-7.79) in one 2013 study[33]. In fact, Krugliak *et al*[34] described 36 patients who underwent colectomy for dysplasia in IBD found using HD-WLI colonoscopy, in which no metachronous lesions were discovered that had not been detected endoscopically. While the overall benefit in adenoma detection may be marginal, the improved detection of high-risk, flat, right sided lesions, along with the fact that HD-WLI is now widely available, has led to almost universal uptake of HD-WLI in screening colonoscopy.

Chromoendoscopy

Chromoendoscopy involves topical application of dyes to enhance mucosal characterisation and improve detection of pathologic lesions. For adenoma detection during colonoscopy, the most commonly used dye is methylene blue, which is rapidly absorbed into healthy colonic mucosa and more slowly absorbed in dysplastic tissue[35]. More recently, chromoendoscopy using acetic acid has been described, acting as a mucolytic agent as well as increasing mucosal surface opacity[36].

Multiple studies have demonstrated the efficacy of chromoendoscopy for neoplasia detection (particularly proximal serrated lesions) during screening and surveillance colonoscopy, with a 2016 Cochrane review (7 studies, 2727 participants) finding an odds ratio (OR) of 1.53 for detection of at least one neoplastic lesion[37,38]. However, the incremental benefit in many of these studies has been marginal and not associated with any increase in detection of advanced adenomas or larger polyps[39,40]. The strongest evidence for the benefit of chromoendoscopy has been for detection of dysplasia in the IBD population. Compared to SD-WLI, multiple meta-analyses have demonstrated the superiority of chromoendoscopy, with a RR of up to 2.05 for dysplasia detection[41,42]. However, the utility of chromoendoscopy in IBD has become more controversial as more recent studies have not demonstrated a difference between chromoendoscopy and HD-WLI[41,43,44].

Chromoendoscopy has been shown to improve dysplasia detection in other high-risk populations, particularly in those with an increased risk of flat, right-sided lesions. A 2019 tandem study comparing HD-WLI and chromoendoscopy with indigo carmine in patients with serrated polyposis syndrome found a higher additional ADR (39% *vs* 22%, P < 0.001) in the chromoendoscopy group[45]. In hereditary non-polyposis colon cancer (HNPCC), a 2019 meta-analysis demonstrated improved adenoma detection with a relative risk (RR) of 1.53 (CI 1.07-2.17)[46]. However, again recent evidence has found the benefit of chromoendoscopy over HD-WLI to be marginal in this setting, with a 2021 meta-analysis of three RCTs not reaching statistical significance (OR 1.17, CI 1.81-1.70)[47-49].

Irrespective, widespread uptake of chromoendoscopy has been limited by the increase in procedure time required for dye application. A 2019 meta-analysis in IBD surveillance found the total procedure time to be a mean of 21.69 min (CI 9.01-34.38) longer for chromoendoscopy[50]. One method to counter this was described by Repici *et al*[51], using oral dye (methylene blue) ingested at the time of bowel preparation. Promisingly, this led to an 8.5% increase in ADR without increasing procedure times, although there was no difference in detection of larger or more advanced polyps.

Virtual chromoendoscopy

Virtual, or electronic chromoendoscopy have been developed in attempt to digitally recreate the enhanced mucosal visualisation of chromoendoscopy without increasing procedure time. However, no

form of virtual chromoendoscopy has been able to conclusively demonstrate a benefit with respect to polyp detection at colonoscopy.

Narrow-band imaging

Narrow-band imaging (NBI) uses optical filters to produce two narrow bands of light centred at wavelengths of 415 nm and 540 nm, corresponding to the primary and secondary light absorption peaks of haemoglobin. Superficial capillaries appear brown, highlighted by the 415 nm wavelength, while deeper vessels in the mucosa and submucosa are cyan due to the deeper penetration of the 540 nm wavelength[52].

The role of NBI in adenoma detection during routine colonoscopy in the general population has been extensively studied. Studies that have found a benefit for NBI in this setting have demonstrated an improvement particularly in the detection of flat or depressed lesions (Figure 1), with a pooled RR of 1.96 in a 2012 meta-analysis[53-56]. However, the majority of studies, including a 2012 Cochrane review by Nagorni *et al*[57], have shown no difference in overall adenoma detection[32,57-61]. In fact, one 2017 RCT demonstrated a reduction in ADR with NBI when adjusted for increased withdrawal time[62].

Multiple possible factors may contribute to the limitations of NBI in screening colonoscopy. Earlier-generation NBI resulted in a reduction in overall brightness due to the narrow bandwidths, which may limit overall visualisation in the wide colorectal lumen. The second-generation bright NBI has been developed to counter this, although recent studies have again demonstrated no difference in overall adenoma detection[58,63]. NBI also appears to be disproportionately affected by poor bowel preparation (which may also be in part due to reduced brightness), with a 2019 meta-analysis finding superior adenoma detection with second-generation NBI only in patients with maximal bowel preparation scores[64]. In addition, the colour spectrum of NBI is different to WLI and therefore may require experience and familiarity with the technology in order to be effective. This was demonstrated by Minamide *et al*[63] who retrospectively reviewed 1831 patients that underwent colonoscopy using second-generation bright NBI or WLI and found a higher polyp detection rate (PDR) with NBI (80.9% *vs* 71.4%, $P = 0.02$) in academic centres familiar with its use, while in community centres, there was actually a trend towards a higher PDR with WLI (51.1% *vs* 47.7%). Additionally, in the NBI group, the ADR for NBI-experienced proceduralists was 63.2% *vs* 39.2% for NBI-inexperienced proceduralists ($P < 0.001$).

i-SCAN

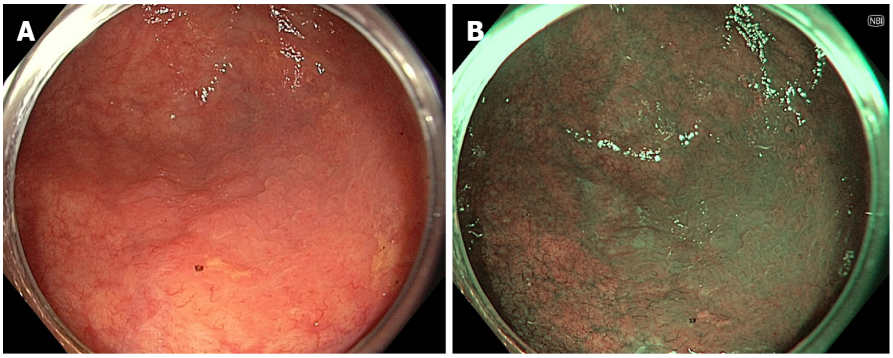
i-SCAN is a software-based post-processing technology, which digitally enhances WLI output through surface and contrast enhancement (i-SCAN mode 1) as well as tone enhancement (i-SCAN modes 2 and 3)[52]. Evidence has again been inconsistent regarding its efficacy for adenoma detection. Multiple studies have found an improvement in polyp and adenoma detection, the largest of which demonstrated a non-statistically significant improvement in ADR from 27% to 33% ($P = 0.33$)[65-68]. As demonstrated by Kidambi *et al*[69] in 2019, this effect has mainly been due to improved detection of diminutive, flat, right-sided adenomas[68,69]. In terms of high-risk populations, Bisschops *et al*[70] found a reduction in adenoma miss rates from 62% to 12% using i-SCAN in 61 patients with HNPCC. On the contrary, a 2012 prospective back-to-back study comparing HD-WLI with i-SCAN modes 1 and 2 in 389 screening colonoscopies showed no difference in ADR or adenoma miss rates, while a 2014 meta-analysis also demonstrated no difference in ADR[71,72]. There is therefore insufficient evidence to recommend routine use of i-SCAN in screening colonoscopy at this stage.

Flexible spectral imaging colour enhancement

Flexible spectral imaging colour enhancement (FICE) also involves digital enhancement of WLI images from the video processor, emphasising certain wavelengths which can be determined by the proceduralists according to 10 factory-determined pre-set modes[52]. FICE was developed with the goal of providing mucosal enhancement without compromising the familiarity of colour patterns from WLI. While one early back-to-back colonoscopy study in 2012 demonstrated reduced adenoma miss rate using FICE[73], multiple studies have demonstrated no significant impact, with the largest RCT in 2010 by Aminalai *et al*[74] finding no difference in ADR between FICE and HD-WLI over 1318 colonoscopies.

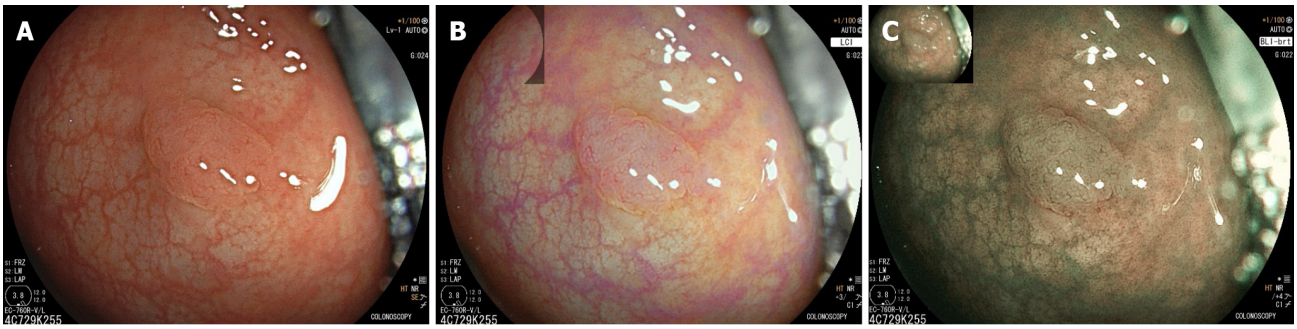
Linked colour imaging

Linked colour imaging (LCI) uses both pre- and post-processing technology with narrow wavelength light to separate colours, increasing the vividity of the red and white colour spectrums and enhancing the contrast of mucosal surface patterns and superficial capillaries (Figure 2). It was developed with the aim of enhancing lesion visibility and surface characterisation without compromising brightness or familiarity of colour spectrums, offering perhaps the most promising early evidence for improved adenoma detection[75-77]. It has been demonstrated to improve lesion visibility in both video- and image-based studies when compared to HD-WLI, particularly for nongranular, flat lesions[75,78,79]. While evidence varies with regard to overall ADR, studies have found improvements in proximal adenoma detection and miss rates[80-84]. In addition, a 2020 meta-analysis of 7 studies including 3097 patients demonstrated improved adenoma detection (RR 1.26, $P < 0.001$), particularly in the right colon



DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6632 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2022.

Figure 1 Sessile serrated adenoma/polyp seen on high-definition white light imaging and narrow-band imaging. A: High-definition white light imaging; B: Narrow-band imaging.



DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6632 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2022.

Figure 2 Sessile serrated adenoma seen on white light imaging, linked colour imaging, and blue light imaging. A: White light imaging; B: Linked colour imaging; C: Blue light imaging.

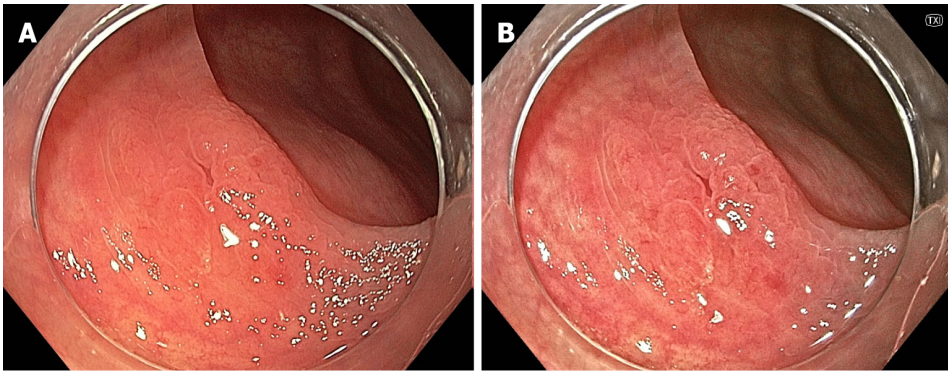
(RR 2.68, $P < 0.001$) and a mean of 0.27 additional adenomas detected per colonoscopy[85]. In a high-risk population of patients with HNPCC, LCI was found to improve ADR compared to HD-WLI (36.3% *vs* 25.6%, $P = 0.04$)[86]. Interestingly, while advanced imaging such as NBI appears to have a greater impact when used by experienced endoscopists, a 2021 study by Hasegawa *et al*[87] found a strong negative correlation between the baseline ADR with HD-WLI and the improvement ratio, indicating that perhaps the familiar colour pattern allows effective use by non-expert proceduralists.

Blue light imaging

Blue light imaging (BLI) is form of digitally enhanced imaging which concentrates and enhances a specific wavelength of light between 410-450 nm, increasing the contrast of superficial micro-vessels and mucosal surface structures (Figure 2). BLI uses four independent light-emitting diodes rather than the xenon light used in NBI, which is postulated to improve brightness[88]. This new technology has not been as extensively studied, however a video-based 2015 study demonstrated improved visibility scores with BLI bright mode compared to WLI according to both expert and non-expert proceduralists[89]. On a smaller scale this translated into improved adenoma detection, with two studies (including 182 and 127 patients respectively), finding an improvement in ADR from 27.8% to 46.2% ($P = 0.01$) and a reduction in adenoma miss rate from 10% to 1.6% ($P = 0.001$) compared to HD-WLI[90,91]. In contrast, the largest prospective study to date, including 963 patients, did not find a difference in ADR, though did find a non-statistically significant increase in mean adenomas per patient (APP) (1.27 *vs* 1.01, $P = 0.08$)[92].

Texture and colour enhancement imaging

Texture and colour enhancement imaging (TXI) is a recently developed technology, where the HD-WLI image is split into two layers, each individually undergoing brightness enhancement, tone mapping and texture enhancement before the images are stacked (TXI mode 1) and undergo further colour enhancement (TXI mode 2)[93]. Similarly to LCI, this aims to enhance mucosal visualisation without compromising familiarity of colour patterns or brightness (Figure 3). As an only recently developed technology, clinical studies examining adenoma detection are not yet available, however preliminary studies have demonstrated improved visibility of adenomas and sessile serrated polyps using TXI compared to HD-WLI[94,95].



DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6632 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2022.

Figure 3 Sessile serrated adenoma seen on white light imaging and texture and colour enhancement imaging. A: White light imaging; B: Texture and colour enhancement imaging.

Virtual chromoendoscopy summary

While virtual chromoendoscopy theoretically offers enhanced mucosa visualisation without the increase in procedure time required for dye-based chromoendoscopy, none of the currently available technologies have conclusively demonstrated a meaningful improvement in ADR compared to HD-WLI. These technologies may all have a role particularly in improving detection of flat, right sided adenomas and may be used as additional tools for examination during screening colonoscopy, but evidence is not yet sufficient for recommendation in societal guidelines. Data appear most promising for newer forms of post-processing technology where brightness and familiarity of color patterns are preserved, however additional research is required to confirm this efficacy.

Autofluorescence imaging

Light of a specific wavelength induces cell autofluorescence produced by endogenous fluorophores, with varied characteristics between normal (green), inflamed (dark green) and neoplastic (magenta) tissue. Autofluorescence imaging (AFI) relies on the detection and delineation of this natural fluorescence after stimulating the mucosal cells with short wavelength light[96,97]. In doing so, AFI aims to detect neoplastic or dysplastic tissue even before it manifests as an anatomically distinguishable discrete lesion. McCallum *et al*[98] demonstrated that colonic adenomas have a significantly higher autofluorescence intensity than non-neoplastic polyps. It is therefore unsurprising that the greatest impact of AFI across multiple studies has been improved detection of flat, right sided polyps rather than elevated polypoid adenomas, with one RCT reporting an ADR for flat neoplasms of 42.5% *vs* 29.2% ($P < 0.001$)[99,100]. However, a 2015 meta-analysis found that while the adenoma and polyp miss rates were lower with AFI, there was no difference in overall ADR despite an average of 8 min longer procedural time for the AFI group[101].

Artificial intelligence

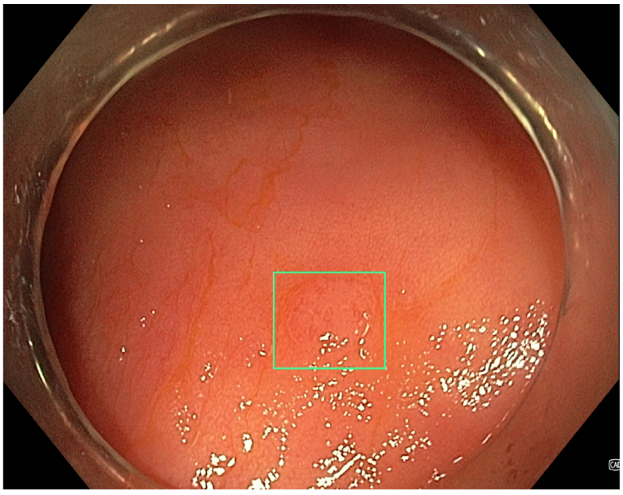
Multiple AI systems have been developed for polyp detection during surveillance colonoscopy, referred to as computer aided detection (CADe). These systems use convulational neural networks (CNNs) which are trained using still images and videos of polyps[102]. The most recent systems then output a real-time alert to the proceduralist to the presence of the polyp, most commonly with a square around the perimeters of the image output or around the polyp itself (Figure 4). CADe systems were initially analysed in still image- and video-based studies, demonstrating a sensitivity of 95%-99% and accuracy of 96%[103-107]. Subsequently, large studies by Repici *et al*[102] (2020) and Wang *et al*[108,109] (2019 and 2020) in real-time AI-assisted colonoscopy have demonstrated an increase in ADR (RR 1.61 *vs* 1.30), as well as a 1.46- to 1.72-fold increase in total adenomas detected. The adenoma miss rate in tandem colonoscopy studies has also been demonstrated to be lower with CADe-assisted colonoscopy (14%-20%) compared to WLI (31%-40%)[110,111]. Subsequently, multiple meta-analyses have consistently demonstrated improved ADR and adenomas detected per colonoscopy with CADe systems (Table 1)[112-115].

An alternative role for AI-assistance in screening colonoscopy is based on quality assurance, employing AI to monitor withdrawal speed, endoscope slipping and blind spots to ensure consistency in colonoscopic practice. Gong *et al*[116] studied ENDOANGEL for this purpose and in a 2020 RCT involving 704 patients demonstrated an odds ratio of 2.3 for adenoma detection. Similar results were demonstrated by Su *et al*[117] using their Automatic Quality Control System (AQCS). Although not yet explored in studies, it may be that the combination of these AI systems using quality control and CADe may facilitate optimal adenoma detection. This is an area for further study as these systems become more widely available.

Table 1 Meta-analyses on efficacy of real-time computer aided detection

Ref.	Studies, patients	ADR			Adenoma per patient			Withdrawal time	False positives
		AI	WLI	RR	AI	WLI	Mean difference	Mean difference CADe *vs* control	
Aziz *et al*[112], 2020	3 studies, 2815 patients	32.9%	20.8%	1.58	0.47	0.26	0.20	0.9 min (P = 0.03)	4.87% (n = 137)
Hassan *et al*[113], 2021	5 studies, 4354 patients	36.6%	25.2%	1.44	0.58	0.36	0.22	0.34 min (P = 0.13)	-
Spadaccini *et al*[114], 2021	6 studies, 5178 patients	34.0%	26.6%	1.78	-	-	-	No significant difference	-
Barua *et al*[115], 2021	5 studies, 4311 patients	29.6%	19.3%	1.52	0.41	0.23	0.18	0.5 min	11.2%

ADR: Adenoma detection rate; AI: Artificial intelligence; WLI: White light imaging; RR: Relative risk; CADe: Computer aided detection.



DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6632 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2022.

Figure 4 Computer aided detection detection system with a real-time alert seen around a flat tubular adenoma.

Fluorescence molecular endomicroscopy

Fluorescence molecular endomicroscopy (FME) involves targeted fluorescent agents that bind to specific cellular components of dysplastic cells, allowing detection using a specialised near infra-red FME (NIR-FME) probe[118]. For example, Hartmans *et al*[119] developed a fluorescently-labelled antibody against vascular endothelial growth factor A (which is upregulated in colonic adenomas) and injected this intravenously 3 d prior to colonoscopy. In their pilot study, all 39 adenomas from 15 patients were detected using the NIR-FME probe, demonstrating the feasibility of this technique[119]. Alternatively, Joshi *et al*[120] identified a peptide sequence that binds specifically to sessile serrated adenomas/polyps (SSA/Ps) which was administered topically using a spray catheter to 38 subjects undergoing routine outpatient colonoscopy, distinguishing SSA/Ps from normal colonic mucosa with 89% sensitivity and 92% specificity[120].

Problem: Over surveillance?

As a result of the expanding range of advanced imaging technologies (Table 2) and improved adenoma detection, patients will increasingly meet societal guidelines for more frequent surveillance colonoscopy. To counter this, guidelines may eventually need to be adjusted to reduce the frequency of colonoscopy based on diminishing adenoma miss-rates. However, a 2014 study by Gómez *et al*[121] demonstrated no difference in adenoma detection at follow-up colonoscopy after prior procedures completed by higher ADR endoscopists using HD-WLI. Currently, the duration of use of these advanced technologies has been insufficient to analyse polyp detection at future surveillance, hence further research is required as experience grows.

Table 2 Summary of strengths and weakness of advanced imaging technologies in adenoma detection

Modality		Strengths	Weaknesses
HD-WLI		Widely available	Marginal incremental benefit over SD-WLI
		Increased detection of flat, right-sided adenomas and SSAs	
Chromoendoscopy		Increased detection of small and flat adenomas	No significant increase in detection of advanced adenomas
		Increased dysplasia detection in IBD (compared to SD-WLI)	Increased procedural time
		May increase polyp detection in high-risk syndromes (serrated polyposis syndrome, HNPCC)	
Virtual chromoendoscopy	NBI	May improve flat lesion detection	Loss of brightness and familiarity of colour patterns
		Effective in those with experience using NBI	No evidence of increased total adenoma detection
			Less effective when used by proceduralists inexperienced in NBI
	i-SCAN	May reduce miss-rates in high-risk populations	Not widely available
			No difference in adenoma detection in larger studies
			Insufficient evidence to recommend use
	FICE	Retains familiar colour patterns	Not widely available
			No difference in ADR
	LCI	Retains familiar colour patterns	Not widely available
		Effective when used by non-LCI experienced proceduralists	Variable evidence regarding overall adenoma detection
		Improve adenoma detection, particularly right sided and flat lesions	
	BLI	Improved adenoma detection and miss rate in smaller studies	Not widely available
			No difference in ADR in largest study to date
	TXI	Retains familiar colour patterns	Not widely available
			New technology therefore insufficient evidence
AFI		Improved detection of flat/right sided polyps	Not widely available
			Increased procedure time
			No difference in overall ADR
AI		Improves ADR	Expensive currently
		Improves consistency between proceduralists	Not widely available
		Quality assurance	Some increase in procedure time
FME		In theory may improve detection of flat/poorly visible polyps	Insufficient evidence
			Requires injection/ingestion of tracer

HD-WLI: High-definition white light imaging; SD-WLI: Standard definition white light imaging; HNPCC: Hereditary non-polyposis colon cancer; NBI: Narrow-band imaging; IBD: Inflammatory bowel disease; BLI: Blue light imaging; TXI: Texture and colour enhancement imaging; FME: Fluorescence molecular endomicroscopy; AI: Artificial intelligence; AFI: Autofluorescence imaging; SSA/Ps: Sessile serrated adenomas/polyps; ADR: Adenoma detection rate.

POLYP CHARACTERISATION

Importance of polyp characterisation

Polyp characterisation is critically important for both small and larger polyps. In the context of diminutive (< 5 mm) and small (< 10 mm) polyps, accurate characterisation has facilitated the "resect and discard" and "do not resect" strategies. For larger polyps, accurate endoscopic characterisation guides the selection of suitable polyps for endoscopic resection as well as the most appropriate resection technique.

Diminutive and small polyps

Traditionally, all polyps identified during colonoscopy have been resected and examined histologically. However, as the accuracy of endoscopic identification of polyps has improved, the "resect and discard" or even "do not resect" strategies have been developed to minimise the resource consumption of routine histological analysis. These strategies were developed after large studies found that advanced histology (at least high-grade dysplasia) is present in as few as 1.7% of diminutive (≤ 5 mm) polyps, and only 6.6%-10.0% of small (< 10 mm) polyps[122,123]. In fact, a 2013 meta-analysis including 6280 polyps found only 56.7% of diminutive polyps are even neoplastic[124]. On this basis, the American Society of Gastrointestinal Endoscopy (ASGE) published the Preservation and Incorporation of Valuable endoscopic Innovations (PIVI) thresholds for adopting real-time endoscopic assessment of polyps for "resect and discard" and "do not resect"[125]. For diminutive polyps to be discarded without pathological assessment, endoscopic imaging should provide a ≥ 90% agreement in assignment of post-polypectomy surveillance. Polyps > 5 mm in size should be sent for histological assessment given the up to 10% frequency of more advanced histology which would alter surveillance intervals[123]. For diminutive rectosigmoid hyperplastic polyps, imaging should provide ≥ 90% negative predictive value for adenomatous histology. Even hyperplastic-appearing diminutive polyps proximal to the sigmoid colon should be resected as these polyps have a more than 10% chance of being SSA/Ps histologically [126]. These strategies would result in significant cost-savings to the healthcare sector. For example, Solon *et al*[127] examined the potential financial impact of this strategy for the National Health Service (NHS) in England in 2016, demonstrating potential annual cost savings of £141192057.

Larger polyps

For larger polyps, endoscopic characterisation is critical to guiding suitability for endoscopic resection as well as appropriate resection techniques. Even for non-interventionalists who are not proceeding with immediate resection, accurate characterisation without the need for biopsy may be ideal to guide appropriate referral. Kuroha *et al*[128] highlighted this in a 2021 study examining predictors of success in 369 colorectal ESDs. Severe fibrosis was associated with increased mean procedure time, as well as lower en bloc and complete resection rates, with the greatest predictors of severe fibrosis on multivariate analysis being prior resection attempt (OR 175.4) and pre-treatment biopsy (OR 8.3)[128]. In addition, pre-resection biopsies can be inaccurate in large lesions, with false negative rates as high as 86% for adenocarcinoma, therefore characterisation with advanced imaging and upfront endoscopic resection may be more appropriate[129].

Training in polyp characterisation

Accurate polyp characterisation using advanced mucosal imaging is impacted to some extent by proceduralist experience. A 2014 video-based study demonstrated that interventional endoscopists specialising in complex polypectomy were more accurate in identifying malignant polyps when compared to other endoscopists[130]. However, multiple studies support the efficacy of specialised training in advanced mucosal imaging for polyp characterisation, irrespective of endoscopist experience. Both Bae *et al*[131] and Patel *et al*[132] have studied the accuracy of endoscopists before and after a training module on identification diminutive rectal polyps, in whom the negative predictive value (NPV) for diminutive neoplastic polyps improved from 82.1% to 92.5%-94.7%, thus meeting the PIVI threshold. In addition, studies have demonstrated accurate characterisation after training even in medical residents with no endoscopy experience, while Basford *et al*[133] found no difference in the accuracy of interpretation of HD-WLI and i-SCAN images prior to specific training between consultant gastroenterologists, trainees and medical students[133-136]. Proceduralists should therefore engage in specific training in advanced mucosal imaging rather than relying on experience alone, in order to improve accuracy of polyp characterisation.

Classifications systems

Multiple polyp classification systems have been developed to improve polyp characterisation (Table 3). While not reliant on advanced imaging, the Paris classification aids in risk stratification for larger polyps prior to consideration of endoscopic resection (Figure 5)[137]. A large multicentre 2017 study found that the presence of any 0-IIc ("depressed") component predicted submucosal invasive cancer in almost 30% of patients. In laterally spreading tumours (LSTs), the presence of an elevated component (0-IIa + Is) predicted submucosal invasion in over 10% over patients *vs* 4.9% for those with flat lesions alone (0-IIa)

Table 3 Summary of existing classification systems using advanced mucosal imaging

System	Imaging modality	Polyp features	Accuracy	Complexity	TA/TVAs included	SSAs included
Kudo	Any	Pits	AUC 0.94[143]	Complex	Yes	No
NICE	NBI	Vessels and pits	Sensitivity 98%, NPV 97.8%[145]	Moderate	Yes	No
JNET	NBI	Vessels and pits	AUC 0.97 for JNET 1, 0.84 for JNET 2A, 0.9 for JNET 3 but less accurate for JNET 2B (AUC 0.72)[152]	Moderate	Yes	No
BASIC	BLI	Vessels, pits and surface	Accurate surveillance prediction in 90%, NPV for rectosigmoid polyps 91%[160]	Moderate	Yes	No
WASP	Any	Pits, surface, shape	May improve SSA detection[162]	Simple	No	Yes
mSano	NBI	Vessels, pits and surface	AUC 0.92[169]	Simple	Yes	Yes

NBI: Narrow-band imaging; WASP: Workgroup serrAted polypS & polyposis; TVA: Tubulo-villous adenomas; AUC: Area under the receiver operating characteristic curve; NPV: Negative predictive value; BASIC: Blue light imaging adenomas serrated international classification; JNET: Japan NBI Expert Team developed the Japan NBI expert team; NICE: NBI International Colorectal Endoscopic; LCI: Linked colour imaging; SSA: Sessile serrated adenomas.

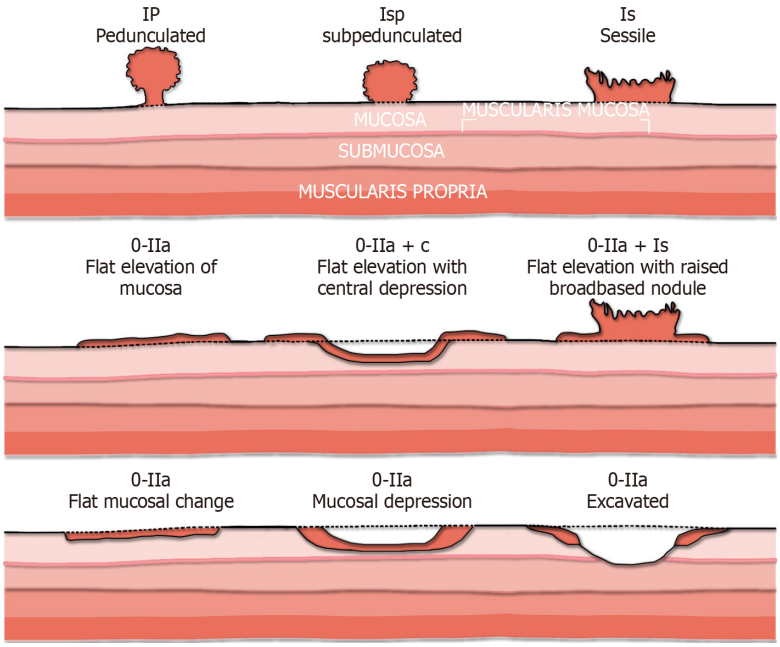


Figure 5 Paris classification. Citation: Mathews AA, Draganov PV, Yang D. Endoscopic management of colorectal polyps: From benign to malignant polyps. *World J Gastrointest Endosc* 2021; 13: 356-370[141].

(P < 0.001)[138]. However there is considerable inter-observer variability, particularly with regard to classification of lesions as flat *vs* sessile, with one study finding a kappa statistic of 0.42[139]. Van Doorn *et al*[139] proposed a simplified classification system of "pedunculated", "elevated" (including flat and sessile) and "depressed" in order to address this, which resulted in improved interobserver agreement and 91.6% accuracy for prediction of invasive cancer[140].

Kudo classification

The Kudo classification (Figure 6) was developed in 1996 to classify polyps according to their "pit patterns" on magnifying endoscopy[141]. Type I pits appear round, while type II appear stellate or papillary, both representing benign changes (normal, hyperplastic or inflammatory). Type III-s pits are smaller, round, tubular pits while type III-L are larger tubular pits, representing tubular adenomas (TA). Type IV pits are branch-like or gyrus-like and represent tubulo-villous adenomas (TVA), while type V pits are non-structured representing HGD or cancer[142]. Multiple studies have assessed the accuracy of the Kudo classification, summarised by a 2014 meta-analysis of 20 studies, including 5,111 colorectal

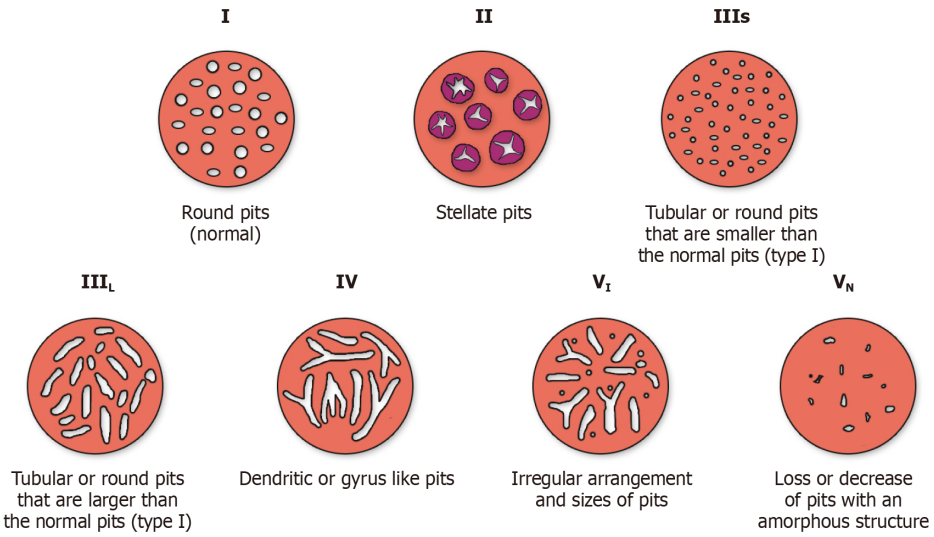


Figure 6 Kudo's classification. Citation: Mathews AA, Draganov PV, Yang D. Endoscopic management of colorectal polyps: From benign to malignant polyps. *World J Gastrointest Endosc* 2021; 13: 356-370[141].

lesions[143]. Pit pattern classification differentiated neoplastic from non-neoplastic polyps with a pooled sensitivity of 89.00%, specificity of 85.78% and area under the receiver operating characteristic curve (AUC) of 0.94[144].

NBI International Colorectal Endoscopic classification

The NBI International Colorectal Endoscopic (NICE) classification was developed in 2012 with the goal of developing an international consensus for classification using NBI[145]. This classification takes into account the polyp colour, vessel pattern and surface pattern to characterise polyps into NICE type 1 (hyperplastic) type 2 (adenoma) and type 3 (invasive cancer) (Figure 7). Using this simplified classification results in highly accurate differentiation of neoplastic from non-neoplastic polyps, with sensitivity of 97%-99%, specificity of 85%-95% and accuracy of 89%-98% across 3 Large prospective studies[145-147]. In the 2012 validation study, 471 predominantly diminutive and small polyps were predicted with high-confidence with sensitivity of 98% and NPV of 97.7%, while 119 low-confidence predictions resulted in a sensitivity of 94.2% and NPV of 94.4%, both easily exceeding PIVI thresholds [145]. However, in a study of 2123 larger lesions, the NICE classification predicted deep invasive cancer with a sensitivity of just 58.4%. Nevertheless, due to low rates of deep invasion this was still associated with an NPV of 96.4% and specificity of 98.1%, therefore the authors suggested that even large NICE 1 and 2 Lesions should be considered for endoscopic resection[148]. The NICE classification has also been validated in a smaller cohort using i-SCAN rather than NBI, with similar results[149].

Japan NBI expert team classification

More recently, the Japan NBI Expert Team developed the Japan NBI expert team (JNET) classification specifically for the classification of colorectal polyps based on their appearance on magnification NBI using a combination of vessel and surface pattern analysis (Figure 8)[150,151]. The JNET classification is highly accurate for differentiating neoplastic *vs* non-neoplastic polyps, with an AUC of 0.97 for JNET 1 (hyperplastic/SSA/Ps) and 0.84 for JNET 2A (adenoma with LGD) in a 2020 meta-analysis[152]. In a retrospective 2020 study, this resulted in an increase in the number of adenomas resected per colonoscopy (1.7 *vs* 1.2, $P < 0.01$) and a reduction in resection of non-neoplastic lesions (8.9% *vs* 17.0%, $P < 0.01$)[153]. It is also highly specific in predicting deep invasive cancer in JNET 3 Lesions, with specificity of 100% and an AUC of 0.9[152]. In addition, unlike other systems, the JNET classification has been validated for characterisation of dysplasia within SSA/Ps, with Murakami *et al*[154] finding that the presence of JNET 2A/B/3 foci within a JNET 1 Lesion is 83.9% sensitive, 95.5% specific and 94.5% accuracy for detection of dysplasia within sessile serrated lesions. However, the main limitation of the JNET classification is in the interpretation of JNET 2B lesions, with studies demonstrating a wide range of advanced pathology, from HGD to superficial invasive cancer and even deep invasive cancer in JNET 2B polyps, with an AUC of 0.72[152,155,156]. This was highlighted in a recent study that retrospectively reviewed 297 colorectal adenocarcinomas, in which the probability of deep invasion was only 1.8% for JNET 2A, 30.1% for JNET 2B and 96.6% for JNET 3[157,158]. In this study, JNET 2B lesions were then further analysed using chromoendoscopy and Kudo"s classification of pit patterns. In Kudo non-V lesions, the risk of deep invasion was only 4.3%. Overall, JNET differentiates accurately for JNET 1, 2A, and 3 lesions, however proceduralists should consider further examination with magnified chromoendoscopy for JNET 2B lesions to improve accuracy of histology prediction.

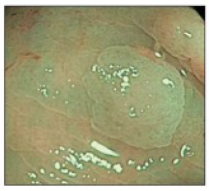
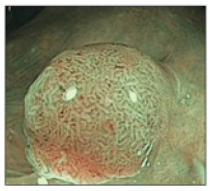
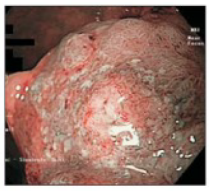
	Type 1	Type 2	Type 3
Color	Same or lighter than background	Browner relative to background (verify that color arises from vessels)	Brown to dark brown relative to background, sometimes patchy whiter areas
Vessels	None or isolated lacy vessels coursing across the lesion	Brown vessels surrounding white structures	Has area(s) with markedly distorted or missing vessels
Surface pattern	Dark or white spots of uniform size, or homogeneous absence of pattern	Oval, tubular, or branched white structures surrounded by brown vessels	Areas with distortion or absence of pattern
Most likely pathology	Hyperplastic	Adenoma	Deep submucosally invasive cancer
			

Figure 7 Narrow-band Imaging International Colorectal Endoscopic classification. Citation: Puig I, Kaltenbach T. Optical Diagnosis for Colorectal Polyps: A Useful Technique Now or in the Future? *Gut Liver* 2018; 12: 385-392[150]. Copyright© The Author(s) 2018. Published by The Korean Society of Gastroenterology, the Korean Society of Gastrointestinal Endoscopy, the Korean Society of Neurogastroenterology and Motility, Korean College of Helicobacter and Upper Gastrointestinal Research, Korean Association the Study of Intestinal Diseases, the Korean Association for the Study of the Liver, Korean Pancreatobiliary Association, and Korean Society of Gastrointestinal Cancer (Supplementary material).

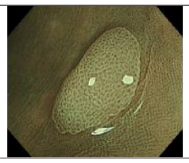
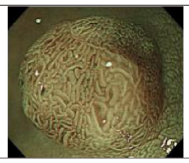
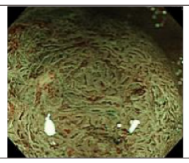
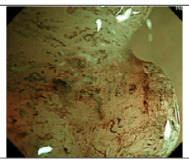
	Type 1	Type 2A	Type 2B	Type 3
Vessel pattern	•Invisible	•Regular caliber •Regular distribution (meshed/spiral pattern)	•Variable caliber •Irregular distribution	•Loose vessel areas •Interruption of thick vessels
Surface pattern	•Regular dark or white spots •Similar to surrounding normal mucosa	•Regular (tubular/branched/papillary)	•Irregular or obscure	•Amorphous areas
Most likely histology	Hyperplastic polyp/ Sessile serrated polyp	Low grade intramucosal neoplasia	High grade intramucosal neoplasia/ Shallow submucosal invasive cancer	Deep submucosal invasive cancer
Endoscopic image				

Figure 8 Japan Narrow-band Imaging Expert Team developed the Japan Narrow-band Imaging expert team classification. Citation: Hirata D, Kashida H, Iwatate M, Tochio T, Teramoto A, Sano Y, Kudo M. Effective use of the Japan Narrow Band Imaging Expert Team classification based on diagnostic performance and confidence level. *World J Clin Cases* 2019; 7: 2658-2665[158]. Copyright© The Author(s) 2019. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc (Supplementary material).

BLI adenomas serrated international classification

The BLI adenomas serrated international classification (BASIC) classification was developed in 2018 for classification of polyps using BLI, based on assessment of surface, pit patterns and vessels, classifying polyps as either hyperplastic, traditional adenomatous, sessile serrated or cancer[159]. In the largest prospective validation study of 748 diminutive polyps this classification reached PIVI thresholds with accurate surveillance prediction in 90% and an NPV for rectosigmoid polyps of 91%[160].

Dutch Workgroup serrAted polypS & polyposis classification

The dutch workgroup serrAted polypS & polyposis (WASP) classification was developed in 2016 to facilitate accurate differentiation of SSA/Ps from hyperplastic and traditional adenomatous polyps as many existing classification systems did not allow for inclusion of SSA/Ps[161]. It's accuracy has been validated by Lee *et al*[162] who demonstrated that the implementation of a specific training program in the WASP classification led to a statistically significant increase in SSA/P resection over the 6-mo

training period, from 4.5% to 8% (P = 0.003).

Sano and mSano classification

The Sano classification (Figure 9) characterises polyps according to their capillary pattern, with barely visible honeycomb pattern capillaries in type I (normal or hyperplastic), larger elongated capillaries in type II [adenoma with low-grade dysplasia (LGD)] and irregular branching vessels in type III [high-grade dysplasia (HGD)] or adenocarcinoma)[163,164]. In a validation study, 97% of Sano II lesions were diagnosed as LGD while 87% of Sano III lesions were HGD or invasive cancer[165]. In 2013, this system was modified by Singh *et al*[166] (mSano classification) to include type IIo lesions in order to distinguish hyperplastic from sessile serrated polyps (Figure 7). Across multiple studies, the overall accuracy of the mSano classification has been between 90%-97%, with near-perfect interobserver agreement (k 0.89)[166,167]. The NPV for diminutive rectosigmoid polyps is as high as 100% and the accuracy for post-polypectomy surveillance 97%, exceeding the PIVI thresholds described above[167]. mSano as a standalone classification system was compared to the combination of the WASP and JNET classification in 2020, with superior high-confidence predictions (85% *vs* 69%, P < 0.05) and equivalent interobserver reliability[168]. It was also compared to the NICE classification in a 2018 RCT including 348 colonoscopies, with an AUC of 0.92 for prediction of neoplasia by mSano *vs* 0.78 for NICE (P = 0.02) and an AUC of 0.92 for prediction of suitability for endoscopic resection *vs* 0.83 for NICE (P = 0.04)[169]. The mSano is therefore a highly accurate standalone criteria for characterisation of colonic polyps including differentiation of neoplasia (including SSA/Ps) as well as invasive cancer.

HD-WLI

There appears to be some incremental benefit from examination with HD-WLI alone *vs* SD-WLI for polyp characterisation, although this may be smaller than expected. In the largest direct comparison from Rastogi *et al*[31] in 2011, HD-WLI improved sensitivity for characterisation of small adenomas from 51.7% to 66.8% (P < 0.001) however the overall accuracy did not change. Minimal evidence exists comparing the accuracy of HD-WLI to SD-WLI for characterisation and prediction of invasion in larger polyps, however with the vast expansion of advanced imaging technologies, evidence increasingly supports the use of ancillary technology over HD-WLI in this context[170].

Chromoendoscopy

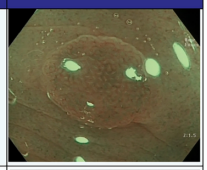
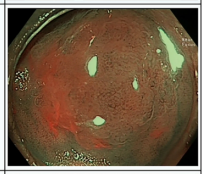
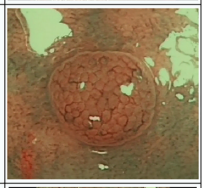
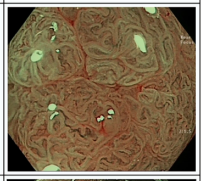
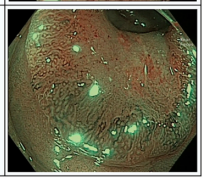
Chromoendoscopy has been demonstrated to be highly effective in differentiating neoplastic from non-neoplastic small colonic polyps, with overall diagnostic accuracy of greater than 99%[171-173]. However, with increasingly accurate forms of virtual chromoendoscopy for assessment of these diminutive and small polyps, the procedure time required for chromoendoscopy is likely to limit its ongoing use. Instead, the main ongoing role for chromoendoscopy may be in the prediction of invasion depth in larger lesions to guide resection techniques[174]. For example, the European Society of Gastrointestinal Endoscopy (ESGE) guidelines recommend the use of chromoendoscopy for pit pattern analysis in JNET 2B lesions (where NBI lacks accuracy), in order to further qualify the risk of deep invasion according to Kudo's classification as described above[175]. This recommendation has been supported by Hosotani *et al*[157] in their 2021 study which demonstrated a PPV of 76% for invasive cancer in the presence of a "VH" pit pattern and a NPV of 96% for non-V pit patterns. Even in this context however, a recent prospective study including 400 patients found that there was no overall incremental benefit for the use of chromoendoscopy in addition to HD-WLI and NBI for the characterisation of large nonpedunculated polyps[176]. Novel indications for chromoendoscopy include the use of acetic acid chromoendoscopy or submucosal methylene blue injection (Figure 10) to clearly delineate polyp margins prior to resection[177-179].

Virtual chromoendoscopy

While virtual chromoendoscopy has not been conclusively demonstrated to improve polyp detection, an expanding body of evidence supports its use for polyp characterisation to guide endoscopic resection strategies, as well as the "resect and discard" and "do not resect" strategies in diminutive polyps. For classification of highly prevalent small and diminutive polyps where dye-based chromoendoscopy may no longer be efficient on a population level, virtual chromoendoscopy has been demonstrated to have equivalent accuracy with a reduction in median procedural and interpretation time[180].

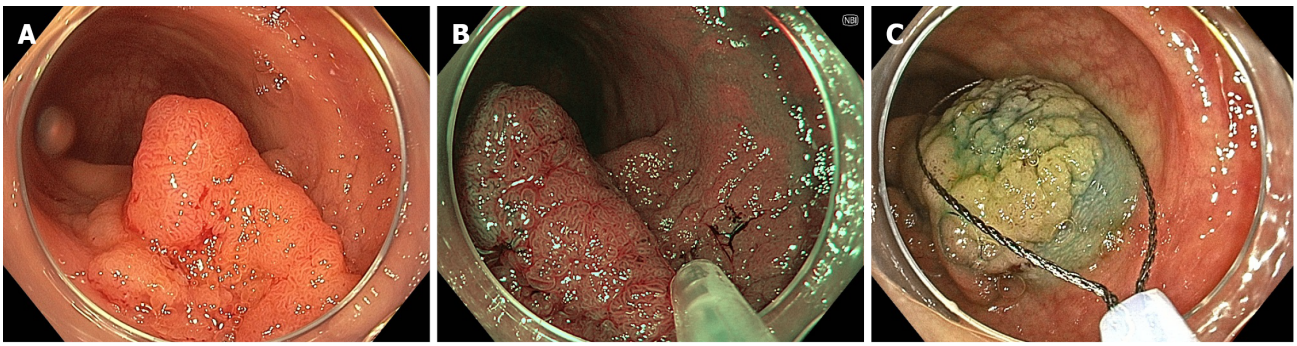
NBI

For diminutive colorectal polyps, multiple studies have shown that characterisation using NBI is able to easily exceed PIVI thresholds, with correct surveillance interval prediction in 92%-99% of cases and an NPV for diminutive rectosigmoid polyps of 91%-92%[62,124,181,182]. While many of these studies have been performed by expert endoscopists with experience in NBI, it has also been demonstrated that non-interventional endoscopists are able to achieve significant improvement following specific training, with Higashi *et al*[133] reporting an overall accuracy of 90% for non-interventionalists following a single training module[133,183].

MS classification (predicted histology)	Description	Example
MS I (HP - hyperplastic polyp)	Pale colour ± round pits with central brown star-like dots or bland appearance ± minute capillaries that may meander across polyp	
MS IIo (SSA/P - sessile serrated adenoma/polyp)	Pale or light dark colour ± open pits ± 3 out of 5: cloud-like surface, inconspicuous margins, mucous cap, irregular shape and varicose microvascular vessels	
MS II (tubular adenoma with low grade dysplasia)	Light dark or dark colour ± white linear or oval pits ± linear or oval regular capillary network surrounding pits	
MS IIIa (high grade dysplasia‡/ villous or tubulovillous adenoma/superficial cancer)	Light dark or dark colour ± white villous/cerebriform pits ± tortuous/branched mildly regular capillary network surrounding pits§	
MS IIIb (invasive cancer)	Dark surroundings with pale central area ± loss of pit and vascular pattern	

‡High-grade dysplastic SSA/Ps are included in this category
§May have slight loss of pit pattern and vascularity when leaning towards superficial cancer

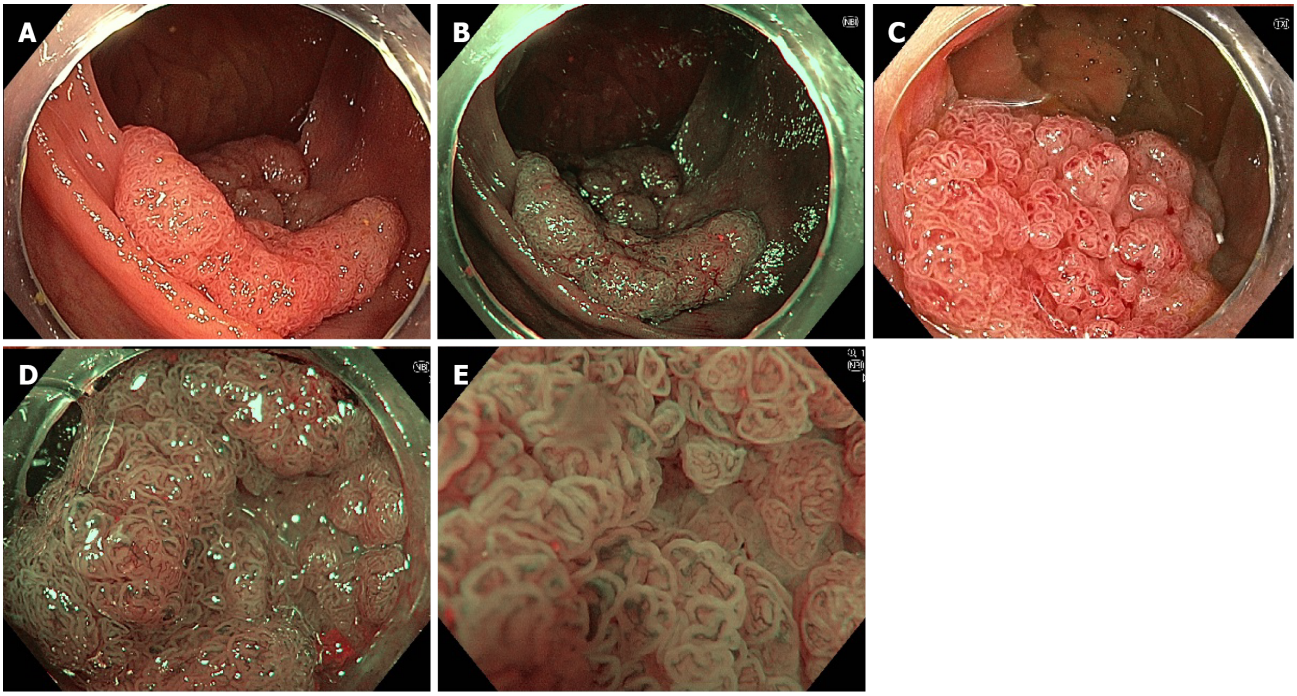
Figure 9 mSano classification demonstrating delineation between sessile serrated adenomas/polyps and hyperplastic polyps. Citation: Zorron Cheng Tao Pu L, Yamamura T, Nakamura M, Koay DSC, Ovenden A, Edwards S, Burt AD, Hirooka Y, Fujishiro M, Singh R. Comparison of different virtual chromoendoscopy classification systems for the characterization of colorectal lesions. *JGH Open* 2020; 4: 818-826[168]. Copyright© The Author(s) 2019. Published by Journal of Gastroenterology and Hepatology Foundation and John Wiley & Sons Australia, Ltd (Supplementary material).



DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6632 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2022.

Figure 10 Large colonic laterally spreading tumour. A: White light imaging with poor differentiation between polyp and normal tissue; B: Flat extension seen more clearly on NBI; C: Submucosal methylene blue injection prior to resection clearly delineating the margins of the flat spreading component.

Additionally, NBI has been used for the characterisation and prediction of invasion depth within larger colonic polyps (Figure 11). As early as 2008, Katagiri *et al*[165] demonstrated that an irregular capillary pattern (designated CP III) on NBI predicted a 65.6% (21/31) rate of invasive adenocarcinoma. Subsequently, Ikematsu *et al*[184] differentiated CP III into IIIA (characterised by high microvessel density with a lack of uniformity, blind ending, branching and curtailed irregularly) and IIIB (characterised by the presence of a nearly avascular or loose microvascular area). They found that IIIA lesions defined adenomas, intramucosal cancers and superficial submucosal invasive cancer, while IIIB lesions defined deep submucosal invasive cancers, with a sensitivity of 84.8%, specificity of 88.7% and overall accuracy of 87.7%. NBI has also been examined for detection of dysplasia and cancer within SSA/Ps. Tate *et al*[185] found that the presence of an adenomatous (NICE II) pattern within an SSA had 95%



DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6632 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2022.

Figure 11 Laterally spreading tubulo-villous adenoma with high-grade dysplasia. A: White light imaging; B: Narrow-band imaging (NBI); C: Texture and colour enhancement imaging; D: NBI with magnification; E: NBI with high-magnification using the underwater technique.

accuracy and a 98.1% NPV for detection of dysplasia within SSA/Ps, while Chino *et al*[186] demonstrated 100% sensitivity and 99% specificity with NBI for detection of cancers within SSA/Ps.

FICE

FICE has also been demonstrated to be highly accurate for the characterisation of colorectal polyps, with sensitivity of 89.4%-94.7%, specificity of 81.0%-89.2% and accuracy of 87.0%-89.4%[172,187-190]. However, Yoshida *et al*[187] did demonstrate its accuracy to be inferior to that of chromoendoscopy (89.4% *vs* 94.7%, $P < 0.05$). While minimal direct comparative data exists between modalities of virtual chromoendoscopy, Akarsu *et al*[191] found the NPV of FICE (80%) to be inferior to that of NBI (96.3%, $P < 0.001$), although there was no difference in overall accuracy.

i-SCAN

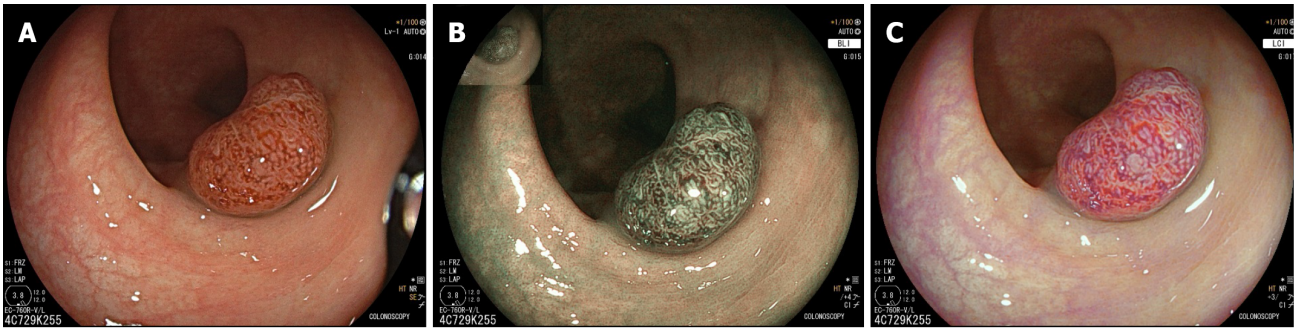
i-SCAN has achieved similar results with respect to diminutive and small colorectal polyp categorisation, with sensitivity and specificity consistently above 90% across multiple studies[149,192-194]. It also appears to be an accessible form of advanced imaging for non-experts, with junior residents achieving similar accuracy to experts in one study after a 30-min training session[149]. There have been two RCTs directly comparing the accuracy of NBI and i-SCAN for polyp characterisation, both of which have found no difference in accuracy between these modalities but did demonstrate superiority for both NBI and i-SCAN when compared to HD-WLI[195,196].

LCI

LCI was developed in conjunction with BLI, aiming to improve polyp detection while BLI aimed to improve characterisation (Figure 12). Accordingly, minimal evidence exists regarding the accuracy of LCI for polyp characterisation. However, in 2017 Wu *et al*[197] employed the NICE classification using LCI, and reported a sensitivity of 96.5%, specificity of 83.8% and NPV of 93.9% for neoplastic lesion prediction.

BLI

The accuracy of BLI for polyp characterisation has been more extensively studied. Both retrospective and prospective studies have demonstrated the superiority of BLI over WLI for the characterisation of < 10 mm colonic polyps, with the largest 2019 prospective randomised study by Rondonotti *et al*[198] finding the overall accuracy for BLI to be 92% *vs* 84% for WLI ($P = 0.01$)[198-200]. BLI has also been compared to NBI using the JNET classification in a retrospective study where there was no significant difference in accuracy (92.1% for BLI *vs* 91.7% for NBI)[201].



DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6632 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2022.

Figure 12 Tubulo-villous adenoma. A: White light imaging; B: Blue light imaging; C: Linked colour imaging.

AFI

While studies on AFI have been promising regarding polyp detection, its role in polyp characterisation appears limited. A 2011 RCT comparing HD-WLI, AFI and NBI did find that the overall accuracy of AFI is equivocal to that of NBI for distinguishing adenoma from hyperplastic polyps (84.9% *vs* 88.4%)[202]. However, the interobserver agreement for NBI with magnification is superior to that of AFI, while a 2017 meta-analysis demonstrated inferior specificity using AFI (44%) compared to NBI (69%, $P = 0.031$) [203,204].

TXI

As the most recently developed form of advanced mucosal imaging, TXI has yet to be studied in the context of polyp characterisation. Given the familiarity of color patterns, it may have some role for differentiation of neoplastic from non-neoplastic diminutive polyps which may increase its uptake during population screening. In addition, this familiarity may benefit proceduralists during resection by more clearly delineating polyp margins without compromising visualisation.

Artificial intelligence

Extensive research has been undertaken in recent times into the development of AI systems for characterisation of colonic polyps, designated computer aided diagnosis (CADx) (Table 4). These systems have proven to be highly accurate in assessment of diminutive polyps, with a 2020 meta-analysis demonstrating a pooled AUC of 0.96 (CI 0.95-0.98) and a pooled NPV of 95.1%[104]. Interestingly, across multiple studies, CADx systems have not proven to be superior to expert endoscopists regarding histology prediction, although they have consistently led to improved histology prediction in non-expert endoscopists, nearing that of experts[205-208]. In these studies, the NPV for diminutive polyps has been 90%-97%, with an accurate surveillance interval in 93-94%, well surpassing PIVI thresholds [205,206,208-220].

There are fewer studies examining the efficacy of AI for delineation of submucosal invasive adenocarcinoma to guide resection strategies. Lu *et al*[221] found the accuracy of their AI model "Endo-CRC" to be 93.78% for polyps with and 91.71% for polyps without advanced CRC. Lui *et al*[222] developed an AI model to classify polyps more than 2 cm in size as being endoscopically resectable (less than 1 mm submucosal invasion, no lymphovascular invasion and no more than well-differentiated adenocarcinoma) or non-resectable. The overall accuracy was 85.5% for prediction of endoscopically resectable lesions, but improved to 94.3% when the AI system was interpreting NBI images. However, while AI models have been more effective than non-expert interventionalists for detection of invasive carcinoma, in each of these studies AI was not superior to expert endoscopists, suggesting the main role of AI for larger polyps may be in improving inter-endoscopist consistency as well as perhaps aiding in selection of suitable referrals to interventionalists by non-expert endoscopists[221,222].

In vivo histologic diagnosis

Emerging technologies have been developed with the goal of achieving *in vivo* histological diagnosis, termed "optical biopsy". Accurate optical biopsies would allow endoscopists to not only surpass PIVI thresholds for small and diminutive polyps but would also allow accurate endoscopic diagnosis for larger polyps and LSTs where existing mucosal imaging technology may have deficiencies.

Endocytoscopy

Endocytoscopy is a novel technology that allows *in vivo* visualisation of tissue at the cellular level in real-time[223]. The device can either be incorporated into the endoscope or comes as a probe-based system, utilising a high-power fixed-focus objective lens to achieve ultra-high magnification in excess of 450 ×, generally following methylene blue staining[224]. Studies have demonstrated superior accuracy compared to advanced mucosal imaging and chromoendoscopy, with accuracy as high as 93.3%-96.8%

Table 4 Studies on the accuracy of AI for polyp histology prediction

Ref.	Study type	Imaging modality	Number of patients/polyps	Sensitivity	Specificity	NPV	Accurate surveillance interval
Kominami *et al* [209], 2016	Retrospective	NBI	41 patients, 118 polyps	93%	95%	93%	92.7%
Chen *et al*[210], 2018	Retrospective	NBI	284 polyps	96%	78%	90%	-
Mori *et al*[211], 2018	Prospective	NBI	325 patients, 466 polyps	93%	90%	95%	-
Renner *et al*[212], 2018	Retrospective	WLI, NBI	100 polyps	92%	63%	90%	-
Byrne *et al*[213], 2019	Retrospective	NBI	125 polyps	98%	83%	97%	-
Min *et al*[214], 2019	Prospective	LCI	91 patients, 217 polyps	83%	70%	71%	-
Sánchez-Montes *et al*[206], 2019	Retrospective	WLI	225 polyps	92%	89%	87%	-
Horiuchi *et al*[215], 2019	Prospective	AFI	95 patients, 258 polyps	80%	95%	93%	-
Ozawa *et al*[216], 2020	Retrospective	WLI, NBI	309 polyps	97% for NBI, 90% for WLI	-	91% for NBI, 85% for WLI	-
Jin *et al*[205], 2020	Retrospective	NBI	300 polyps	83%	90%	94%	-
Zacharia *et al*[208], 2020	Retrospective	WLI, NBI	524 polyps	96%	90%	93%	94%
Rodriguez-Diaz *et al*[217], 2021	Retrospective	NBI	119 patients, 280 polyps	96%	84%	91%	94%
Van der Zander *et al*[218], 2021	Retrospective	WLI, BLI	54 patients, 60 polyps	96%	93%	88%	-
Yoshida *et al*[220], 2021	Retrospective	BLI	25 patients, 100 polyps	91%	85%	92%	-
Sakamoto *et al* [219], 2022	Retrospective	WLI, BLI	604 polyps	96% for WLI, 96% for BLI	84% for WLI, 89% for BLI	-	-

NBI: Narrow-band imaging; NPV: Negative predictive value; BLI: Blue light imaging; WLI: White light imaging; LCI: Linked colour imaging.

for distinction of neoplastic *vs* non-neoplastic diminutive polyps[225]. Endocytoscopy has been shown to be similarly highly accurate for larger polyps in detection of submucosal invasion, with an overall accuracy of 85.8%-97.0%[226-229]. The main limiting factors for this technology are the requirement for specific equipment, as well as the time and training required to facilitate accurate interpretation of the images. However, its uptake may evolve with the development of AI technologies which could allow effective use by inexperienced proceduralists. Misawa *et al*[230] developed and published a new AI system for interpretation of endocytoscopy images (using NBI rather than methylene blue staining) named "EndoBRAIN" in 2016. Their study demonstrated overall sensitivity, specificity, and accuracy for high-confidence predictions of 97.6%, 95.8%, and 96.9% respectively. In 2020, Kudo *et al*[231] compared "EndoBRAIN" to trainee and expert endoscopists using both dye-based and virtual chromoendoscopy and found the AI system to be superior to both groups, with sensitivity of 96.9%, specificity of 100% and overall accuracy of 98%.

Multiphoton microscopy

Multiphoton microscopy is based on the detection of signals at specific emission wavelengths after laser excitation, offering real-time high-resolution visualisation. The use of longer photons allows deeper tissue penetration and visualisation up to a depth of several hundred microns[232]. Recently, Terradillos *et al*[233] developed an AI system for interpretation of multiphoton microscopy images of colorectal polyps, with a specificity of 91% and sensitivity of 82% for malignant colorectal lesions. Further study is clearly required into the application of this technology, however the greater depth of visualisation may allow *in vivo* assessment of invasion depth for submucosal invasive adenocarcinoma.

CONCLUSION

New and existing advanced mucosal imaging technologies facilitate improved adenoma detection and characterisation in both expert and non-expert endoscopists (Table 5). The use of virtual chromoendoscopy for polyp detection has been limited by reduced brightness and loss of familiarity of color patterns, however new technologies such as LCI and TXI enhance visualisation without significantly altering color patterns and may lead to more consistent improvement in polyp detection. Additionally, the availability of AI systems is increasing and may improve consistency between expert and non-expert endoscopists. Advanced mucosal imaging also allows accurate *in vivo* assessment of polyps to guide resection techniques, while clearly exceeding PIVI thresholds for the "resect and discard" and "do not resect" strategies. NBI has been at the forefront of polyp characterisation, improving delineation of neoplastic from non-neoplastic diminutive and small polyps, while improving prediction of invasion depth in larger polyps. AI technologies are yet to surpass expert endoscopists for histology prediction but facilitate accurate prediction by non-experts to rival that of expert endoscopists. Effective use of these advanced mucosal imaging technologies is not out of reach of any endoscopist following brief but dedicated training programs, thereby maximising the efficacy of everyday colonoscopy and improving patient outcomes.

Table 5 Summary and conclusions for each form of advanced mucosal imaging discussed

Modality		Detection	Characterisation	Comment
HD-WLI		Advantages: Marginal benefit in overall adenoma detection; and improved detection of right-sided, flat polyps, and SSAs[1]	Advantage: Marginal benefit for small adenomas; disadvantage: Insufficient evidence for large polyps	Advantage: Widely available
Chromo-endoscopy		Advantage: Increases polyp detection; disadvantage: Increases withdrawal time	Advantages: Highly effective for small polyps (although inefficient); and useful in prediction of invasion depth for large polyps[1]	Disadvantage: Increases procedural time
Virtual chromo-endoscopy	NBI	Disadvantage: No significant difference in ADR	Advantages: Accurate for distinguishing neoplastic from non-neoplastic small and diminutive polyps; and accurate for prediction of invasion depth[1]	Disadvantage: Loss of brightness; neutral: Greater efficacy when used by expert proceduralists
	i-SCAN	Neutral: Variable results, increased detection of flat and right-sided polyps	Advantage: Effective for diminutive and small polyps	
	FICE	Disadvantage: No significant difference in ADR	Disadvantage: Inferior to NBI	Advantage: Familiar colour spectrum
	LCI	Advantages: Improves adenoma detection; and effective for non-expert proceduralists[1]	Disadvantage: Insufficient evidence	Advantage: Familiar colour spectrum
	BLI	Disadvantage: No significant difference in ADR	Advantage: Similar to NBI in terms of colour spectrum and accuracy[1]	Advantage: Similar colour spectrum to NBI
	TXI	Advantage: Increases polyp visibility in image-based studies	Disadvantage: Insufficient evidence	Disadvantage: Insufficient evidence; advantage: Familiar colour spectrum
AFI		Disadvantage: Insufficient evidence; advantage: Improves detection of flat, right-sided polyps and reduces miss rates	Disadvantage: Inferior to NBI	Disadvantage: Not widely available
AI		Advantage: Increases adenoma detection; no significant difference in withdrawal time[1]	Advantages: Highly accurate; superior to non-expert endoscopists for histology prediction; not superior to experts using NBI[1]	Disadvantage: Not yet widely available
FME		Disadvantages: Expensive; insufficient evidence		Disadvantage: Not widely available
Endo-cystoscopy			Neutral: Accurate but requires expertise for interpretation; advantages: Uptake may increase with incorporation of AI	Disadvantages: Requires additional equipment; and not widely available
Multiphoton microscopy			Disadvantage: Insufficient evidence	Disadvantage: Requires additional equipment

[1]The most promising technologies.

HD-WLI: High-definition white light imaging; NBI: Narrow-band imaging; BLI: Blue light imaging; TXI: Texture and colour enhancement imaging; FME:

Fluorescence molecular endomicroscopy; AFI: Autofluorescence imaging; ADR: Adenoma detection rate; AI: Artificial intelligence; LCI: Linked colour imaging; SSA: Sessile serrated adenomas.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Young E, Rajandran A, and Singh R wrote the manuscript; Young E, Rajandran A, and Hoile S performed the literature review and collated data; Philpott H, Sathananthan D, and Singh R reviewed and edited the final manuscript; Hoile S, Philpott H, and Sathananthan D provided images for the manuscript; all authors made meaningful contributions to the manuscript; all authors have read and approve the final manuscript.

Conflict-of-interest statement: No authors have any conflicts of interest to declare.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article that was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution NonCommercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: https://creativecommons.org/Licenses/by-nc/4.0/

Country/Territory of origin: Australia

ORCID number: Edward John Young 0000-0002-1568-5896; Hamish Lachlan Philpott 0000-0002-1973-6355; Dharshan Sathananthan 0000-0002-1357-0235; Rajvinder Singh 0000-0001-9116-6054.

S-Editor: Chen YL
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Chen YL

REFERENCES

1 **Xi Y**, Xu P. Global colorectal cancer burden in 2020 and projections to 2040. *Transl Oncol* 2021; **14**: 101174 [PMID: 34243011 DOI: 10.1016/j.tranon.2021.101174]
2 **Center MM**, Jemal A, Smith RA, Ward E. Worldwide variations in colorectal cancer. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2009; **59**: 366-378 [PMID: 19897840 DOI: 10.3322/caac.20038]
3 **Arnold M**, Sierra MS, Laversanne M, Soerjomataram I, Jemal A, Bray F. Global patterns and trends in colorectal cancer incidence and mortality. *Gut* 2017; **66**: 683-691 [PMID: 26818619 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2015-310912]
4 **Huxley RR**, Ansary-Moghaddam A, Clifton P, Czernichow S, Parr CL, Woodward M. The impact of dietary and lifestyle risk factors on risk of colorectal cancer: a quantitative overview of the epidemiological evidence. *Int J Cancer* 2009; **125**: 171-180 [PMID: 19350627 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.24343]
5 **Siegel RL**, Miller KD, Goding Sauer A, Fedewa SA, Butterly LF, Anderson JC, Cercek A, Smith RA, Jemal A. Colorectal cancer statistics, 2020. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2020; **70**: 145-164 [PMID: 32133645 DOI: 10.3322/caac.21601]
6 **Nguyen LH**, Goel A, Chung DC. Pathways of Colorectal Carcinogenesis. *Gastroenterology* 2020; **158**: 291-302 [PMID: 31622622 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2019.08.059]
7 **Arain MA**, Sawhney M, Sheikh S, Anway R, Thyagarajan B, Bond JH, Shaukat A. CIMP status of interval colon cancers: another piece to the puzzle. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2010; **105**: 1189-1195 [PMID: 20010923 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2009.699]
8 **Singh H**, Nugent Z, Demers AA, Bernstein CN. Rate and predictors of early/missed colorectal cancers after colonoscopy in Manitoba: a population-based study. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2010; **105**: 2588-2596 [PMID: 20877348 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2010.390]
9 **Gorski TF**, Rosen L, Riether R, Stasik J, Khubchandani I. Colorectal cancer after surveillance colonoscopy: false-negative examination or fast growth? *Dis Colon Rectum* 1999; **42**: 877-880 [PMID: 10411433 DOI: 10.1007/BF02237093]
10 **Cooper GS**, Xu F, Barnholtz Sloan JS, Schluchter MD, Koroukian SM. Prevalence and predictors of interval colorectal cancers in medicare beneficiaries. *Cancer* 2012; **118**: 3044-3052 [PMID: 21989586 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.26602]
11 **Samadder NJ**, Curtin K, Tuohy TM, Pappas L, Boucher K, Provenzale D, Rowe KG, Mineau GP, Smith K, Pimentel R, Kirchhoff AC, Burt RW. Characteristics of missed or interval colorectal cancer and patient survival: a population-based study. *Gastroenterology* 2014; **146**: 950-960 [PMID: 24417818 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2014.01.013]
12 **Levine JS**, Ahnen DJ. Clinical practice. Adenomatous polyps of the colon. *N Engl J Med* 2006; **355**: 2551-2557 [PMID: 17167138 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMcp063038]
13 **Zhao S**, Wang S, Pan P, Xia T, Chang X, Yang X, Guo L, Meng Q, Yang F, Qian W, Xu Z, Wang Y, Wang Z, Gu L, Wang R, Jia F, Yao J, Li Z, Bai Y. Magnitude, Risk Factors, and Factors Associated With Adenoma Miss Rate of Tandem Colonoscopy: A Systematic Review and Meta-analysis. *Gastroenterology* 2019; **156**: 1661-1674.e11 [PMID: 30738046 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2019.01.260]
14 **Puri N**, Walia S, Olafsson S, Jackson C. Right-sided Colon Polyps Have Worse Histology and are More Often Sessile Than Left-sided Polyps. This Argues for Colonoscopy Being Used for Screening Rather Than Sigmoidoscopy and Fecal Occult Blood Testing. A Retrospective Single Center VA Hospital Study. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2010; **105**: S557-S558

[DOI: 10.14309/00000434-201010001-01501]

15 **Qumseya BJ**, Coe S, Wallace MB. The effect of polyp location and patient gender on the presence of dysplasia in colonic polyps. *Clin Transl Gastroenterol* 2012; **3**: e20 [PMID: 23238292 DOI: 10.1038/ctg.2012.14]

16 **Gupta S**, Balasubramanian BA, Fu T, Genta RM, Rockey DC, Lash R. Polyps with advanced neoplasia are smaller in the right than in the left colon: implications for colorectal cancer screening. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2012; **10**: 1395-1401.e2 [PMID: 22835574 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2012.07.004]

17 **Toyoshima O**, Nishizawa T, Yoshida S, Sekiba K, Kataoka Y, Hata K, Watanabe H, Tsuji Y, Koike K. Expert endoscopists with high adenoma detection rates frequently detect diminutive adenomas in proximal colon. *Endosc Int Open* 2020; **8**: E775-E782 [PMID: 32490163 DOI: 10.1055/a-1136-9971]

18 **Corley DA**, Jensen CD, Marks AR, Zhao WK, Lee JK, Doubeni CA, Zauber AG, de Boer J, Fireman BH, Schottinger JE, Quinn VP, Ghai NR, Levin TR, Quesenberry CP. Adenoma detection rate and risk of colorectal cancer and death. *N Engl J Med* 2014; **370**: 1298-1306 [PMID: 24693890 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1309086]

19 **Kaminski MF**, Regula J, Kraszewska E, Polkowski M, Wojciechowska U, Didkowska J, Zwierko M, Rupinski M, Nowacki MP, Butruk E. Quality indicators for colonoscopy and the risk of interval cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2010; **362**: 1795-1803 [PMID: 20463339 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa0907667]

20 **Rex DK**, Schoenfeld PS, Cohen J, Pike IM, Adler DG, Fennerty MB, Lieb JG 2nd, Park WG, Rizk MK, Sawhney MS, Shaheen NJ, Wani S, Weinberg DS. Quality indicators for colonoscopy. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2015; **110**: 72-90 [PMID: 25448873 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2014.385]

21 **Denis B**, Sauleau EA, Gendre I, Exbrayat C, Piette C, Dancourt V, Foll Y, Ait Hadad H, Bailly L, Perrin P. The mean number of adenomas per procedure should become the gold standard to measure the neoplasia yield of colonoscopy: a population-based cohort study. *Dig Liver Dis* 2014; **46**: 176-181 [PMID: 24054769 DOI: 10.1016/j.dld.2013.08.129]

22 **Aniwan S**, Orkoonsawat P, Viriyautsahakul V, Angsuwatcharakon P, Pittayanon R, Wisedopas N, Sumdin S, Ponuthai Y, Wiangngoen S, Kullavanijaya P, Rerknimitr R. The Secondary Quality Indicator to Improve Prediction of Adenoma Miss Rate Apart from Adenoma Detection Rate. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2016; **111**: 723-729 [PMID: 26809333 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2015.440]

23 **Aziz M**, Fatima R, Lee-Smith W, Khuder S, Nawras A. Comparing endoscopic interventions to improve serrated adenoma detection rates during colonoscopy: a systematic review and network meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2020; **32**: 1284-1292 [PMID: 32773510 DOI: 10.1097/MEG.0000000000001844]

24 **Rastogi A**, Bansal A, Rao DS, Gupta N, Wani SB, Shipe T, Gaddam S, Singh V, Sharma P. Higher adenoma detection rates with cap-assisted colonoscopy: a randomised controlled trial. *Gut* 2012; **61**: 402-408 [PMID: 21997547 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2011-300187]

25 **de Wijkerslooth TR**, Stoop EM, Bossuyt PM, Mathus-Vliegen EM, Dees J, Tytgat KM, van Leerdam ME, Fockens P, Kuipers EJ, Dekker E. Adenoma detection with cap-assisted colonoscopy versus regular colonoscopy: a randomised controlled trial. *Gut* 2012; **61**: 1426-1434 [PMID: 22187070 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2011-301327]

26 **Rzouq F**, Gupta N, Wani S, Sharma P, Bansal A, Rastogi A. Cap assisted colonoscopy for the detection of serrated polyps: a post-hoc analysis. *BMC Gastroenterol* 2015; **15**: 11 [PMID: 25652842 DOI: 10.1186/s12876-015-0234-1]

27 **Ng SC**, Tsoi KK, Hirai HW, Lee YT, Wu JC, Sung JJ, Chan FK, Lau JY. The efficacy of cap-assisted colonoscopy in polyp detection and cecal intubation: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2012; **107**: 1165-1173 [PMID: 22664471 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2012.135]

28 **ASGE Technology Committee**. High-definition and high-magnification endoscopes. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2014; **80**: 919-927 [PMID: 25442091 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2014.06.019]

29 **Tziatzios G**, Gkolfakis P, Lazaridis LD, Facciorusso A, Antonelli G, Hassan C, Repici A, Sharma P, Rex DK, Triantafyllou K. High-definition colonoscopy for improving adenoma detection: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled studies. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2020; **91**: 1027-1036.e9 [PMID: 31954133 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2019.12.052]

30 **Subramanian V**, Mannath J, Hawkey CJ, Ragunath K. High definition colonoscopy vs. standard video endoscopy for the detection of colonic polyps: a meta-analysis. *Endoscopy* 2011; **43**: 499-505 [PMID: 21360420 DOI: 10.1055/s-0030-1256207]

31 **Rastogi A**, Early DS, Gupta N, Bansal A, Singh V, Ansstas M, Jonnalagadda SS, Hovis CE, Gaddam S, Wani SB, Edmundowicz SA, Sharma P. Randomized, controlled trial of standard-definition white-light, high-definition white-light, and narrow-band imaging colonoscopy for the detection of colon polyps and prediction of polyp histology. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2011; **74**: 593-602 [PMID: 21802078 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2011.04.050]

32 **Roelandt P**, Demedts I, Willekens H, Bessissow T, Braeye L, Coremans G, Cuyle PJ, Ferrante M, Gevers AM, Hiele M, Osselaer M, Tack J, Tejpar S, Ulenaers M, Van Assche G, Van Cutsem E, Van Gool S, Vannoote J, Vermeire S, Bisschops R. Impact of endoscopy system, high definition, and virtual chromoendoscopy in daily routine colonoscopy: a randomized trial. *Endoscopy* 2019; **51**: 237-243 [PMID: 30646403 DOI: 10.1055/a-0755-7471]

33 **Subramanian V**, Ramappa V, Telakis E, Mannath J, Jawhari AU, Hawkey CJ, Ragunath K. Comparison of high definition with standard white light endoscopy for detection of dysplastic lesions during surveillance colonoscopy in patients with colonic inflammatory bowel disease. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2013; **19**: 350-355 [PMID: 22552948 DOI: 10.1002/ibd.23002]

34 **Krugliak Cleveland N**, Colman RJ, Rodriquez D, Hirsch A, Cohen RD, Hanauer SB, Hart J, Rubin DT. Surveillance of IBD Using High Definition Colonoscopes Does Not Miss Adenocarcinoma in Patients with Low-grade Dysplasia. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2016; **22**: 631-637 [PMID: 26658214 DOI: 10.1097/MIB.0000000000000634]

35 **ASGE Technology Committee**, Wong Kee Song LM, Adler DG, Chand B, Conway JD, Croffie JM, Disario JA, Mishkin DS, Shah RJ, Somogyi L, Tierney WM, Petersen BT. Chromoendoscopy. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2007; **66**: 639-649 [PMID: 17643437 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2007.05.029]

36 **Tribonias G**, Theodoropoulou A, Stylianou K, Giotis I, Mpitouli A, Moschovis D, Komeda Y, Manola ME, Paspatis G, Tzouvala M. Irrigating Acetic Acid Solution During Colonoscopy for the Detection of Sessile Serrated Neoplasia: A Randomized Controlled Trial. *Dig Dis Sci* 2022; **67**: 282-292 [PMID: 33515378 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-021-06858-x]

37 **Brown SR**, Baraza W, Din S, Riley S. Chromoscopy versus conventional endoscopy for the detection of polyps in the colon and rectum. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2016; **4**: CD006439 [PMID: 27056645 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD006439.pub4]

38 **Hurt C**, Ramaraj R, Farr A, Morgan M, Williams N, Philips CJ, Williams GT, Gardner G, Porter C, Sampson J, Hillier S, Heard H, Dolwani S; CONSCOP Clinical Research Consortium. Feasibility and economic assessment of chromocolonoscopy for detection of proximal serrated neoplasia within a population-based colorectal cancer screening programme (CONSCOP): an open-label, randomised controlled non-inferiority trial. *Lancet Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2019; **4**: 364-375 [PMID: 30885505 DOI: 10.1016/S2468-1253(19)30035-4]

39 **Kahi CJ**, Anderson JC, Waxman I, Kessler WR, Imperiale TF, Li X, Rex DK. High-definition chromocolonoscopy vs. high-definition white light colonoscopy for average-risk colorectal cancer screening. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2010; **105**: 1301-1307 [PMID: 20179689 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2010.51]

40 **Kim SY**, Park HJ, Kim HS, Park DI, Cha JM, Park SJ, Choi H, Shin JE, Eun CS, Kim JO, Kim HG, Kim SE, Park CH, Kim TI, Hong SN. Cap-Assisted Chromoendoscopy Using a Mounted Cap Versus Standard Colonoscopy for Adenoma Detection. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2020; **115**: 465-472 [PMID: 31972618 DOI: 10.14309/ajg.0000000000000510]

41 **Wan J**, Wang X, Yang ZP, Wu KC. Systematic review with meta-analysis: Chromoendoscopy versus white light endoscopy in detection of dysplasia in patients with inflammatory bowel disease. *J Dig Dis* 2019; **20**: 206-214 [PMID: 30756472 DOI: 10.1111/1751-2980.12714]

42 **Subramanian V**, Mannath J, Ragunath K, Hawkey CJ. Meta-analysis: the diagnostic yield of chromoendoscopy for detecting dysplasia in patients with colonic inflammatory bowel disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2011; **33**: 304-312 [PMID: 21128987 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2010.04525.x]

43 **Coelho-Prabhu N**, Bruining DH, Faubion WA, Kane SV, Kisiel JB, Papadakis KA, Pardi DS, Raffals LE, Schroeder KW, Tremaine WJ, Fruth K, Harmsen WS, Loftus EV. A 1-Year Cross-sectional Inflammatory Bowel Disease Surveillance Colonoscopy Cohort Comparing High-definition White Light Endoscopy and Chromoendoscopy. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2021; **27**: 594-602 [PMID: 32529198 DOI: 10.1093/ibd/izaa146]

44 **Iacucci M**, Kaplan GG, Panaccione R, Akinola O, Lethebe BC, Lowerison M, Leung Y, Novak KL, Seow CH, Urbanski S, Minoo P, Gui X, Ghosh S. A Randomized Trial Comparing High Definition Colonoscopy Alone With High Definition Dye Spraying and Electronic Virtual Chromoendoscopy for Detection of Colonic Neoplastic Lesions During IBD Surveillance Colonoscopy. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2018; **113**: 225-234 [PMID: 29134964 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2017.417]

45 **López-Vicente J**, Rodríguez-Alcalde D, Hernández L, Riu Pons F, Vega P, Herrero Rivas JM, Santiago García J, Salces Franco I, Bustamante Balén M, López-Cerón M, Pellisé M; Endoscopy for High Risk Cancer Conditions group of the Spanish Gastroenterological Association and Spanish Digestive Endoscopy Society. Panchromoendoscopy Increases Detection of Polyps in Patients With Serrated Polyposis Syndrome. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2019; **17**: 2016-2023.e6 [PMID: 30366156 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2018.10.029]

46 **Har-Noy O**, Yung DE, Koulaouzidis A, Eliakim R, Kopylov U, Avidan B, Katz LH. Chromoendoscopy or white light endoscopy for neoplasia detection in Lynch syndrome, a meta-analysis. *Dig Liver Dis* 2019; **51**: 1515-1521 [PMID: 31526715 DOI: 10.1016/j.dld.2019.07.018]

47 **Haanstra JF**, Dekker E, Cats A, Nagengast FM, Hardwick JC, Vanhoutvin SA, de Vos Tot Nederveen Cappel WH, Vasen HF, Kleibeuker JH, Koornstra JJ. Effect of chromoendoscopy in the proximal colon on colorectal neoplasia detection in Lynch syndrome: a multicenter randomized controlled trial. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2019; **90**: 624-632 [PMID: 31028782 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2019.04.227]

48 **Houwen BBSL**, Mostafavi N, Vleugels JLA, Hüneburg R, Lamberti C, Rivero-Sánchez L, Pellisé M, Stoffel EM, Syngal S, Haanstra JF, Koornstra JJ, Dekker E, Hazewinkel Y. Dye-Based Chromoendoscopy in Patients With Lynch Syndrome: An Individual Patient Data Meta-Analysis of Randomized Trials. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2021; **116**: 825-828 [PMID: 33982955 DOI: 10.14309/ajg.0000000000001138]

49 **Montale A**, Buttitta F, Pierantoni C, Ferrari C, Cameletti M, Colussi D, Miccoli S, Bazzoli F, Turchetti D, Ricciardiello L. Chromoendoscopy Is Not Superior to White Light Endoscopy in Improving Adenoma Detection in Lynch Syndrome Cohort Undergoing Surveillance with High-Resolution Colonoscopy: A Real-World Evidence Study. *Dig Dis* 2022; **40**: 517-525 [PMID: 34515093 DOI: 10.1159/000518840]

50 **Feuerstein JD**, Rakowsky S, Sattler L, Yadav A, Foromera J, Grossberg L, Cheifetz AS. Meta-analysis of dye-based chromoendoscopy compared with standard- and high-definition white-light endoscopy in patients with inflammatory bowel disease at increased risk of colon cancer. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2019; **90**: 186-195.e1 [PMID: 31009609 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2019.04.219]

51 **Repici A**, Wallace MB, East JE, Sharma P, Ramirez FC, Bruining DH, Young M, Gatof D, Irene Mimi Canto M, Marcon N, Cannizzaro R, Kiesslich R, Rutter M, Dekker E, Siersema PD, Spaander M, Kupcinskas L, Jonaitis L, Bisschops R, Radaelli F, Bhandari P, Wilson A, Early D, Gupta N, Vieth M, Lauwers GY, Rossini M, Hassan C. Efficacy of Per-oral Methylene Blue Formulation for Screening Colonoscopy. *Gastroenterology* 2019; **156**: 2198-2207.e1 [PMID: 30742834 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2019.02.001]

52 **ASGE Technology Committee**, Manfredi MA, Abu Dayyeh BK, Bhat YM, Chauhan SS, Gottlieb KT, Hwang JH, Komanduri S, Konda V, Lo SK, Maple JT, Murad FM, Siddiqui UD, Wallace MB, Banerjee S. Electronic chromoendoscopy. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2015; **81**: 249-261 [PMID: 25484330 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2014.06.020]

53 **Jin XF**, Chai TH, Shi JW, Yang XC, Sun QY. Meta-analysis for evaluating the accuracy of endoscopy with narrow band imaging in detecting colorectal adenomas. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2012; **27**: 882-887 [PMID: 22098192 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2011.06987.x]

54 **Rex DK**, Clodfelter R, Rahmani F, Fatima H, James-Stevenson TN, Tang JC, Kim HN, McHenry L, Kahi CJ, Rogers NA, Helper DJ, Sagi SV, Kessler WR, Wo JM, Fischer M, Kwo PY. Narrow-band imaging versus white light for the detection of proximal colon serrated lesions: a randomized, controlled trial. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2016; **83**: 166-171 [PMID: 25952085 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2015.03.1915]

55 **Ikematsu H**, Saito Y, Tanaka S, Uraoka T, Sano Y, Horimatsu T, Matsuda T, Oka S, Higashi R, Ishikawa H, Kaneko K. The impact of narrow band imaging for colon polyp detection: a multicenter randomized controlled trial by tandem

colonoscopy. *J Gastroenterol* 2012; **47**: 1099-1107 [PMID: 22441532 DOI: 10.1007/s00535-012-0575-2]

56 **Paggi S**, Radaelli F, Amato A, Meucci G, Mandelli G, Imperiali G, Spinzi G, Terreni N, Lenoci N, Terruzzi V. The impact of narrow band imaging in screening colonoscopy: a randomized controlled trial. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2009; **7**: 1049-1054 [PMID: 19577008 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2009.06.028]

57 **Nagorni A**, Bjelakovic G, Petrovic B. Narrow band imaging versus conventional white light colonoscopy for the detection of colorectal polyps. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2012; **1**: CD008361 [PMID: 22258983 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD008361.pub2]

58 **Kim H**, Goong HJ, Ko BM, Myung YS, Ho Jung Y, Jeon SR, Kim HG, Lee MS. Randomized, back-to-back trial of a new generation NBI with a high-definition white light (HQ290) for detecting colorectal polyps. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2019; **54**: 1058-1063 [PMID: 31430183 DOI: 10.1080/00365521.2019.1650953]

59 **Pasha SF**, Leighton JA, Das A, Harrison ME, Gurudu SR, Ramirez FC, Fleischer DE, Sharma VK. Comparison of the yield and miss rate of narrow band imaging and white light endoscopy in patients undergoing screening or surveillance colonoscopy: a meta-analysis. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2012; **107**: 363-70; quiz 371 [PMID: 22186978 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2011.436]

60 **Adler A**, Aschenbeck J, Yenerim T, Mayr M, Aminalai A, Drossel R, Schröder A, Scheel M, Wiedenmann B, Rösch T. Narrow-band versus white-light high definition television endoscopic imaging for screening colonoscopy: a prospective randomized trial. *Gastroenterology* 2009; **136**: 410-6.e1; quiz 715 [PMID: 19014944 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2008.10.022]

61 **Kaltenbach T**, Friedland S, Soetikno R. A randomised tandem colonoscopy trial of narrow band imaging versus white light examination to compare neoplasia miss rates. *Gut* 2008; **57**: 1406-1412 [PMID: 18523025 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2007.137984]

62 **Singh R**, Cheong KL, Zorron Cheng Tao Pu L, Mangira D, Koay DSC, Kee C, Ng SC, Rerknimitr R, Aniwan S, Ang TL, Goh KL, Ho SH, Lau JY. Multicenter randomised controlled trial comparing the high definition white light endoscopy and the bright narrow band imaging for colon polyps. *World J Gastrointest Endosc* 2017; **9**: 273-281 [PMID: 28690771 DOI: 10.4253/wjge.v9.i6.273]

63 **Minamide T**, Sashiyama H, Muramatsu Y, Yada T, Matsumura T, Takeda S, Suzuki T, Kakimoto T, Yano T, Yoshii K, Arai M, Uemura N, Yamaguchi T, Ikematsu H. Second-generation narrow-band imaging to detect colorectal adenomas: A prospective study including community hospitals. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2021; **36**: 3084-3091 [PMID: 34251049 DOI: 10.1111/jgh.15621]

64 **Atkinson NSS**, Ket S, Bassett P, Aponte D, De Aguiar S, Gupta N, Horimatsu T, Ikematsu H, Inoue T, Kaltenbach T, Leung WK, Matsuda T, Paggi S, Radaelli F, Rastogi A, Rex DK, Sabbagh LC, Saito Y, Sano Y, Saracco GM, Saunders BP, Senore C, Soetikno R, Vemulapalli KC, Jairath V, East JE. Narrow-Band Imaging for Detection of Neoplasia at Colonoscopy: A Meta-analysis of Data From Individual Patients in Randomized Controlled Trials. *Gastroenterology* 2019; **157**: 462-471 [PMID: 30998991 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2019.04.014]

65 **Bowman EA**, Pfau PR, Mitra A, Reichelderfer M, Gopal DV, Hall BS, Benson ME. High Definition Colonoscopy Combined with i-SCAN Imaging Technology Is Superior in the Detection of Adenomas and Advanced Lesions Compared to High Definition Colonoscopy Alone. *Diagn Ther Endosc* 2015; **2015**: 167406 [PMID: 26167108 DOI: 10.1155/2015/167406]

66 **Hoffman A**, Sar F, Goetz M, Tresch A, Mudter J, Biesterfeld S, Galle PR, Neurath MF, Kiesslich R. High definition colonoscopy combined with i-Scan is superior in the detection of colorectal neoplasias compared with standard video colonoscopy: a prospective randomized controlled trial. *Endoscopy* 2010; **42**: 827-833 [PMID: 20803419 DOI: 10.1055/s-0030-1255713]

67 **Testoni PA**, Notaristefano C, Vailati C, Di Leo M, Viale E. High-definition colonoscopy with i-Scan: better diagnosis for small polyps and flat adenomas. *World J Gastroenterol* 2012; **18**: 5231-5239 [PMID: 23066318 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v18.i37.5231]

68 **Kim WJ**, Park SY, Park I, Lee WJ, Park J, Chon N, Oh TG, Kim KH. Increased Detection of Colorectal Polyps in Screening Colonoscopy Using High Definition i-SCAN Compared with Standard White Light. *Clin Endosc* 2016; **49**: 69-75 [PMID: 26855927 DOI: 10.5946/ce.2016.49.1.69]

69 **Kidambi TD**, Terdiman JP, El-Nachef N, Singh A, Kattah MG, Lee JK. Effect of I-scan Electronic Chromoendoscopy on Detection of Adenomas During Colonoscopy. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2019; **17**: 701-708.e1 [PMID: 29935326 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2018.06.024]

70 **Bisschops R**, Tejpar S, Willekens H, De Hertogh G, Van Cutsem E. Virtual chromoendoscopy (I-SCAN) detects more polyps in patients with Lynch syndrome: a randomized controlled crossover trial. *Endoscopy* 2017; **49**: 342-350 [PMID: 28107763 DOI: 10.1055/s-0042-121005]

71 **Omata F**, Ohde S, Deshpande GA, Kobayashi D, Masuda K, Fukui T. Image-enhanced, chromo, and cap-assisted colonoscopy for improving adenoma/neoplasia detection rate: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2014; **49**: 222-237 [PMID: 24328858 DOI: 10.3109/00365521.2013.863964]

72 **Hong SN**, Choe WH, Lee JH, Kim SI, Kim JH, Lee TY, Lee SY, Cheon YK, Sung IK, Park HS, Shim CS. Prospective, randomized, back-to-back trial evaluating the usefulness of i-SCAN in screening colonoscopy. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2012; **75**: 1011-1021.e2 [PMID: 22381530 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2011.11.040]

73 **Kiriyama S**, Matsuda T, Nakajima T, Sakamoto T, Saito Y, Kuwano H. Detectability of colon polyp using computed virtual chromoendoscopy with flexible spectral imaging color enhancement. *Diagn Ther Endosc* 2012; **2012**: 596303 [PMID: 22474404 DOI: 10.1155/2012/596303]

74 **Aminalai A**, Rösch T, Aschenbeck J, Mayr M, Drossel R, Schröder A, Scheel M, Treytnar D, Gauger U, Stange G, Simon F, Adler A. Live image processing does not increase adenoma detection rate during colonoscopy: a randomized comparison between FICE and conventional imaging (Berlin Colonoscopy Project 5, BECOP-5). *Am J Gastroenterol* 2010; **105**: 2383-2388 [PMID: 20628363 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2010.273]

75 **Yoshida N**, Naito Y, Murakami T, Hirose R, Ogiso K, Inada Y, Dohi O, Kamada K, Uchiyama K, Handa O, Konishi H, Siah KTH, Yagi N, Fujita Y, Kishimoto M, Yanagisawa A, Itoh Y. Linked color imaging improves the visibility of colorectal polyps: a video study. *Endosc Int Open* 2017; **5**: E518-E525 [PMID: 28596985 DOI: 10.1055/s-0043-105495]

76 **Kanzaki H**, Takenaka R, Kawahara Y, Kawai D, Obayashi Y, Baba Y, Sakae H, Gotoda T, Kono Y, Miura K, Iwamuro M, Kawano S, Tanaka T, Okada H. Linked color imaging (LCI), a novel image-enhanced endoscopy technology, emphasizes the color of early gastric cancer. *Endosc Int Open* 2017; **5**: E1005-E1013 [PMID: 29159276 DOI: 10.1055/s-0043-117881]

77 **Shinozaki S**, Osawa H, Hayashi Y, Lefor AK, Yamamoto H. Linked color imaging for the detection of early gastrointestinal neoplasms. *Therap Adv Gastroenterol* 2019; **12**: 1756284819885246 [PMID: 31700545 DOI: 10.1177/1756284819885246]

78 **Yoshida N**, Hisabe T, Ikematsu H, Ishihara H, Terasawa M, Inaba A, Sato D, Cho H, Ego M, Tanaka Y, Yasuda R, Inoue K, Murakami T, Inada Y, Itoh Y, Saito Y. Comparison Between Linked Color Imaging and Blue Laser Imaging for Improving the Visibility of Flat Colorectal Polyps: A Multicenter Pilot Study. *Dig Dis Sci* 2020; **65**: 2054-2062 [PMID: 31728789 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-019-05930-x]

79 **Suzuki T**, Hara T, Kitagawa Y, Takashiro H, Nankinzan R, Sugita O, Yamaguchi T. Linked-color imaging improves endoscopic visibility of colorectal nongranular flat lesions. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2017; **86**: 692-697 [PMID: 28193491 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2017.01.044]

80 **Paggi S**, Mogavero G, Amato A, Rondonotti E, Andrealli A, Imperiali G, Lenoci N, Mandelli G, Terreni N, Conforti FS, Conte D, Spinzi G, Radaelli F. Linked color imaging reduces the miss rate of neoplastic lesions in the right colon: a randomized tandem colonoscopy study. *Endoscopy* 2018; **50**: 396-402 [PMID: 29539651 DOI: 10.1055/a-0580-7405]

81 **Paggi S**, Radaelli F, Senore C, Maselli R, Amato A, Andrisani G, Di Matteo F, Cecinato P, Grillo S, Sereni G, Sassatelli R, Manfredi G, Alicante S, Buscarini E, Canova D, Milan L, Pallini P, Iwatate M, Rondonotti E, Repici A, Hassan C. Linked-color imaging versus white-light colonoscopy in an organized colorectal cancer screening program. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2020; **92**: 723-730 [PMID: 32502550 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2020.05.044]

82 **Oliveira Dos Santos CE**, Malaman D, Pereira-Lima JC, de Quadros Onófrio F, Ribas Filho JM. Impact of linked-color imaging on colorectal adenoma detection. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2019; **90**: 826-834 [PMID: 31302092 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2019.06.045]

83 **Miyaguchi K**, Takabayashi K, Saito D, Tsuzuki Y, Hirooka N, Hosoe N, Ohgo H, Ashitani K, Soma H, Miyanaga R, Kimura K, Tokunaga S, Mitsui T, Miura M, Ozaki R, Nakamoto H, Kanai T, Hisamatsu T, Ogata H, Imaeda H. Linked color imaging versus white light imaging colonoscopy for colorectal adenoma detection: A randomized controlled trial. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2021; **36**: 2778-2784 [PMID: 33973300 DOI: 10.1111/jgh.15539]

84 **Kudo T**, Horiuchi A, Kyodo R, Horiuchi I, Arai N, Kajiyama M, Tanaka N. Linked colour imaging versus white-light colonoscopy for the detection of flat colorectal lesions: A randomized controlled trial. *Colorectal Dis* 2021; **23**: 1414-1420 [PMID: 33645911 DOI: 10.1111/codi.15605]

85 **Shinozaki S**, Kobayashi Y, Hayashi Y, Sakamoto H, Sunada K, Lefor AK, Yamamoto H. Colon polyp detection using linked color imaging compared to white light imaging: Systematic review and meta-analysis. *Dig Endosc* 2020; **32**: 874-881 [PMID: 31869487 DOI: 10.1111/den.13613]

86 **Houwen BBSL**, Hazewinkel Y, Pellisé M, Rivero-Sánchez L, Balaguer F, Bisschops R, Tejpar S, Repici A, Ramsoekh D, Jacobs MAJM, Schreuder RM, Kaminski MF, Rupinska M, Bhandari P, van Oijen MGH, Koens L, Bastiaansen BAJ, Tytgat KM, Fockens P, Vleugels JLA, Dekker E. Linked Colour imaging for the detection of polyps in patients with Lynch syndrome: a multicentre, parallel randomised controlled trial. *Gut* 2022; **71**: 553-560 [PMID: 34086597 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2020-323132]

87 **Hasegawa I**, Yamamura T, Suzuki H, Maeda K, Sawada T, Mizutani Y, Ishikawa E, Ishikawa T, Kakushima N, Furukawa K, Ohno E, Kawashima H, Nakamura M, Fujishiro M. Detection of Colorectal Neoplasms Using Linked Color Imaging: A Prospective, Randomized, Tandem Colonoscopy Trial. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2021; **19**: 1708-1716.e4 [PMID: 33839277 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2021.04.004]

88 **Desai M**, Kennedy K, Aihara H, Van Dam J, Gross S, Haber G, Pohl H, Rex D, Saltzman J, Sethi A, Waxman I, Wang K, Wallace M, Repici A, Sharma P. External validation of blue light imaging (BLI) criteria for the optical characterization of colorectal polyps by endoscopy experts. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2021; **36**: 2728-2734 [PMID: 33928679 DOI: 10.1111/jgh.15529]

89 **Yoshida N**, Hisabe T, Hirose R, Ogiso K, Inada Y, Konishi H, Yagi N, Naito Y, Aomi Y, Ninomiya K, Ikezono G, Terasawa M, Yao K, Matsui T, Yanagisawa A, Itoh Y. Improvement in the visibility of colorectal polyps by using blue laser imaging (with video). *Gastrointest Endosc* 2015; **82**: 542-549 [PMID: 25851158 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2015.01.030]

90 **Ang TL**, Li JW, Wong YJ, Tan YJ, Fock KM, Tan MTK, Kwek ABE, Teo EK, Ang DS, Wang LM. A prospective randomized study of colonoscopy using blue laser imaging and white light imaging in detection and differentiation of colonic polyps. *Endosc Int Open* 2019; **7**: E1207-E1213 [PMID: 31579701 DOI: 10.1055/a-0982-3111]

91 **Shimoda R**, Sakata Y, Fujise T, Yamanouchi K, Tsuruoka N, Hara M, Nakayama A, Yamaguchi D, Akutagawa T, Fujimoto K, Iwakiri R. The adenoma miss rate of blue-laser imaging vs. white-light imaging during colonoscopy: a randomized tandem trial. *Endoscopy* 2017; **49**: 186-190 [PMID: 27842422 DOI: 10.1055/s-0042-118450]

92 **Ikematsu H**, Sakamoto T, Togashi K, Yoshida N, Hisabe T, Kiriyama S, Matsuda K, Hayashi Y, Matsuda T, Osera S, Kaneko K, Utano K, Naito Y, Ishihara H, Kato M, Yoshimura K, Ishikawa H, Yamamoto H, Saito Y. Detectability of colorectal neoplastic lesions using a novel endoscopic system with blue laser imaging: a multicenter randomized controlled trial. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2017; **86**: 386-394 [PMID: 28147226 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2017.01.017]

93 **Sato T**. TXI: Texture and Color Enhancement Imaging for Endoscopic Image Enhancement. *J Healthc Eng* 2021; **2021**: 5518948 [PMID: 33880168 DOI: 10.1155/2021/5518948]

94 **Nishizawa T**, Toyoshima O, Yoshida S, Uekura C, Kurokawa K, Munkhjargal M, Obata M, Yamada T, Fujishiro M, Ebinuma H, Suzuki H. TXI (Texture and Color Enhancement Imaging) for Serrated Colorectal Lesions. *J Clin Med* 2021; **11** [PMID: 35011860 DOI: 10.3390/jcm11010119]

95 **Yoshida N**, Inoue K, Dohi O, Kobayashi R, Tomita Y, Hashimoto H, Sugino S, Hirose R, Murakami T, Inada Y, Morinaga Y, Itoh Y. Analysis of Texture and Color Enhancement Imaging for Improving the Visibility of Non-polypoid Colorectal Lesions. *Dig Dis Sci* 2022 [PMID: 35318554 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-022-07460-5]

96 **Filip M**, Iordache S, Săftoiu A, Ciurea T. Autofluorescence imaging and magnification endoscopy. *World J Gastroenterol*

2011; **17**: 9-14 [PMID: 21218078 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v17.i1.9]
97 **Takehana S**, Kaneko M, Mizuno H. Endoscopic diagnostic system using autofluorescence. *Diagn Ther Endosc* 1999; **5**: 59-63 [PMID: 18493482 DOI: 10.1155/DTE.5.59]
98 **McCallum AL**, Jenkins JT, Gillen D, Molloy RG. Evaluation of autofluorescence colonoscopy for the detection and diagnosis of colonic polyps. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2008; **68**: 283-290 [PMID: 18329642 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2007.10.039]
99 **Takeuchi Y**, Sawaya M, Oka S, Tamai N, Kawamura T, Uraoka T, Ikematsu H, Moriyama T, Arao M, Ishikawa H, Ito Y, Matsuda T. Efficacy of autofluorescence imaging for flat neoplasm detection: a multicenter randomized controlled trial (A-FLAT trial). *Gastrointest Endosc* 2019; **89**: 460-469 [PMID: 30452914 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2018.11.012]
100 **Moriichi K**, Fujiya M, Sato R, Watari J, Nomura Y, Nata T, Ueno N, Maeda S, Kashima S, Itabashi K, Ishikawa C, Inaba Y, Ito T, Okamoto K, Tanabe H, Mizukami Y, Saitoh Y, Kohgo Y. Back-to-back comparison of auto-fluorescence imaging (AFI) versus high resolution white light colonoscopy for adenoma detection. *BMC Gastroenterol* 2012; **12**: 75 [PMID: 22726319 DOI: 10.1186/1471-230X-12-75]
101 **Zhao ZY**, Guan YG, Li BR, Shan YQ, Yan FH, Gao YJ, Wang H, Lou Z, Fu CG, Yu ED. Detection and miss rates of autofluorescence imaging of adenomatous and polypoid lesions during colonoscopy: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Endosc Int Open* 2015; **3**: E226-E235 [PMID: 26171435 DOI: 10.1055/s-0034-1391708]
102 **Repici A**, Badalamenti M, Maselli R, Correale L, Radaelli F, Rondonotti E, Ferrara E, Spadaccini M, Alkandari A, Fugazza A, Anderloni A, Galtieri PA, Pellegatta G, Carrara S, Di Leo M, Craviotto V, Lamonaca L, Lorenzetti R, Andrealli A, Antonelli G, Wallace M, Sharma P, Rosch T, Hassan C. Efficacy of Real-Time Computer-Aided Detection of Colorectal Neoplasia in a Randomized Trial. *Gastroenterology* 2020; **159**: 512-520.e7 [PMID: 32371116 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2020.04.062]
103 **Urban G**, Tripathi P, Alkayali T, Mittal M, Jalali F, Karnes W, Baldi P. Deep Learning Localizes and Identifies Polyps in Real Time With 96% Accuracy in Screening Colonoscopy. *Gastroenterology* 2018; **155**: 1069-1078.e8 [PMID: 29928897 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2018.06.037]
104 **Lui TKL**, Guo CG, Leung WK. Accuracy of artificial intelligence on histology prediction and detection of colorectal polyps: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2020; **92**: 11-22.e6 [PMID: 32119938 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2020.02.033]
105 **Misawa M**, Kudo SE, Mori Y, Hotta K, Ohtsuka K, Matsuda T, Saito S, Kudo T, Baba T, Ishida F, Itoh H, Oda M, Mori K. Development of a computer-aided detection system for colonoscopy and a publicly accessible large colonoscopy video database (with video). *Gastrointest Endosc* 2021; **93**: 960-967.e3 [PMID: 32745531 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2020.07.060]
106 **Zhao SB**, Yang W, Wang SL, Pan P, Wang RD, Chang X, Sun ZQ, Fu XH, Shang H, Wu JR, Chen LZ, Chang J, Song P, Miao YL, He SX, Miao L, Jiang HQ, Wang W, Yang X, Dong YH, Lin H, Chen Y, Gao J, Meng QQ, Jin ZD, Li ZS, Bai Y. Establishment and validation of a computer-assisted colonic polyp localization system based on deep learning. *World J Gastroenterol* 2021; **27**: 5232-5246 [PMID: 34497447 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v27.i31.5232]
107 **Becq A**, Chandnani M, Bharadwaj S, Baran B, Ernest-Suarez K, Gabr M, Glissen-Brown J, Sawhney M, Pleskow DK, Berzin TM. Effectiveness of a Deep-learning Polyp Detection System in Prospectively Collected Colonoscopy Videos With Variable Bowel Preparation Quality. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2020; **54**: 554-557 [PMID: 31789758 DOI: 10.1097/MCG.0000000000001272]
108 **Wang P**, Berzin TM, Glissen Brown JR, Bharadwaj S, Becq A, Xiao X, Liu P, Li L, Song Y, Zhang D, Li Y, Xu G, Tu M, Liu X. Real-time automatic detection system increases colonoscopic polyp and adenoma detection rates: a prospective randomised controlled study. *Gut* 2019; **68**: 1813-1819 [PMID: 30814121 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2018-317500]
109 **Wang P**, Liu X, Berzin TM, Glissen Brown JR, Liu P, Zhou C, Lei L, Li L, Guo Z, Lei S, Xiong F, Wang H, Song Y, Pan Y, Zhou G. Effect of a deep-learning computer-aided detection system on adenoma detection during colonoscopy (CADe-DB trial): a double-blind randomised study. *Lancet Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2020; **5**: 343-351 [PMID: 31981517 DOI: 10.1016/S2468-1253(19)30411-X]
110 **Glissen Brown JR**, Mansour NM, Wang P, Chuchuca MA, Minchenberg SB, Chandnani M, Liu L, Gross SA, Sengupta N, Berzin TM. Deep Learning Computer-aided Polyp Detection Reduces Adenoma Miss Rate: A United States Multi-center Randomized Tandem Colonoscopy Study (CADeT-CS Trial). *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2022; **20**: 1499-1507.e4 [PMID: 34530161 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2021.09.009]
111 **Wang P**, Liu P, Glissen Brown JR, Berzin TM, Zhou G, Lei S, Liu X, Li L, Xiao X. Lower Adenoma Miss Rate of Computer-Aided Detection-Assisted Colonoscopy vs Routine White-Light Colonoscopy in a Prospective Tandem Study. *Gastroenterology* 2020; **159**: 1252-1261.e5 [PMID: 32562721 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2020.06.023]
112 **Aziz M**, Fatima R, Dong C, Lee-Smith W, Nawras A. The impact of deep convolutional neural network-based artificial intelligence on colonoscopy outcomes: A systematic review with meta-analysis. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2020; **35**: 1676-1683 [PMID: 32267558 DOI: 10.1111/jgh.15070]
113 **Hassan C**, Spadaccini M, Iannone A, Maselli R, Jovani M, Chandrasekar VT, Antonelli G, Yu H, Areia M, Dinis-Ribeiro M, Bhandari P, Sharma P, Rex DK, Rösch T, Wallace M, Repici A. Performance of artificial intelligence in colonoscopy for adenoma and polyp detection: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2021; **93**: 77-85.e6 [PMID: 32598963 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2020.06.059]
114 **Spadaccini M**, Iannone A, Maselli R, Badalamenti M, Desai M, Chandrasekar VT, Patel HK, Fugazza A, Pellegatta G, Galtieri PA, Lollo G, Carrara S, Anderloni A, Rex DK, Savevski V, Wallace MB, Bhandari P, Roesch T, Gralnek IM, Sharma P, Hassan C, Repici A. Computer-aided detection versus advanced imaging for detection of colorectal neoplasia: a systematic review and network meta-analysis. *Lancet Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2021; **6**: 793-802 [PMID: 34363763 DOI: 10.1016/S2468-1253(21)00215-6]
115 **Barua I**, Vinsard DG, Jodal HC, Løberg M, Kalager M, Holme Ø, Misawa M, Bretthauer M, Mori Y. Artificial intelligence for polyp detection during colonoscopy: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Endoscopy* 2021; **53**: 277-284 [PMID: 32557490 DOI: 10.1055/a-1201-7165]
116 **Gong D**, Wu L, Zhang J, Mu G, Shen L, Liu J, Wang Z, Zhou W, An P, Huang X, Jiang X, Li Y, Wan X, Hu S, Chen Y, Hu X, Xu Y, Zhu X, Li S, Yao L, He X, Chen D, Huang L, Wei X, Wang X, Yu H. Detection of colorectal adenomas with a real-time computer-aided system (ENDOANGEL): a randomised controlled study. *Lancet Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2020;

5: 352-361 [PMID: 31981518 DOI: 10.1016/S2468-1253(19)30413-3]
117 **Su JR**, Li Z, Shao XJ, Ji CR, Ji R, Zhou RC, Li GC, Liu GQ, He YS, Zuo XL, Li YQ. Impact of a real-time automatic quality control system on colorectal polyp and adenoma detection: a prospective randomized controlled study (with videos). *Gastrointest Endosc* 2020; **91**: 415-424.e4 [PMID: 31454493 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2019.08.026]
118 **Nagengast WB**, Hartmans E, Garcia-Allende PB, Peters FTM, Linssen MD, Koch M, Koller M, Tjalma JJJ, Karrenbeld A, Jorritsma-Smit A, Kleibeuker JH, van Dam GM, Ntziachristos V. Near-infrared fluorescence molecular endoscopy detects dysplastic oesophageal lesions using topical and systemic tracer of vascular endothelial growth factor A. *Gut* 2019; **68**: 7-10 [PMID: 29247063 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2017-314953]
119 **Hartmans E**, Tjalma JJJ, Linssen MD, Allende PBG, Koller M, Jorritsma-Smit A, Nery MESO, Elias SG, Karrenbeld A, de Vries EGE, Kleibeuker JH, van Dam GM, Robinson DJ, Ntziachristos V, Nagengast WB. Potential Red-Flag Identification of Colorectal Adenomas with Wide-Field Fluorescence Molecular Endoscopy. *Theranostics* 2018; **8**: 1458-1467 [PMID: 29556334 DOI: 10.7150/thno.22033]
120 **Joshi BP**, Dai Z, Gao Z, Lee JH, Ghimire N, Chen J, Prabhu A, Wamsteker EJ, Kwon RS, Elta GH, Stoffel EM, Pant A, Kaltenbach T, Soetikno RM, Appelman HD, Kuick R, Turgeon DK, Wang TD. Detection of Sessile Serrated Adenomas in the Proximal Colon Using Wide-Field Fluorescence Endoscopy. *Gastroenterology* 2017; **152**: 1002-1013.e9 [PMID: 28012848 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2016.12.009]
121 **Gómez V**, Racho RG, Heckman MG, Diehl NN, Wallace MB. High-definition white-light (HDWL) colonoscopy and higher adenoma detection rate and the potential for paradoxical over surveillance. *Dig Dis Sci* 2014; **59**: 2749-2756 [PMID: 24947185 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-014-3253-9]
122 **Lieberman D**, Moravec M, Holub J, Michaels L, Eisen G. Polyp size and advanced histology in patients undergoing colonoscopy screening: implications for CT colonography. *Gastroenterology* 2008; **135**: 1100-1105 [PMID: 18691580 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2008.06.083]
123 **Butterly LF**, Chase MP, Pohl H, Fiarman GS. Prevalence of clinically important histology in small adenomas. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2006; **4**: 343-348 [PMID: 16527698 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2005.12.021]
124 **McGill SK**, Evangelou E, Ioannidis JP, Soetikno RM, Kaltenbach T. Narrow band imaging to differentiate neoplastic and non-neoplastic colorectal polyps in real time: a meta-analysis of diagnostic operating characteristics. *Gut* 2013; **62**: 1704-1713 [PMID: 23300139 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2012-303965]
125 **Rex DK**, Kahi C, O'Brien M, Levin TR, Pohl H, Rastogi A, Burgart L, Imperiale T, Ladabaum U, Cohen J, Lieberman DA. The American Society for Gastrointestinal Endoscopy PIVI (Preservation and Incorporation of Valuable Endoscopic Innovations) on real-time endoscopic assessment of the histology of diminutive colorectal polyps. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2011; **73**: 419-422 [PMID: 21353837 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2011.01.023]
126 **Sano W**, Sano Y, Iwatate M, Hasuike N, Hattori S, Kosaka H, Ikumoto T, Kotaka M, Fujimori T. Prospective evaluation of the proportion of sessile serrated adenoma/polyps in endoscopically diagnosed colorectal polyps with hyperplastic features. *Endosc Int Open* 2015; **3**: E354-E358 [PMID: 26357681 DOI: 10.1055/s-0034-1391948]
127 **Solon C**, Klausnitzer R, Blissett D, Ihara Z. Economic value of narrow band imaging versus white light endoscopy for the characterization of diminutive polyps in the colon: systematic literature review and cost-consequence model. *J Med Econ* 2016; **19**: 1040-1048 [PMID: 27207009 DOI: 10.1080/13696998.2016.1192550]
128 **Kuroha M**, Shiga H, Kanazawa Y, Nagai H, Handa T, Ichikawa R, Onodera M, Naito T, Moroi R, Kimura T, Endo K, Kakuta Y, Kinouchi Y, Shimosegawa T, Masamune A. Factors Associated with Fibrosis during Colorectal Endoscopic Submucosal Dissection: Does Pretreatment Biopsy Potentially Elicit Submucosal Fibrosis and Affect Endoscopic Submucosal Dissection Outcomes? *Digestion* 2021; **102**: 590-598 [PMID: 32866955 DOI: 10.1159/000510145]
129 **Chen CH**, Wu KL, Hu ML, Chiu YC, Tai WC, Chiou SS, Chuah SK. Is a biopsy necessary for colon polyps suitable for polypectomy when performing a colonoscopy? *Chang Gung Med J* 2011; **34**: 506-511 [PMID: 22035895]
130 **Aziz Aadam A**, Wani S, Kahi C, Kaltenbach T, Oh Y, Edmundowicz S, Peng J, Rademaker A, Patel S, Kushnir V, Venu M, Soetikno R, Keswani RN. Physician assessment and management of complex colon polyps: a multicenter video-based survey study. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2014; **109**: 1312-1324 [PMID: 25001256 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2014.95]
131 **Bae JH**, Lee C, Kang HY, Kwak MS, Doo EY, Seo JY, Song JH, Yang SY, Yang JI, Lim SH, Yim JY, Lim JH, Chung GE, Chung SJ, Jin EH, Park B, Kim JS. Improved Real-Time Optical Diagnosis of Colorectal Polyps Following a Comprehensive Training Program. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2019; **17**: 2479-2488.e4 [PMID: 30772588 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2019.02.019]
132 **Patel SG**, Schoenfeld P, Kim HM, Ward EK, Bansal A, Kim Y, Hosford L, Myers A, Foster S, Craft J, Shopinski S, Wilson RH, Ahnen DJ, Rastogi A, Wani S. Real-Time Characterization of Diminutive Colorectal Polyp Histology Using Narrow-Band Imaging: Implications for the Resect and Discard Strategy. *Gastroenterology* 2016; **150**: 406-418 [PMID: 26522260 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2015.10.042]
133 **Basford P**, Brown J, Cooper S, Bhandari P. Endoscopic characterization of small colonic polyps: baseline performance of experienced endoscopists is no different to that of medical students. *Endosc Int Open* 2019; **7**: E403-E411 [PMID: 30931370 DOI: 10.1055/a-0751-2613]
134 **Koehn C**, Rex DK, Allen J, Bhatti U, Bhavsar-Burke I, Thoguluva Chandrasekar V, Challa A, Duvvuri A, Dakhoul L, Ha J, Hamade N, Hicks SB, Jansson-Knodell C, Krajicek E, Das Kundumadam S, Nutalapati V, Phatharacharukul PP, Razmdjou S, Saito A, Sarkis F, Sutton R, Wehbeh A, Sharma P, Desai M. Optical diagnosis of colorectal polyps using novel blue light imaging classification among trainee endoscopists. *Dig Endosc* 2022; **34**: 191-197 [PMID: 34053136 DOI: 10.1111/den.14050]
135 **Higashi R**, Uraoka T, Kato J, Kuwaki K, Ishikawa S, Saito Y, Matsuda T, Ikematsu H, Sano Y, Suzuki S, Murakami Y, Yamamoto K. Diagnostic accuracy of narrow-band imaging and pit pattern analysis significantly improved for less-experienced endoscopists after an expanded training program. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2010; **72**: 127-135 [PMID: 20493482 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2010.01.054]
136 **Basford P**, Longcroft-Wheaton G, Higashi R, Uraoka T, Bhandari P. Colonic lesion characterisation skills among UK endoscopists and the impact of a brief training intervention. *Frontline Gastroenterol* 2017; **8**: 2-7 [PMID: 28839877 DOI: 10.1136/flgastro-2016-100689]

137 . The Paris endoscopic classification of superficial neoplastic lesions: esophagus, stomach, and colon: November 30 to December 1, 2002. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2003; **58**: S3-43 [PMID: 14652541 DOI: 10.1016/s0016-5107(03)02159-x]

138 **Burgess NG**, Hourigan LF, Zanati SA, Brown GJ, Singh R, Williams SJ, Raftopoulos SC, Ormonde D, Moss A, Byth K, Mahajan H, McLeod D, Bourke MJ. Risk Stratification for Covert Invasive Cancer Among Patients Referred for Colonic Endoscopic Mucosal Resection: A Large Multicenter Cohort. *Gastroenterology* 2017; **153**: 732-742.e1 [PMID: 28583826 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2017.05.047]

139 **van Doorn SC**, Hazewinkel Y, East JE, van Leerdam ME, Rastogi A, Pellisé M, Sanduleanu-Dascalescu S, Bastiaansen BA, Fockens P, Dekker E. Polyp morphology: an interobserver evaluation for the Paris classification among international experts. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2015; **110**: 180-187 [PMID: 25331346 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2014.326]

140 **Cocomazzi F**, Gentile M, Perri F, Merla A, Bossa F, Piazzolla M, Ippolito A, Terracciano F, Giuliani AP, Cubisino R, Marra A, Carparelli S, Mileti A, Paolillo R, Fontana A, Copetti M, Di Leo A, Andriulli A. Interobserver agreement of the Paris and simplified classifications of superficial colonic lesions: a Western study. *Endosc Int Open* 2021; **9**: E388-E394 [PMID: 33655038 DOI: 10.1055/a-1352-3437]

141 **Mathews AA**, Draganov PV, Yang D. Endoscopic management of colorectal polyps: From benign to malignant polyps. *World J Gastrointest Endosc* 2021; **13**: 356-370 [PMID: 34630886 DOI: 10.4253/wjge.v13.i9.356]

142 **Kudo S**, Tamura S, Nakajima T, Yamano H, Kusaka H, Watanabe H. Diagnosis of colorectal tumorous lesions by magnifying endoscopy. *Gastrointest Endosc* 1996; **44**: 8-14 [PMID: 8836710 DOI: 10.1016/s0016-5107(96)70222-5]

143 **Li M**, Ali SM, Umm-a-OmarahGilani S, Liu J, Li YQ, Zuo XL. Kudo's pit pattern classification for colorectal neoplasms: a meta-analysis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 12649-12656 [PMID: 25253970 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i35.12649]

144 **Tanaka S**, Kashida H, Saito Y, Yahagi N, Yamano H, Saito S, Hisabe T, Yao T, Watanabe M, Yoshida M, Kudo SE, Tsuruta O, Sugihara KI, Watanabe T, Saitoh Y, Igarashi M, Toyonaga T, Ajioka Y, Ichinose M, Matsui T, Sugita A, Sugano K, Fujimoto K, Tajiri H. JGES guidelines for colorectal endoscopic submucosal dissection/endoscopic mucosal resection. *Dig Endosc* 2015; **27**: 417-434 [PMID: 25652022 DOI: 10.1111/den.12456]

145 **Hewett DG**, Kaltenbach T, Sano Y, Tanaka S, Saunders BP, Ponchon T, Soetikno R, Rex DK. Validation of a simple classification system for endoscopic diagnosis of small colorectal polyps using narrow-band imaging. *Gastroenterology* 2012; **143**: 599-607.e1 [PMID: 22609383 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2012.05.006]

146 **Hamada Y**, Tanaka K, Katsurahara M, Horiki N, Yamada R, Yamada T, Takei Y. Utility of the narrow-band imaging international colorectal endoscopic classification for optical diagnosis of colorectal polyp histology in clinical practice: a retrospective study. *BMC Gastroenterol* 2021; **21**: 336 [PMID: 34454417 DOI: 10.1186/s12876-021-01898-z]

147 **Hattori S**, Iwatate M, Sano W, Hasuike N, Kosaka H, Ikumoto T, Kotaka M, Ichiyanagi A, Ebisutani C, Hisano Y, Fujimori T, Sano Y. Narrow-band imaging observation of colorectal lesions using NICE classification to avoid discarding significant lesions. *World J Gastrointest Endosc* 2014; **6**: 600-605 [PMID: 25512769 DOI: 10.4253/wjge.v6.i12.600]

148 **Puig I**, López-Cerón M, Arnau A, Rosiñol Ò, Cuatrecasas M, Herreros-de-Tejada A, Ferrández Á, Serra-Burriel M, Nogales Ó, Vida F, de Castro L, López-Vicente J, Vega P, Álvarez-González MA, González-Santiago J, Hernández-Conde M, Díez-Redondo P, Rivero-Sánchez L, Gimeno-García AZ, Burgos A, García-Alonso FJ, Bustamante-Balén M, Martínez-Bauer E, Peñas B, Pellise M; EndoCAR group, Spanish Gastroenterological Association and the Spanish Digestive Endoscopy Society. Accuracy of the Narrow-Band Imaging International Colorectal Endoscopic Classification System in Identification of Deep Invasion in Colorectal Polyps. *Gastroenterology* 2019; **156**: 75-87 [PMID: 30296432 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2018.10.004]

149 **Klenske E**, Zopf S, Neufert C, Nägel A, Siebler J, Gschossmann J, Mühldorfer S, Pfeifer L, Fischer S, Vitali F, Iacucci M, Ghosh S, Rath MG, Klare P, Tontini GE, Neurath MF, Rath T. I-scan optical enhancement for the in vivo prediction of diminutive colorectal polyp histology: Results from a prospective three-phased multicentre trial. *PLoS One* 2018; **13**: e0197520 [PMID: 29768508 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0197520]

150 **Puig I**, Kaltenbach T. Optical Diagnosis for Colorectal Polyps: A Useful Technique Now or in the Future? *Gut Liver* 2018; **12**: 385-392 [PMID: 29278867 DOI: 10.5009/gnl17137]

151 **Sano Y**, Tanaka S, Kudo SE, Saito S, Matsuda T, Wada Y, Fujii T, Ikematsu H, Uraoka T, Kobayashi N, Nakamura H, Hotta K, Horimatsu T, Sakamoto N, Fu KI, Tsuruta O, Kawano H, Kashida H, Takeuchi Y, Machida H, Kusaka T, Yoshida N, Hirata I, Terai T, Yamano HO, Kaneko K, Nakajima T, Sakamoto T, Yamaguchi Y, Tamai N, Nakano N, Hayashi N, Oka S, Iwatate M, Ishikawa H, Murakami Y, Yoshida S, Saito Y. Narrow-band imaging (NBI) magnifying endoscopic classification of colorectal tumors proposed by the Japan NBI Expert Team. *Dig Endosc* 2016; **28**: 526-533 [PMID: 26927367 DOI: 10.1111/den.12644]

152 **Zhang Y**, Chen HY, Zhou XL, Pan WS, Zhou XX, Pan HH. Diagnostic efficacy of the Japan Narrow-band-imaging Expert Team and Pit pattern classifications for colorectal lesions: A meta-analysis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2020; **26**: 6279-6294 [PMID: 33177800 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v26.i40.6279]

153 **Sugimoto S**, Yabana T, Nomura T, Hayashi S, Okuda N, Temma T, Hashimoto Y, Ito T, Takami M, Oyamada J, Kamei A. Can Non-expert Physicians Use the Japan Narrow-band Imaging Expert Team Classification to Diagnose Colonic Polyps Effectively? *J Anus Rectum Colon* 2020; **4**: 100-107 [PMID: 32743111 DOI: 10.23922/jarc.2019-036]

154 **Murakami T**, Sakamoto N, Fukushima H, Shibuya T, Yao T, Nagahara A. Usefulness of the Japan narrow-band imaging expert team classification system for the diagnosis of sessile serrated lesion with dysplasia/carcinoma. *Surg Endosc* 2021; **35**: 4528-4538 [PMID: 32909209 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-020-07967-w]

155 **Komeda Y**, Kashida H, Sakurai T, Asakuma Y, Tribonias G, Nagai T, Kono M, Minaga K, Takenaka M, Arizumi T, Hagiwara S, Matsui S, Watanabe T, Nishida N, Chikugo T, Chiba Y, Kudo M. Magnifying Narrow Band Imaging (NBI) for the Diagnosis of Localized Colorectal Lesions Using the Japan NBI Expert Team (JNET) Classification. *Oncology* 2017; **93** Suppl 1: 49-54 [PMID: 29258091 DOI: 10.1159/000481230]

156 **Sumimoto K**, Tanaka S, Shigita K, Hirano D, Tamaru Y, Ninomiya Y, Asayama N, Hayashi N, Oka S, Arihiro K, Yoshihara M, Chayama K. Clinical impact and characteristics of the narrow-band imaging magnifying endoscopic classification of colorectal tumors proposed by the Japan NBI Expert Team. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2017; **85**: 816-821 [PMID: 27460392 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2016.07.035]

157 **Hosotani K**, Imai K, Hotta K, Ito S, Kishida Y, Yabuuchi Y, Yoshida M, Kawata N, Kakushima N, Takizawa K, Ishiwatari H, Matsubayashi H, Ono H. Diagnostic performance for T1 cancer in colorectal lesions ≥10 mm by optical characterization using magnifying narrow-band imaging combined with magnifying chromoendoscopy; implications for optimized stratification by Japan Narrow-band Imaging Expert Team classification. *Dig Endosc* 2021; **33**: 425-432 [PMID: 32530105 DOI: 10.1111/den.13766]

158 **Hirata D**, Kashida H, Iwatate M, Tochio T, Teramoto A, Sano Y, Kudo M. Effective use of the Japan Narrow Band Imaging Expert Team classification based on diagnostic performance and confidence level. *World J Clin Cases* 2019; **7**: 2658-2665 [PMID: 31616682 DOI: 10.12998/wjcc.v7.i18.2658]

159 **Bisschops R**, Hassan C, Bhandari P, Coron E, Neumann H, Pech O, Correale L, Repici A. BASIC (BLI Adenoma Serrated International Classification) classification for colorectal polyp characterization with blue light imaging. *Endoscopy* 2018; **50**: 211-220 [PMID: 29065437 DOI: 10.1055/s-0043-121570]

160 **Rondonotti E**, Hassan C, Andrealli A, Paggi S, Amato A, Scaramella L, Repici A, Radaelli F. Clinical Validation of BASIC Classification for the Resect and Discard Strategy for Diminutive Colorectal Polyps. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2020; **18**: 2357-2365.e4 [PMID: 31923641 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2019.12.028]

161 **IJspeert JE**, Bastiaansen BA, van Leerdam ME, Meijer GA, van Eeden S, Sanduleanu S, Schoon EJ, Bisseling TM, Spaander MC, van Lelyveld N, Bargeman M, Wang J, Dekker E; Dutch Workgroup serrAted polypS & Polyposis (WASP). Development and validation of the WASP classification system for optical diagnosis of adenomas, hyperplastic polyps and sessile serrated adenomas/polyps. *Gut* 2016; **65**: 963-970 [PMID: 25753029 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2014-308411]

162 **Lee J**, Bae JH, Chung SJ, Kang HY, Kang SJ, Kwak MS, Seo JY, Song JH, Yang SY, Yang JI, Lim SH, Yim JY, Lim JH, Chung GE, Jin EH, Choi JM, Han YM, Kim JS. Impact of comprehensive optical diagnosis training using Workgroup serrAted polypS and Polyposis classification on detection of adenoma and sessile serrated lesion. *Dig Endosc* 2021 [DOI: 10.1111/den.14046]

163 **Sano Y**, Horimatsu T, Fu KI, Katagiri A, Muto M, Ishikawa H. Magnifying observation of microvascular architecture of colorectal lesionsusing a Narrow-Band Imaging system. *Digestive Endoscopy* 2006; **18**: S44-S51 [DOI: 10.1111/j.1443-1661.2006.00621.x]

164 **Uraoka T**, Saito Y, Ikematsu H, Yamamoto K, Sano Y. Sano's capillary pattern classification for narrow-band imaging of early colorectal lesions. *Dig Endosc* 2011; **23** Suppl 1: 112-115 [PMID: 21535215 DOI: 10.1111/j.1443-1661.2011.01118.x]

165 **Katagiri A**, Fu KI, Sano Y, Ikematsu H, Horimatsu T, Kaneko K, Muto M, Yoshida S. Narrow band imaging with magnifying colonoscopy as diagnostic tool for predicting histology of early colorectal neoplasia. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2008; **27**: 1269-1274 [PMID: 18284647 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2008.03650.x]

166 **Singh R**, Jayanna M, Navadgi S, Ruszkiewicz A, Saito Y, Uedo N. Narrow-band imaging with dual focus magnification in differentiating colorectal neoplasia. *Dig Endosc* 2013; **25** Suppl 2: 16-20 [PMID: 23617643 DOI: 10.1111/den.12075]

167 **Singh R**, Nordeen N, Mei SL, Kaffes A, Tam W, Saito Y. West meets East: preliminary results of narrow band imaging with optical magnification in the diagnosis of colorectal lesions: a multicenter Australian study using the modified Sano's classification. *Dig Endosc* 2011; **23** Suppl 1: 126-130 [PMID: 21535218 DOI: 10.1111/j.1443-1661.2011.01107.x]

168 **Zorron Cheng Tao Pu L**, Yamamura T, Nakamura M, Koay DSC, Ovenden A, Edwards S, Burt AD, Hirooka Y, Fujishiro M, Singh R. Comparison of different virtual chromoendoscopy classification systems for the characterization of colorectal lesions. *JGH Open* 2020; **4**: 818-826 [PMID: 33102750 DOI: 10.1002/jgh3.12382]

169 **Pu LZCT**, Cheong KL, Koay DSC, Yeap SP, Ovenden A, Raju M, Ruszkiewicz A, Chiu PW, Lau JY, Singh R. Randomised controlled trial comparing modified Sano's and narrow band imaging international colorectal endoscopic classifications for colorectal lesions. *World J Gastrointest Endosc* 2018; **10**: 210-218 [PMID: 30283604 DOI: 10.4253/wjge.v10.i9.210]

170 **Lopez-Ceron M**, Sanabria E, Pellise M. Colonic polyps: is it useful to characterize them with advanced endoscopy? *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 8449-8457 [PMID: 25024601 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i26.8449]

171 **Kato S**, Fu KI, Sano Y, Fujii T, Saito Y, Matsuda T, Koba I, Yoshida S, Fujimori T. Magnifying colonoscopy as a non-biopsy technique for differential diagnosis of non-neoplastic and neoplastic lesions. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; **12**: 1416-1420 [PMID: 16552812 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v12.i9.1416]

172 **Longcroft-Wheaton GR**, Higgins B, Bhandari P. Flexible spectral imaging color enhancement and indigo carmine in neoplasia diagnosis during colonoscopy: a large prospective UK series. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2011; **23**: 903-911 [PMID: 21795980 DOI: 10.1097/MEG.0b013e328349e276]

173 **Fu KI**, Sano Y, Kato S, Fujii T, Nagashima F, Yoshino T, Okuno T, Yoshida S, Fujimori T. Chromoendoscopy using indigo carmine dye spraying with magnifying observation is the most reliable method for differential diagnosis between non-neoplastic and neoplastic colorectal lesions: a prospective study. *Endoscopy* 2004; **36**: 1089-1093 [PMID: 15578300 DOI: 10.1055/s-2004-826039]

174 **McCarty TR**, Aihara H. Predicting depth of invasion for JNET Type 2B colorectal lesions: Is there a role for magnifying chromoendoscopy? *Dig Endosc* 2021; **33**: 344-346 [PMID: 32757491 DOI: 10.1111/den.13805]

175 **Bisschops R**, East JE, Hassan C, Hazewinkel Y, Kamiński MF, Neumann H, Pellisé M, Antonelli G, Bustamante Balen M, Coron E, Cortas G, Iacucci M, Yuichi M, Longcroft-Wheaton G, Mouzyka S, Pilonis N, Puig I, van Hooft JE, Dekker E. Advanced imaging for detection and differentiation of colorectal neoplasia: European Society of Gastrointestinal Endoscopy (ESGE) Guideline - Update 2019. *Endoscopy* 2019; **51**: 1155-1179 [PMID: 31711241 DOI: 10.1055/a-1031-7657]

176 **Sidhu M**, Shahidi N, Vosko S, van Hattem WA, Tate DJ, Bourke MJ. Incremental benefit of dye-based chromoendoscopy to predict the risk of submucosal invasive cancer in large nonpedunculated colorectal polyps. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2022; **95**: 527-534.e2 [PMID: 34875258 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2021.11.032]

177 **Popoutchi P**, Mota FL, Averbach M, de Menezes MS, Coudry RA. Acetic acid spray contribution in the endoscopic diagnosis of serrated polyposis syndrome. *VideoGIE* 2018; **3**: 65-67 [PMID: 29905183 DOI: 10.1016/j.vgie.2017.11.011]

178 **Wiessner JR**, Brown H, Haller B, Abdelhafez M, Poszler A, Schmid RM, von Delius S, Klare P. Near focus NBI

endoscopy plus acetic acid for optical polyp characterization in the colorectum - A proof of principle study. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2019; **54**: 377-383 [PMID: 30905207 DOI: 10.1080/00365521.2019.1588364]

179 **Dolz-Abadía C**, Vilella-Martorell A. [Submucosal chromoendoscopy. A technique that highlights epithelia and differentiates histological components, and renders colon polypectomy easier and safer]. *Rev Esp Enferm Dig* 2015; **107**: 430-435 [PMID: 26140636 DOI: 10.17235/reed.2015.3550/2014]

180 **Sakamoto T**, Matsuda T, Aoki T, Nakajima T, Saito Y. Time saving with narrow-band imaging for distinguishing between neoplastic and non-neoplastic small colorectal lesions. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2012; **27**: 351-355 [PMID: 21777283 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2011.06854.x]

181 **Repici A**, Hassan C, Radaelli F, Occhipinti P, De Angelis C, Romeo F, Paggi S, Saettone S, Cisarò F, Spaander M, Sharma P, Kuipers EJ. Accuracy of narrow-band imaging in predicting colonoscopy surveillance intervals and histology of distal diminutive polyps: results from a multicenter, prospective trial. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2013; **78**: 106-114 [PMID: 23582472 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2013.01.035]

182 **Paggi S**, Rondonotti E, Amato A, Fuccio L, Andrealli A, Spinzi G, Radaelli F. Narrow-band imaging in the prediction of surveillance intervals after polypectomy in community practice. *Endoscopy* 2015; **47**: 808-814 [PMID: 26070008 DOI: 10.1055/s-0034-1392042]

183 **Rastogi A**, Rao DS, Gupta N, Grisolano SW, Buckles DC, Sidorenko E, Bonino J, Matsuda T, Dekker E, Kaltenbach T, Singh R, Wani S, Sharma P, Olyaee MS, Bansal A, East JE. Impact of a computer-based teaching module on characterization of diminutive colon polyps by using narrow-band imaging by non-experts in academic and community practice: a video-based study. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2014; **79**: 390-398 [PMID: 24021492 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2013.07.032]

184 **Ikematsu H**, Matsuda T, Emura F, Saito Y, Uraoka T, Fu KI, Kaneko K, Ochiai A, Fujimori T, Sano Y. Efficacy of capillary pattern type IIIA/IIIB by magnifying narrow band imaging for estimating depth of invasion of early colorectal neoplasms. *BMC Gastroenterol* 2010; **10**: 33 [PMID: 20346170 DOI: 10.1186/1471-230X-10-33]

185 **Tate DJ**, Jayanna M, Awadie H, Desomer L, Lee R, Heitman SJ, Sidhu M, Goodrick K, Burgess NG, Mahajan H, McLeod D, Bourke MJ. A standardized imaging protocol for the endoscopic prediction of dysplasia within sessile serrated polyps (with video). *Gastrointest Endosc* 2018; **87**: 222-231.e2 [PMID: 28713060 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2017.06.031]

186 **Chino A**, Osumi H, Kishihara T, Morishige K, Ishikawa H, Tamegai Y, Igarashi M. Advantages of magnifying narrow-band imaging for diagnosing colorectal cancer coexisting with sessile serrated adenoma/polyp. *Dig Endosc* 2016; **28** Suppl 1: 53-59 [PMID: 26864801 DOI: 10.1111/den.12631]

187 **Yoshida N**, Naito Y, Inada Y, Kugai M, Inoue K, Uchiyama K, Handa O, Takagi T, Konishi H, Yagi N, Morimoto Y, Wakabayashi N, Yanagisawa A, Yoshikawa T. The detection of surface patterns by flexible spectral imaging color enhancement without magnification for diagnosis of colorectal polyps. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 2012; **27**: 605-611 [PMID: 22139031 DOI: 10.1007/s00384-011-1380-8]

188 **Akarsu C**, Sahbaz NA, Dural AC, Kones O, Binboga S, Kabuli HA, Gumusoglu AY, Alis H. FICE in Predicting Colorectal Flat Lesion Histology. *JSLS* 2017; **21** [PMID: 29162970 DOI: 10.4293/JSLS.2017.00050]

189 **Kim YS**, Kim D, Chung SJ, Park MJ, Shin CS, Cho SH, Kim JS, Song IS. Differentiating small polyp histologies using real-time screening colonoscopy with Fuji Intelligent Color Enhancement. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2011; **9**: 744-749.e1 [PMID: 21699809 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2011.05.021]

190 **Longcroft-Wheaton G**, Brown J, Cowlishaw D, Higgins B, Bhandari P. High-definition vs. standard-definition colonoscopy in the characterization of small colonic polyps: results from a randomized trial. *Endoscopy* 2012; **44**: 905-910 [PMID: 22893132 DOI: 10.1055/s-0032-1310004]

191 **Akarsu C**, Sahbaz NA, Dural AC, Unsal MG, Kones O, Kocatas A, Halicioglu I, Alis H. FICE vs Narrow Band Imaging for In Vivo Histologic Diagnosis of Polyps. *JSLS* 2016; **20** [PMID: 28028382 DOI: 10.4293/JSLS.2016.00084]

192 **Basford PJ**, Longcroft-Wheaton G, Higgins B, Bhandari P. High-definition endoscopy with i-Scan for evaluation of small colon polyps: the HiSCOPE study. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2014; **79**: 111-118 [PMID: 23871094 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2013.06.013]

193 **Guo CG**, Ji R, Li YQ. Accuracy of i-Scan for Optical Diagnosis of Colonic Polyps: A Meta-Analysis. *PLoS One* 2015; **10**: e0126237 [PMID: 25978459 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0126237]

194 **Pigò F**, Bertani H, Manno M, Mirante V, Caruso A, Barbera C, Manta R, Bassotti G, Olivetti G, Conigliaro RL. i-Scan high-definition white light endoscopy and colorectal polyps: prediction of histology, interobserver and intraobserver agreement. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 2013; **28**: 399-406 [PMID: 23014976 DOI: 10.1007/s00384-012-1583-7]

195 **Lee JS**, Jeon SW, Kwon YH. Comparative Study of Narrow-Band Imaging and i-scan for Predicting the Histology of Intermediate-to-Large Colorectal Polyps: A Prospective, Randomized Pilot Study. *Clin Endosc* 2021; **54**: 881-887 [PMID: 33401348 DOI: 10.5946/ce.2020.257]

196 **Lee CK**, Lee SH, Hwangbo Y. Narrow-band imaging versus I-Scan for the real-time histological prediction of diminutive colonic polyps: a prospective comparative study by using the simple unified endoscopic classification. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2011; **74**: 603-609 [PMID: 21762907 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2011.04.049]

197 **Wu CH**, Chen TH, Hsu CM, Su MY, Chiu CT, Wu RC, Lai CC. Linked-color imaging combined with the NICE classification system for optical diagnosis of colon polyps: new image-enhanced endoscopic technology for pathological prediction. *Ther Clin Risk Manag* 2017; **13**: 1317-1321 [PMID: 29042789 DOI: 10.2147/TCRM.S147155]

198 **Rondonotti E**, Paggi S, Amato A, Mogavero G, Andrealli A, Conforti FS, Conte D, Spinzi G, Radaelli F. Blue-light imaging compared with high-definition white light for real-time histology prediction of colorectal polyps less than 1 centimeter: a prospective randomized study. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2019; **89**: 554-564.e1 [PMID: 30273590 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2018.09.027]

199 **Yoshida N**, Yagi N, Inada Y, Kugai M, Okayama T, Kamada K, Katada K, Uchiyama K, Ishikawa T, Handa O, Takagi T, Konishi H, Kokura S, Yanagisawa A, Naito Y. Ability of a novel blue laser imaging system for the diagnosis of colorectal polyps. *Dig Endosc* 2014; **26**: 250-258 [PMID: 23731034 DOI: 10.1111/den.12127]

200 **Hassan C**, Bisschops R, Bhandari P, Coron E, Neumann H, Pech O, Correale L, Repici A. Predictive rules for optical diagnosis of < 10-mm colorectal polyps based on a dedicated software. *Endoscopy* 2020; **52**: 52-60 [PMID: 31519023 DOI: 10.1055/a-0995-0084]

201 **Ito R**, Ikematsu H, Murano T, Shinmura K, Kojima M, Kumahara K, Furue Y, Sunakawa H, Minamide T, Sato D, Yamamoto Y, Takashima K, Yoda Y, Hori K, Yano T. Diagnostic ability of Japan Narrow-Band Imaging Expert Team classification for colorectal lesions by magnifying endoscopy with blue laser imaging versus narrow-band imaging. *Endosc Int Open* 2021; **9**: E271-E277 [PMID: 33553592 DOI: 10.1055/a-1324-3083]

202 **Sato R**, Fujiya M, Watari J, Ueno N, Moriichi K, Kashima S, Maeda S, Ando K, Kawabata H, Sugiyama R, Nomura Y, Nata T, Itabashi K, Inaba Y, Okamoto K, Mizukami Y, Saitoh Y, Kohgo Y. The diagnostic accuracy of high-resolution endoscopy, autofluorescence imaging and narrow-band imaging for differentially diagnosing colon adenoma. *Endoscopy* 2011; **43**: 862-868 [PMID: 21732270 DOI: 10.1055/s-0030-1256510]

203 **Ignjatovic A**, East JE, Guenther T, Hoare J, Morris J, Ragunath K, Shonde A, Simmons J, Suzuki N, Thomas-Gibson S, Saunders BP. What is the most reliable imaging modality for small colonic polyp characterization? *Endoscopy* 2011; **43**: 94-99 [PMID: 21271465 DOI: 10.1055/s-0030-1256074]

204 **Lv X**, Wang C, Xie Y. Comparison of diagnostic efficacy between AFI, NBI, and AFI combined with NBI for colonic cancers: A meta-analysis. *Saudi J Gastroenterol* 2017; **23**: 82-90 [PMID: 28361838 DOI: 10.4103/1319-3767.203355]

205 **Jin EH**, Lee D, Bae JH, Kang HY, Kwak MS, Seo JY, Yang JI, Yang SY, Lim SH, Yim JY, Lim JH, Chung GE, Chung SJ, Choi JM, Han YM, Kang SJ, Lee J, Chan Kim H, Kim JS. Improved Accuracy in Optical Diagnosis of Colorectal Polyps Using Convolutional Neural Networks with Visual Explanations. *Gastroenterology* 2020; **158**: 2169-2179.e8 [PMID: 32119927 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2020.02.036]

206 **Sánchez-Montes C**, Sánchez FJ, Bernal J, Córdova H, López-Cerón M, Cuatrecasas M, Rodríguez de Miguel C, García-Rodríguez A, Garcés-Durán R, Pellisé M, Llach J, Fernández-Esparrach G. Computer-aided prediction of polyp histology on white light colonoscopy using surface pattern analysis. *Endoscopy* 2019; **51**: 261-265 [PMID: 30360010 DOI: 10.1055/a-0732-5250]

207 **Xu Y**, Ding W, Wang Y, Tan Y, Xi C, Ye N, Wu D, Xu X. Comparison of diagnostic performance between convolutional neural networks and human endoscopists for diagnosis of colorectal polyp: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *PLoS One* 2021; **16**: e0246892 [PMID: 33592048 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0246892]

208 **Zachariah R**, Samarasena J, Luba D, Duh E, Dao T, Requa J, Ninh A, Karnes W. Prediction of Polyp Pathology Using Convolutional Neural Networks Achieves "Resect and Discard" Thresholds. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2020; **115**: 138-144 [PMID: 31651444 DOI: 10.14309/ajg.0000000000000429]

209 **Kominami Y**, Yoshida S, Tanaka S, Sanomura Y, Hirakawa T, Raytchev B, Tamaki T, Koide T, Kaneda K, Chayama K. Computer-aided diagnosis of colorectal polyp histology by using a real-time image recognition system and narrow-band imaging magnifying colonoscopy. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2016; **83**: 643-649 [PMID: 26264431 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2015.08.004]

210 **Chen PJ**, Lin MC, Lai MJ, Lin JC, Lu HH, Tseng VS. Accurate Classification of Diminutive Colorectal Polyps Using Computer-Aided Analysis. *Gastroenterology* 2018; **154**: 568-575 [PMID: 29042219 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2017.10.010]

211 **Mori Y**, Kudo SE, Misawa M, Saito Y, Ikematsu H, Hotta K, Ohtsuka K, Urushibara F, Kataoka S, Ogawa Y, Maeda Y, Takeda K, Nakamura H, Ichimasa K, Kudo T, Hayashi T, Wakamura K, Ishida F, Inoue H, Itoh H, Oda M, Mori K. Real-Time Use of Artificial Intelligence in Identification of Diminutive Polyps During Colonoscopy: A Prospective Study. *Ann Intern Med* 2018; **169**: 357-366 [PMID: 30105375 DOI: 10.7326/M18-0249]

212 **Renner J**, Phlipsen H, Haller B, Navarro-Avila F, Saint-Hill-Febles Y, Mateus D, Ponchon T, Poszler A, Abdelhafez M, Schmid RM, von Delius S, Klare P. Optical classification of neoplastic colorectal polyps - a computer-assisted approach (the COACH study). *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2018; **53**: 1100-1106 [PMID: 30270677 DOI: 10.1080/00365521.2018.1501092]

213 **Byrne MF**, Chapados N, Soudan F, Oertel C, Linares Pérez M, Kelly R, Iqbal N, Chandelier F, Rex DK. Real-time differentiation of adenomatous and hyperplastic diminutive colorectal polyps during analysis of unaltered videos of standard colonoscopy using a deep learning model. *Gut* 2019; **68**: 94-100 [PMID: 29066576 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2017-314547]

214 **Min M**, Su S, He W, Bi Y, Ma Z, Liu Y. Computer-aided diagnosis of colorectal polyps using linked color imaging colonoscopy to predict histology. *Sci Rep* 2019; **9**: 2881 [PMID: 30814661 DOI: 10.1038/s41598-019-39416-7]

215 **Horiuchi H**, Tamai N, Kamba S, Inomata H, Ohya TR, Sumiyama K. Real-time computer-aided diagnosis of diminutive rectosigmoid polyps using an auto-fluorescence imaging system and novel color intensity analysis software. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2019; **54**: 800-805 [PMID: 31195905 DOI: 10.1080/00365521.2019.1627407]

216 **Ozawa T**, Ishihara S, Fujishiro M, Kumagai Y, Shichijo S, Tada T. Automated endoscopic detection and classification of colorectal polyps using convolutional neural networks. *Therap Adv Gastroenterol* 2020; **13**: 1756284820910659 [PMID: 32231710 DOI: 10.1177/1756284820910659]

217 **Rodriguez-Diaz E**, Baffy G, Lo WK, Mashimo H, Vidyarthi G, Mohapatra SS, Singh SK. Real-time artificial intelligence-based histologic classification of colorectal polyps with augmented visualization. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2021; **93**: 662-670 [PMID: 32949567 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2020.09.018]

218 **van der Zander QEW**, Schreuder RM, Fonollà R, Scheeve T, van der Sommen F, Winkens B, Aepli P, Hayee B, Pischel AB, Stefanovic M, Subramaniam S, Bhandari P, de With PHN, Masclee AAM, Schoon EJ. Optical diagnosis of colorectal polyp images using a newly developed computer-aided diagnosis system (CADx) compared with intuitive optical diagnosis. *Endoscopy* 2021; **53**: 1219-1226 [PMID: 33368056 DOI: 10.1055/a-1343-1597]

219 **Sakamoto T**, Nakashima H, Nakamura K, Nagahama R, Saito Y. Performance of Computer-Aided Detection and Diagnosis of Colorectal Polyps Compares to That of Experienced Endoscopists. *Dig Dis Sci* 2022; **67**: 3976-3983 [PMID: 34403031 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-021-07217-6]

220 **Yoshida N**, Inoue K, Tomita Y, Kobayashi R, Hashimoto H, Sugino S, Hirose R, Dohi O, Yasuda H, Morinaga Y, Inada Y, Murakami T, Zhu X, Itoh Y. An analysis about the function of a new artificial intelligence, CAD EYE with the lesion recognition and diagnosis for colorectal polyps in clinical practice. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 2021; **36**: 2237-2245 [PMID: 34406437 DOI: 10.1007/s00384-021-04006-5]

221 **Lu Z**, Xu Y, Yao L, Zhou W, Gong W, Yang G, Guo M, Zhang B, Huang X, He C, Zhou R, Deng Y, Yu H. Real-time automated diagnosis of colorectal cancer invasion depth using a deep learning model with multimodal data (with video).

Gastrointest Endosc 2022; **95**: 1186-1194.e3 [PMID: 34919941 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2021.11.049]

222 **Lui TKL**, Wong KKY, Mak LLY, Ko MKL, Tsao SKK, Leung WK. Endoscopic prediction of deeply submucosal invasive carcinoma with use of artificial intelligence. *Endosc Int Open* 2019; **7**: E514-E520 [PMID: 31041367 DOI: 10.1055/a-0849-9548]

223 **Barua I**, Mori Y, Bretthauer M. Colorectal polyp characterization with endocytoscopy: Ready for widespread implementation with artificial intelligence? *Best Pract Res Clin Gastroenterol* 2021; **52-53**: 101721 [PMID: 34172248 DOI: 10.1016/j.bpg.2020.101721]

224 **Singh R**, Sathananthan D, Tam W, Ruszkiewicz A. Endocytoscopy for Diagnosis of Gastrointestinal Neoplasia: The Expert's Approach. *Video J and Encyclope of GI Endosc* 2013; **1**: 18-19 [DOI: 10.1016/s2212-0971(13)70009-8]

225 **Takamaru H**, Wu SYS, Saito Y. Endocytoscopy: technology and clinical application in the lower GI tract. *Transl Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2020; **5**: 40 [PMID: 32632391 DOI: 10.21037/tgh.2019.12.04]

226 **Kudo T**, Kudo SE, Mori Y, Wakamura K, Misawa M, Hayashi T, Miyachi H, Katagiri A, Ishida F, Inoue H. Classification of nuclear morphology in endocytoscopy of colorectal neoplasms. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2017; **85**: 628-638 [PMID: 27876633 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2016.10.039]

227 **Nakamura H**, Kudo SE, Misawa M, Kataoka S, Wakamura K, Hayashi T, Kudo T, Mori Y, Takeda K, Ichimasa K, Miyachi H, Katagiri A, Ishida F, Inoue H. Evaluation of microvascular findings of deeply invasive colorectal cancer by endocytoscopy with narrow-band imaging. *Endosc Int Open* 2016; **4**: E1280-E1285 [PMID: 27995189 DOI: 10.1055/s-0042-117629]

228 **Kudo SE**, Mori Y, Wakamura K, Ikehara N, Ichimasa K, Wada Y, Kutsukawa M, Misawa M, Kudo T, Hayashi T, Miyachi H, Inoue H, Hamatani S. Endocytoscopy can provide additional diagnostic ability to magnifying chromoendoscopy for colorectal neoplasms. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2014; **29**: 83-90 [PMID: 23980563 DOI: 10.1111/jgh.12374]

229 **Kudo T**, Kudo SE, Wakamura K, Mori Y, Misawa M, Hayashi T, Kutsukawa M, Ichimasa K, Miyachi H, Ishida F, Inoue H. Diagnostic performance of endocytoscopy for evaluating the invasion depth of different morphological types of colorectal tumors. *Dig Endosc* 2015; **27**: 754-761 [PMID: 25777505 DOI: 10.1111/den.12469]

230 **Misawa M**, Kudo SE, Mori Y, Nakamura H, Kataoka S, Maeda Y, Kudo T, Hayashi T, Wakamura K, Miyachi H, Katagiri A, Baba T, Ishida F, Inoue H, Nimura Y, Mori K. Characterization of Colorectal Lesions Using a Computer-Aided Diagnostic System for Narrow-Band Imaging Endocytoscopy. *Gastroenterology* 2016; **150**: 1531-1532.e3 [PMID: 27072671 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2016.04.004]

231 **Kudo SE**, Misawa M, Mori Y, Hotta K, Ohtsuka K, Ikematsu H, Saito Y, Takeda K, Nakamura H, Ichimasa K, Ishigaki T, Toyoshima N, Kudo T, Hayashi T, Wakamura K, Baba T, Ishida F, Inoue H, Itoh H, Oda M, Mori K. Artificial Intelligence-assisted System Improves Endoscopic Identification of Colorectal Neoplasms. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2020; **18**: 1874-1881.e2 [PMID: 31525512 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2019.09.009]

232 **König TT**, Goedeke J, Muensterer OJ. Multiphoton microscopy in surgical oncology- a systematic review and guide for clinical translatability. *Surg Oncol* 2019; **31**: 119-131 [PMID: 31654957 DOI: 10.1016/j.suronc.2019.10.011]

233 **Terradillos E**, Saratxaga CL, Mattana S, Cicchi R, Pavone FS, Andraka N, Glover BJ, Arbide N, Velasco J, Etxezarraga MC, Picon A. Analysis on the Characterization of Multiphoton Microscopy Images for Malignant Neoplastic Colon Lesion Detection under Deep Learning Methods. *J Pathol Inform* 2021; **12**: 27 [PMID: 34447607 DOI: 10.4103/jpi.jpi_113_20]

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Gastroenterol 2022 December 21; 28(47): 6662-6688

DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6662

ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

REVIEW

Acute liver injury in COVID-19 patients hospitalized in the intensive care unit: Narrative review

Effie Polyzogopoulou, Pinelopi Amoiridou, Theodore P Abraham, Ioannis Ventoulis

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Provenance and peer review: Invited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): B
Grade C (Good): C, C, C
Grade D (Fair): D
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: Gong N, China; Karna ST, India; Meena DS, India; Wishahi M, Egypt

Received: September 13, 2022
Peer-review started: September 13, 2022
First decision: October 19, 2022
Revised: November 14, 2022
Accepted: December 5, 2022
Article in press: December 5, 2022
Published online: December 21, 2022

Effie Polyzogopoulou, Department of Emergency Medicine, Attikon University Hospital, National and Kapodistrian University of Athens Medical School, Athens 12462, Greece

Pinelopi Amoiridou, Department of Intensive Care, AHEPA University Hospital, Thessaloniki 54621, Greece

Theodore P Abraham, Hypertrophic Cardiomyopathy Center of Excellence, University of California, San Francisco, CA 94117, United States

Ioannis Ventoulis, Department of Occupational Therapy, University of Western Macedonia, Ptolemaida 50200, Greece

Corresponding author: Ioannis Ventoulis, MD, PhD, Assistant Professor, Department of Occupational Therapy, University of Western Macedonia, Keptse Area, Ptolemaida 50200, Greece. iventoulis@uowm.gr

Abstract

In recent years, humanity has been confronted with a global pandemic due to coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19), which has caused an unprecedented health and economic crisis worldwide. Apart from the respiratory symptoms, which are considered the principal manifestations of COVID-19, it has been recognized that COVID-19 constitutes a systemic inflammatory process affecting multiple organ systems. Across the spectrum of organ involvement in COVID-19, acute liver injury (ALI) has been gradually gaining increasing attention by the international scientific community. COVID-19 associated liver impairment can affect a considerable proportion of COVID-19 patients and seems to correlate with the severity of the disease course. Indeed, COVID-19 patients hospitalized in the intensive care unit (ICU) run a greater risk of developing ALI due to the severity of their clinical condition and in the context of multi-organ failure. The putative pathophysiological mechanisms of COVID-19 induced ALI in ICU patients remain poorly understood and appear to be multifactorial in nature. Several theories have been proposed to explain the occurrence of ALI in the ICU setting, such as hypoperfusion and ischemia due to hemodynamic instability, passive liver congestion as a result of congestive heart failure, ischemia-reperfusion injury, hypoxia due to respiratory failure, mechanical ventilation itself, sepsis and septic shock, cytokine storm, endotheliitis with concomitant coagulopathy, drug-induced liver injury, parenteral nutrition and direct cytopathic viral effect. It should be noted that no specific therapy for COVID-19 induced ALI exists. Therefore, the therapeutic approach lies in preventive measures and is exclusively

supportive once ALI ensues. The aim of the current review is to scrutinize the existing evidence on COVID-19 associated ALI in ICU patients, explore its clinical implications, shed light on the underlying pathophysiological mechanisms and propose potential therapeutic approaches. Ongoing research on the particular scientific field will further elucidate the pathophysiology behind ALI and address unresolved issues, in the hope of mitigating the tremendous health consequences imposed by COVID-19 on ICU patients.

Key Words: Liver injury; COVID-19; Intensive care; Pathophysiological mechanisms; Cytokine storm; Multi-organ failure

©The Author(s) 2022. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core Tip: In recent times, coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19) pandemic has substantially altered the hitherto existing medical landscape, causing tremendous perturbations among the global scientific community and imposing a disproportionate burden on healthcare systems worldwide. It soon became apparent that COVID-19 affects multiple organ systems, including the liver. Acute liver injury has been progressively identified as a common, yet often under-recognized, complication of COVID-19, especially in the intensive care unit (ICU) setting, resulting in higher mortality rates. This review attempts to elucidate the underlying pathophysiological mechanisms that contribute to the development of acute liver injury in ICU patients with COVID-19, summarize emergent data and propose therapeutic strategies.

Citation: Polyzogopoulou E, Amoiridou P, Abraham TP, Ventoulis I. Acute liver injury in COVID-19 patients hospitalized in the intensive care unit: Narrative review. *World J Gastroenterol* 2022; 28(47): 6662-6688
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v28/i47/6662.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6662

INTRODUCTION

In recent years, humanity has been confronted with a global pandemic due to coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19), which has caused an unprecedented health and economic crisis worldwide. The initial isolation of the novel severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus-2 (SARS-CoV-2) and the subsequent first outbreak of COVID-19 in Wuhan, China, marked a grim milestone for mankind, substantially altering the existing scientific, social and economic landscape[1-3]. Since then, COVID-19 has rapidly spread throughout the world across all nations and ages and has resulted in the emergence of numerous mutant SARS-CoV-2 variants, triggering recurrent COVID-19 surges that continue to drive the ongoing pandemic[4-6]. Due to its dynamic and ever-changing epidemiological course, COVID-19 still remains an international public health emergency and accounts for considerable morbidity and mortality, inflicting an overwhelming death toll and a disproportionate burden on healthcare systems worldwide, thus raising major concerns among the global scientific community[7,8].

The clinical spectrum of COVID-19 is highly variable with a wide range of clinical manifestations. In most cases, the course of the disease is either asymptomatic or presents as a mild self-limited infection; however, in some patients, especially those with underlying comorbidities, COVID-19 evolves to a severe or even a critical life-threatening disease, culminating in the development of acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) which requires intensive care support and may eventually progress to death [9,10]. Undoubtedly, SARS-CoV-2 infection demonstrates an inherent propensity for the respiratory system; hence, lung involvement is the predominant feature in patients hospitalized with COVID-19. Nonetheless, as the complete magnitude of COVID-19 sequelae continues to unravel, it has been realized that this new nosological entity constitutes a diverse, complex and multifaceted syndrome that extends beyond the respiratory system and affects multiple organs, including the liver[11,12]. Bearing this in mind, specific attention has been gradually drawn towards the pathogenesis of liver injury in the setting of COVID-19, since acute liver injury (ALI) has been progressively identified as a common, yet often under-recognized, complication of COVID-19. As a matter of fact, there have been numerous literature reports that a considerable proportion of COVID-19 patients develop liver injury characterized by abnormalities in liver chemistry levels. Notably, ALI seems to correlate with the severity of the disease course[13-16]. Indeed, COVID-19 patients hospitalized in the intensive care unit (ICU) run a greater risk of developing ALI, mainly due to the severity of their clinical condition and in the context of multi-organ failure, thus resulting in higher mortality rates[17-20].

Studies dealing with COVID-19 induced ALI in the ICU setting are rather limited. Accordingly, the present review aims to summarize relevant existing evidence regarding ALI in COVID-19 patients

hospitalized in the ICU and explore its clinical implications, while at the same time an attempt is made to elucidate the underlying pathophysiological mechanisms that contribute to the development of ALI in ICU patients, and to propose therapeutic approaches.

DEFINING ACUTE LIVER INJURY

A universal definition of ALI is still lacking. This poses significant challenges and oftentimes generates confusion among clinicians when referring to liver injury and trying to accurately interpret abnormal liver tests[21]. Based on the latest American College of Gastroenterology clinical guidelines for the evaluation of abnormal liver chemistries[22], markers of liver injury comprise routinely measured liver chemistries, namely aspartate transaminase (AST), alanine transaminase (ALT), alkaline phosphatase (ALP) and bilirubin, whereas markers of hepatocellular function include albumin, bilirubin and prothrombin time. Sometimes, elevation of gamma-glutamyl transferase (GGT) can be used as a supplement to confirm the hepatic origin of an elevated ALP level. According to the same guidelines [22], AST and/or ALT elevation is defined as borderline when values are less than 2-fold the upper limit of normal (ULN); mild when they are between 2 and 5 times the ULN; moderate when they are between 5 and 15 times the ULN; severe if they exceed 15 times the ULN; and massive in case they are above 10000 IU/L. Furthermore, in order to characterize the type of liver injury, the following categories have been proposed based on the proportion of elevated AST and ALT values as compared to ALP values: Hepatocellular injury (disproportionate elevation of AST/ALT), cholestatic injury (predominant elevation of ALP) and mixed pattern of injury (elevation of both AST/ALT and ALP levels). For this purpose, the R ratio has been used, which is derived from the formula R = (ALT value:ALT ULN)/(ALP value:ALP ULN), whereby an R ratio > 5 indicates hepatocellular injury, an R value < 2 suggests cholestatic injury and an R value 2-5 is consistent with a mixed pattern of liver injury[22].

The lack of a uniform definition of ALI has led to the arbitrary use of different criteria for identifying ALI, which has resulted in great heterogeneity of reported research results. The adoption of diverse criteria by researchers, either for defining ALI or characterizing its pattern and severity, is also evident in the current literature regarding COVID-19 induced ALI. For instance, in a large retrospective United States cohort of COVID-19 patients, ALI was defined as any elevation of ALT and AST above normal and was subsequently classified, according to the degree of ALT elevation, as none/mild, moderate or severe when ALT values were less than 2-fold the ULN, between 2 and 5 times the ULN and more than 5-fold the ULN respectively[23]. On the other hand, Yip *et al*[24] defined ALI as an elevation of ALT and/or AST ≥ 2 times the ULN, with a concomitant increase of total bilirubin by more than 2-fold the ULN and/or international normalized ratio (INR) ≥ 1.7[24], whereas Cai *et al*[25] defined liver injury either as an increase of ALT and/or AST ≥ 3 times the ULN or as a more than 2-fold increase of ALP, GGT and/or total bilirubin above the ULN[25]. Meanwhile, other researchers avoided the use of the term ALI and employed other general terminology instead, such as ''liver test abnormalities'' or ''abnormal liver function tests'', to include any increase of at least one of AST, ALT, ALP, bilirubin and GGT above the ULN (as *per* local laboratory reference range standards) or even a reduction of albumin levels below normal cut-off values[26,27].

Based on the above, it is more than obvious that there is a wide discrepancy in the current COVID-19 literature with regard to ALI definition, thus rendering interpretation and comparison of results rather burdensome and obscure. On this account, it would be desirable for researchers to reach a consensus on a unifying definition in order to eliminate existing disparities.

EXISTING EVIDENCE

In the current COVID-19 literature there is a dearth of published clinical studies with an exclusive focus on COVID-19 induced ALI in ICU patients. Moreover, most of the available data on the topic are rather diverse owing to the lack of a uniform definition for liver injury, disparate thresholds applied for ALI, divergent study designs and different endpoints of each study.

The allegedly first study to explore the incidence, clinical characteristics and outcomes of ALI exclusively in ICU patients with COVID-19 was conducted in Germany and included 72 critically ill patients between March and July 2020[28]. The investigators used the term severe liver dysfunction and defined it as the occurrence of hypoxic liver injury (manifested by elevated aminotransferase levels > 20-fold the ULN in the setting of cardiac, circulatory or respiratory failure and after exclusion of other possible causes) and/or jaundice (total bilirubin ≥ 2 mg/dL). They found that 31% of the ICU patients developed severe liver dysfunction during their ICU stay approximately a week after ICU admission, predominantly in the form of cholestatic liver injury (45%) followed by equally contributing hepatocellular (27%) and mixed pattern injury (27%). Patients with severe liver dysfunction had a higher simplified acute physiology score II on admission, indicating a more severe clinical condition, as well as higher rates of viremia during their ICU stay. Severe liver dysfunction was associated with more severe respiratory failure, as manifested by more frequent development of ARDS and lower values of

Horowitz index, namely lower ratio of partial pressure of oxygen to fraction of inspired oxygen (PaO_2/FiO_2 ratio). Furthermore, patients with severe liver dysfunction were more likely to require mechanical ventilation (MV), circulatory support with vasopressors, renal replacement therapy and rescue therapy by means of veno-venous extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO). Accordingly, patients with severe liver dysfunction experienced higher mortality rates and, more importantly, severe liver dysfunction was found to be an independent predictor of mortality[28].

Along the same lines, Huang *et al*[29] conducted a retrospective study with the aim to investigate the prevalence of hypoxic hepatitis in 51 COVID-19 patients hospitalized in a Chinese ICU from December 2019 to March 2020[29]. They used the same definition of hypoxic hepatitis; that is, a massive but transient elevation of ALT levels > 20-fold the ULN in the setting of cardiac, circulatory or respiratory failure, after excluding other putative causes of ALI. Based on this terminology, hypoxic hepatitis was evident in 3 male patients, corresponding to 5.88% of all ICU patients, with peak ALT values being 1665, 1412 and 1140 U/L respectively. All 3 patients progressed to respiratory failure and eventually died due to multiple organ failure. When looking at the dynamic changes of liver enzymes, it was observed that ALT and AST elevations occurred at an earlier stage, while bilirubin levels increased sharply at a later stage when transaminase values had already started to show a downward trend after peaking in the third week. The authors came to the conclusion that hypoxic hepatitis was not an infrequent condition in ICU patients with severe COVID-19 and was accompanied by high mortality[29].

Meanwhile, Salik *et al*[30] conducted a study which included 533 COVID-19 patients admitted to the ICU with the aim to determine the impact of observed liver test abnormalities on mortality[30]. Liver injury was defined as ALT and/or AST levels above 3 times the ULN, and/or total bilirubin levels greater than 2-fold the ULN. Patients were divided into three groups: Group 1 consisted of patients with normal liver chemistries; Group 2 included patients with abnormal liver test values not falling into the category of liver injury; Group 3 comprised patients with liver injury. Any kind of liver test abnormality, reflected by groups 2 and 3, was observed in 52% of the total cohort and was more frequent in males. However, as *per* study's definition, only 8.6% of all ICU patients developed ALI, represented by group 3 alone. Paradoxically, the authors reported that patients with ALI and milder liver test abnormalities (groups 2 and 3) had shorter ICU lengths of stay compared with group 1, but this result is most likely attributed to the unacceptably high total mortality rates of patients belonging to these groups (71.4% and 78.3% for groups 2 and 3 respectively), which erroneously were not taken into account as confounding factors during the analysis. The authors concluded that liver test abnormalities were predictive of higher mortality, given that groups 2 and 3 experienced higher than expected 7-d, 28-d and total mortality rates[30].

A similar definition of ALI was employed by Arentz *et al*[31] who published the first case series of ICU patients with COVID-19 in the United States, dating back to February-March 2020[31]. A total of 21 patients were included. On ICU admission, abnormal liver tests were reported in 8 patients (38%) with one patient displaying very high levels of AST (4432 U/L) and ALT (1414 U/L). During the course of the disease, among patients who were mechanically ventilated, 3 (14.3%) developed ALI, defined as a more than 3-fold rise above the ULN in AST or ALT levels. No further details about ALI were provided by this study, since its focus was not on liver injury in the ICU, but rather its aim was to describe the clinical characteristics and outcomes in the initial ICU cases of COVID-19 patients in the United States [31].

Likewise, in a retrospective observational cohort study from France with 600 COVID-19 patients, 153 of whom required ICU hospitalization, it was reported that 9.8% of the ICU patients developed ALI, defined as AST levels higher than 3-fold the ULN[32]. ALI occurred more frequently in the ICU compared to common ward patients, as did most of the other extrapulmonary complications, like acute kidney injury, cardiovascular events and thromboembolic events. Data analysis demonstrated that factors associated with higher risk for ALI included age > 75 years, concomitant cancer, chronic cardiac disease, as well as higher levels of C-reactive protein (CRP), serum creatinine and hemoglobin[32].

Another retrospective observational study from China reported an 18.1% incidence of ALI in 83 ICU patients with COVID-19[33]. In this case, ALI was defined as an elevation of hepatic biomarkers more than 2-fold the ULN or as disproportionately elevated AST and ALT levels compared to ALP levels. However, the focus of this study was on acute gastrointestinal injury (defined as various grades of malfunction of the gastrointestinal tract) in critically ill patients with COVID-19 and not specifically on ALI; hence, no additional data on ALI were available. Nevertheless, since ALI could be considered one of the components of acute gastrointestinal injury, it could be assumed that the main study conclusions may also be applicable to ALI. The major findings of this study were that patients with worse grades of acute gastrointestinal injury had worse clinical severity features, while sequential organ failure assessment score, MV duration and white blood cell count arose as independent risk factors for the development of more severe acute gastrointestinal injury. What is more, these patients exhibited higher rates of both septic shock and 28-d in-hospital mortality[33].

In a case series examining the temporal evolution of blood liver tests in 20 consecutive ICU patients with COVID-19, liver injury was reported to be frequent, albeit transient and non-severe[34]. However, liver injury was ill-defined as any elevation of at least one liver test (AST, ALT, ALP, GGT, total bilirubin) above the ULN. Consequently, all 20 patients exhibited some form of liver injury during the first 10 d after ICU admission. Interestingly, only median levels of AST, ALT and GGT (but not bilirubin

or ALP) increased above the ULN, while only GGT showed pronounced elevations (≥ 3-fold the ULN) with a peak on day 8 after ICU admission. Based on these findings, the researchers commented that late cholestasis was frequently observed[34].

In addition, Shousha *et al*[35] conducted a prospective cohort study in 547 Egyptian patients with COVID-19 in order to investigate the underlying prevalence and severity of liver and gastrointestinal disturbances, as well as their effect on disease outcomes[35]. Among patients who required ICU admission (122/547), 48.50% had elevated AST and 35.60% had elevated ALT. Elevated AST, but not ALT, levels were associated with increased mortality in univariate analysis. Moreover, patients admitted to the ICU displayed significantly higher hospital admission levels of fibrosis-4 index (FIB-4), which incorporates 4 variables (age, AST, ALT and platelet count) and is considered a predictive marker for significant liver fibrosis. Similarly high levels of FIB-4 were observed in severe COVID-19 cases and in non-survivors. In the multivariate analysis, FIB-4 score > 3.25 was a significant predictor of mortality. Unfortunately, no other specific ICU details could be extrapolated from this study, owing to the trial design and aim, which was not focused on ICU patients[35].

Based on the observation that black population in the United States had been disproportionately affected by COVID-19, Currier *et al*[36] investigated potential differences in outcomes between black and non-black patients with COVID-19 and elevated liver enzymes[36]. They included a total number of 8028 patients, out of whom 3937 patients had available liver test data for interpretation. The analysis demonstrated that 45% of both black and non-black patients exhibited elevations in their liver chemistries. Among black patients with liver test elevations, 46% were intubated compared to 34.8% of non-black patients with elevated liver enzymes. This study highlighted that black patients who had liver test abnormalities were more prone to ICU admission and intubation than non-black counterparts, who albeit run a significantly higher risk of death[36].

Besides, ALI has also been appreciated in the context of specific patient categories with a prior history of liver disease. In this perspective, a multicenter observational cohort study from the United States aimed to explore the prevalence and impact of COVID-19 induced ALI in liver transplant recipients of various races and ethnicities[37]. 112 adult liver transplant recipients with COVID-19 were included, 81 of whom required hospitalization. Among hospitalized patients, 30 (37%) were admitted to the ICU with the majority of them requiring MV and circulatory support with vasopressors. ICU patients were more likely to develop ALI, which was determined according to ALT values at the peak of COVID-19 and was defined as ALT levels greater than 2-fold the ULN. On multivariate analysis, use of vasopressors in the ICU was found to be an independent predictor of liver injury. Furthermore, ICU patients had a higher likelihood of having their immunosuppression therapy modified. However, reduction in immunosuppression was not associated either with ALI or with risk of mortality or graft rejection, in contrast to antibiotic administration which was related to increased risk for ALI. Overall, the presence of ALI independently predicted risk for ICU admission and mortality in liver transplant recipients with COVID-19[37].

Other than cohort studies, there have also been case reports regarding COVID-19 induced ALI in ICU patients. Of note, a case report from Italy highlighted a rare case of ALI progressing to acute liver failure and eventually death[38]. It involved 2 critically ill COVID-19 patients hospitalized in the ICU due to severe ARDS. The patients were treated with tocilizumab, as part of the anti-cytokine storm regimen, which however seemed to have aggravated the underlying COVID-19 immunosuppression, thus facilitating the development of opportunistic infections in the already immunocompromised patients. Indeed, a few days prior to their death, lab tests revealed Herpes simplex virus 1 viremia leading to fulminant hepatitis with dramatic increases in ALT, AST, bilirubin and INR levels and resulting in fatal outcomes for both patients[38].

Furthermore, one should bear in mind that within the spectrum of liver injury in COVID-19 patients lies the cholestatic pattern of liver injury, along with its late sequelae, such as the development of secondary sclerosing cholangitis in critically ill patients. In this regard, Bütikofer *et al*[39] described the incidence and severity of cholestatic liver injury in 34 ICU patients with COVID-19[39]. Cholestatic liver injury was termed mild if ALP and GGT levels were higher than 1.5-fold and 3-fold the ULN respectively, whereas it was considered severe in case the above abnormalities were accompanied by a concomitant elevation of total bilirubin levels more than 2-fold the ULN. The investigators reported that 59% of the ICU patients developed some degree of cholestasis (32% mild and 27% severe). Patients with severe cholestatic injury displayed a more complicated clinical course, required more intensified supportive treatment (in terms of vasopressor support, renal replacement therapy and ECMO) and had a more extended length of ICU stay. Moreover, 4 out of 9 patients with severe cholestatic injury developed secondary sclerosing cholangitis, eventually resulting in 2 deaths and 1 candidacy for liver transplantation. By the same token, irrespective of the degree of cholestasis, the vast majority of patients with pronounced elevations of ALT levels (> 10-fold the ULN) developed untoward outcomes, progressing either to secondary sclerosing cholangitis or death[39].

From a similar perspective, on the grounds of a higher than expected incidence of cholangiopathies in critically ill patients with COVID-19, Wendel-Garcia *et al*[40] addressed the issue of drug-induced liver injury (DILI) in a prospective observational cohort of patients with COVID-19 associated ARDS[40]. They performed a post hoc analysis on 243 ICU patients who were on invasive MV, with the aim to investigate whether a causal relationship between the prolonged infusion of high-dose ketamine and the

occurrence of cholestatic liver injury existed. Acute cholestatic DILI was defined as ALP levels greater than 1.5-fold and GGT levels greater than 3-fold the ULN, whereas patients were deemed to have severe cholestatic liver injury in case a concurrent increase in bilirubin levels more than 2-fold the ULN was present. During their ICU stay, 114 patients developed cholestatic liver injury, 100 of whom had received long-term ketamine infusion, while severe cholestatic liver injury occurred in 33% of the latter. The analysis revealed a duration-effect and dose-effect relationship between ketamine infusion and bilirubin and ALP levels. In other words, prolonged duration of infusion and higher doses of ketamine were positively correlated with rising bilirubin and ALP levels. Interestingly, no such effect was observed with long-term infusion of propofol and sufentanil, even at high doses. The study clearly demonstrated an increased hazard of developing cholestatic liver injury in ICU patients who had received long-term ketamine infusion as a co-sedative agent; yet, no association between ketamine infusion and increased in-hospital mortality was depicted[40].

The aforementioned studies regarding the prevalence and clinical implications of COVID-19 induced ALI in ICU patients are summarized in Table 1.

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

The pathophysiology of ALI in COVID-19 patients hospitalized in the ICU has not been fully elucidated and still awaits to be unraveled, since the underlying mechanisms have not been sufficiently decoded and appear to be multifactorial in nature. So far, the scientific research conducted in the field has proposed several mechanisms that associate SARS-CoV-2 infection with ALI. These mechanisms may have direct or indirect impact on liver function. In fact, there seems to be a complex interplay among several distinct pathophysiological pathways implicated in the course of critically ill patients with COVID-19 (Figure 1). Presumably, these diverse pathophysiological mechanisms act in synergy and exert cumulative effects, since no single mechanism can completely explain the vast spectrum of liver involvement in ICU patients with COVID-19. It is worth noting that COVID-19 induced ALI can occur either in the context of an underlying liver disease, thus leading to decompensation of the preexisting state of equilibrium, or can manifest as a de novo nosological entity in ''naïve'' patients with no previous history of documented hepatic dysfunction[41-44].

Hypoperfusion

ICU patients represent a specific subgroup of patients with distinctive features. Hemodynamic instability is frequently encountered among patients hospitalized in the ICU setting, who therefore require administration of vasopressors or even inotropes, sometimes in particularly high doses. There are miscellaneous factors contributing to the observed hemodynamic instability of ICU patients, including hypovolemic, distributive, cardiogenic or obstructive shock, MV, sedation and drugs[45,46]. It is worth mentioning that in the COVID-19 era a specific cause leading to cardiogenic shock may be related to myocardial injury caused by SARS-CoV-2. Cardiovascular involvement in COVID-19 may manifest in the form of myocarditis and pericarditis, but also as arrhythmias, acute coronary syndromes and stress-induced cardiomyopathy. When severe, all of these cardiovascular manifestations may potentially lead to acute heart failure and shock, especially in vulnerable patients with pre-existing cardiovascular disease[47-49]. Regardless of the cause, hemodynamic instability results in decreased splanchnic blood flow, leading to inadequate blood supply to the liver and subsequent liver ischemia. The resultant decreased end-organ perfusion is exaggerated in cases of hypovolemia[50].

Moreover, in the setting of passive liver congestion due to right heart failure of various etiologies, the superimposed elevated hepatic venous pressures further impair hepatic circulation by reducing the gradient between portal and hepatic venous pressures, which primarily drives the flow within the portal venous system. On top of that, the liver autoregulatory mechanisms are disrupted and become maladaptive, while the hepatic arterial buffer system fails to sustain hepatic blood flow under conditions of low mesenteric perfusion and cannot compensate for the changes in liver blood supply caused by low blood pressure, thus placing the liver at risk for further ischemic injury[51,52].

It needs to be emphasized that, although vasopressors can have beneficial hemodynamic effects in terms of restoring and maintaining hemodynamic stability and supporting vital functions, they are not void of adverse effects, which can often be detrimental. Indeed, they can cause excessive vasoconstriction and hence impair tissue perfusion through reduction of blood flow in vasoconstricted vascular beds, while at the same time they may exert deleterious effects on cardiac, metabolic, microbiome and immune function[53-55].

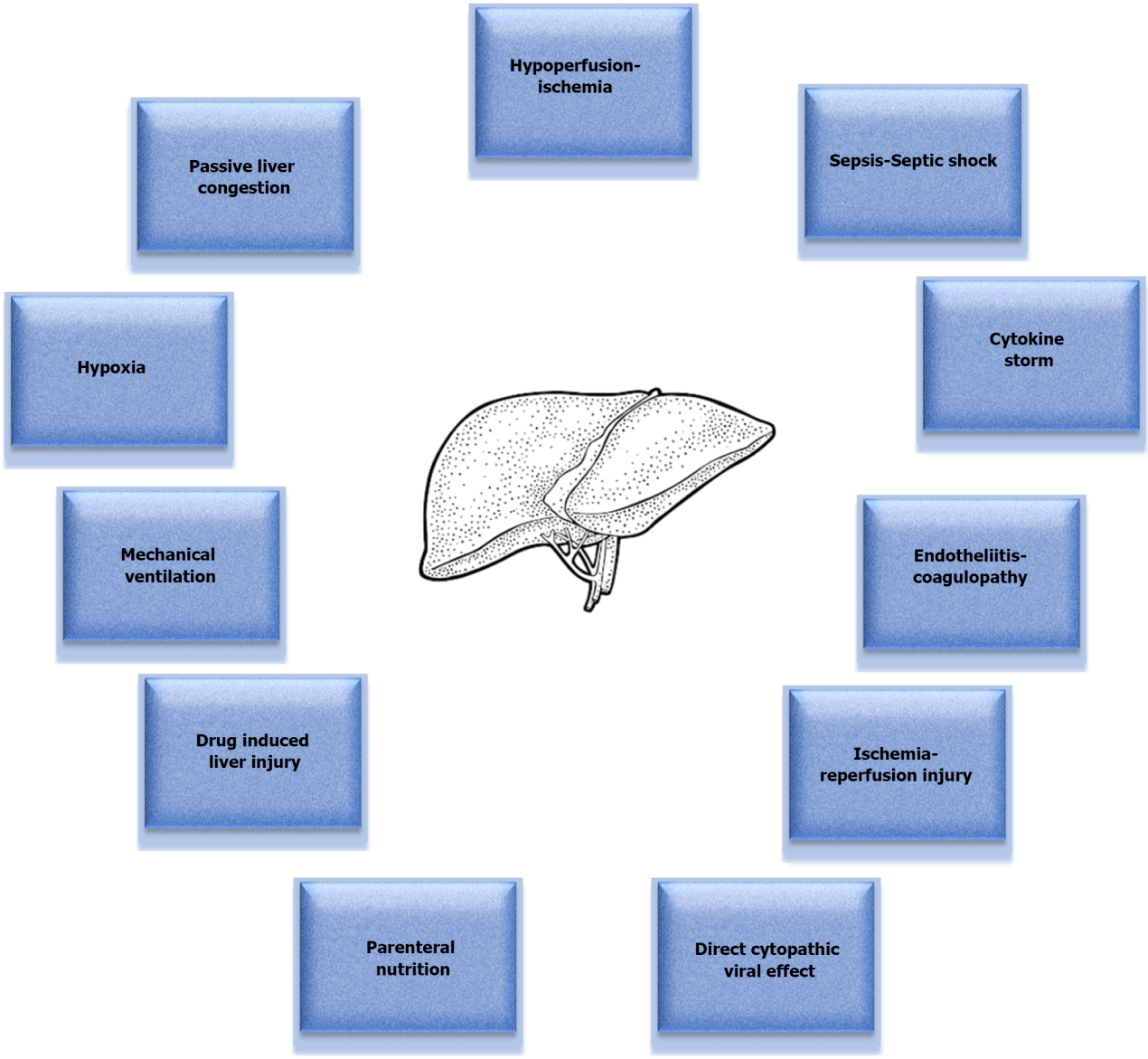
From a cellular standpoint, the sudden and profound reduction in systemic blood pressure, in conjunction with increased hepatic venous pressures, establish a low-flow state, which can result in the so-called hypoxic hepatocellular injury characterized by prominent centrilobular hepatocellular necrosis, since the central areas of the liver (commonly referred to as zone 3) are more susceptible to ischemic insults[51]. Mitochondrial damage and DNA fragmentation are the principal mechanisms implicated in the process of injury during hypoxic ALI, as evidenced by elevated plasma levels of glutamate dehydrogenase and cytochrome c oxidase mitochondrial DNA on the one hand and elevated

Table 1 Studies examining coronavirus disease 2019 induced acute liver injury in intensive care unit patients

Ref.	ALI definition	Number of ICU patients	ALI incidence	Major findings/outcomes
Roedl *et al*[28], 2021, Germany, Single-center, retrospective	↑ Transaminases > 20 × ULN or BIL ≥ 2 mg/dL	72	31%	ALI pts experienced higher mortality (83% for hepatocellular, 66% for mixed and 60% for cholestatic ALI), developed respiratory failure more frequently and had higher need for MV, ECMO, vasopressors and RRT
Huang *et al*[29], 2020, China, Single-center, retrospective	↑ALT > 20 × ULN	51	5.88%	ALI was not rare and was associated with high mortality due to MOF
Salik *et al*[30], 2021, Turkey, Single-center, retrospective	↑ALT/AST > 3 × ULN and/or ↑TBIL > 2 × ULN`	533	8.6%	ALI pts had higher total, 7-d and 28-d mortality, as well as higher SOFA score. ALI was more frequent in males
Arentz *et al*[31], 2020, United States, Single-center, case series	ALT or AST levels > 3 × ULN	21	14.3%	67% mortality for the overall cohort, no mortality data for ALI pts. All ALI pts (3) were on MV. High rate of cardiomyopathy in the overall cohort
Martinot *et al*[32], 2021, France, Single-center, retrospective observational cohort	AST ≥ 3 × ULN	153	9.8%	Factors associated with higher risk for ALI: Age > 75, cancer, cardiac disease, higher levels of CRP, serum Cr and Hb
Sun *et al*[33], 2020, China, Single-center, retrospective observational	↑Serum levels of liver biomarkers (*e.g.* ALT) > 2 × ULN or disproportionate ↑ ALT/AST *vs* ALP	83	18.1%	The study focused on AGI, defined as various grades of malfunction of the GI tract, and not on ALI. Pts with worse AGI grades had higher 28-d mortality, higher incidence of septic shock and worse clinical variables
Cardoso *et al*[34], 2020, Portugal, Single-center, case series	Any elevation of at least one liver test (AST, ALT, ALP, GGT, TBIL) above ULN	20	100%	Liver injury was frequent, but transient and non-severe. Late cholestasis was mainly observed
Shousha *et al*[35], 2021, Egypt, Multi-center, prospective cohort	↑Transaminases > 3 × ULN	122 ICU pts. Overall cohort consisted of 547 pts	4.91% or 3.70% (based on AST or ALT levels respectively). Data represent overall (not ICU) pts cohort	FIB-4 on admission was significantly higher in pts admitted to the ICU, those with more severe COVID-19 and non-survivors. FIB-4 score > 3.25 and ICU admission were significant predictors of mortality
Currier *et al*[36], 2021, United States, Single-center, retrospective	ALT/AST > 60, ALP > 150, or BIL > 1.5	No data available for ICU pts. Overall cohort consisted of 8028 pts	45%. Data represent overall (not ICU) pts cohort	Black COVID-19 pts with liver test abnormalities were at greater risk for ICU admission and intubation compared to other races, but non-Black pts with liver test abnormalities were at increased risk of death
Rabiee *et al*[37], 2020, United States, Multi-center, observational cohort	ALT ≥ 2 × ULN (moderate: ALT 2-5 × ULN, severe: ALT > 5 × ULN)	30 ICU pts. Overall cohort consisted of 81 hospitalized LT recipients	34.6%. Data represent overall (not ICU) pts cohort	ALI was associated with higher risk for ICU admission and higher mortality. Hispanic ethnicity, metabolic syndrome, use of vasopressors, antibiotic use and younger age were independent risk factors for ALI. ICU pts were more likely to have their immunosuppression therapy modified
Roncati *et al*[38], 2022, Italy, Case report	N/A	2	100%	Fulminant herpetic hepatitis developed as a superimposed opportunistic infection due to tocilizumab-induced immunosuppression. Both pts died due to acute liver failure
Bütikofer *et al*[39], 2021, Switzerland, Single-center, retrospective cohort	Cholestatic ALI: ALP ≥ 1.5 × ULN and GGT ≥ 3 × ULN (termed severe if additionally TBIL ≥ 2 × ULN)	34	59% (27% severe)	Pts with severe ALI had higher mortality, significantly longer ICU stay with a more complicated course and required higher levels of support
Wendel-Garcia *et al*[40], 2022, Switzerland, Single-center, prospective observational cohort (post-hoc analysis)	Acute cholestatic liver injury: ALP > 1.5 × ULN and GGT > 3 × ULN (severe if additionally BIL > 2 × ULN)	243	47%	Pts who received ketamine had an increased risk of developing cholestatic liver injury than pts who didn't. Ketamine infusion demonstrated a dose-dependency and duration-dependency association with increasing BIL and ALP levels, but it was not associated with increased hospital mortality

AGI: Acute gastrointestinal injury; ALI: Acute liver injury; ALT: Alanine transaminase; ALP: Alkaline phosphatase; AST: Aspartate transaminase; BIL: Bilirubin; COVID-19: Coronavirus disease 2019; Cr: Creatinine; CRP: C-reactive protein; ECMO: Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation; FIB-4: Fibrosis-4 index; GI: Gastrointestinal; GGT: Gamma-glutamyl transferase; Hb: Hemoglobin; ICU: Intensive care unit; LT: Liver transplant; MOF: Multiple organ failure; MV: Mechanical ventilation; Pts: Patients; RRT: Renal replacement therapy; SOFA: Sequential organ failure assessment; TBIL: Total bilirubin; ULN:

Upper limit of normal.



DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6662 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2022.

Figure 1 Pathophysiological mechanisms implicated in the development of coronavirus disease 2019 acute liver injury in the intensive care unit setting. Figure 1 depicts the various pathophysiological mechanisms that come into play in the setting of coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19) infection, which eventually culminate in the development of acute liver injury (ALI) in intensive care unit (ICU) patients. Hypoperfusion and ischemia due to the frequently observed hemodynamic instability in the ICU patients play a major role in the process. Passive liver congestion as a result of congestive heart failure of various etiologies is another key determinant. The situation can be further aggravated by ischemia-reperfusion injury. Sepsis can also cause hepatic dysfunction, which is usually cholestatic in nature and reversible, but, when it progresses to septic shock, it results in multiple organ dysfunction syndrome and liver hypoperfusion, manifesting as shock liver. Besides, hypoxia due to respiratory failure and acute respiratory distress syndrome may also lead to ALI. Paradocixally, mechanical ventilation *per se* can exert deleterious effects on the liver through positive pressure ventilation, especially when accompanied by the application of high positive end-expiratory pressure and large tidal volumes. Furthermore, ALI can stem from the inflammatory cascade generated by the cytokine storm, while it can be further complicated by impaired microcirculation and thrombosis as a result of endotheliitis with concomitant coagulopathy. Drug-induced liver injury, as well as parenteral nutrition, must also not be overlooked as potential causative factors. Finally, liver injury could also be attributed to a direct cytopathic viral effect. There seems to be a complex interplay among these numerous underlying mechanisms, which may act either independently and cause COVID-19 induced ALI in the ICU setting, or more frequently synergistically and generate a relentless ALI vicious cycle.

circulating levels of nuclear DNA fragments on the other[56].

Even after restoring hemodynamic stability with the use of vasoactive drugs, it should be kept in mind that ischemia reperfusion injury may ensue, whereby reperfusion after prolonged ischemia can trigger a cascade of molecular mechanisms, paradoxically begetting further liver injury. This cascade of events involves the recruitment and activation of cellular mediators, the engagement of the complement

system, the generation of reactive oxygen species and the release of a wide variety of various cytokines, chemokines, adhesion molecules and other chemical mediators, which lead to microvascular alterations, acute inflammatory responses, derangements in microcirculation and increased hepatocellular apoptosis and necrosis[57].

Sepsis-Septic shock

In the ICU environment, sepsis represents a relentless plague with grave consequences for the critically ill patients, accounting for a significant proportion of the observed high morbidity and mortality rates. This becomes even more relevant for COVID-19 patients hospitalized in the ICU, given the fact that they require extended ICU stay with prolonged periods of invasive MV and vasopressor support, in the setting of a severely compromised immune system with a markedly dysregulated host response to infection. Sepsis may stem from multiple sources of infection and invariably results in organ dysfunction[58]. With regard to the liver, sepsis can cause hepatic dysfunction, which primarily manifests as sepsis-associated cholestatic dysfunction and to a lesser extent as hypoxic hepatitis. Sepsis, especially when caused by infections from gram-negative bacteria, increases intestinal permeability and results in endotoxin translocation from the intestinal lumen into the portal circulation. In the liver, endotoxins mount an inflammatory response through activation of Kupffer cells and macrophages, which results in secretion of proinflammatory cytokines[21,59]. This inflammatory reaction induces changes in the architecture and function of hepatocytes and cholangiocytes, leading to dysregulation of the liver metabolic signaling pathways, repression of the hepatobiliary transporter systems and decrease in canalicular contractility. All these result in bile acid retention with defective bile acid uptake, impaired bile production and secretion, inhibition of bile flow and formation of biliary sludge. The condition is further exacerbated by the impaired hepatic microcirculation due to sepsis-induced microvascular endothelial injury resulting in coagulopathy and microthrombi formation[21,60]. In the majority of critically ill patients, this type of cholestasis is reversible, but, in rare cases, destruction of the biliary epithelium due to ischemia and inflammation may cause irreversible biliary damage, progressing to secondary sclerosing cholangitis with formation of biliary casts and scarring of the bile ducts[60,61].

When sepsis culminates in septic shock, hemodynamic instability prevails, necessitating administration of vasopressors or inotropes[62]. Under these circumstances, the imminent end-organ hypoperfusion may eventually lead to shock liver in the context of multiple organ dysfunction syndrome. Indeed, the impaired hepatic perfusion leads to hypoxic hepatitis by causing direct hepatocellular injury. Despite the associated hyperdynamic state with increased cardiac output, septic shock is characterized by ongoing liver ischemia owing to impaired tissue oxygen extraction or, in other words, inability of hepatocytes to utilize oxygen. Once hepatocytes, especially those residing in the centrilobular regions of the liver, are deprived of oxygen, they start malfunctioning[21,63]. In fact, progressive tissue hypoxia promotes a catabolic state of anaerobic metabolism, suppresses mitochondrial energy production, compromises cellular membrane integrity due to loss of energy-dependent ion pumps and causes significant structural and functional abnormalities to hepatocytes[63]. The final result is direct hepatocellular damage, which is clinically described as hypoxic or ischemic liver injury and characterized by a massive, acute and transient rise in serum levels of aminotransferases[64].

Hypoxia

One of the cardinal features of COVID-19 critical illness is severe systemic hypoxia due to respiratory failure or ARDS[65]. Regardless of hemodynamic status, severe hypoxia *per se* can lead to ALI[66]. As a matter of fact, a pronounced and prolonged imbalance between oxygen supply and expenditure, secondary to profound hypoxia, can result in oxygen deprivation to the liver and thus trigger hypoxic hepatitis[64]. Hypoxia has long been implicated in the pathogenesis of liver diseases[67]. It has been shown that hypoxia induces alterations in gene expression by effectuating the activation of hypoxia-inducible factor 1α and nuclear factor kappa B, which in turn stimulate angiogenesis, chronic inflammation and epithelial-mesenchymal transition. Accordingly, the activation of these transcriptional pathways promotes liver fibrosis and increases hepatic vascular resistance, thereby diminishing liver blood flow and further aggravating liver hypoxia[68].

In most ICU cases, hypoxia, the predominant characteristic of ARDS, mandates the use of invasive MV. During ARDS management, protective ventilation strategies are employed, which incorporate the use of low tidal volumes with permissive hypercapnia[69]. However, both hypoxia and hypercapnia have been known to induce pulmonary vasoconstriction, which in turn increases pulmonary vascular resistance and right ventricular afterload[70,71]. This may cause derangements in the subtle balance between the respiratory and cardiovascular system, eventually provoking cardiocirculatory instability, which sequentially establishes an even harsher hypoxic environment[71].

In view of the fact that severely hypoxemic patients require invasive MV, often with the application of high positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP) levels, the strain imposed on the right ventricle by MV may elicit right ventricular failure and reduce venous return and right ventricular preload, thus further affecting hemodynamic stability[72,73]. These mechanical effects are aggravated in patients with ARDS or in mechanically ventilated patients with intrinsic PEEP due to dynamic hyperinflation. As a result, the clinical course of the patients may be complicated by acute cor pulmonale. Factors associated with a

higher risk for developing acute cor pulmonale include worse oxygenation, hypercapnia, high ventilator pressures and pneumonia-related ARDS[72].

MV

Owing to the fact that respiratory failure is the most frequent indication for ICU admission, the majority of ICU patients are mechanically ventilated. Although life-saving, MV may elicit untoward effects on the function of extrapulmonary organs, including the liver, *via* multiple interactions.

It has long been recognized that positive pressure ventilation can induce a decrease in cardiac output accompanied by a reduction in hepatic arterial blood flow, while high intrathoracic pressures can jointly incur increases in hepatic venous and inferior vena caval pressures. In parallel, liver compression by the descent of the diaphragm increases hepatic venous resistance and causes a rise in intravascular portal pressure. The constellation of these MV-triggered events can cause congestive hepatomegaly and induce hepatocellular dysfunction[74].

The aforementioned effects on liver hemodynamics can be further aggravated by the application of PEEP. Indeed, it is widely known from the literature that PEEP may increase the backpressure to liver venous outflow and cause an elevation in liver venous resistance, thus decreasing total venous return and resulting in hepatic blood pooling and liver congestion[75,76]. This decrease in venous return is further amplified in hypovolemic states[71]. Besides, in a study assessing risk factors for liver injury in critically ill patients, high levels of PEEP were found to promote hepatic dysfunction[77].

Furthermore, in a study by Schricker *et al*[78], it was found that PEEP affected liver metabolism by promoting hepatic gluconeogenesis and enhancing oxidative hepatic lipid utilization for energy coverage in the liver[78]. A parallel increase in the splanchnic oxygen extraction rate was reported in response to a decline in hepatic oxygen delivery caused by a PEEP-dependent decrease in cardiac output[78]. This mechanism has been corroborated by various human studies which have shown that increasing levels of PEEP reduced splanchnic blood flow, thereby jeopardizing oxygen delivery to the abdominal viscera; yet, splanchnic oxygen consumption was usually maintained through a compensatory increase in splanchnic oxygen extraction[79].

Moreover, the application of large tidal volumes during MV markedly increases pulmonary vascular resistance. In turn, the increased pulmonary vascular resistance may compromise the systolic performance of the right ventricle, since ejection will have to take place against an increased right ventricular afterload[71]. The ensuing right ventricular dysfunction will result in high right atrial pressures, which will then be transmitted backwards to the liver, causing hepatic congestion due to a retrograde increase in the pressures of the inferior vena cava and the hepatic veins[80].

Additionally, the use of high PEEP, high inspiratory pressures and high tidal volumes during MV may alter hepatosplanchnic perfusion by precipitating varying degrees of elevation in the intra-abdominal pressure[81-83]. As a matter of fact, MV, especially with high levels of PEEP, induces changes in pressure in the intra-abdominal compartment through transmission of increased intrathoracic pressures to the abdomen and downward displacement of the diaphragm. Should a sustained rise in intra-abdominal pressure occur, this can lead to an abdominal compartment-like syndrome, thus affecting abdominal venous return and causing a decline in cardiac output as a result of a marked decrease in right ventricular preload[84]. Concurrently, the resultant intra-abdominal hypertension may compromise liver perfusion and jeopardize the physiologic hepatic function by compressing the portal vein and causing intestinal congestion[85]. At the same time, the increased abdominal pressure is transmitted to the thoracic cavity, affecting lung volumes and respiratory mechanics and generating increases in peak inspiratory, plateau and mean airway pressures of the mechanically ventilated patients[86]. Accordingly, this may negatively affect cardiac and respiratory performance, potentially leading to cardiovascular collapse, which will further exacerbate the vicious cycle of poor tissue perfusion and organ dysfunction[84]. The clinical importance of this phenomenon may be further magnified by the presence of causal factors which predispose to additional elevations of intra-abdominal pressure, such as acidosis, coagulopathy, sepsis, MV, use of PEEP or presence of auto-PEEP, pneumonia, prone positioning, aggressive fluid resuscitation or increased severity scores[87].

Finally, MV *per se* can induce an early systemic inflammatory reaction, governed by an increased expression of soluble adhesive molecules and cytokines, along with a concomitant activation of the neurohumoral axis[88].

Collectively, it becomes evident from the above that MV may exert negative effects on liver function in terms of both mechanics and hemodynamics, as well as from a neurohumoral and metabolic perspective[89].

Cytokine storm

SARS-CoV-2 activates the host immune system at different levels and in varying degrees. In critically ill COVID-19 patients, the virus triggers an uncontrolled immune response, which results in a state of generalized overt inflammation. This overwhelming inflammatory reaction is termed cytokine storm and is heralded by the excessive production of proinflammatory cytokines on the grounds of a dysregulated immune system. During this chain of events, cytokines play a pivotal role in the inflammatory cascade triggered by SARS-CoV-2. Principal cytokines involved in the process include interleukin-6 (IL-6) and tumor necrosis factor-alpha (TNF-α). The excessive expression of proinflammatory cytokines,

chemokines and adhesion molecules attracts neutrophils, monocytes, macrophages and platelets, which further potentiate cytokine production. The resultant overflooding of cytokines and chemokines poses a systemic stress on multiple organs, leading to tissue injury through activation of numerous signaling pathways. Ultimately, the severe systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS) results in multi-organ failure. Of course, the liver is not spared throughout this process and sustains immune-mediated direct and indirect injury of varying magnitude[90-92].

It has been demonstrated that COVID-19 patients exhibit elevated levels of various inflammatory cytokines, such as IL-1β, IL-2, IL-6, IL-10, TNF-α, interferon-gamma (IFN-γ), IFN-γ-inducible protein 10, granulocyte macrophage-colony stimulating factor and monocyte chemoattractant protein-1. What is more, some of these cytokines have been shown to correlate with the severity of COVID-19 disease course. Moreover, inflammatory infiltrates, indicative of immune-mediated injury, have been found to be present in numerous tissue samples of COVID-19 patients[93]. In addition, elevated levels of IL-6 and IL-10 and low counts of CD4+ T cells have been reported to be independent risk factors for development of ALI in COVID-19 patients[94]. All the above point towards the fact that an exaggerated immune-mediated response, generating an inflammatory cascade of events known as cytokine storm, plays a key role in the development of COVID-19 induced ALI.

Endothiliitis-coagulopathy

COVID-19 is considered a thrombotic disease which affects the vessel endothelium *via* inflammation and promotes endotheliitis, coagulopathy and thrombosis[95,96]. Indeed, endotheliitis seems to be the aftermath of the complex interplay between SARS-CoV-2 and the host immune response. SARS-CoV-2 initiates an inappropriate inflammatory response that triggers the overproduction of chemical mediators and mounts cell-mediated interactions with a subsequent burst of a cytokine storm. Activated immune cells bind to the adhesion molecules expressed on the surface of endothelial cells and generate an inflammatory state. The complex and sustained activation of cellular downstream signaling pathways mediated by pro-inflammatory cytokines drives SIRS, which affects the endothelium. The integrity of the endothelial barrier is compromised, thus promoting endothelial capillary leak and interstitial oedema. Normal endothelial function is also disrupted due to the production of free radicals, the reduction of nitric oxide (NO) levels and the decrease of the endothelial NO synthase activity. Through impairment of endothelial function, NO dysregulation and increased oxidative stress lead to maldistribution of microvascular blood flow, eventually resulting in abnormal vascular tone, attenuated endothelium-dependent vasodilation, compromised tissue oxygen delivery and tissue hypoxia[97,98]. In addition, dysfunctional endothelial cells may create a procoagulant milieu, by triggering fibrin formation as well as platelet adhesion and aggregation. These derangements alter local hemorheological conditions and promote microcirculatory stasis, microthrombi formation and capillary plugging. The generalized hypercoagulable state leads to maldistribution of tissue perfusion and microcirculatory ischemia, further aggravating tissue hypoxia[97]. The reduced peripheral perfusion due to the aforementioned endothelial dysfunction affects multiple systems and may result in multi-organ failure. The liver is not left intact throughout this process and subsequently ALI emerges[98,99].

DILI

ICU patients present several unique characteristics which render them much more susceptible to the development of DILI, compared to common ward patients. First of all, ICU patients typically have multiple co-morbidities and require treatment with numerous pharmacologic agents. Oftentimes, complex drug-combination strategies are employed in an attempt to cope with infections due to multi-drug resistant microorganisms[100]. However, polypharmacy exposes them to the risk of many potential drug-drug interactions[101]. Second, their ICU stay is usually prolonged, thus mandating long-course treatment[102]. Furthermore, due to their underlying critical condition, drug pharmacokinetics are substantially modified and are therefore unpredictable, increasing DILI risk[103]. Additionally, when considering the co-existence of other causes of liver injury that are almost invariably present in ICU patients with COVID-19, it becomes evident that the risk of DILI is further accentuated.

A variety of drugs used in the ICU for the treatment of COVID-19 patients could potentially lead to liver injury. Acetaminophen is a drug widely used in the ICU with well-documented hepatotoxic properties, which may confer liver injury even at lower than maximum daily recommended doses[104]. Besides, ICU patients with COVID-19, especially those with ARDS and on invasive MV, are particularly prone to bacterial infections and other opportunistic super-infections and are therefore treated with several antibiotics and antifungals. However, many of the antibiotics prescribed in the ICU carry an inherent risk of DILI, such as penicillins, cephalosporins, fluoroquinolones, macrolides and tetracyclines [105,106]. The same holds true for antifungal agents with triazoles demonstrating the highest potential for hepatotoxicity[106,107].

Furthermore, antiviral drugs used in the treatment of COVID-19 have been implicated in the development of ALI. The effect of antiviral treatment on liver function was studied in critically ill patients with COVID-19 in a retrospective cohort study and it was concluded that the overall use of antivirals was associated with increased risk of ALI[108]. Remdesivir is the sole antiviral drug currently approved for COVID-19 treatment, although its use and benefits are still under debate[109]. Early reports from studies examining compassionate use of remdesivir indicated that hepatotoxicity was

among one of the most frequent adverse events observed during remdesivir treatment. It manifested as an increase in transaminase levels, which resulted in discontinuation of the drug in some cases[110,111]. A randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled multicenter trial from China also reported increases in aminotransferase or bilirubin levels with remdesivir, sometimes leading to premature discontinuation of therapy[112]. However, the authors concluded that, overall, remdesivir was adequately tolerated and the serious adverse events tended to be lower in the remdesivir group than in the placebo group[112]. According to a systematic review and meta-analysis, the use of remdesivir frequently resulted in elevated transaminases with the incidence of DILI being 15.2% among COVID-19 patients receiving remdesivir[113]. Remdesivir was also found to confer an increased risk of ALI in a study analyzing data derived from VigiBase, a pharmacovigilance global database system available from the World Health Organization[114]. Indeed, the most frequently reported adverse effects related to remdesivir were increased liver enzymes, mainly transaminases and to a lesser extent bilirubin. Of note, most cases were deemed serious by virtue of requiring hospitalization or resulting in prolonged hospital stay[114]. Other studies have also shown that remdesivir can cause hepatocellular injury, but it seems that in most cases ALI is mild, asymptomatic and not clinically apparent; it is not associated with jaundice and does not progress to severe liver damage or failure, while it is characterized by low discontinuation rates and reversibility after discontinuation[115-119]. Nevertheless, remdesivir's use in the ICU is strictly limited in patients with severe COVID-19 who are not on MV[120].

Apart from antiviral drugs, immunomodulatory therapies have been put forward as therapeutic options for COVID-19. Tocilizumab, which is an anti-IL-6 receptor monoclonal antibody, is among the most utilized ones. It has been used in patients with respiratory deterioration and high oxygen requirements and has been associated with a reduction in mortality and need for intubation, when combined with corticosteroid use and administered early in the disease course[121-123]. However, its use has been associated with the development of a hepatocellular pattern of DILI, characterized by a mild to moderate elevation of transaminases in most cases[124-126]. The observed hepatotoxicity has been reported to be dose-dependent and generally transient[119]. Moreover, owing to the fact that tocilizumab induces immunosuppression, it should be used with caution, since it can increase the risk of infectious complications and may cause reactivation of hepatitis B virus (HBV) in patients with latent infections[127,128]. Thus, clinicians should always keep in mind that tocilizumab-induced ALI could also potentially arise from HBV reactivation[14].

Furthermore, low molecular weight heparins are among the most frequently used regimens in the ICU. Heparin-induced hepatotoxicity has been described in the literature, but is generally mild, transient and self-limited and does not warrant discontinuation of heparin therapy, which is an essential component of COVID-19 treatment[118,119,129-131]. Likewise, the use of systemic corticosteroids, which are routinely recommended in mechanically ventilated patients with COVID-19 and ARDS, has been rarely associated with DILI[119,120,132]. Moreover, amiodarone, which is frequently used in the ICU setting as an antiarrhythmic drug to terminate supraventricular and ventricular tachyarrhythmias, is well-known for its hepatotoxic effects and could thus contribute to the development of DILI[133].

Lastly, the use of anesthetic drugs deserves specific mention, since COVID-19 pandemic has posed unique challenges to intensivists with regard to sedative strategies. Oftentimes, achieving satisfactory and deep sedation in invasively mechanically ventilated patients has been proven problematic, since an inordinate resistance to standard sedative regimens has been typically observed. In order to overcome this impediment, ICU physicians have been compelled to resort to alternative methods of sedation[134]. As a result, ketamine has been increasingly used as a second-line anesthetic agent for long-term sedation, in combination with the standard course of sedative and analgesic treatment. However, there have been several reports associating the prolonged infusion of ketamine in high doses with cases of hepatotoxicity[40,135-138]. The resulting ALI manifests in the form of cholestatic liver injury, which may further progress to the development of secondary sclerosing cholangitis. In general, ketamine infusion requires prolonged period of administration and high total cumulative doses in order to exert its cholangiotoxic effect[40,135]. The postulated mechanism through which ketamine induces or exacerbates cholestatic liver injury includes bile stasis, which promotes the precipitation of the water-insoluble norketamine (the main active metabolite of ketamine) within the biliary tree, ultimately resulting in biliary tract dysfunction and leading to biliary strictures, biliary obstruction, cholangitis or even secondary biliary cirrhosis[40,136]. In brief, the blockade of the N-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA) receptors in smooth muscle cells by ketamine favours bile stasis and bile duct dilation, while the ketamine-induced contraction of the sphincter of Oddi increases flow resistance within the biliary tree, thus further aggravating bile accumulation. Meanwhile, bile stasis is additionally exacerbated by gall bladder dyskinesia, which is caused by the ketamine-mediated blockade of NMDA receptors in the dorsal motor nucleus of the vagal nerve[40]. These phenomena collectively establish the ideal predisposing conditions for the precipitation of norketamine and the resultant biliary tract injury. Notably, the biliary system sustains multiple assaults, since the aforementioned sequential events act in concert with other COVID-19 related direct and indirect insults to the biliary tract, such as hypoxia, ischemia, hypoperfusion, hemodynamic instability, MV, SIRS or the virus SARS-CoV-2 itself[135,139,140].

Parenteral nutrition

Parenteral nutrition is often initiated in ICU patients in order to cover their metabolic demands in case of intolerance or contraindications to enteral feeding or whenever caloric targets are not met by enteral nutrition alone[141]. However, it has been demonstrated that ICU patients receiving total parenteral nutrition run a significantly greater risk of developing ALI than those receiving enteral nutrition[142]. Indeed, parenteral nutrition has been associated with liver injury, resulting in elevations of all liver enzymes, namely transaminases, ALP, GGT and bilirubin. Since parenteral nutrition by-passes the gut and results in decreased luminal content, it eliminates the hepatoprotective gut-derived signals, alters the enterohepatic circulation of bile acids and disrupts the normal crosstalk between the gut and the liver. Through various complex signaling pathways, parenteral nutrition causes cholestasis, steatosis, altered glucose and fat metabolism and hepatic fibrosis. Moreover, it interrupts gut mucosal integrity, causes derangements in the gut microbiota, promotes bacterial translocation and induces gut inflammation as well as increased cytokine release, all of which may contribute to further liver injury[143,144].

In addition, the lack of enteral feeding suppresses the secretion of cholecystokinin, gastrin and peptide YY. This leads to reduced intestinal motility, attenuated gallbladder contraction and decreased stimulation of bile flow, thus establishing the ideal environment for bacterial overgrowth, bile stasis, biliary sludging and subsequent bile duct obstruction. These conditions render the hepatocytes more susceptible to both direct and indirect toxic effects[144,145].

Besides, parenteral nutrition *per se* can be hepatotoxic through its components, mainly soy-derived phytosterols, manganese, aluminium and copper. Soybean oil-based lipid emulsions contain predominantly ω-6 polyunsaturated fatty acids which possess proinflammatory properties and lead to Kupffer cell activation, while phytosterols impede bile acid transport to the liver by antagonizing bile nuclear receptors. Furthermore, lipid emulsion infusion may be rarely complicated by fat overload syndrome with deleterious effects to the liver and other systemic organs[144,145].

Another potential risk of parenteral nutrition is energetic overfeeding, which increases the hazard for hepatobiliary complications[146]. Similarly, the strategy of combining parenteral with enteral nutrition, that may sometimes be employed to optimize nutritional intake in ICU patients, carries the risk of overfeeding, which predisposes to hepatic steatosis and hepatitis[141,145].

On the other side of the spectrum lies underfeeding of ICU patients, which may be related to various factors, such as feeding intolerance, hemodynamic instability, underestimation of caloric needs, frequent feeding interruptions due to diagnostic procedures or therapeutic interventions[147]. Underfeeding may contribute to a decrease in serum albumin concentration, which is a frequent underlying finding in ICU patients. Albumin levels reflect the liver's synthetic function and hypoalbuminaemia is associated with worse outcomes in critically ill patients[148].

Direct cytopathic viral effect

It has been postulated that ALI may be caused by direct viral invasion, infection and damage of hepatocytes. On this account, SARS-CoV-2 may exert direct cytopathic effects on hepatic cells, by causing lysis or promoting apoptosis and necrosis[18]. This hypothesis has been supported after identifying typical ultrastructural features and histopathological lesions of viral infection in postmortem liver biopsies of 2 cases with elevated transaminases[149]. However, the low expression level of angiotensin converting enzyme 2 (ACE2) receptors on the surface of hepatocytes, as opposed to the enriched ACE2 expression in cholangiocytes, could not support the theory of SARS-CoV-2 hepatotropism; instead, it rather implied that cholangiocytes could be targeted by SARS-CoV-2 or that alternative receptors on hepatocytes other than ACE2 could serve as the cell entry points of the virus [150]. Subsequent research revealed the presence of three SARS-CoV-2 interacting host receptors in different parts of the liver tissue, namely ACE2, transmembrane serine protease 2 and paired basic amino acid cleaving enzyme (FURIN), thus endorsing the possibility that SARS-CoV-2 may actually cause direct cytopathic injury to hepatocytes[151]. To date, the direct cytopathic viral effect has not been firmly established yet, whereas in the ICU setting this proposed mechanism does not seem to play a prominent role in the observed ALI.

It needs to be emphasized that, although there are several viruses displaying some form of hepatotropism, there may be considerable heterogeneity among them. This could be due to the fact that the immune responses mounted by the host against the virus may differ significantly depending on whether the virus is cytopathic or not, as well as on which immune evasion mechanisms are adopted by the virus, in conjunction with other factors, like impaired immunity or high viral load[92]. Furthermore, the pattern of the observed changes in transaminases during SARS-CoV-2 infection differs from the liver injury pattern of other epidemic viruses, which result in a much steeper curve of aminotransferase elevations owing to massive parenchymal necrosis[18].

Given that the mechanisms of COVID-19 induced ALI still remain largely unclear, our current understanding is limited with regard to the exact pathophysiology behind the liver injury caused by SARS-CoV-2 and how this differs or resembles the effects of other hepatotropic viruses. Even more so, data regarding the potential discrepancies in the hepatotropism of the different SARS-CoV-2 strains are lacking; hence, it would be intriguing for researchers to investigate the possible different effects that are exerted by different strains of SARS-CoV-2 on the liver and identify any associated variations in the

pathophysiology and clinical course of ALI.

LIVER HISTOPATHOLOGY IN COVID-19: IS THERE A LINK WITH PATHOPHYSIOLOGICAL MECHANISMS IN ALI?

It could be assumed that the underlying pathophysiological mechanism of ALI might be postulated based on the findings of pathological studies. However, such studies are generally inconclusive, since a firm and indisputable cause of liver injury cannot be safely deduced from histopathological reports.

As a matter of fact, histopathological findings from postmortem liver biopsy specimens have shown moderate microvesicular steatosis and mild lobular and portal activity[152]. These findings could be compatible either with direct SARS-CoV-2 infection of the liver or with DILI, but they are not conclusive in terms of supporting a definite cause of liver injury. Besides, the concomitant finding of overactivated T cells in the peripheral blood, with increased expression of proinflammatory markers and high concentration of cytotoxic granules, most likely points towards an immune-mediated injury rather than a direct cytopathic effect[152]. In another liver biopsy, the findings of mild vesicular steatosis and watery degeneration in some hepatocytes were attributed to ischemia and hypoxia, while the investigators also reported the presence of a few inflammatory cells in the hepatic sinuses, namely neutrophils, plasma cells and Kupffer cells[25].

Postmortem liver tissue biopsies from two COVID-19 cases with elevated transaminases have actually shown typical lesions of viral infection, suggestive of a direct cytopathic effect of SARS-CoV-2 on liver cells[149]. In particular, ultrastructural examination *via* transmission electron microscopy revealed that typical SARS-CoV-2 particles with corona-like spike structures were abundantly present in the cytoplasm of hepatocytes, indicating that the virus can both enter and replicate in hepatocytes. These infected hepatocytes showed cytopathic features, such as marked mitochondria swelling, endoplasmic reticulum dilation, decrease of glycogen granules and damage of the cell membrane. Histologically, plenty apoptotic hepatocytes were observed, as well as binuclear or a few multinuclear syncytial hepatocytes. Other findings included moderate microvesicular and mild macrovesicular steatosis, moderate focal lobular inflammation and mild portal inflammation with predominantly lymphocytic infiltrates[149].

Besides, in post-mortem needle core biopsies from livers, centrilobular sinusoidal dilation, mild lobular lymphocytic infiltration and patchy hepatic necrosis were mainly observed[153]. Sinusoidal dilation is a rather frequent non-specific finding observed in liver biopsies of terminally ill hospitalized patients and is often attributed to reduced venous ouflow in the hepatic veins as a result of passive liver congestion in the setting of congestive heart failure[13].

Finally, an Italian study of 48 postmortem liver biopsies reported histopathological findings suggestive of diffuse vascular alterations characterized by marked derangement of the intrahepatic vasculature and varying degrees of occlusive thrombosis[154]. Specifically, there was an increase in the number of portal vein branches, coupled with severe luminal dilation and wall fibrosis. This proliferative process was accompanied by partial or complete luminal thrombosis of portal and sinusoidal vessels, portal vein endotheliitis and portal vein wall fibrosclerosis. Steatosis was also observed in more than half of the specimens, while SARS-CoV-2 was detected in most of the samples either within blood clots or in the cytoplasm of endothelial cells[154].

PREDISPOSING FACTORS FOR ALI

COVID-19 severity has been reported to be one of the main risk factors for the development of ALI in COVID-19 patients[155]. Indeed, in a systematic review and meta-analysis it was found that increasing levels of COVID-19 severity were associated with a higher risk of developing ALI and more pronounced gastrointestinal symptoms[156]. ICU patients are more prone to developing liver impairment. This was evidenced by a meta-analysis which reported that biomarkers of liver function were significantly elevated in patients with severe and fatal forms of COVID-19 and could potentially portend a progression towards multiple organ failure, when combined with other hematologic, biochemical and immunological biomarkers[157]. Besides, higher incidence of ALI has been observed in patients with more extensive pulmonary lesions on computed tomography (CT) imaging reflected by higher CT scores, which in turn correlate with COVID-19 clinical severity[158,159].

Furthermore, pre-existing liver disease has been recognized as a predisposing factor for ALI, especially in critically ill patients with COVID-19, given the fact that patients with pre-existing liver disease, particularly those with cirrhosis, run a greater risk of hospitalization and mortality[160]. Metabolic-associated fatty liver disease has been shown to be an independent predictor for the development of mild and moderate ALI[161]. Likewise, in another patient series, metabolic-associated fatty liver disease, together with high body mass index, prevailed in the majority of patients with persistent liver injury[162]. However, it still remains controversial whether metabolic-associated fatty

liver disease is also a marker of disease severity, progression and mortality[161,162]. Shao *et al*[163] reported that the presence of fatty liver disease was associated with a higher risk of ALI in COVID-19 patients, while the presence of cirrhosis incurred an increased risk of disease progression[163]. Along the same lines, in another single-center retrospective study from Shanghai, low liver CT density, suggestive of fatty infiltration and steatosis, was shown to be a risk factor of liver injury, together with COVID-19 severity, male sex and medications, such as lopinavir/ritonavir, glucocorticoids and thymopeptides[164].

In their multicenter study involving 112 liver transplant recipients, Rabiee *et al*[37] found that ALI was associated with a higher risk for ICU admission and higher mortality in COVID-19 liver transplant recipients[37]. Interestingly, when compared to a matched control group of non-transplant patients with chronic liver disease, the incidence of ALI was higher in patients with chronic liver disease (47.5%) than in liver transplant recipients (34.6%). On multivariate analysis, younger age, metabolic syndrome, Hispanic ethnicity, administration of vasopressors and antibiotic use emerged as independent risk factors for ALI. On the other hand, non-Hispanic white liver transplant recipients had a lower risk of ALI. With regard to immunosuppressants, reducing tacrolimus or withholding mycophenolate did not increase the risk of ALI, while acute cellular rejection occurred in only one patient of the cohort. Overall, it was concluded that reduction in immunosuppression therapy was not associated with ALI or risk of mortality, thus immunosuppression can be safely modified if deemed necessary[37].

Several prediction models have been proposed in order to estimate the risk of liver injury. For instance, it has been reported that a prediction model incorporating plateletcrit, retinol-binding protein and carbon dioxide combining power could sufficiently predict the occurrence of ALI in patients with moderate COVID-19 in a timely manner[165]. Another risk scoring system was proposed by Shao *et al*[163] with the intention to predict ALI risk, which included three variables upon admission, namely ALT, CRP and lactate dehydrogenase[163]. In the same study, the authors noted that male patients were more likely to develop ALI. Interestingly, the presence of hypertension was found to convey an increased risk of ALI only for patients without any prior liver disease, but not for patients suffering from pre-existing chronic liver disease[163].

In a prospective cohort study, male sex, older age, diabetes mellitus and lymphopenia emerged as independent risk factors that could predict liver dysfunction among COVID-19 patients[166]. Other investigators concluded that male sex, along with high D-dimers and high neutrophil percentage, were the most important risk factors that could predict the development of ALI in COVID-19 patients[167]. Similarly, it was demonstrated that male sex and CPR were independently associated with liver injury [168], while another study found that male sex, high levels of serum CRP and a high neutrophil to lymphocyte ratio were potential risk factors for ALI[169]. A subsequent systematic review and meta-analysis corroborated the above findings by confirming that male sex and low lymphocyte count were associated with ALI occurrence[170].

Male sex has almost invariably been associated with the risk of liver injury and the severity of the disease[166-170]. The observed discrepancy between the genders may be related to genetic and hormonal factors, which result in lower viral load levels, milder grades of inflammation and better immune responses in women than men[171].

Finally, metabolic syndrome, which is a constellation of hypertension, hyperglycemia, dyslipidemia and obesity, has also been proposed as a predisposing factor for ALI[172]. In a recent retrospective cohort study, being overweight was a risk factor for liver injury, whereas obesity was associated with severe liver injury[173].

THERAPEUTIC STRATEGY

It should be emphasized that no specific therapy for COVID-19 induced ALI exists. Therefore, the therapeutic approach initially lies in prevention and is exclusively supportive once ALI ensues.

In the ICU setting, the main pillar of the overall ALI therapeutic strategy for critically ill COVID-19 patients consists of preventive measures. First and foremost, a detailed medical history should be obtained. This should include a comprehensive review of the medical background for concomitant liver diseases, other underlying comorbidities, use of drugs in the near past that are known to induce ALI, or exposure to alcohol, herbs and chemicals[22]. Next, high level of clinical vigilance is warranted. ICU physicians should perform meticulous clinical examination on a regular daily basis, or even at repeated intervals throughout the day if deemed necessary, in order to check for and recognize early signs and symptoms of impeding organ dysfunction. In parallel, COVID-19 patients should have regular lab tests performed to closely monitor liver enzymes and promptly identify any potential liver test abnormalities.

Among the precautionary measures to avoid ALI, prompt restoration of central hemodynamics is of paramount importance, since it will allow the hemodynamic stabilization of the patient in due time and prevent liver ischemia. In patients with hemodynamic instability, fluid resuscitation constitutes the mainstay of treatment in the attempt to restore hypovolemia. In general, a conservative over a liberal fluid strategy is advocated in critically ill COVID-19 patients with shock, provided that hypovolemia

has been addressed. Caution should be exercised so as to avoid volume overload, especially in patients with cardiac dysfunction. In order to achieve optimal loading conditions, a multimodal approach should be adopted, whereby fluid resuscitation should be guided by physical examination, follow-up of vital signs, lactate levels, dynamic parameters and point-of-care ultrasonography[120]. It has been proposed that a systematic approach incorporating focused echocardiography, lung scanning and abdominal ultrasound may facilitate the bedside evaluation of cardiac function, volume status and fluid responsiveness, while at the same time it can aid in the differential diagnosis of an undifferentiated shock, as well as in the detection of biliary or hepatic sepsis, intraabdominal fluid collection and other acute pathologies[174-176].

When hemodynamic stability is not achieved after fluid resuscitation, the administration of vasopressors is indicated. Norepinephrine should be the first-line vasopressor, while vasopressin is recommended as a second-line agent if hemodynamic status does not improve. In case of persistent hypoperfusion despite adequate fluid loading and use of vasopressors, initiation of intravenous inotropes, preferably dobutamine, is advised, particularly if there is evidence of cardiac dysfunction. Excessively high doses of vasopressors and inotropes should be avoided. Titration of vasoactive agents should generally target a mean arterial pressure of 60-65 mmHg. The ultimate goal is to achieve and maintain adequate end-organ perfusion by restoring arterial pressure and optimizing cardiac output [120].

Furthermore, increased awareness is warranted for the early identification and management of sepsis. Immediate control of the source of sepsis is crucial, along with the optimization of the patient's hemodynamic profile. Prompt and appropriate antibiotic therapy is the cornerstone in the management of patients with sepsis. In case of suspected infection, ICU physicians should start early antibiotic treatment, initially with an empiric broad spectrum antibiotic and subsequently modify antimicrobial therapy according to culture results and susceptibilities, by de-escalating or changing to a narrow spectrum antimicrobial which targets the specific pathogen[177]. The appropriate antibiotic regimen should be selected with caution, as several common antibiotic agents may carry a high risk for ALI or other adverse events. Moreover, the clinicians should be aware of drug-drug interactions and be alert for potential hepatotoxicity reactions[178]. In any case, judicious antibiotic stewardship is highly recommended.

Besides, the importance of using pharmacologic thromboprophylaxis in critically ill patients cannot be overemphasized. As a matter of fact, thromboprophylaxis is strongly recommended in the recently published surviving sepsis campaign guidelines on the management of adults with COVID-19 in the ICU[120].

Hypoxia should be consistently addressed and corrected by administering the minimum amount of supplemental oxygen that will achieve a target of peripheral oxygen saturation (SpO_2) between 92% and 96%. Regarding patients who are on invasive MV, specific attention ought to be paid to the implementation of lung-protective ventilation strategies. Low tidal volumes (4-8 mL/Kg of predicted body weight) should be applied, coupled with a target of plateau pressure < 30 cm H_2O and a driving pressure < 14 cm H_2O[120]. It should be emphasized that the volume- and pressure- limited ventilation strategy may lead to hypercapnia. Despite the fact that the strategy of permissive hypercapnia is frequently adopted in the ICU, clinicians should bear in mind that hypercapnia, combined with persistent hypoxia which is frequently observed in ARDS patients with COVID-19, may cause profound pulmonary arterial vasoconstriction, increase right ventricular afterload and jeopardize hemodynamic status with grave consequences for the liver[69,177]. It should also be noted that oftentimes ventilatory management needs to be individualized, given that different patient profiles exist with diverse lung mechanics and discrepant responses to a certain ventilatory strategy[179]. In these cases, the ventilatory approach will need to diverge from the conventional form of ventilation in ARDS. Along these lines, although a higher over a lower PEEP strategy is generally recommended in ARDS, clinicians should avoid using very high PEEP, since this could compromise right ventricular function and adversely affect liver function. Thus, close monitoring is advised so that impending cardiopulmonary deterioration is promptly recognized[179]. Furthermore, appropriate ventilator settings should be meticulously adjusted in order to minimize or prevent auto-PEEP, which can further aggravate right ventricular performance[72]. Prone positioning for 12-16 h *per* day is also recommended as a measure to improve hypoxia[120]. In cases of severe hypoxia with persistent patient-ventilator dyssynchrony or persistently elevated plateau pressures, neuromuscular blocking agents should be employed either as intermittent boluses or continuous infusions, as needed[120]. Finally, after other options have failed to enhance oxygenation, it is reasonable to apply rescue strategies. Alveolar recruitment maneuvers could be used with caution and under close monitoring for barotrauma and cardiovascular collapse, while a trial of an inhaled pulmonary vasodilator might also be attempted[120]. In cases of refractory ARDS with or without hemodynamic shock, veno-venous ECMO might be considered as a last resort to improve oxygenation and restore hemodynamic stability[120,179]. It is also considered prudent to monitor intra-abdominal pressure for potential persistent MV-related increases and address accordingly[86].

Besides, specific attention should be paid to sedation practices used in the ICU setting. If possible, administration of multiple sedative agents should be avoided in order to decrease potential risk of side-effects and drug-drug interactions. Moreover, sedatives should be titrated to the lowest effective doses and should not be administered for prolonged duration[134]. Daily sedation intervals should be applied

when appropriate[180]. Regarding ketamine, a strategy of withholding use of this agent is generally advised due to its reported adverse effects. If used, ketamine should be administered at the lowest possible doses and for brief time periods[135,136].

Nutritional status should be regularly assessed and early enteral nutrition should be initiated[181]. Parenteral nutrition should be refrained and used only in cases where enteral nutrition is not possible or contraindicated[181,182]. Caution should be exercised in order to avoid under- or over-feeding. Any nutrient deficiencies should be replaced[181]. Glycemic control should be optimized. Provided that it does not cause hypoglycemic episodes, early and intensive intravenous insulin therapy is encouraged in the ICU setting, since it reduces the risk of cholestatic liver dysfunction and the formation of biliary sludge[183,184].

In the event of ALI occurrence, every effort should be focused on restraining its progression and thus minimizing any ALI-associated consequences. Once ALI arises, it is important to seek and recognize the underlying etiology and address the responsible precipitating factor in a timely fashion. Currently, there are no specific therapies that mitigate or reverse COVID-19 induced ALI. Nevertheless, prompt diagnosis of ALI and initiation of supportive treatment is crucial. In cases of mild or moderate ALI, general supportive measures with close monitoring of liver chemistries should suffice and, in most cases, ALI will eventually subside[185].

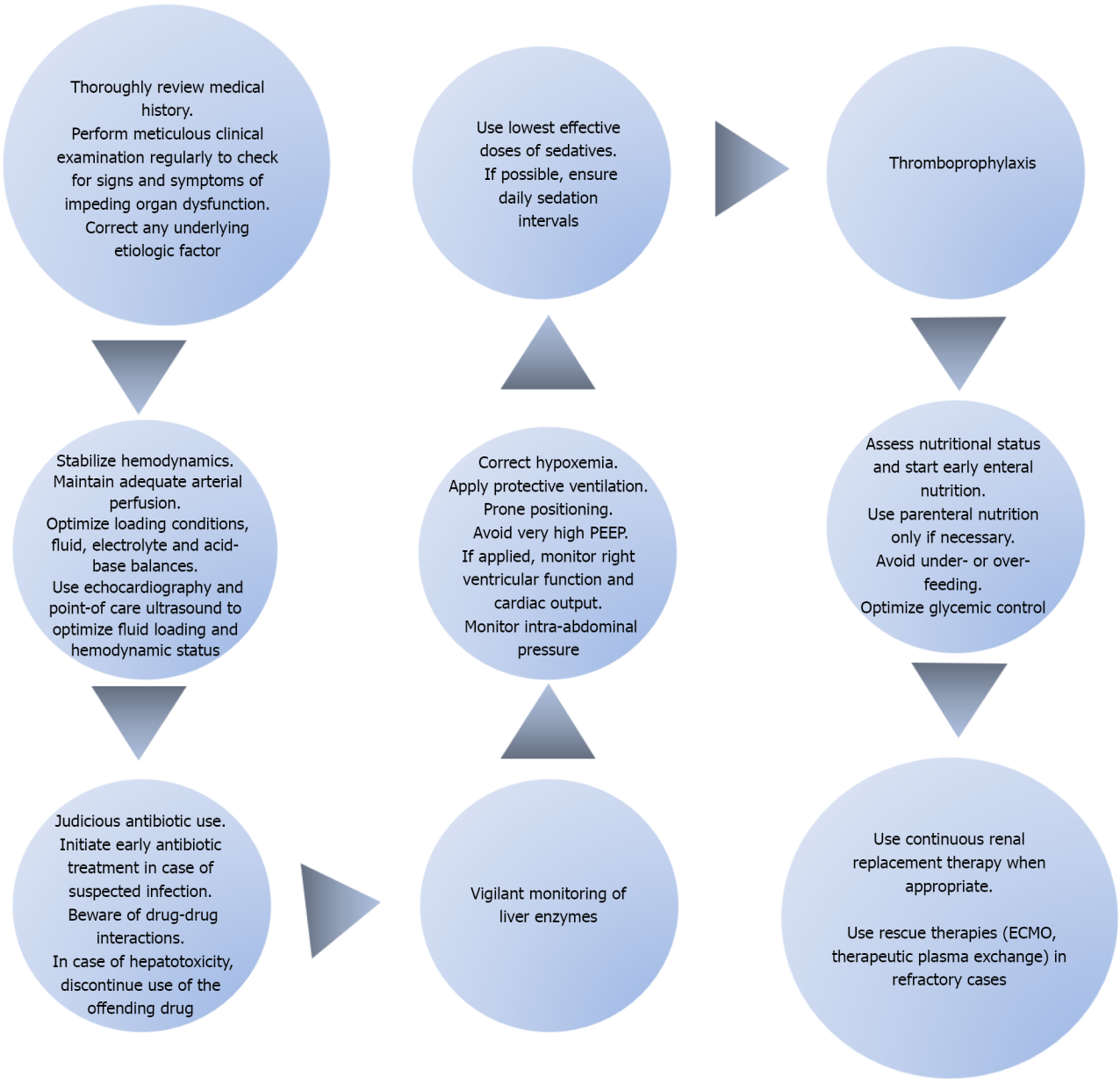
Infrequently, cases of severe ALI may occur. In such a scenario, supportive treatment should aim at preserving liver perfusion and microcirculation, by optimizing circulatory and respiratory conditions, relieving liver congestion, restoring electrolyte and acid-base balances and eliminating any underlying precipitating factor. If DILI is suspected, the administration of the causative pharmacologic agent should be discontinued[178]. Time of withdrawal of the culprit hepatotoxic factor is of major importance; hence, high level of clinical awareness is advised along with vigilant monitoring of liver enzymes[185]. With regard to acetaminophen toxicity, therapy with N-acetylcysteine should be promptly instituted by administering either an intravenous or an oral acetylcysteine regimen[186].

During the COVID-19 pandemic, the notion of continuous renal replacement therapy as a blood purification method to combat cytokine storm has been revived. In COVID-19 clinical practice, continuous renal replacement therapy can be used for septic patients with volume overload, patients with severe metabolic acidosis and those with electrolyte disturbances or progressive azotemia. Apart from its well-established indications, it has been proposed that continuous renal replacement therapy might have a potential role in critical COVID-19 cases with an excessive cytokine storm by removing cytokines and other inflammatory mediators[187,188]. Therapeutic plasma exchange has also been put forward as a promising adjunctive rescue therapy in the battle of COVID-19 critical illness, which could mitigate cytokine storm effects and thus reverse end-organ failure[189,190]. Finally, ECMO has been used as a salvage therapy for both respiratory and circulatory support[191].

Figure 2 depicts the steps of the therapeutic approach that should be consistently followed and addressed by ICU physicians both for the prevention and treatment of COVID-19 induced ALI.

CONCLUSION

Despite the conflicting estimates of its prevalence, ALI represents a common and often under-recognized complication of COVID-19 in ICU patients that deserves more clinical attention, considering the fact that it is intertwined with significant clinical ramifications and poor patient outcomes. COVID-19 induced ALI may present with varying degrees of clinical severity. Increased clinical vigilance is therefore advised, since it can easily be overlooked. In the ICU setting, several pathophysiological mechanisms may be implicated in the development of COVID-19 induced ALI. These may act either independently or more frequently synergistically. In the latter case, the effect exerted on the liver is cumulative, thus increasing the severity of ALI. Therefore, it is of utmost importance for ICU clinicians to ensure that they consistently comply with certain predefined bundles of preventive and therapeutic measures in order to alleviate the burden of COVID-19 associated ALI in ICU patients. Ongoing research on the particular scientific field will further elucidate the pathophysiology behind ALI and address unresolved issues, in the hope of mitigating the tremendous health consequences imposed by COVID-19 on ICU patients.



DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6662 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2022.

Figure 2 Steps of the intensive care unit therapeutic approach in patients with coronavirus disease 2019 induced acute liver injury. The intensive care unit (ICU) therapeutic approach for coronavirus disease 2019 patients with acute liver injury (ALI) lies in preventive measures and is exclusively supportive once ALI ensues. After obtaining a detailed medical history, a thorough physical examination should be performed on a regular basis. Upon recognition of any signs of impeding liver dysfunction, the possible etiologic factor should be systematically sought and appropriately addressed. Hemodynamic stabilization of the patient is of paramount importance. The goal is to maintain adequate arterial perfusion in order to prevent liver ischemia. The use of echocardiography and point-of-care ultrasonography will help determine the hemodynamic status and optimize loading conditions. It is important to constantly maintain fluid, electrolyte and acid-base balances. Furthermore, early identification and management of sepsis cannot be overemphasized. Prompt initiation of appropriate antibiotic therapy is the mainstay of sepsis management. Antibiotics should be used judiciously with an increased level of awareness for possible drug-drug interactions. In case of hepatotoxicity, the administration of the responsible pharmacologic agent should be discontinued. Close monitoring of liver enzymes is advised at all times. Furthermore, hypoxia should be consistently addressed and corrected. In mechanically ventilated patients, a lung-protective ventilation strategy should be implemented with the use of low tidal volumes coupled with a target of plateau pressure < 30 cm H_2O. The application of very high positive end-expiratory pressure should be avoided because it could compromise right ventricular performance and precipitate passive liver congestion. Moreover, prone positioning is recommended in order to improve hypoxia. Intra-abdominal pressure should also be monitored so as to prevent any potential increases related to mechanical ventilation which could jeopardize liver function. Additionally, optimal sedation strategies should be applied with the lowest effective doses and daily sedation intervals. Thromboprophylaxis is strongly recommended as a preventive measure in all ICU patients. Besides that, nutritional status should be regularly assessed and efforts should focus on initiating early enteral feeding while avoiding parenteral nutrition. Under- or over- feeding should be avoided and glycemic control should be optimized. Finally, renal replacement therapy can be used whenever indicated. In refractory cases, rescue therapies may be employed with the use of extracorporeal membrane oxygenation and therapeutic plasma exchange in an attempt to provide circulatory and respiratory support and reverse end-organ failure. PEEP: Positive end-expiratory pressure; ECMO: Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Ventoulis I conceived and designed the study; Amoiridou P and Polyzogopoulou E contributed to the data acquisition, analysis and interpretation, drafted the manuscript with input from Abraham TP and Ventoulis I; Polyzogopoulou E contributed to the final layout of the table and figures; Abraham TP performed language editing of the manuscript; Abraham TP and Ventoulis I performed editing and critical revision of the manuscript; Polyzogopoulou E, Amoiridou P, Abraham TP and Ventoulis I approved the final version of the article.

Conflict-of-interest statement: All the authors report no relevant conflicts of interest for this article.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article that was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution NonCommercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: https://creativecommons.org/Licenses/by-nc/4.0/

Country/Territory of origin: Greece

ORCID number: Effie Polyzogopoulou 0000-0001-7585-1203; Pinelopi Amoiridou 0000-0001-9264-8215; Theodore P Abraham 0000-0003-3411-1334; Ioannis Ventoulis 0000-0002-7572-4527.

S-Editor: Fan JR
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Fan JR

REFERENCES

1 **Zhu N**, Zhang D, Wang W, Li X, Yang B, Song J, Zhao X, Huang B, Shi W, Lu R, Niu P, Zhan F, Ma X, Wang D, Xu W, Wu G, Gao GF, Tan W; China Novel Coronavirus Investigating and Research Team. A Novel Coronavirus from Patients with Pneumonia in China, 2019. *N Engl J Med* 2020; **382**: 727-733 [PMID: 31978945 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa2001017]
2 **Khalifa SAM**, Swilam MM, El-Wahed AAA, Du M, El-Seedi HHR, Kai G, Masry SHD, Abdel-Daim MM, Zou X, Halabi MF, Alsharif SM, El-Seedi HR. Beyond the Pandemic: COVID-19 Pandemic Changed the Face of Life. *Int J Environ Res Public Health* 2021; **18** [PMID: 34070448 DOI: 10.3390/ijerph18115645]
3 **Fairman KA**. Pandemics, policy, and the power of paradigm: will COVID-19 lead to a new scientific revolution? *Ann Epidemiol* 2022; **69**: 17-23 [PMID: 35231588 DOI: 10.1016/j.annepidem.2022.02.005]
4 **Mallah SI**, Ghorab OK, Al-Salmi S, Abdellatif OS, Tharmaratnam T, Iskandar MA, Sefen JAN, Sidhu P, Atallah B, El-Lababidi R, Al-Qahtani M. COVID-19: breaking down a global health crisis. *Ann Clin Microbiol Antimicrob* 2021; **20**: 35 [PMID: 34006330 DOI: 10.1186/s12941-021-00438-7]
5 **Otto SP**, Day T, Arino J, Colijn C, Dushoff J, Li M, Mechai S, Van Domselaar G, Wu J, Earn DJD, Ogden NH. The origins and potential future of SARS-CoV-2 variants of concern in the evolving COVID-19 pandemic. *Curr Biol* 2021; **31**: R918-R929 [PMID: 34314723 DOI: 10.1016/j.cub.2021.06.049]
6 **Chavda VP**, Patel AB, Vaghasiya DD. SARS-CoV-2 variants and vulnerability at the global level. *J Med Virol* 2022; **94**: 2986-3005 [PMID: 35277864 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.27717]
7 **Peramo-Álvarez FP**, López-Zúñiga MÁ, López-Ruz MÁ. Medical sequels of COVID-19. *Med Clin (Engl Ed)* 2021; **157**: 388-394 [PMID: 34632064 DOI: 10.1016/j.medcle.2021.04.008]
8 **COVID-19 Excess Mortality Collaborators**. Estimating excess mortality due to the COVID-19 pandemic: a systematic analysis of COVID-19-related mortality, 2020-21. *Lancet* 2022; **399**: 1513-1536 [PMID: 35279232 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(21)02796-3]
9 **Zaman MS**, Sizemore RC. Diverse Manifestations of COVID-19: Some Suggested Mechanisms. *Int J Environ Res Public Health* 2021; **18** [PMID: 34574709 DOI: 10.3390/ijerph18189785]
10 **Long B**, Carius BM, Chavez S, Liang SY, Brady WJ, Koyfman A, Gottlieb M. Clinical update on COVID-19 for the emergency clinician: Presentation and evaluation. *Am J Emerg Med* 2022; **54**: 46-57 [PMID: 35121478 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajem.2022.01.028]
11 **Rosen HR**, O'Connell C, Nadim MK, DeClerck B, Sheibani S, DePasquale E, Sanossian N, Blodget E, Angell T. Extrapulmonary manifestations of severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus-2 infection. *J Med Virol* 2021; **93**: 2645-2653 [PMID: 33090515 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.26595]
12 **Cho J**, Lee J, Sia CH, Koo CS, Tan BY, Hong W, Choi E, Goh X, Chai L, Chandran NS, Chua HR, Chan BP, Muthiah M, Low TT, Yap ES, Lahiri M. Extrapulmonary manifestations and complications of severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus 2 infection: a systematic review. *Singapore Med J* 2021 [PMID: 34544216 DOI: 10.11622/smedj.2021100]
13 **Li Y**, Xiao SY. Hepatic involvement in COVID-19 patients: Pathology, pathogenesis, and clinical implications. *J Med Virol* 2020; **92**: 1491-1494 [PMID: 32369204 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.25973]
14 **Saviano A**, Wrensch F, Ghany MG, Baumert TF. Liver Disease and Coronavirus Disease 2019: From Pathogenesis to Clinical Care. *Hepatology* 2021; **74**: 1088-1100 [PMID: 33332624 DOI: 10.1002/hep.31684]
15 **Huang YK**, Li YJ, Li B, Wang P, Wang QH. Dysregulated liver function in SARS-CoV-2 infection: Current understanding and perspectives. *World J Gastroenterol* 2021; **27**: 4358-4370 [PMID: 34366609 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v27.i27.4358]
16 **Wu ZH**, Yang DL. A meta-analysis of the impact of COVID-19 on liver dysfunction. *Eur J Med Res* 2020; **25**: 54 [PMID:

33148326 DOI: 10.1186/s40001-020-00454-x]
17 **Omar AS**, Kaddoura R, Orabi B, Hanoura S. Impact of COVID-19 pandemic on liver, liver diseases, and liver transplantation programs in intensive care units. *World J Hepatol* 2021; **13**: 1215-1233 [PMID: 34786163 DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v13.i10.1215]
18 **Cichoż-Lach H**, Michalak A. Liver injury in the era of COVID-19. *World J Gastroenterol* 2021; **27**: 377-390 [PMID: 33584070 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v27.i5.377]
19 **Yang RX**, Zheng RD, Fan JG. Etiology and management of liver injury in patients with COVID-19. *World J Gastroenterol* 2020; **26**: 4753-4762 [PMID: 32921955 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v26.i32.4753]
20 **Tian D**, Ye Q. Hepatic complications of COVID-19 and its treatment. *J Med Virol* 2020; **92**: 1818-1824 [PMID: 32437004 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.26036]
21 **Lescot T**, Karvellas C, Beaussier M, Magder S. Acquired liver injury in the intensive care unit. *Anesthesiology* 2012; **117**: 898-904 [PMID: 22854981 DOI: 10.1097/ALN.0b013e318266c6df]
22 **Kwo PY**, Cohen SM, Lim JK. ACG Clinical Guideline: Evaluation of Abnormal Liver Chemistries. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2017; **112**: 18-35 [PMID: 27995906 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2016.517]
23 **Phipps MM**, Barraza LH, LaSota ED, Sobieszczyk ME, Pereira MR, Zheng EX, Fox AN, Zucker J, Verna EC. Acute Liver Injury in COVID-19: Prevalence and Association with Clinical Outcomes in a Large U.S. Cohort. *Hepatology* 2020; **72**: 807-817 [PMID: 32473607 DOI: 10.1002/hep.31404]
24 **Yip TC**, Lui GC, Wong VW, Chow VC, Ho TH, Li TC, Tse YK, Hui DS, Chan HL, Wong GL. Liver injury is independently associated with adverse clinical outcomes in patients with COVID-19. *Gut* 2021; **70**: 733-742 [PMID: 32641471 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2020-321726]
25 **Cai Q**, Huang D, Yu H, Zhu Z, Xia Z, Su Y, Li Z, Zhou G, Gou J, Qu J, Sun Y, Liu Y, He Q, Chen J, Liu L, Xu L. COVID-19: Abnormal liver function tests. *J Hepatol* 2020; **73**: 566-574 [PMID: 32298767 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2020.04.006]
26 **Hundt MA**, Deng Y, Ciarleglio MM, Nathanson MH, Lim JK. Abnormal Liver Tests in COVID-19: A Retrospective Observational Cohort Study of 1,827 Patients in a Major U.S. Hospital Network. *Hepatology* 2020; **72**: 1169-1176 [PMID: 32725890 DOI: 10.1002/hep.31487]
27 **Piano S**, Dalbeni A, Vettore E, Benfaremo D, Mattioli M, Gambino CG, Framba V, Cerruti L, Mantovani A, Martini A, Luchetti MM, Serra R, Cattelan A, Vettor R, Angeli P; COVID-LIVER study group. Abnormal liver function tests predict transfer to intensive care unit and death in COVID-19. *Liver Int* 2020; **40**: 2394-2406 [PMID: 32526083 DOI: 10.1111/liv.14565]
28 **Roedl K**, Jarczak D, Drolz A, Wichmann D, Boenisch O, de Heer G, Burdelski C, Frings D, Sensen B, Nierhaus A, Lütgehetmann M, Kluge S, Fuhrmann V. Severe liver dysfunction complicating course of COVID-19 in the critically ill: multifactorial cause or direct viral effect? *Ann Intensive Care* 2021; **11**: 44 [PMID: 33721137 DOI: 10.1186/s13613-021-00835-3]
29 **Huang H**, Li H, Chen S, Zhou X, Dai X, Wu J, Zhang J, Shao L, Yan R, Wang M, Wang J, Tu Y, Ge M. Prevalence and Characteristics of Hypoxic Hepatitis in COVID-19 Patients in the Intensive Care Unit: A First Retrospective Study. *Front Med (Lausanne)* 2020; **7**: 607206 [PMID: 33681238 DOI: 10.3389/fmed.2020.607206]
30 **Salık F**, Uzundere O, Bıçak M, Akelma H, Akgündüz M, Korhan Z, Kandemir D, Kaçar CK. Liver function as a predictor of mortality in COVID-19: A retrospective study. *Ann Hepatol* 2021; **26**: 100553 [PMID: 34624543 DOI: 10.1016/j.aohep.2021.100553]
31 **Arentz M**, Yim E, Klaff L, Lokhandwala S, Riedo FX, Chong M, Lee M. Characteristics and Outcomes of 21 Critically Ill Patients With COVID-19 in Washington State. *JAMA* 2020; **323**: 1612-1614 [PMID: 32191259 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2020.4326]
32 **Martinot M**, Eyriey M, Gravier S, Bonijoly T, Kayser D, Ion C, Mohseni-Zadeh M, Camara S, Dubois J, Haerrel E, Drouaine J, Kaiser J, Ongagna JC, Schieber-Pachart A, Kempf C; Centre Alsace COVID-19 Study Group. Predictors of mortality, ICU hospitalization, and extrapulmonary complications in COVID-19 patients. *Infect Dis Now* 2021; **51**: 518-525 [PMID: 34242842 DOI: 10.1016/j.idnow.2021.07.002]
33 **Sun JK**, Liu Y, Zou L, Zhang WH, Li JJ, Wang Y, Kan XH, Chen JD, Shi QK, Yuan ST. Acute gastrointestinal injury in critically ill patients with COVID-19 in Wuhan, China. *World J Gastroenterol* 2020; **26**: 6087-6097 [PMID: 33132657 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v26.i39.6087]
34 **Cardoso FS**, Pereira R, Germano N. Liver injury in critically ill patients with COVID-19: a case series. *Crit Care* 2020; **24**: 190 [PMID: 32366282 DOI: 10.1186/s13054-020-02924-4]
35 **Shousha HI**, Afify S, Maher R, Asem N, Fouad E, Mostafa EF, Medhat MA, Abdalazeem A, Elmorsy H, Aziz MM, Mohammed RS, Ibrahem M, Elgarem H, Omran D, Hassany M, Elsayed B, Abdelaziz AY, El Kassas M. Hepatic and gastrointestinal disturbances in Egyptian patients infected with coronavirus disease 2019: A multicentre cohort study. *World J Gastroenterol* 2021; **27**: 6951-6966 [PMID: 34790017 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v27.i40.6951]
36 **Currier E**, Dabaja M, Syed-Mohammed Jafri SM. Elevated liver enzymes in black COVID-19 patients linked to higher rates of ICU admittance and intubation compared to non-black patients. *Hepatology* 2021; **74** Suppl 1: 316A
37 **Rabiee A**, Sadowski B, Adeniji N, Perumalswami PV, Nguyen V, Moghe A, Latt NL, Kumar S, Aloman C, Catana AM, Bloom PP, Chavin KD, Carr RM, Dunn W, Chen VL, Aby ES, Debes JD, Dhanasekaran R; COLD Consortium. Liver Injury in Liver Transplant Recipients With Coronavirus Disease 2019 (COVID-19): U.S. Multicenter Experience. *Hepatology* 2020; **72**: 1900-1911 [PMID: 32964510 DOI: 10.1002/hep.31574]
38 **Roncati L**, Manenti A, Fabbiani L, Malagoli C, Nasillo V, Lusenti B, Lupi M, Zanelli G, Salviato T, Costantini M, Trenti T, Maiorana A. HSV1 viremia with fulminant hepatitis as opportunistic sequela in severe COVID-19. *Ann Hematol* 2022; **101**: 229-231 [PMID: 33458783 DOI: 10.1007/s00277-021-04417-y]
39 **Bütikofer S**, Lenggenhager D, Wendel Garcia PD, Maggio EM, Haberecker M, Reiner CS, Brüllmann G, Buehler PK, Gubler C, Müllhaupt B, Jüngst C, Morell B. Secondary sclerosing cholangitis as cause of persistent jaundice in patients with severe COVID-19. *Liver Int* 2021; **41**: 2404-2417 [PMID: 34018314 DOI: 10.1111/liv.14971]
40 **Wendel-Garcia PD**, Erlebach R, Hofmaenner DA, Camen G, Schuepbach RA, Jüngst C, Müllhaupt B, Bartussek J,

Buehler PK, Andermatt R, David S. Long-term ketamine infusion-induced cholestatic liver injury in COVID-19-associated acute respiratory distress syndrome. *Crit Care* 2022; **26**: 148 [PMID: 35606831 DOI: 10.1186/s13054-022-04019-8]

41 **Nardo AD**, Schneeweiss-Gleixner M, Bakail M, Dixon ED, Lax SF, Trauner M. Pathophysiological mechanisms of liver injury in COVID-19. *Liver Int* 2021; **41**: 20-32 [PMID: 33190346 DOI: 10.1111/liv.14730]

42 **Bertolini A**, van de Peppel IP, Bodewes FAJA, Moshage H, Fantin A, Farinati F, Fiorotto R, Jonker JW, Strazzabosco M, Verkade HJ, Peserico G. Abnormal Liver Function Tests in Patients With COVID-19: Relevance and Potential Pathogenesis. *Hepatology* 2020; **72**: 1864-1872 [PMID: 32702162 DOI: 10.1002/hep.31480]

43 **Jothimani D**, Venugopal R, Abedin MF, Kaliamoorthy I, Rela M. COVID-19 and the liver. *J Hepatol* 2020; **73**: 1231-1240 [PMID: 32553666 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2020.06.006]

44 **Garrido I**, Liberal R, Macedo G. Review article: COVID-19 and liver disease-what we know on 1st May 2020. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2020; **52**: 267-275 [PMID: 32402090 DOI: 10.1111/apt.15813]

45 **Schenk J**, van der Ven WH, Schuurmans J, Roerhorst S, Cherpanath TGV, Lagrand WK, Thoral P, Elbers PWG, Tuinman PR, Scheeren TWL, Bakker J, Geerts BF, Veelo DP, Paulus F, Vlaar APJ; Cardiovascular Dynamics Section of the ESICM. Definition and incidence of hypotension in intensive care unit patients, an international survey of the European Society of Intensive Care Medicine. *J Crit Care* 2021; **65**: 142-148 [PMID: 34148010 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcrc.2021.05.023]

46 **van der Ven WH**, Schuurmans J, Schenk J, Roerhorst S, Cherpanath TGV, Lagrand WK, Thoral P, Elbers PWG, Tuinman PR, Scheeren TWL, Bakker J, Geerts BF, Veelo DP, Paulus F, Vlaar APJ; Cardiovascular Dynamics Section of the ESICM. Monitoring, management, and outcome of hypotension in Intensive Care Unit patients, an international survey of the European Society of Intensive Care Medicine. *J Crit Care* 2022; **67**: 118-125 [PMID: 34749051 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcrc.2021.10.008]

47 **Salabei JK**, Asnake ZT, Ismail ZH, Charles K, Stanger GT, Abdullahi AH, Abraham AT, Okonoboh P. COVID-19 and the cardiovascular system: an update. *Am J Med Sci* 2022; **364**: 139-147 [PMID: 35151635 DOI: 10.1016/j.amjms.2022.01.022]

48 **Crudo VL**, Ahmed AI, Cowan EL, Shah DJ, Al-Mallah MH, Malahfji M. Acute and Subclinical Myocardial Injury in COVID-19. *Methodist Debakey Cardiovasc J* 2021; **17**: 22-30 [PMID: 34992721 DOI: 10.14797/mdcvj.1038]

49 **Siripanthong B**, Nazarian S, Muser D, Deo R, Santangeli P, Khanji MY, Cooper LT Jr, Chahal CAA. Recognizing COVID-19-related myocarditis: The possible pathophysiology and proposed guideline for diagnosis and management. *Heart Rhythm* 2020; **17**: 1463-1471 [PMID: 32387246 DOI: 10.1016/j.hrthm.2020.05.001]

50 **Harjola VP**, Mullens W, Banaszewski M, Bauersachs J, Brunner-La Rocca HP, Chioncel O, Collins SP, Doehner W, Filippatos GS, Flammer AJ, Fuhrmann V, Lainscak M, Lassus J, Legrand M, Masip J, Mueller C, Papp Z, Parissis J, Platz E, Rudiger A, Ruschitzka F, Schäfer A, Seferovic PM, Skouri H, Yilmaz MB, Mebazaa A. Organ dysfunction, injury and failure in acute heart failure: from pathophysiology to diagnosis and management. A review on behalf of the Acute Heart Failure Committee of the Heart Failure Association (HFA) of the European Society of Cardiology (ESC). *Eur J Heart Fail* 2017; **19**: 821-836 [PMID: 28560717 DOI: 10.1002/ejhf.872]

51 **Lightsey JM**, Rockey DC. Current concepts in ischemic hepatitis. *Curr Opin Gastroenterol* 2017; **33**: 158-163 [PMID: 28346236 DOI: 10.1097/MOG.0000000000000355]

52 **Jakob SM**, Tenhunen JJ, Laitinen S, Heino A, Alhava E, Takala J. Effects of systemic arterial hypoperfusion on splanchnic hemodynamics and hepatic arterial buffer response in pigs. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2001; **280**: G819-G827 [PMID: 11292589 DOI: 10.1152/ajpgi.2001.280.5.G819]

53 **Russell JA**, Gordon AC, Williams MD, Boyd JH, Walley KR, Kissoon N. Vasopressor Therapy in the Intensive Care Unit. *Semin Respir Crit Care Med* 2021; **42**: 59-77 [PMID: 32820475 DOI: 10.1055/s-0040-1710320]

54 **Lamontagne F**, Marshall JC, Adhikari NKJ. Permissive hypotension during shock resuscitation: equipoise in all patients? *Intensive Care Med* 2018; **44**: 87-90 [PMID: 28551721 DOI: 10.1007/s00134-017-4849-2]

55 **Lamontagne F**, Richards-Belle A, Thomas K, Harrison DA, Sadique MZ, Grieve RD, Camsooksai J, Darnell R, Gordon AC, Henry D, Hudson N, Mason AJ, Saull M, Whitman C, Young JD, Rowan KM, Mouncey PR; 65 trial investigators. Effect of Reduced Exposure to Vasopressors on 90-Day Mortality in Older Critically Ill Patients With Vasodilatory Hypotension: A Randomized Clinical Trial. *JAMA* 2020; **323**: 938-949 [PMID: 32049269 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2020.0930]

56 **Weemhoff JL**, Woolbright BL, Jenkins RE, McGill MR, Sharpe MR, Olson JC, Antoine DJ, Curry SC, Jaeschke H. Plasma biomarkers to study mechanisms of liver injury in patients with hypoxic hepatitis. *Liver Int* 2017; **37**: 377-384 [PMID: 27429052 DOI: 10.1111/liv.13202]

57 **Datta G**, Fuller BJ, Davidson BR. Molecular mechanisms of liver ischemia reperfusion injury: insights from transgenic knockout models. *World J Gastroenterol* 2013; **19**: 1683-1698 [PMID: 23555157 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v19.i11.1683]

58 **Cecconi M**, Evans L, Levy M, Rhodes A. Sepsis and septic shock. *Lancet* 2018; **392**: 75-87 [PMID: 29937192 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(18)30696-2]

59 **Geier A**, Fickert P, Trauner M. Mechanisms of disease: mechanisms and clinical implications of cholestasis in sepsis. *Nat Clin Pract Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2006; **3**: 574-585 [PMID: 17008927 DOI: 10.1038/ncpgasthep0602]

60 **Horvatits T**, Drolz A, Trauner M, Fuhrmann V. Liver Injury and Failure in Critical Illness. *Hepatology* 2019; **70**: 2204-2215 [PMID: 31215660 DOI: 10.1002/hep.30824]

61 **Gudnason HO**, Björnsson ES. Secondary sclerosing cholangitis in critically ill patients: current perspectives. *Clin Exp Gastroenterol* 2017; **10**: 105-111 [PMID: 28694703 DOI: 10.2147/CEG.S115518]

62 **Stratton L**, Berlin DA, Arbo JE. Vasopressors and Inotropes in Sepsis. *Emerg Med Clin North Am* 2017; **35**: 75-91 [PMID: 27908339 DOI: 10.1016/j.emc.2016.09.005]

63 **Gorecki G**, Cochior D, Moldovan C, Rusu E. Molecular mechanisms in septic shock (Review). *Exp Ther Med* 2021; **22**: 1161 [PMID: 34504606 DOI: 10.3892/etm.2021.10595]

64 **Waseem N**, Chen PH. Hypoxic Hepatitis: A Review and Clinical Update. *J Clin Transl Hepatol* 2016; **4**: 263-268 [PMID: 27777895 DOI: 10.14218/JCTH.2016.00022]

65 **Meyer NJ**, Gattinoni L, Calfee CS. Acute respiratory distress syndrome. *Lancet* 2021; **398**: 622-637 [PMID: 34217425

DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(21)00439-6]
66 **Henrion J**, Minette P, Colin L, Schapira M, Delannoy A, Heller FR. Hypoxic hepatitis caused by acute exacerbation of chronic respiratory failure: a case-controlled, hemodynamic study of 17 consecutive cases. *Hepatology* 1999; **29**: 427-433 [PMID: 9918919 DOI: 10.1002/hep.510290202]
67 **Kietzmann T**, Dimova EY, Flügel D, Scharf JG. Oxygen: modulator of physiological and pathophysiological processes in the liver. *Z Gastroenterol* 2006; **44**: 67-76 [PMID: 16397842 DOI: 10.1055/s-2005-858987]
68 **Cai J**, Hu M, Chen Z, Ling Z. The roles and mechanisms of hypoxia in liver fibrosis. *J Transl Med* 2021; **19**: 186 [PMID: 33933107 DOI: 10.1186/s12967-021-02854-x]
69 **Young M**, DiSilvio B, Rao S, Velliyattikuzhi S, Balaan M. Mechanical Ventilation in ARDS. *Crit Care Nurs Q* 2019; **42**: 392-399 [PMID: 31449149 DOI: 10.1097/CNQ.0000000000000279]
70 **Sylvester JT**, Shimoda LA, Aaronson PI, Ward JP. Hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction. *Physiol Rev* 2012; **92**: 367-520 [PMID: 22298659 DOI: 10.1152/physrev.00041.2010]
71 **Mahmood SS**, Pinsky MR. Heart-lung interactions during mechanical ventilation: the basics. *Ann Transl Med* 2018; **6**: 349 [PMID: 30370276 DOI: 10.21037/atm.2018.04.29]
72 **Grübler MR**, Wigger O, Berger D, Blöchlinger S. Basic concepts of heart-lung interactions during mechanical ventilation. *Swiss Med Wkly* 2017; **147**: w14491 [PMID: 28944931 DOI: 10.4414/smw.2017.14491]
73 **Kondili E**, Makris D, Georgopoulos D, Rovina N, Kotanidou A, Koutsoukou A. COVID-19 ARDS: Points to Be Considered in Mechanical Ventilation and Weaning. *J Pers Med* 2021; **11** [PMID: 34834461 DOI: 10.3390/jpm11111109]
74 **Richard C**, Berdeaux A, Delion F, Riou B, Rimailho A, Giudicelli JF, Auzépy P. Effect of mechanical ventilation on hepatic drug pharmacokinetics. *Chest* 1986; **90**: 837-841 [PMID: 3780330 DOI: 10.1378/chest.90.6.837]
75 **Brienza N**, Revelly JP, Ayuse T, Robotham JL. Effects of PEEP on liver arterial and venous blood flows. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1995; **152**: 504-510 [PMID: 7633699 DOI: 10.1164/ajrccm.152.2.7633699]
76 **Fujita Y**. Effects of PEEP on splanchnic hemodynamics and blood volume. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand* 1993; **37**: 427-431 [PMID: 8322573 DOI: 10.1111/j.1399-6576.1993.tb03742.x]
77 **Brienza N**, Dalfino L, Cinnella G, Diele C, Bruno F, Fiore T. Jaundice in critical illness: promoting factors of a concealed reality. *Intensive Care Med* 2006; **32**: 267-274 [PMID: 16450099 DOI: 10.1007/s00134-005-0023-3]
78 **Schricker T**, Kugler B, Schywalsky M, Braun G, Träger K, Georgieff M. Effects of PEEP ventilation on liver metabolism. *Infusionsther Transfusionsmed* 1995; **22**: 168-174 [PMID: 7640511 DOI: 10.1159/000223118]
79 **Putensen C**, Wrigge H, Hering R. The effects of mechanical ventilation on the gut and abdomen. *Curr Opin Crit Care* 2006; **12**: 160-165 [PMID: 16543794 DOI: 10.1097/01.ccx.0000216585.54502.eb]
80 **Fortea JI**, Puente Á, Cuadrado A, Huelin P, Pellón R, González Sánchez FJ, Mayorga M, Cagigal ML, García Carrera I, Cobreros M, Crespo J, Fábrega E. Congestive Hepatopathy. *Int J Mol Sci* 2020; **21** [PMID: 33321947 DOI: 10.3390/ijms21249420]
81 **Jakob SM**. The effects of mechanical ventilation on hepato-splanchnic perfusion. *Curr Opin Crit Care* 2010; **16**: 165-168 [PMID: 20134320 DOI: 10.1097/MCC.0b013e3283374b1c]
82 **Puiac C**, Szederjesi J, Lazar A, Almasy E, Rad P, Puscasiu L. Influence of Ventilation Parameters on Intraabdominal Pressure. *J Crit Care Med (Targu Mures)* 2016; **2**: 80-84 [PMID: 29967842 DOI: 10.1515/jccm-2016-0016]
83 **Rafiei MR**, Aghadavoudi O, Shekarchi B, Sajjadi SS, Masoudifar M. Can selection of mechanical ventilation mode prevent increased intra-abdominal pressure in patients admitted to the intensive care unit? *Int J Prev Med* 2013; **4**: 552-556 [PMID: 23930166]
84 **Dagar G**, Taneja A, Nanchal RS. Abdominal Circulatory Interactions. *Crit Care Clin* 2016; **32**: 265-277 [PMID: 27016167 DOI: 10.1016/j.ccc.2015.12.005]
85 **Lewis M**, Benjamin ER, Demetriades D. Intra-abdominal hypertension and abdominal compartment syndrome. *Curr Probl Surg* 2021; **58**: 100971 [PMID: 34836571 DOI: 10.1016/j.cpsurg.2021.100971]
86 **Regli A**, Pelosi P, Malbrain MLNG. Ventilation in patients with intra-abdominal hypertension: what every critical care physician needs to know. *Ann Intensive Care* 2019; **9**: 52 [PMID: 31025221 DOI: 10.1186/s13613-019-0522-y]
87 **Kirkpatrick AW**, Roberts DJ, De Waele J, Jaeschke R, Malbrain ML, De Keulenaer B, Duchesne J, Bjorck M, Leppaniemi A, Ejike JC, Sugrue M, Cheatham M, Ivatury R, Ball CG, Reintam Blaser A, Regli A, Balogh ZJ, D'Amours S, Debergh D, Kaplan M, Kimball E, Olvera C; Pediatric Guidelines Sub-Committee for the World Society of the Abdominal Compartment Syndrome. Intra-abdominal hypertension and the abdominal compartment syndrome: updated consensus definitions and clinical practice guidelines from the World Society of the Abdominal Compartment Syndrome. *Intensive Care Med* 2013; **39**: 1190-1206 [PMID: 23673399 DOI: 10.1007/s00134-013-2906-z]
88 **Kobr J**, Fremuth J, Pizingerová K, Fikrlová S, Jehlicka P, Honomichl P, Sasek L, Racek J, Topolcan O. Total body response to mechanical ventilation of healthy lungs: an experimental study in piglets. *Physiol Res* 2010; **59**: 545-552 [PMID: 19929141 DOI: 10.33549/physiolres.931752]
89 **Silva PL**, Ball L, Rocco PRM, Pelosi P. Physiological and Pathophysiological Consequences of Mechanical Ventilation. *Semin Respir Crit Care Med* 2022; **43**: 321-334 [PMID: 35439832 DOI: 10.1055/s-0042-1744447]
90 **Jiang Y**, Rubin L, Peng T, Liu L, Xing X, Lazarovici P, Zheng W. Cytokine storm in COVID-19: from viral infection to immune responses, diagnosis and therapy. *Int J Biol Sci* 2022; **18**: 459-472 [PMID: 35002503 DOI: 10.7150/ijbs.59272]
91 **Hu B**, Huang S, Yin L. The cytokine storm and COVID-19. *J Med Virol* 2021; **93**: 250-256 [PMID: 32592501 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.26232]
92 **Maggi E**, Canonica GW, Moretta L. COVID-19: Unanswered questions on immune response and pathogenesis. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2020; **146**: 18-22 [PMID: 32389590 DOI: 10.1016/j.jaci.2020.05.001]
93 **Zanza C**, Romenskaya T, Manetti AC, Franceschi F, La Russa R, Bertozzi G, Maiese A, Savioli G, Volonnino G, Longhitano Y. Cytokine Storm in COVID-19: Immunopathogenesis and Therapy. *Medicina (Kaunas)* 2022; **58** [PMID: 35208467 DOI: 10.3390/medicina58020144]
94 **Zhan K**, Liao S, Li J, Bai Y, Lv L, Yu K, Qiu L, Li C, Yuan G, Zhang A, Mei Z. Risk factors in patients with COVID-19 developing severe liver injury during hospitalisation. *Gut* 2021; **70**: 628-629 [PMID: 32571973 DOI:

10.1136/gutjnl-2020-321913]
95 **Gómez-Mesa JE**, Galindo-Coral S, Montes MC, Muñoz Martin AJ. Thrombosis and Coagulopathy in COVID-19. *Curr Probl Cardiol* 2021; **46**: 100742 [PMID: 33243440 DOI: 10.1016/j.cpcardiol.2020.100742]
96 **Iba T**, Connors JM, Levy JH. The coagulopathy, endotheliopathy, and vasculitis of COVID-19. *Inflamm Res* 2020; **69**: 1181-1189 [PMID: 32918567 DOI: 10.1007/s00011-020-01401-6]
97 **Martini R**. The compelling arguments for the need of microvascular investigation in COVID-19 critical patients. *Clin Hemorheol Microcirc* 2020; **75**: 27-34 [PMID: 32568186 DOI: 10.3233/CH-200895]
98 **Otifi HM**, Adiga BK. Endothelial Dysfunction in Covid-19 Infection. *Am J Med Sci* 2022; **363**: 281-287 [PMID: 35093394 DOI: 10.1016/j.amjms.2021.12.010]
99 **Cai Y**, Ye LP, Song YQ, Mao XL, Wang L, Jiang YZ, Que WT, Li SW. Liver injury in COVID-19: Detection, pathogenesis, and treatment. *World J Gastroenterol* 2021; **27**: 3022-3036 [PMID: 34168405 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v27.i22.3022]
100 **Trevino SE**, Kollef MH. Management of Infections with Drug-Resistant Organisms in Critical Care: An Ongoing Battle. *Clin Chest Med* 2015; **36**: 531-541 [PMID: 26304289 DOI: 10.1016/j.ccm.2015.05.007]
101 **Fitzmaurice MG**, Wong A, Akerberg H, Avramovska S, Smithburger PL, Buckley MS, Kane-Gill SL. Evaluation of Potential Drug-Drug Interactions in Adults in the Intensive Care Unit: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis. *Drug Saf* 2019; **42**: 1035-1044 [PMID: 31098917 DOI: 10.1007/s40264-019-00829-y]
102 **Kane-Gill SL**, Kirisci L, Verrico MM, Rothschild JM. Analysis of risk factors for adverse drug events in critically ill patients*. *Crit Care Med* 2012; **40**: 823-828 [PMID: 22036859 DOI: 10.1097/CCM.0b013e318236f473]
103 **Smith BS**, Yogaratnam D, Levasseur-Franklin KE, Forni A, Fong J. Introduction to drug pharmacokinetics in the critically ill patient. *Chest* 2012; **141**: 1327-1336 [PMID: 22553267 DOI: 10.1378/chest.11-1396]
104 **Yoon E**, Babar A, Choudhary M, Kutner M, Pyrsopoulos N. Acetaminophen-Induced Hepatotoxicity: a Comprehensive Update. *J Clin Transl Hepatol* 2016; **4**: 131-142 [PMID: 27350943 DOI: 10.14218/JCTH.2015.00052]
105 **Björnsson ES**. Drug-induced liver injury due to antibiotics. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2017; **52**: 617-623 [PMID: 28276834 DOI: 10.1080/00365521.2017.1291719]
106 **Brown SJ**, Desmond PV. Hepatotoxicity of antimicrobial agents. *Semin Liver Dis* 2002; **22**: 157-167 [PMID: 12016547 DOI: 10.1055/s-2002-30103]
107 **Kyriakidis I**, Tragiannidis A, Munchen S, Groll AH. Clinical hepatotoxicity associated with antifungal agents. *Expert Opin Drug Saf* 2017; **16**: 149-165 [PMID: 27927037 DOI: 10.1080/14740338.2017.1270264]
108 **Ruan X**, Lu X, Wang K, Zhang B, Wang J, Li Y, Xu Z, Yan F. Liver injury after antiviral treatment of critically ill patients with COVID-19: a single-centered retrospective cohort study. *Ann Palliat Med* 2021; **10**: 2429-2438 [PMID: 33440980 DOI: 10.21037/apm-20-1581]
109 **Lee TC**, Murthy S, Del Corpo O, Senécal J, Butler-Laporte G, Sohani ZN, Brophy JM, McDonald EG. Remdesivir for the treatment of COVID-19: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Clin Microbiol Infect* 2022; **28**: 1203-1210 [PMID: 35598856 DOI: 10.1016/j.cmi.2022.04.018]
110 **Antinori S**, Cossu MV, Ridolfo AL, Rech R, Bonazzetti C, Pagani G, Gubertini G, Coen M, Magni C, Castelli A, Borghi B, Colombo R, Giorgi R, Angeli E, Mileto D, Milazzo L, Vimercati S, Pellicciotta M, Corbellino M, Torre A, Rusconi S, Oreni L, Gismondo MR, Giacomelli A, Meroni L, Rizzardini G, Galli M. Compassionate remdesivir treatment of severe Covid-19 pneumonia in intensive care unit (ICU) and Non-ICU patients: Clinical outcome and differences in post-treatment hospitalisation status. *Pharmacol Res* 2020; **158**: 104899 [PMID: 32407959 DOI: 10.1016/j.phrs.2020.104899]
111 **Grein J**, Ohmagari N, Shin D, Diaz G, Asperges E, Castagna A, Feldt T, Green G, Green ML, Lescure FX, Nicastri E, Oda R, Yo K, Quiros-Roldan E, Studemeister A, Redinski J, Ahmed S, Bernett J, Chelliah D, Chen D, Chihara S, Cohen SH, Cunningham J, D'Arminio Monforte A, Ismail S, Kato H, Lapadula G, L'Her E, Maeno T, Majumder S, Massari M, Mora-Rillo M, Mutoh Y, Nguyen D, Verweij E, Zoufaly A, Osinusi AO, DeZure A, Zhao Y, Zhong L, Chokkalingam A, Elboudwarej E, Telep L, Timbs L, Henne I, Sellers S, Cao H, Tan SK, Winterbourne L, Desai P, Mera R, Gaggar A, Myers RP, Brainard DM, Childs R, Flanigan T. Compassionate Use of Remdesivir for Patients with Severe Covid-19. *N Engl J Med* 2020; **382**: 2327-2336 [PMID: 32275812 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa2007016]
112 **Wang Y**, Zhang D, Du G, Du R, Zhao J, Jin Y, Fu S, Gao L, Cheng Z, Lu Q, Hu Y, Luo G, Wang K, Lu Y, Li H, Wang S, Ruan S, Yang C, Mei C, Wang Y, Ding D, Wu F, Tang X, Ye X, Ye Y, Liu B, Yang J, Yin W, Wang A, Fan G, Zhou F, Liu Z, Gu X, Xu J, Shang L, Zhang Y, Cao L, Guo T, Wan Y, Qin H, Jiang Y, Jaki T, Hayden FG, Horby PW, Cao B, Wang C. Remdesivir in adults with severe COVID-19: a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled, multicentre trial. *Lancet* 2020; **395**: 1569-1578 [PMID: 32423584 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(20)31022-9]
113 **Kulkarni AV**, Kumar P, Tevethia HV, Premkumar M, Arab JP, Candia R, Talukdar R, Sharma M, Qi X, Rao PN, Reddy DN. Systematic review with meta-analysis: liver manifestations and outcomes in COVID-19. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2020; **52**: 584-599 [PMID: 32638436 DOI: 10.1111/apt.15916]
114 **Montastruc F**, Thuriot S, Durrieu G. Hepatic Disorders With the Use of Remdesivir for Coronavirus 2019. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2020; **18**: 2835-2836 [PMID: 32721580 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2020.07.050]
115 **Zampino R**, Mele F, Florio LL, Bertolino L, Andini R, Galdo M, De Rosa R, Corcione A, Durante-Mangoni E. Liver injury in remdesivir-treated COVID-19 patients. *Hepatol Int* 2020; **14**: 881-883 [PMID: 32725454 DOI: 10.1007/s12072-020-10077-3]
116 **Aleem A**, Mahadevaiah G, Shariff N, Kothadia JP. Hepatic manifestations of COVID-19 and effect of remdesivir on liver function in patients with COVID-19 illness. *Proc (Bayl Univ Med Cent)* 2021; **34**: 473-477 [PMID: 34219928 DOI: 10.1080/08998280.2021.1885289]
117 **Angamo MT**, Mohammed MA, Peterson GM. Efficacy and safety of remdesivir in hospitalised COVID-19 patients: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Infection* 2022; **50**: 27-41 [PMID: 34331674 DOI: 10.1007/s15010-021-01671-0]
118 **Ortiz GX**, Lenhart G, Becker MW, Schwambach KH, Tovo CV, Blatt CR. Drug-induced liver injury and COVID-19: A review for clinical practice. *World J Hepatol* 2021; **13**: 1143-1153 [PMID: 34630881 DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v13.i9.1143]
119 **Gabrielli M**, Franza L, Esperide A, Gasparrini I, Gasbarrini A, Franceschi F, On Behalf Of Gemelli Against Covid. Liver

Injury in Patients Hospitalized for COVID-19: Possible Role of Therapy. *Vaccines (Basel)* 2022; **10** [PMID: 35214651 DOI: 10.3390/vaccines10020192]

120 **Alhazzani W**, Evans L, Alshamsi F, Møller MH, Ostermann M, Prescott HC, Arabi YM, Loeb M, Ng Gong M, Fan E, Oczkowski S, Levy MM, Derde L, Dzierba A, Du B, Machado F, Wunsch H, Crowther M, Cecconi M, Koh Y, Burry L, Chertow DS, Szczeklik W, Belley-Cote E, Greco M, Bala M, Zarychanski R, Kesecioglu J, McGeer A, Mermel L, Mammen MJ, Nainan Myatra S, Arrington A, Kleinpell R, Citerio G, Lewis K, Bridges E, Memish ZA, Hammond N, Hayden FG, Alshahrani M, Al Duhailib Z, Martin GS, Kaplan LJ, Coopersmith CM, Antonelli M, Rhodes A. Surviving Sepsis Campaign Guidelines on the Management of Adults With Coronavirus Disease 2019 (COVID-19) in the ICU: First Update. *Crit Care Med* 2021; **49**: e219-e234 [PMID: 33555780 DOI: 10.1097/CCM.0000000000004899]

121 **Kyriakopoulos C**, Ntritsos G, Gogali A, Milionis H, Evangelou E, Kostikas K. Tocilizumab administration for the treatment of hospitalized patients with COVID-19: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Respirology* 2021; **26**: 1027-1040 [PMID: 34605114 DOI: 10.1111/resp.14152]

122 **Abidi E**, El Nekidy WS, Alefishat E, Rahman N, Petroianu GA, El-Lababidi R, Mallat J. Tocilizumab and COVID-19: Timing of Administration and Efficacy. *Front Pharmacol* 2022; **13**: 825749 [PMID: 35250575 DOI: 10.3389/fphar.2022.825749]

123 **Capra R**, De Rossi N, Mattioli F, Romanelli G, Scarpazza C, Sormani MP, Cossi S. Impact of low dose tocilizumab on mortality rate in patients with COVID-19 related pneumonia. *Eur J Intern Med* 2020; **76**: 31-35 [PMID: 32405160 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejim.2020.05.009]

124 **Campochiaro C**, Della-Torre E, Cavalli G, De Luca G, Ripa M, Boffini N, Tomelleri A, Baldissera E, Rovere-Querini P, Ruggeri A, Monti G, De Cobelli F, Zangrillo A, Tresoldi M, Castagna A, Dagna L; TOCI-RAF Study Group. Efficacy and safety of tocilizumab in severe COVID-19 patients: a single-centre retrospective cohort study. *Eur J Intern Med* 2020; **76**: 43-49 [PMID: 32482597 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejim.2020.05.021]

125 **Mazzitelli M**, Arrighi E, Serapide F, Pelle MC, Tassone B, Lionello R, Marrazzo G, Laganà D, Costanzo FS, Matera G, Trecarichi EM, Torti C. Use of subcutaneous tocilizumab in patients with COVID-19 pneumonia. *J Med Virol* 2021; **93**: 32-34 [PMID: 32410234 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.26016]

126 **Salvarani C**, Dolci G, Massari M, Merlo DF, Cavuto S, Savoldi L, Bruzzi P, Boni F, Braglia L, Turrà C, Ballerini PF, Sciascia R, Zammarchi L, Para O, Scotton PG, Inojosa WO, Ravagnani V, Salerno ND, Sainaghi PP, Brignone A, Codeluppi M, Teopompi E, Milesi M, Bertomoro P, Claudio N, Salio M, Falcone M, Cenderello G, Donghi L, Del Bono V, Colombelli PL, Angheben A, Passaro A, Secondo G, Pascale R, Piazza I, Facciolongo N, Costantini M; RCT-TCZ-COVID-19 Study Group. Effect of Tocilizumab vs Standard Care on Clinical Worsening in Patients Hospitalized With COVID-19 Pneumonia: A Randomized Clinical Trial. *JAMA Intern Med* 2021; **181**: 24-31 [PMID: 33080005 DOI: 10.1001/jamainternmed.2020.6615]

127 **Jain S**, Sharma SK. Rational use of tocilizumab in COVID-19. *Ann Rheum Dis* 2022; **81**: e213 [PMID: 32737106 DOI: 10.1136/annrheumdis-2020-218519]

128 **Charan J**, Dutta S, Kaur R, Bhardwaj P, Sharma P, Ambwani S, Jahan I, Abubakar AR, Islam S, Hardcastle TC, Rahman NAA, Lugova H, Haque M. Tocilizumab in COVID-19: a study of adverse drug events reported in the WHO database. *Expert Opin Drug Saf* 2021; **20**: 1125-1136 [PMID: 34162299 DOI: 10.1080/14740338.2021.1946513]

129 **Yang X**, Li N, Guo T, Guan X, Tan J, Gao X, Wu Y, Jia L, Gu M, Hua L, Liu H. Comparison of the Effects of Low-Molecular-Weight Heparin and Fondaparinux on Liver Function in Patients With Pulmonary Embolism. *J Clin Pharmacol* 2020; **60**: 1671-1678 [PMID: 32639644 DOI: 10.1002/jcph.1686]

130 **Hahn KJ**, Morales SJ, Lewis JH. Enoxaparin-Induced Liver Injury: Case Report and Review of the Literature and FDA Adverse Event Reporting System (FAERS). *Drug Saf Case Rep* 2015; **2**: 17 [PMID: 27747729 DOI: 10.1007/s40800-015-0018-0]

131 **Carlson MK**, Gleason PP, Sen S. Elevation of hepatic transaminases after enoxaparin use: case report and review of unfractionated and low-molecular-weight heparin-induced hepatotoxicity. *Pharmacotherapy* 2001; **21**: 108-113 [PMID: 11191729 DOI: 10.1592/phco.21.1.108.34436]

132 **Sato K**, Yamazaki Y, Uraoka T. Strategy for the control of drug-induced liver injury due to investigational treatments/drugs for COVID-19. *World J Gastroenterol* 2021; **27**: 8370-8373 [PMID: 35068875 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v27.i48.8370]

133 **Babatin M**, Lee SS, Pollak PT. Amiodarone hepatotoxicity. *Curr Vasc Pharmacol* 2008; **6**: 228-236 [PMID: 18673162 DOI: 10.2174/157016108784912019]

134 **Karamchandani K**, Dalal R, Patel J, Modgil P, Quintili A. Challenges in Sedation Management in Critically Ill Patients with COVID-19: a Brief Review. *Curr Anesthesiol Rep* 2021; **11**: 107-115 [PMID: 33654458 DOI: 10.1007/s40140-021-00440-x]

135 **de Tymowski C**, Dépret F, Dudoignon E, Legrand M, Mallet V; Keta-Cov Research Group. Ketamine-induced cholangiopathy in ARDS patients. *Intensive Care Med* 2021; **47**: 1173-1174 [PMID: 34313797 DOI: 10.1007/s00134-021-06482-3]

136 **Keta-Cov research group**. Intravenous ketamine and progressive cholangiopathy in COVID-19 patients. *J Hepatol* 2021; **74**: 1243-1244 [PMID: 33617925 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2021.02.007]

137 **Mallet V**; Keta-Cov research group. Reply to: "Progressive cholangiopathy in COVID-19 patients: Other possible diagnoses than ketamine-induced cholangiopathy should be considered". *J Hepatol* 2021; **75**: 990-992 [PMID: 34174378 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2021.06.024]

138 **Knooihuizen SAI**, Aday A, Lee WM. Ketamine-Induced Sclerosing Cholangitis (KISC) in a Critically Ill Patient With COVID-19. *Hepatology* 2021; **74**: 519-521 [PMID: 33226658 DOI: 10.1002/hep.31650]

139 **Meersseman P**, Blondeel J, De Vlieger G, van der Merwe S, Monbaliu D; Collaborators Leuven Liver Transplant program. Secondary sclerosing cholangitis: an emerging complication in critically ill COVID-19 patients. *Intensive Care Med* 2021; **47**: 1037-1040 [PMID: 34185115 DOI: 10.1007/s00134-021-06445-8]

140 **Deltenre P**, Moreno C, Trépo E. Progressive cholangiopathy in COVID-19 patients: Other possible diagnoses than ketamine-induced cholangiopathy should be considered. *J Hepatol* 2021; **75**: 989-990 [PMID: 33753153 DOI:

10.1016/j.jhep.2021.02.036]
141 **Casaer MP**, Mesotten D, Hermans G, Wouters PJ, Schetz M, Meyfroidt G, Van Cromphaut S, Ingels C, Meersseman P, Muller J, Vlasselaers D, Debaveye Y, Desmet L, Dubois J, Van Assche A, Vanderheyden S, Wilmer A, Van den Berghe G. Early versus late parenteral nutrition in critically ill adults. *N Engl J Med* 2011; **365**: 506-517 [PMID: 21714640 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1102662]
142 **Grau T**, Bonet A, Rubio M, Mateo D, Farré M, Acosta JA, Blesa A, Montejo JC, de Lorenzo AG, Mesejo A; Working Group on Nutrition and Metabolism of the Spanish Society of Critical Care. Liver dysfunction associated with artificial nutrition in critically ill patients. *Crit Care* 2007; **11**: R10 [PMID: 17254321 DOI: 10.1186/cc5670]
143 **Madnawat H**, Welu AL, Gilbert EJ, Taylor DB, Jain S, Manithody C, Blomenkamp K, Jain AK. Mechanisms of Parenteral Nutrition-Associated Liver and Gut Injury. *Nutr Clin Pract* 2020; **35**: 63-71 [PMID: 31872510 DOI: 10.1002/ncp.10461]
144 **Meyerson C**, Naini BV. Something old, something new: liver injury associated with total parenteral nutrition therapy and immune checkpoint inhibitors. *Hum Pathol* 2020; **96**: 39-47 [PMID: 31669893 DOI: 10.1016/j.humpath.2019.10.007]
145 **Żalikowska-Gardocka M**, Przybyłkowski A. Review of parenteral nutrition-associated liver disease. *Clin Exp Hepatol* 2020; **6**: 65-73 [PMID: 32728621 DOI: 10.5114/ceh.2019.95528]
146 **Grau T**, Bonet A. Caloric intake and liver dysfunction in critically ill patients. *Curr Opin Clin Nutr Metab Care* 2009; **12**: 175-179 [PMID: 19202389 DOI: 10.1097/MCO.0b013e3283252f9e]
147 **Salciute-Simene E**, Stasiunaitis R, Ambrasas E, Tutkus J, Milkevicius I, Sostakaite G, Klimasauskas A, Kekstas G. Impact of enteral nutrition interruptions on underfeeding in intensive care unit. *Clin Nutr* 2021; **40**: 1310-1317 [PMID: 32896448 DOI: 10.1016/j.clnu.2020.08.014]
148 **Vincent JL**. Relevance of albumin in modern critical care medicine. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol* 2009; **23**: 183-191 [PMID: 19653438 DOI: 10.1016/j.bpa.2008.11.004]
149 **Wang Y**, Liu S, Liu H, Li W, Lin F, Jiang L, Li X, Xu P, Zhang L, Zhao L, Cao Y, Kang J, Yang J, Li L, Liu X, Li Y, Nie R, Mu J, Lu F, Zhao S, Lu J, Zhao J. SARS-CoV-2 infection of the liver directly contributes to hepatic impairment in patients with COVID-19. *J Hepatol* 2020; **73**: 807-816 [PMID: 32437830 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2020.05.002]
150 **Chai X**, Hu L, Zhang Y, Han W, Lu Z, Ke A, Zhou J, Shi G, Fang N, Fan J, Cai J, Lan F. Specific ACE2 expression in cholangiocytes may cause liver damage after 2019-nCoV infection. 2020 Preprint. Available from: bioRxiv:931766v1 [DOI: 10.1101/2020.02.03.931766]
151 **Pirola CJ**, Sookoian S. SARS-CoV-2 virus and liver expression of host receptors: Putative mechanisms of liver involvement in COVID-19. *Liver Int* 2020; **40**: 2038-2040 [PMID: 32352224 DOI: 10.1111/liv.14500]
152 **Xu Z**, Shi L, Wang Y, Zhang J, Huang L, Zhang C, Liu S, Zhao P, Liu H, Zhu L, Tai Y, Bai C, Gao T, Song J, Xia P, Dong J, Zhao J, Wang FS. Pathological findings of COVID-19 associated with acute respiratory distress syndrome. *Lancet Respir Med* 2020; **8**: 420-422 [PMID: 32085846 DOI: 10.1016/S2213-2600(20)30076-X]
153 **Tian S**, Xiong Y, Liu H, Niu L, Guo J, Liao M, Xiao SY. Pathological study of the 2019 novel coronavirus disease (COVID-19) through postmortem core biopsies. *Mod Pathol* 2020; **33**: 1007-1014 [PMID: 32291399 DOI: 10.1038/s41379-020-0536-x]
154 **Sonzogni A**, Previtali G, Seghezzi M, Grazia Alessio M, Gianatti A, Licini L, Morotti D, Zerbi P, Carsana L, Rossi R, Lauri E, Pellegrinelli A, Nebuloni M. Liver histopathology in severe COVID 19 respiratory failure is suggestive of vascular alterations. *Liver Int* 2020; **40**: 2110-2116 [PMID: 32654359 DOI: 10.1111/liv.14601]
155 **Zhang C**, Shi L, Wang FS. Liver injury in COVID-19: management and challenges. *Lancet Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2020; **5**: 428-430 [PMID: 32145190 DOI: 10.1016/S2468-1253(20)30057-1]
156 **Mao R**, Qiu Y, He JS, Tan JY, Li XH, Liang J, Shen J, Zhu LR, Chen Y, Iacucci M, Ng SC, Ghosh S, Chen MH. Manifestations and prognosis of gastrointestinal and liver involvement in patients with COVID-19: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Lancet Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2020; **5**: 667-678 [PMID: 32405603 DOI: 10.1016/S2468-1253(20)30126-6]
157 **Henry BM**, de Oliveira MHS, Benoit S, Plebani M, Lippi G. Hematologic, biochemical and immune biomarker abnormalities associated with severe illness and mortality in coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19): a meta-analysis. *Clin Chem Lab Med* 2020; **58**: 1021-1028 [PMID: 32286245 DOI: 10.1515/cclm-2020-0369]
158 **Xie H**, Zhao J, Lian N, Lin S, Xie Q, Zhuo H. Clinical characteristics of non-ICU hospitalized patients with coronavirus disease 2019 and liver injury: A retrospective study. *Liver Int* 2020; **40**: 1321-1326 [PMID: 32239591 DOI: 10.1111/liv.14449]
159 **Lei P**, Zhang L, Han P, Zheng C, Tong Q, Shang H, Yang F, Hu Y, Li X, Song Y. Liver injury in patients with COVID-19: clinical profiles, CT findings, the correlation of the severity with liver injury. *Hepatol Int* 2020; **14**: 733-742 [PMID: 32886333 DOI: 10.1007/s12072-020-10087-1]
160 **Singh S**, Khan A. Clinical Characteristics and Outcomes of Coronavirus Disease 2019 Among Patients With Preexisting Liver Disease in the United States: A Multicenter Research Network Study. *Gastroenterology* 2020; **159**: 768-771.e3 [PMID: 32376408 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2020.04.064]
161 **Mushtaq K**, Khan MU, Iqbal F, Alsoub DH, Chaudhry HS, Ata F, Iqbal P, Elfert K, Balaraju G, Almaslamani M, Al-Ejji K, AlKaabi S, Kamel YM. NAFLD is a predictor of liver injury in COVID-19 hospitalized patients but not of mortality, disease severity on the presentation or progression - The debate continues. *J Hepatol* 2021; **74**: 482-484 [PMID: 33223215 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2020.09.006]
162 **Ji D**, Qin E, Xu J, Zhang D, Cheng G, Wang Y, Lau G. Non-alcoholic fatty liver diseases in patients with COVID-19: A retrospective study. *J Hepatol* 2020; **73**: 451-453 [PMID: 32278005 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2020.03.044]
163 **Shao J**, Liang Y, Li Y, Ding R, Zhu M, You W, Wang Z, Huang B, Wu M, Zhang T, Li K, Wu W, Wu L, Wang Q, Xia X, Wang S, Lu L. Implications of liver injury in risk-stratification and management of patients with COVID-19. *Hepatol Int* 2021; **15**: 202-212 [PMID: 33548030 DOI: 10.1007/s12072-020-10123-0]
164 **Guo H**, Zhang Z, Zhang Y, Liu Y, Wang J, Qian Z, Zou Y, Lu H. Analysis of liver injury factors in 332 patients with COVID-19 in Shanghai, China. *Aging (Albany NY)* 2020; **12**: 18844-18852 [PMID: 33001040 DOI: 10.18632/aging.103860]

165 **Wang Y**, Gao D, Li X, Xu P, Zhou Q, Yin J, Xu J. Early changes in laboratory tests predict liver function damage in patients with moderate coronavirus disease 2019: a retrospective multicenter study. *BMC Gastroenterol* 2022; **22**: 113 [PMID: 35264110 DOI: 10.1186/s12876-022-02188-y]

166 **Fu L**, Fei J, Xu S, Xiang HX, Xiang Y, Hu B, Li MD, Liu FF, Li Y, Li XY, Zhao H, Xu DX. Liver Dysfunction and Its Association with the Risk of Death in COVID-19 Patients: A Prospective Cohort Study. *J Clin Transl Hepatol* 2020; **8**: 246-254 [PMID: 33083246 DOI: 10.14218/JCTH.2020.00043]

167 **Zhang H**, Liao YS, Gong J, Liu J, Zhang H. Clinical characteristics and risk factors for liver injury in COVID-19 patients in Wuhan. *World J Gastroenterol* 2020; **26**: 4694-4702 [PMID: 32884226 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v26.i31.4694]

168 **Shen JX**, Zhuang ZH, Zhang QX, Huang JF, Chen GP, Fang YY, Cheng AG. Risk Factors and Prognosis in Patients with COVID-19 and Liver Injury: A Retrospective Analysis. *J Multidiscip Healthc* 2021; **14**: 629-637 [PMID: 33731999 DOI: 10.2147/JMDH.S293378]

169 **Wang M**, Yan W, Qi W, Wu D, Zhu L, Li W, Wang X, Ma K, Ni M, Xu D, Wang H, Chen G, Yu H, Ding H, Xing M, Han M, Luo X, Chen T, Guo W, Xi D, Ning Q. Clinical characteristics and risk factors of liver injury in COVID-19: a retrospective cohort study from Wuhan, China. *Hepatol Int* 2020; **14**: 723-732 [PMID: 33026573 DOI: 10.1007/s12072-020-10075-5]

170 **Harapan H**, Fajar JK, Supriono S, Soegiarto G, Wulandari L, Seratin F, Prayudi NG, Dewi DP, Monica Elsina MT, Atamou L, Wiranata S, Aprianto DP, Friska E, Sari Firdaus DF, Alaidin M, Wardhani FA, Husnah M, Hidayati NW, Hendriyanti Y, Wardani K, Evatta A, Manugan RA, Pradipto W, Rahmawati A, Tamara F, Mahendra AI, Nainu F, Santoso B, Irawan Primasatya CA, Tjionganata N, Budiman HA. The prevalence, predictors and outcomes of acute liver injury among patients with COVID-19: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Rev Med Virol* 2022; **32**: e2304 [PMID: 34643006 DOI: 10.1002/rmv.2304]

171 **Conti P**, Younes A. Coronavirus COV-19/SARS-CoV-2 affects women less than men: clinical response to viral infection. *J Biol Regul Homeost Agents* 2020; **34**: 339-343 [PMID: 32253888 DOI: 10.23812/Editorial-Conti-3]

172 **Li R**, Tang Y, Liang M, Ding J. Liver injury in COVID-19 patients with metabolic syndrome-a narrative review. *Ann Palliat Med* 2021; **10**: 8264-8270 [PMID: 34353107 DOI: 10.21037/apm-21-1398]

173 **Krishnan A**, Prichett L, Tao X, Alqahtani SA, Hamilton JP, Mezey E, Strauss AT, Kim A, Potter JJ, Chen PH, Woreta TA. Abnormal liver chemistries as a predictor of COVID-19 severity and clinical outcomes in hospitalized patients. *World J Gastroenterol* 2022; **28**: 570-587 [PMID: 35316959 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i5.570]

174 **Premkumar M**, Kajal K, Kulkarni AV, Gupta A, Divyaveer S. Point-of-Care Echocardiography and Hemodynamic Monitoring in Cirrhosis and Acute-on-Chronic Liver Failure in the COVID-19 Era. *J Intensive Care Med* 2021; **36**: 511-523 [PMID: 33438491 DOI: 10.1177/0885066620988281]

175 **Simon R**, Petrișor C, Bodolea C, Csipak G, Oancea C, Golea A. A.B.C. approach proposal for POCUS in COVID-19 critically ill patients. *Med Ultrason* 2021; **23**: 94-102 [PMID: 33245734 DOI: 10.11152/mu-2733]

176 **Ady J**, Fong Y. Imaging for infection: from visualization of inflammation to visualization of microbes. *Surg Infect (Larchmt)* 2014; **15**: 700-707 [PMID: 25402672 DOI: 10.1089/sur.2014.029]

177 **Evans L**, Rhodes A, Alhazzani W, Antonelli M, Coopersmith CM, French C, Machado FR, Mcintyre L, Ostermann M, Prescott HC, Schorr C, Simpson S, Wiersinga WJ, Alshamsi F, Angus DC, Arabi Y, Azevedo L, Beale R, Beilman G, Belley-Cote E, Burry L, Cecconi M, Centofanti J, Coz Yataco A, De Waele J, Dellinger RP, Doi K, Du B, Estenssoro E, Ferrer R, Gomersall C, Hodgson C, Møller MH, Iwashyna T, Jacob S, Kleinpell R, Klompas M, Koh Y, Kumar A, Kwizera A, Lobo S, Masur H, McGloughlin S, Mehta S, Mehta Y, Mer M, Nunnally M, Oczkowski S, Osborn T, Papathanassoglou E, Perner A, Puskarich M, Roberts J, Schweickert W, Seckel M, Sevransky J, Sprung CL, Welte T, Zimmerman J, Levy M. Surviving sepsis campaign: international guidelines for management of sepsis and septic shock 2021. *Intensive Care Med* 2021; **47**: 1181-1247 [PMID: 34599691 DOI: 10.1007/s00134-021-06506-y]

178 **Tajiri K**, Shimizu Y. Practical guidelines for diagnosis and early management of drug-induced liver injury. *World J Gastroenterol* 2008; **14**: 6774-6785 [PMID: 19058303 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.14.6774]

179 **Hajjar LA**, Costa IBSDS, Rizk SI, Biselli B, Gomes BR, Bittar CS, de Oliveira GQ, de Almeida JP, de Oliveira Bello MV, Garzillo C, Leme AC, Elena M, Val F, de Almeida Lopes M, Lacerda MVG, Ramires JAF, Kalil Filho R, Teboul JL, Landoni G. Intensive care management of patients with COVID-19: a practical approach. *Ann Intensive Care* 2021; **11**: 36 [PMID: 33604873 DOI: 10.1186/s13613-021-00820-w]

180 **Devlin JW**, Skrobik Y, Gélinas C, Needham DM, Slooter AJC, Pandharipande PP, Watson PL, Weinhouse GL, Nunnally ME, Rochwerg B, Balas MC, van den Boogaard M, Bosma KJ, Brummel NE, Chanques G, Denehy L, Drouot X, Fraser GL, Harris JE, Joffe AM, Kho ME, Kress JP, Lanphere JA, McKinley S, Neufeld KJ, Pisani MA, Payen JF, Pun BT, Puntillo KA, Riker RR, Robinson BRH, Shehabi Y, Szumita PM, Winkelman C, Centofanti JE, Price C, Nikayin S, Misak CJ, Flood PD, Kiedrowski K, Alhazzani W. Clinical Practice Guidelines for the Prevention and Management of Pain, Agitation/Sedation, Delirium, Immobility, and Sleep Disruption in Adult Patients in the ICU. *Crit Care Med* 2018; **46**: e825-e873 [PMID: 30113379 DOI: 10.1097/CCM.0000000000003299]

181 **Barazzoni R**, Bischoff SC, Breda J, Wickramasinghe K, Krznaric Z, Nitzan D, Pirlich M, Singer P; endorsed by the ESPEN Council. ESPEN expert statements and practical guidance for nutritional management of individuals with SARS-CoV-2 infection. *Clin Nutr* 2020; **39**: 1631-1638 [PMID: 32305181 DOI: 10.1016/j.clnu.2020.03.022]

182 **Vanwijngaerden YM**, Langouche L, Brunner R, Debaveye Y, Gielen M, Casaer M, Liddle C, Coulter S, Wouters PJ, Wilmer A, Van den Berghe G, Mesotten D. Withholding parenteral nutrition during critical illness increases plasma bilirubin but lowers the incidence of biliary sludge. *Hepatology* 2014; **60**: 202-210 [PMID: 24213952 DOI: 10.1002/hep.26928]

183 **Bornstein SR**, Rubino F, Khunti K, Mingrone G, Hopkins D, Birkenfeld AL, Boehm B, Amiel S, Holt RI, Skyler JS, DeVries JH, Renard E, Eckel RH, Zimmet P, Alberti KG, Vidal J, Geloneze B, Chan JC, Ji L, Ludwig B. Practical recommendations for the management of diabetes in patients with COVID-19. *Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol* 2020; **8**: 546-550 [PMID: 32334646 DOI: 10.1016/S2213-8587(20)30152-2]

184 **Mesotten D**, Wauters J, Van den Berghe G, Wouters PJ, Milants I, Wilmer A. The effect of strict blood glucose control on biliary sludge and cholestasis in critically ill patients. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2009; **94**: 2345-2352 [PMID: 19366849

DOI: 10.1210/jc.2008-2579]

185 **Fix OK**, Hameed B, Fontana RJ, Kwok RM, McGuire BM, Mulligan DC, Pratt DS, Russo MW, Schilsky ML, Verna EC, Loomba R, Cohen DE, Bezerra JA, Reddy KR, Chung RT. Clinical Best Practice Advice for Hepatology and Liver Transplant Providers During the COVID-19 Pandemic: AASLD Expert Panel Consensus Statement. *Hepatology* 2020; **72**: 287-304 [PMID: 32298473 DOI: 10.1002/hep.31281]

186 **Williamson K**, Wahl MS, Mycyk MB. Direct comparison of 20-hour IV, 36-hour oral, and 72-hour oral acetylcysteine for treatment of acute acetaminophen poisoning. *Am J Ther* 2013; **20**: 37-40 [PMID: 23299230 DOI: 10.1097/MJT.0b013e318250f829]

187 **Davenport A**, Honore PM. Continuous renal replacement therapy under special conditions like sepsis, burn, cardiac failure, neurotrauma, and liver failure. *Semin Dial* 2021; **34**: 457-471 [PMID: 34448261 DOI: 10.1111/sdi.13002]

188 **Katagiri D**. For safe and adequate blood purification therapy in severe COVID-19 – what we have learned so far. *Glob Health Med* 2022; **4**: 94-100 [PMID: 35586758 DOI: 10.35772/ghm.2022.01004]

189 **Memish ZA**, Faqihi F, Alharthy A, Alqahtani SA, Karakitsos D. Plasma exchange in the treatment of complex COVID-19-related critical illness: controversies and perspectives. *Int J Antimicrob Agents* 2021; **57**: 106273 [PMID: 33370568 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijantimicag.2020.106273]

190 **Fernandez J**, Gratacos-Ginès J, Olivas P, Costa M, Nieto S, Mateo D, Sánchez MB, Aguilar F, Bassegoda O, Ruiz P, Caballol B, Pocurull A, Llach J, Mustieles MJ, Cid J, Reverter E, Toapanta ND, Hernández-Tejero M, Martínez JA, Claria J, Fernández C, Mensa J, Arroyo V, Castro P, Lozano M; Covid Clinic Critical Care (CCCC) Group. Plasma Exchange: An Effective Rescue Therapy in Critically Ill Patients With Coronavirus Disease 2019 Infection. *Crit Care Med* 2020; **48**: e1350-e1355 [PMID: 32833695 DOI: 10.1097/CCM.0000000000004613]

191 **Zhou Z**, Kuang H, Ma Y, Zhang L. Application of extracorporeal therapies in critically ill COVID-19 patients. *J Zhejiang Univ Sci B* 2021; **22**: 701-717 [PMID: 34514751 DOI: 10.1631/jzus.B2100344]

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Gastroenterol 2022 December 21; 28(47): 6689-6701

DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6689

ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

REVIEW

Alterations of the gut microbiota in coronavirus disease 2019 and its therapeutic potential

Hui Xiang, Qi-Ping Liu

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Provenance and peer review: Invited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): A
Grade B (Very good): B
Grade C (Good): 0
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: Chauhan S, United States; Mahmoud MZ, Saudi Arabia

Received: September 18, 2022
Peer-review started: September 18, 2022
First decision: October 30, 2022
Revised: November 7, 2022
Accepted: November 22, 2022
Article in press: November 22, 2022
Published online: December 21, 2022

Hui Xiang, Department of Infectious Disease, Chongqing University Three Gorges Hospital, Chongqing 404100, China

Qi-Ping Liu, Department of Pulmonary and Critical Care Medicine, Chongqing University Three Gorges Hospital, Chongqing 404100, China

Corresponding author: Hui Xiang, MM, Doctor, Department of Infectious Disease, Chongqing University Three Gorges Hospital, No. 165 Xincheng Road, Chongqing 404100, China. xianghui9312@163.com

Abstract

The coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19) pandemic caused by severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus 2 (SARS-CoV-2) poses a serious threat to global health. SARS-CoV-2 infects host cells primarily by binding to angiotensin-converting enzyme 2, which is coexpressed in alveolar type 2 cells and gut epithelial cells. It is known that COVID-19 often presents with gastrointestinal symptoms and gut dysbiosis, mainly characterized by an increase in opportunistic pathogens and a decrease in beneficial commensal bacteria. In recent years, multiple studies have comprehensively explored gut microbiota alterations in COVID-19 and highlighted the clinical correlation between dysbiosis and COVID-19. SARS-CoV-2 causes gastrointestinal infections and dysbiosis mainly through fecal-oral transmission and the circulatory and immune pathways. Studies have shown that the gut microbiota and its metabolites can regulate the immune response and modulate antiviral effects. In addition, the gut microbiota is closely related to gastrointestinal symptoms, such as diarrhea, a common gastrointestinal symptom among COVID-19. Therefore, the contribution of the gut microbiota in COVID-19 should not be overlooked. Strategies targeting the gut microbiota *via* probiotics, prebiotics and fecal microbiota transplantation should be considered to treat this patient population in the future. However, the specific alterations and mechanisms as well as the contributions of gut microbiota in COVID-19 should be urgently further explored.

Key Words: COVID-19; SARS-CoV-2; Angiotensin-converting enzyme 2; Gut microbiota; Dysbiosis; Lung

©The Author(s) 2022. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core Tip: Coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19), caused by severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus 2 (SARS-CoV-2), has become a global health threat. SARS-CoV-2 infects host cells through binding to angiotensin-converting enzyme 2. COVID-19 patients exhibit gut dysbiosis. Here, the gut microbiota alterations in COVID-19 are summarized. The pathways and possible mechanisms of dysbiosis caused by SARS-CoV-2, as well as the impact of the gut microbiota and its metabolites on the inflammatory response and antiviral effects during the course of the disease are also described. Therefore, targeting the gut microbiota should be considered a promising strategy for COVID-19 prevention, treatment, and prognostic assessment.

Citation: Xiang H, Liu QP. Alterations of the gut microbiota in coronavirus disease 2019 and its therapeutic potential. *World J Gastroenterol* 2022; 28(47): 6689-6701
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v28/i47/6689.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6689

INTRODUCTION

Coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19) is a new acute infectious disease that is caused by severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus 2 (SARS-CoV-2), which belongs to the *Coronaviridae* family[1]. SARS-CoV-2 infects host cells through the binding of the S protein to angiotensin-converting enzyme 2 (ACE2) and interacts with transmembrane serine protease 2 (TMPRSS2), which cleaves the viral S-protein, allowing efficient viral fusion[2,3]. Interestingly, ACE2 is coexpressed in alveolar type 2 cells and intestinal and colonic epithelial cells, especially in small intestinal enterocytes[4,5]. Correspondingly, in addition to infecting the respiratory system and causing respiratory symptoms (*e.g.*, fever, dry cough, dyspnea, myalgia, headache, *etc.*), SARS-CoV-2 also infects the gastrointestinal tract, where it replicates abundantly[6]. Overwhelming evidence substantiates the detection of viral RNA in fecal samples or rectal swabs from COVID-19 patients[6-8]. It is estimated that up to 48.1% of COVID-19 patients had fecal samples positive for viral RNA[7], even when the virus was not detected in respiratory and/or sputum samples[9]. Moreover, researchers have found that the gut microbiota composition of COVID-19 patients exhibits significant alterations (dysbiosis), mainly characterized by an increase in the abundance of opportunistic pathogens and a decrease in the abundance of beneficial commensal bacteria[10]. Gut dysbiosis is closely associated with gastrointestinal symptoms and disease severity[11,12]. Therefore, the crosstalk between the gut microbiota and COVID-19 is gaining attention.

The gut microbiota has become a hot research topic in recent years. The resident microbial composition of the human gut mainly includes bacteria, archaea, viruses and fungi[13]. The human gut microbiota consists of more than 10^{14} bacteria and comprises approximately 500 to 1000 species. Gut bacteria in healthy individuals are mainly *Actinobacteria*, *Firmicutes*, *Proteobacteria*, and *Bacteroidetes*[13]. The complex gut microbiota communities have important genomic and enzymatic properties and perform a critical role in the immune system, which protects against pathogens and helps maintain gut microbiota homeostasis. Gut microbiota homeostasis is essential for maintaining human health. Conversely, dysbiosis can lead to metabolic disturbance, immune dysfunction and systemic inflammation and has been linked to various diseases[14].

Therefore, this review mainly summarizes the gut microbiota alterations and the possible mechanisms of dysbiosis in COVID-19. Furthermore, we highlight the theoretical basis that the gut microbiota can be considered a promising therapeutic target in COVID-19, potentially interfering with immune and inflammatory responses and antiviral effects. Finally, we also reviewed multiple interventions targeting the gut microbiota, such as prebiotics, probiotics and fecal microbiota transplantation (FMT), which could optimize COVID-19 treatment.

GUT DYSBIOSIS EXISTS IN COVID-19 AND IS ASSOCIATED WITH DISEASE SEVERITY

Gut dysbiosis in COVID-19 patients has received widespread attention in recent years (Table 1)[10,12,15-22]. The gut microbiota is significantly altered in COVID-19 patients receiving and not receiving medication compared to that in non-COVID-19 individuals[12]. Gut dysbiosis persists throughout the course of the disease and even after viral clearance[10,12]. Yeoh *et al*[12] suggested that members of the *Bacteroidetes* phylum and *Actinobacteria* were predominant in COVID-19 and non-COVID-19 individuals, respectively. In an American cohort study, *Peptoniphilus*, *Corynebacterium*, and *Campylobacter* were identified as the most enriched genera in COVID-19 patients[23]. Immunomodulatory gut bacteria, such as *Faecalibacterium prausnitzii* (*F. prausnitzii*), *Bifidobacterium adolescentis* and *Bifidobacterium longum*, were depleted in COVID-19, and their depletion was correlated with an elevation in the levels of inflammatory cytokines and markers (CXCL10, IL-10, TNF-α, CCL2, and CRP)[12]. However, Tao *et al*[16]

Table 1 Alterations of the gut microbiota composition in coronavirus disease 2019 patients

Study	Method	Increased abundance of gut microbiota	Decreased abundance of gut microbiota	Main conclusion
Gu *et al* [15], 2020	16S rrna	*Streptococcus*, *Rothia*, *Veillonella*, *Actinomyces*, *Erysipelatoclostridium*	*Ruminococcaceae family*, *Lachnospiraceae family*, *Agathobacter*, *Fusicatenibacter*, *Roseburia*	Gut microbiota has potential value as a diagnostic biomarker and therapeutic target for COVID-19
Zuo *et al* [10], 2020	Shotgun	*Clostridium hathewayi*, *Actinomyces viscosus*, *Bacteroides nordii*	*Eubacterium*, *Faecalibacterium prausnitzii*, *Roseburia*, *Lachnospiraceae*	Fecal microbiota alterations are associated with fecal virus levels and COVID-19 severity; symbionts were depletion and opportunistic pathogens were enrichment in COVID-19 patients; gut dysbiosis persists in COVID-19 patients after virus clearance
Tao *et al* [16], 2020	16S rrna	*Streptococcus*, *Clostridium*, *Lactobacillus*, *Bifidobacterium*	*Bacteroidetes*, *Roseburia*, *Faecalibacterium*, *Coprococcus*, *Parabacteroides*	IL-18 level was higher in the fecal samples from COVID-19 patients; dysbiosis may contribute to SARS-CoV-2-induced production of inflammatory cytokines and cytokine storm in the gut
Tang *et al*[17], 2020	Q-PCR	*Enterococcus*, *Enterobacteriaceae*	*Faecalibacterium prausnitzii*, *Clostridium butyricum*, *Clostridium leptum*, *Eubacterium rectale*	Specific gut microbiota can be considered diagnostic biomarkers for COVID-19; the Ec/E ratio can be used to predict death in critically ill patients
Zuo *et al* [18], 2020	Shotgun	*Candida albicans*, *Candida auris*, *Aspergillus flavus*	-	The guts of COVID-19 patients are accompanied by massive fungal blooms
Yeoh *et al*[12], 2021	Shotgun	*Actinobacteria*, *Ruminococcus gnavus*, *Ruminococcus torques*, *Bacteroides dorei*	*Bifidobacterium adolescentis*, *Faecalibacterium prausnitzii*, *Eubacterium rectale*	Immunomodulatory gut bacteria were depleted in COVID-19 patients; gut dysbiosis persists in COVID-19 patients after virus clearance; gut microbiota composition was associated with disease severity
Wu *et al* [19], 2021	16S rrna	*Streptococcus*, *Weissella*, *Enterococcus*, *Rothia*, *Lactobacillus*, *Actinomyces*, *Granulicatella*	*Blautia*, *Coprococcus*, *Collinsella*	Personalized microbiome affects disease outcomes in COVID-19 patients; targeting the gut microbiota has potential to prevent and treat COVID-19
Zuo *et al* [20], 2021	Shotgun	*Collinsella aerofaciens*, *Collinsella tanakaei*, *Streptococcus infantis*, *Morganella morganii*	*Parabacteroides merdae*, *Bacteroides stercoris*, *Alistipes onderdonkii*, *Lachnospiraceae bacterium 1_1_57FAA*	Elimination of gut SARS-CoV-2 activity and modulation of gut microbiome composition should be considered new treatments for COVID-19; the 3′ end of SARS-CoV-2 genome was highly covered than the 5′ end
Lv *et al* [21], 2021	ITS sequencing	-	Ascomycota (*Aspergillaceae*, *Candida parapsilosis*, *Talaromyces wortmannii*); Basidiomycota (*Malassezia yamatoensis*, *Rhodotorula mucilaginosa*, *Moesziomyces aphidis*, *Trechispora sp. and Wallemia sebi*)	Total gut fungal burden was significantly elevated in patients infected with SARS- CoV-2; altered gut fungi and microbiota are closely related to patient clinical characteristics
Suskun *et al*[22], 2022	16S rrna	*Bifidobacterium adolescentis*, *Dorea formicigenerasus*, *Eubacterium dolichum*, *Eggerthella lenta*	*Faecalibacterium prausnitzii*	First evaluate the microbiota composition in multisystem inflammatory syndrome in children cases

COVID-19: Coronavirus disease 2019; SARS-CoV-2: Severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus 2; IL: Interleukin.

found that COVID-19 patients had higher abundances of *Clostridium*, *Veillonella*, *Streptococcus*, *Fusobacterium*, *Lactobacillus*, *Escherichia* and *Bifidobacterium* and lower abundances of *Bacteroidetes*, *Sutterella*, *Faecalibacterium*, *Coprococcus* and *Parabacteroides* than controls. The increased richness of *Streptococcus* exacerbates the risk of opportunistic pathogenic infections[24].

Moreover, it is widely thought that gut dysbiosis is closely associated with COVID-19 severity. The basal gut microbiota of healthy individuals and its alterations during SARS-CoV-2 infection influence host susceptibility to SARS-CoV-2 and disease recovery. The abundances of *Coprobacillus*, *Clostridium ramosum*, and *Clostridium hathewayi* were significantly and positively associated with COVID-19 severity, while the abundances of *Bifidobacterium bifiduz*, *Alistipes onderdonkii* and *F. prausnitzii* were negatively associated[10,12]. However, even different members of the same phylum, such as Firmicutes, have opposing correlations in influencing disease severity and regulating ACE2 expression[10]. ACE2 presents a critical role in gut microbial ecology, gut inflammation and innate immunity[25]. Moreover, the abundances of other bacteria, including *Bacteroides dorei* (*B. dorei*), *Bacteroides thetaiotaomicron* (*B. thetaiotaomicron*), *Bacteroides ovatus* (*B. ovatus*), *Ruminococcus*, *Clostridium citroniae*, *Bifidobacterium*, and *Haemophilus parainfluenzae*, were negatively associated with viral load in fecal samples from SARS-CoV-2-infected patients[10]. Interestingly, *B. dorei*, *B. thetaiotaomicron*, and *B. ovatus* can downregulate ACE2 expression in the murine gut[10,26], suggesting that Bacteroides species may play a protective role against SARS-CoV-2 infection by interfering with ACE2 production. The abundances of *Erysipelotrichaceae bacterium*, *Prevotella copri*, and *Eubacterium dolichum* have been reported to be positively correlated with fecal viral load[10,19]. Furthermore, *Prevotella*, *Enterococcus*, *Enterobacteriaceae*, and

Campylobacter can contribute to higher infectivity and worse prognosis in COVID-19[27]. For instance, *Prevotella* is associated with enhanced T helper 17 (Th17)-mediated mucosal inflammation, stimulating the production of cytokines and subsequently promoting neutrophil recruitment and inflammation[28]. Although it has been established that an altered gut microbiota composition is prevalent in COVID-19, conflicting results have been reported due to the heterogeneity of the gut microbiota itself, the sample size, and so on. Geographic and demographic differences also appear to affect the conclusions and dysbiosis recovery after SARS-CoV-2 infection[10,29]. Therefore, targeting specific gut microbiota alterations represents a potential strategy to alleviate disease severity in COVID-19.

POTENTIAL PATHWAYS AND MECHANISMS OF SARS-COV-2-INDUCED GUT INFECTION AND DYSBIOSIS

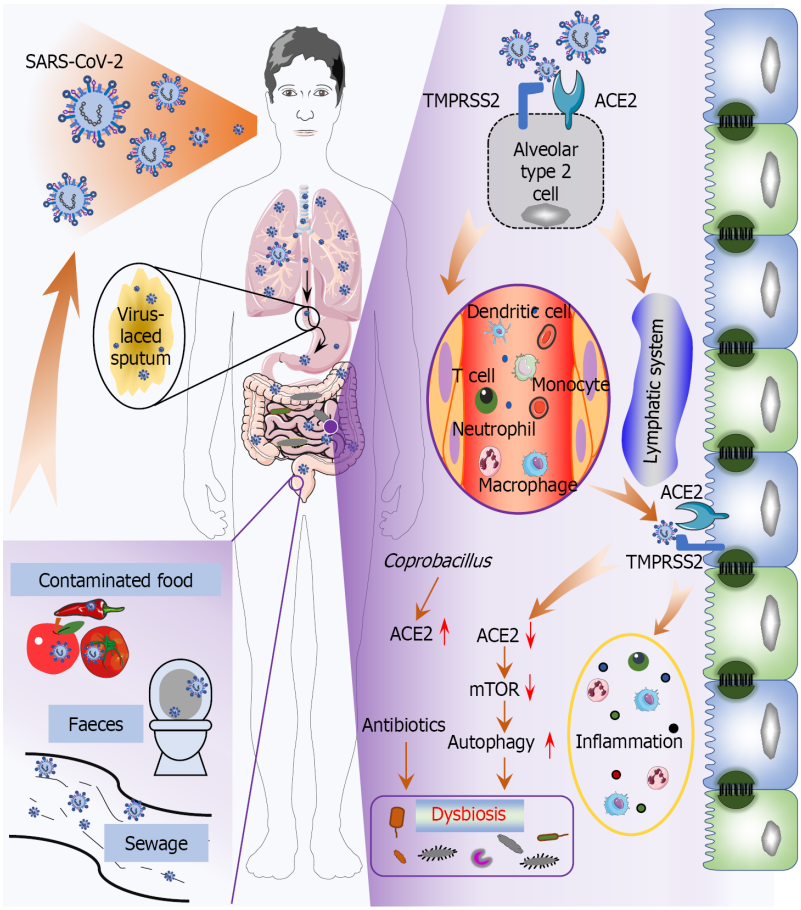
Generally, SARS-CoV-2 is principally transmitted *via* respiratory droplets and close contact, subsequently inducing diverse symptoms[30]; however, this paradigm does not explain how SARS-CoV-2 causes gut infection and dysbiosis. An *in vitro* study reported that the virus could be transmitted by the fecal-oral route through contaminated water, food, *etc*[30,31]. Since then, a new SARS-CoV-2 transmission route has been revealed (Figure 1). Notably, many viral activities are greatly diminished or even lost after passing through the gastrointestinal tract since gastric and intestinal fluids (low pH, rich in bile and digestive enzymes) can destroy the viral lipid envelope, inhibiting infectivity. For example, SARS-CoV has long been thought to be inactivated under acidic conditions (pH < 3). However, SARS-CoV-2 seems to overcome this obstacle since virus have been detected in the feces of infected individuals[30,31], and viruses isolated from feces can survive for an additional 1-2 d[32]. Therefore, SARS-CoV-2 may remain infectious in feces, particularly when patients have diarrhea[1]. Furthermore, virus-containing sputum swallowed by COVID-19 patients may be another pathway of gut infection because viscous sputum can protect the virions, preserving virus infectivity[33]. However, in the absence of evidence of fecal viral titers and viral viability in sewage and contaminated food, the capability of SARS-CoV-2 to be transmitted by the fecal-oral route requires further confirmation.

Moreover, circulatory and immune pathways are reportedly critical for SARS-CoV-2 to cause gut infection and dysbiosis (Figure 1). Studies conducted on SARS showed that coronaviruses damage lung tissue and then migrate to the systemic circulation, where they migrate to gut cells through the circulatory and lymphatic systems[34]. The virus can be found in the blood samples and gut of COVID-19 patients; in addition to those in epithelial cells, viral components are mainly present in intestinal lymphocytes and macrophages[31,35]. Therefore, it is speculated that SARS-CoV-2 may be transported from the lungs to other tissues, including the gastrointestinal tract, through transport *via* immune cells, similar to influenza virus[35,36]. Subsequently, SARS-CoV-2 invades gut epithelial cells by binding to AEC2[37], causing the release of cytokines and chemokines and triggering a gut inflammatory response characterized by neutrophil, macrophage, and T-cell infiltration, which further promotes dysbiosis[38-40]. In addition, the amino acid transport function of ACE2 is related to the microecology in the gut. B^0AT1, a molecular ACE2 chaperone, mediates the absorption of neutral amino acids in the intestinal epithelium[41]. Studies have confirmed that SARS-CoV-2-induced downregulation of B^0AT1 on gut epithelial cells contributes to gut barrier disruption and dysbiosis, promoting pathogen invasion and COVID-19 exacerbation[42-44]. de Oliveira *et al*[45] hypothesized that the internalization of SARS-CoV-2 causes ACE2 downregulation, leading to mechanistic target of rapamycin (mTOR) inhibition and intestinal autophagy activation. Interestingly, autophagy can regulate the gut microbiota, and increased autophagy has been associated with diarrhea[45,46]. There is currently no evidence, however, that the ACE2/mTOR/autophagy pathway is involved in the pathogenesis of COVID-19. Paradoxically, *Coprobacillus*, which is mostly correlated with the COVID-19 severity, has been shown to increase colonic expression of ACE2[26,47]. Therefore, the net expression of ACE2 in the gut remains largely unclear, warranting further investigation.

Misuse and overuse of antibiotics, common in initially treating COVID-19 patients[48], significantly impact the gut microbiota (Figure 1). Yeoh *et al*[12] found that COVID-19 patients treated with and without antibiotics had different gut microbiota composition. In addition, antibiotics attenuated the antiviral activity of commensal-enhanced type I interferons (IFN-I)[49]. Therefore, antibiotics are unlikely to improve patient outcomes without comorbid bacterial infections but instead exacerbate and prolong gut dysbiosis in this patient population.

IMPACT OF THE GUT MICROBIOTA AND ITS METABOLITES ON THE INFLAMMATORY RESPONSE AND ANTIVIRAL ACTIVITIES

Immune and inflammatory responses are important pathophysiological mechanisms in the pathogenesis of COVID-19. SARS-CoV-2 invades cells through ACE2 and TMPRSS2, where it replicates rapidly, producing and releasing large numbers of viruses and inducing excessive inflammatory

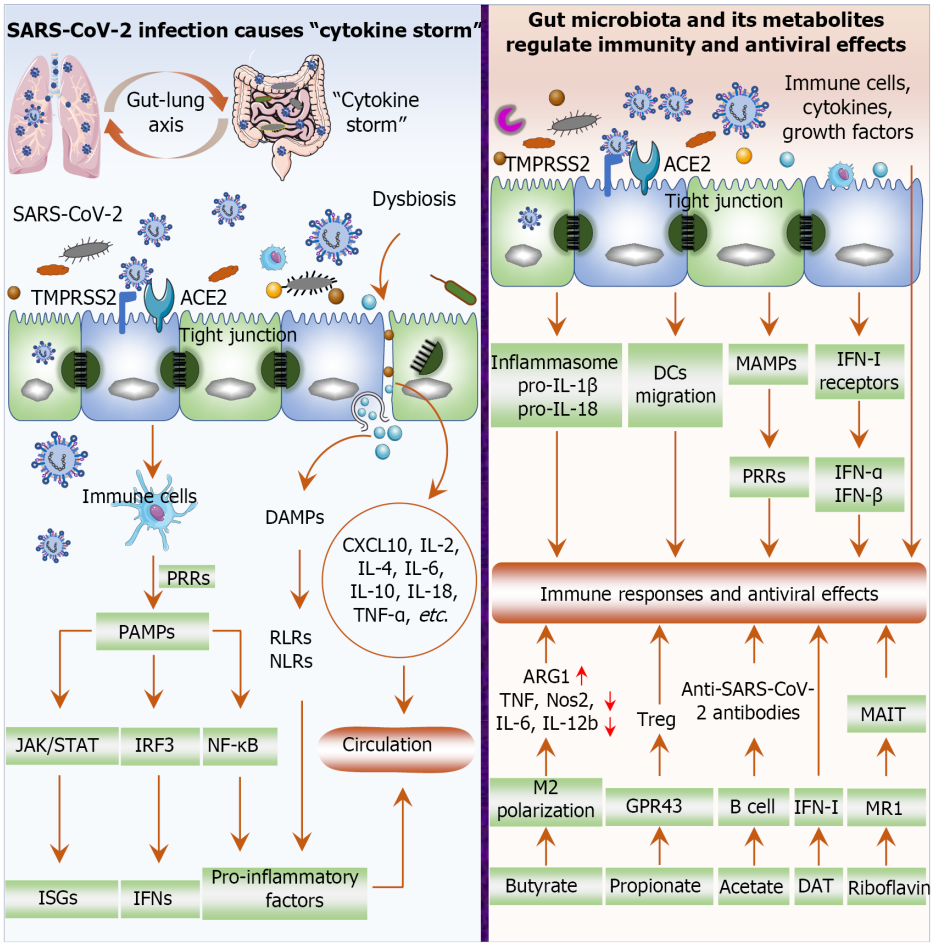


DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6689 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2022.

Figure 1 Potential pathways and mechanisms of gut infection and dysbiosis induced by severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus 2. Fecal-oral transmission of severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus 2 (SARS-CoV-2) in contaminated water and food, or by swallowing virus-laced sputum, results in gut infection and dysbiosis. SARS-CoV-2 infects alveolar type 2 cells and damages lung tissue before invading the gut through circulating immune cells and the lymphatic system and infiltrating gut epithelial cells *via* angiotensin-converting enzyme 2 (ACE2) and transmembrane serine protease 2, subsequently triggering gut inflammation and further promoting dysbiosis. Internalization of SARS-CoV-2 Leads to downregulation of ACE2, resulting in inhibition of mechanistic target of rapamycin and subsequent activation of gut autophagy, which modulates the gut microbiome. However, gut microbiota top associations with disease severity in coronavirus disease 2019 patients, such as *Coprobacillus*, have been shown to upregulate ACE2 expression in the gut. The improper use of antibiotics can also lead to dysbiosis. TMPRSS2: Transmembrane serine protease 2; ACE2: Angiotensin-converting enzyme 2; SARS-CoV-2: Severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus 2; mTOR: Mechanistic target of rapamycin.

cytokine release "cytokine storm", such as IL-6, IL-1β, TNF-α, and IFN[41,50] (Figure 2). Excessive production of proinflammatory cytokines is pathologically associated with acute respiratory distress syndrome, extensive tissue damage, and even death. Viral replication after SARS-CoV-2 invades cells induces immune cells to recognize and bind viral pathogen-associated molecular patterns through pattern recognition receptors (PRRs), followed by the activation of the NF-κB, IRF3 and JAK/STAT signaling pathways to induce the expression of proinflammatory factors, IFNs and IFN-stimulated genes (ISGs)[41,51,52]. In addition, killing or damage of cells by SARS-CoV-2 results in the release of danger-associated molecular patterns, activating RIG-I-like receptors and NOD-like receptors and subsequently facilitating proinflammatory factor expression[41,51]. Dysbiosis after SARS-CoV-2 infection further damages the gut barrier and promotes the production of inflammatory factors such as CXCL10, IL-2, IL-4, IL-6, IL-10, IL-18, and TNF-α[16,53,54]. For example, *B. dorei* and *Akkermansia muciniphila* were positively associated with IL-1β, IL-6 and CXCL8[12]. Subsequently, opportunistic pathogens and inflammatory factors infiltrate the circulation and cause systemic inflammation and infection[55]. Therefore, SARS-CoV-2 infection promotes gut inflammation to aggravate dysbiosis, which in turn exacerbates inflammation and disease progression, forming a vicious cycle.

The gut microbiota and its metabolites influence the host immune response, inflammation and the development and regression of pulmonary infectious diseases, such as influenza A virus and *Streptococcus* pneumonia[56]. A healthy microbiome protects against respiratory viral infections[57,58]. During respiratory viral infection, the gut microbiota regulates the host immune response *via* the gut-lung axis, which refers to the crosstalk between the gut microbiota and lung. Therefore, endotoxins and microbial metabolites can affect the lung through the blood circulation, and conversely, lung inflammation will affect the gut microbiota. It has been reported that gut dysbiosis significantly increases mortality from



DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6689 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2022.

Figure 2 Severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus 2 infection causes "cytokine storm" and the impact of gut microbiota and its metabolites on inflammatory response and antiviral effects. Severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus 2 (SARS-CoV-2) invades cells through angiotensin-converting enzyme 2 (ACE2) and transmembrane serine protease 2 (TMPRSS2) and replicates frantically, inducing innate immune cells [*e.g.*, macrophages, dendritic cells (DCs)] to recognize and bind pathogen-associated molecular patterns through pattern recognition receptors (PRRs). Subsequently, the expression of pro-inflammatory factors, interferons (IFNs) and IFN-stimulated genes is induced through the NF-κB, IRF3, and JAK/STAT signaling pathways, thereby promoting excessive inflammatory cytokine release. Killing or damaging cells by SARS-CoV-2 releases danger-associated molecular patterns that facilitate the expression of pro-inflammatory factors *via* activation of RIG-I-like receptors and NOD-like receptors. In addition, dysbiosis damages the gut barrier (tight junctions) and promotes the production of inflammatory factors such as CXCL10, IL-2, IL-4, IL-6, IL-10, IL-18, and TNF-α. Gut microbiota facilitates inflammasome activation, pro-IL-1β and pro-IL-18 expression, and DCs migration, thereby promoting protective immunity post viral infection. Microbial-associated molecular patterns are transmitted to the parenteral tissues to activate PRRs and affect innate immune responses. Gut microbiota regulates IFN-I receptors expression in respiratory epithelial cells and exerts antiviral effects through IFN-α and IFN-β. Immune cells, cytokines, and growth factors in the gut mucosa reach the respiratory tract to regulate immunity and exert antiviral effects. Butyrate promotes M2 macrophage polarization, upregulating arginase 1, and downregulating TNF, Nos2, IL-6, and IL-12b exerts anti-inflammatory activity. Propionate promotes Treg cell proliferation by activating G-protein-coupled receptor 43, thereby inhibiting autoinflammatory responses and protecting tissues from damage caused by pathological immune responses. Acetate promotes the production of SARS-CoV-2 antibodies by B cells, thereby inhibiting the development of COVID-19. The gut microbiota produces deaminotyrosine to enhance IFN-I signaling and protect the host from viral infection. Riboflavin, produced by the gut microbiome, activates mucosal-associated T cells *via* major histocompatibility complex-related protein-1. Mucosal-associated T cells participate in the immune response against SARS-CoV-2 through the gut-lung axis, thereby exerting antiviral efficacy. TMPRSS2: Transmembrane serine protease 2; ACE2: Angiotensin-converting enzyme 2; SARS-CoV-2: Severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus 2; PRR: Pattern recognition receptors; IFN: Interferons; ISG: Interferons-stimulated gene; MAIT: Mucosal-associated T cells; MAMP: Microbial-associated molecular pattern; DAT: Deaminotyrosine; RLR: RIG-I-like receptors; NLR: NOD-like receptors; DAMP: Danger-associated molecular pattern; PAMP: Pathogen-associated molecular pattern; DC: Dendritic cell; MR1: Major histocompatibility complex-related protein-1; GPR43: G-protein-coupled receptor 43.

respiratory viral infections, which may be associated with dysregulated immune responses; increased secretion of IFN-γ, IL-6, and CCL2; and decreased Treg cell counts in the lung and gastrointestinal tract [59]. The gut microbiota facilitates inflammasome activation, pro-IL-1β and pro-IL-18 expression, and dendritic cell (DC) migration, which are critical for protective immunity post-influenza virus infection [60] (Figure 2). In addition, microbial-associated molecular patterns are transmitted to parenteral tissues to activate PRRs in immune cells and influence innate immune responses[61]. The gut microbiota reportedly regulates the expression of IFN-I receptors in respiratory epithelial cells that limit viral replication and increase resistance to viral infections through IFN-α and IFN-β[58,62]. The gut commensal microbiota promotes the IFN-I response and ISG expression by inducing IFN-β expression

mediated by TLR4-TRIF signaling through colonic lamina propria DCs, thereby enhancing antiviral capacity[62]. The gut microbiota can also affect respiratory mucosal immunity through multiple mechanisms. On the one hand, activated immune cells within the mucosa can reach and affect distant mucosal sites, highlighting the beneficial effects of the gut microbiota during respiratory viral infections [63,64]. On the other hand, the gut microbiota affects the secretion of cytokines and growth factors by the gastrointestinal mucosa, which reach the systemic circulation and act on other mucosal tissues[63, 65]. Furthermore, severe COVID-19 clinical symptoms or complications and higher mortality are more likely to arise in elderly individuals or in patients with concomitant underlying disease, such as cardiovascular disease, diabetes, and cancer[66]. Critically ill patients with COVID-19 often require invasive ventilator-assisted ventilation. However, gut microbiota intervention can reduce the demand for invasive mechanical ventilation in critically ill patients and reduce the incidence of ventilator-associated pneumonia[67], although this finding needs further validation in COVID-19 patients. Therefore, restoring gut microbiota homeostasis is essential for inhibiting the inflammatory response and enhancing antiviral effects.

Gut microbiota metabolites are signaling molecules and substrates for metabolic reactions[68]. Microbial metabolites are absorbed by the gut mucosa and participate in mucosal immune regulation, a process known as "metabolic reprogramming"[69,70]. For example, short-chain fatty acids (SCFAs, mainly including acetate, propionate, and butyrate) can reach distant organs through the bloodstream to exert immunomodulatory and immunoglobulin expression-inducing effects, as well as anti-inflammatory and antiviral effects[70,71] (Figure 2). Butyrate facilitates the polarization of M2 macrophage and exerts anti-inflammatory effects by increasing arginase 1 (ARG1) and decreasing TNF, Nos2, IL-6, and IL-12b expression[41,72]. Butyrate also inhibits histone deacetylase activity or increases the Foxp3 promoter transcription in naive T cells, thereby promoting the naive T cells differentiation into Treg cells[73,74]. Treg cells can suppress autoinflammatory responses and protect tissues from damage caused by pathological immune responses[41]. Furthermore, butyrate restored $CD8^+$ T-cell function in mice and inhibited proinflammatory cytokine production as well as eosinophilic lung infiltration[49]. Unfortunately, a reduced richness of butyrate-producing bacteria such as *F. prausnitzii* and *Clostridium* species has been found in COVID-19 patients[15,17,20,75]. Propionate promotes Treg cell proliferation by activating G-protein-coupled receptor 43 (GPR43)[76]. Moreover, microbe-produced SCFAs (acetate) enhance B-cell metabolism and gene expression, promoting the production of anti-SARS-CoV-2 antibodies and thereby inhibiting disease progression[77]. Deaminotyrosine (DAT) produced by *Clostridium orbiscindens* augments IFN-I signaling to protect the host from viral infection[57]. In addition, riboflavin is a product of gut microbiota constituents, which can activate mucosal-associated T cells (MAIT) *via* restrictive major histocompatibility complex (MHC)-related protein-1 (MR1)[78,79]. MAIT cells, as innate sensors and mediators of the antiviral response, exert antiviral response to SARS-CoV-2 through the gut-lung axis[80]. Antimicrobial peptides secreted by bacteria can promote virolysis, block cell virus fusion, and induce adaptive immune responses, and thus they have been proposed as viable alternative therapeutic treatments for infections by viruses, such as MERS-CoV[81]. Therefore, COVID-19 severity is tightly correlated with the levels of gut microbiota metabolites. However, studies on the direct action of gut microbiota metabolites in COVID-19 remain scarce.

REPROGRAMMING THE GUT MICROBIOTA AS A STRATEGY TO AMELIORATE GASTROINTESTINAL SYMPTOMS AND REDUCE DISEASE SEVERITY

The gut microbiota is closely related to various human gastrointestinal diseases and symptoms, such as gastrointestinal cancer, stomachache, diarrhea, and flatulence[82,83]. For instance, *Escherichia coli*, *Shigella*, *Salmonella*, *Campylobacter*, *Clostridium difficile*, and *Aeromonas* are the main pathogens that cause diarrhea[84,85]. Reprogramming the gut microbiota *via* probiotics, prebiotics and FMT is well documented to effectively treat gastrointestinal diseases. Moreover, probiotic/prebiotic administration has been shown to protect against viral infections in multiple studies (*e.g.*, those caused by influenza virus, rhinovirus, respiratory syncytial virus and coronaviruses). For example, Johnson *et al*[86] found that *Bacillus subtilis* peptidoglycans reduced the infectivity of coronavirus. Peptidoglycan-associated surfactin can disrupt virion integrity, such as in influenza, Ebola, Zika, and Mayaro[86]. Therefore, probiotics, prebiotics and FMT can restore ecological homeostasis by regulating the gut microbiota, representing an effective alternative approach to ameliorate or suppress COVID-19 severity.

Probiotics, such as *Lactobacillus*, yeast, *Bifidobacterium*, *Enterococcus*, and *Bacillus*, are live microorganisms that benefit the host by colonizing the human body. Probiotics maintain healthy gut homeostasis and exert antiviral effects through the gut-lung axis[87,88] and have been widely used to treat gastrointestinal diseases, including diarrhea (acute, antibiotic-associated and *C. difficile*-associated) and adult inflammatory bowel disease (IBD)[89-91]. On the one hand, probiotics can strengthen Treg cell and natural killer cell activity and suppress proinflammatory cytokines, such as TNF-a, CRP, IL-1b, IL2, IL-6, IL7, MCP1, and LDH[92,93]. *Lactobacillus* exerts antiviral activity through direct probiotic-virus interactions, production of antiviral metabolites, and stimulation of the immune system[94]. On the other hand, probiotics are beneficial for enhancing epithelial barrier function and improving gut

microbial diversity. Furthermore, probiotics combat and block harmful bacterial strains in the gut or enhance beneficial signaling pathways[95,96]. Existing evidence shows that probiotic miRNA modulation and regulation of signaling pathways such as NF-kB and STAT1 ameliorate COVID-19 complications[97,98]. Probiotics have the potential to interact with ACE2; for example, some lactobacilli release peptides with a high affinity for ACE2[93,99]. *Lactobacillus spp.* and *Bifidobacterium spp.* exhibit the strongest anti-respiratory virus activity *via* an immunomodulatory mechanism[56]. In January 2020, relevant Chinese government departments recommended the addition of probiotics in COVID-19 treatment to improve gut microbiota homeostasis and protect against subsequent bacterial infections. However, evidence detailing the efficacy of probiotics in treating COVID-19 is limited, although relevant clinical trials are being conducted. Moreover, the safety of probiotics in COVID-19 patients should be emphasized to ensure that their use does not induce new gastrointestinal symptoms or secondary infections.

Prebiotics are substrates that are selectively utilized by host microorganisms to provide health benefits[100]. Unfortunately, little information is available on using prebiotics to treat respiratory infections. In a clinical trial of prebiotics, KB109 was found to regulate gut microbiome composition and increase the production of SCFAs in the gut (NCT04414124). For instance, butyrate and propionate obtained from the fermentation of prebiotics affect the differentiation or function of T cells, macrophages, and DCs[93]. In addition, prebiotics selectively stimulate beneficial bacterial growth or enhance the activity of indigenous probiotics[93]. Accordingly, the role of prebiotics in COVID-19 patients should be further emphasized.

FMT refers to the transplantation of a functional microbiota from healthy individuals into the gastrointestinal tract of patients to treat intestinal and extraintestinal diseases[84]. An expanding body of evidence suggests that FMT can effectively treat many diseases, such as cancer, liver diseases, *C. difficile* infection, irritable bowel syndrome (IBS), and IBD[101-103]. Since COVID-19 patients exhibit a depletion of beneficial commensal bacteria, FMT represents a theoretically promising strategy to mitigate disease severity. Regrettably, convincing clinical evidence for the effect of FMT in COVID-19 is lacking, and its safety and efficacy warrant further investigation.

CONCLUSION

COVID-19 was previously identified as a respiratory infectious disease. However, accumulating clinical studies have subsequently found that a large proportion of patients have gastrointestinal symptoms, such as abdominal pain, diarrhea, vomiting, and acid reflux, as well as significant gut microbiota alterations[7,30]. The gut microbiota not only significantly affects the COVID-19 development and disease severity but also reflects the susceptibility of COVID-19 patients to long-term complications [104]. Studies have confirmed that dysbiosis increases the poor prognosis of COVID-19[104]. However, controversial results exist regarding gut microbiota alterations in COVID-19 patients. A variety of factors, such as sex, age, basic health status, medication use, genetics, ethnicity, and geographic location, can affect the composition of the gut microbiota and lead to individual differences and varying responses to SARS-CoV-2 infection. Therefore, further exploration of the specific gut microbiota alterations in COVID-19 patients and the clinical correlation between the gut microbiota and COVID-19 will be a very challenging and valuable research direction in the future.

Unfortunately, direct evidence for the contribution of the gut microbiota in COVID-19 remains lacking. For example, the exact mechanism of dysbiosis remains unclear. Moreover, the regulation of host immune and inflammatory responses and antiviral effects by the gut microbiota during SARS-CoV-2 infection relies largely on inferences or conjectures from previous studies. Given that specific drugs for COVID-19 remain enigmatic, vaccines represent the most effective prevention and control strategy; however, the continuous mutation of the virus has exacerbated this conundrum. Therefore, gut microbiota intervention through probiotics, prebiotics and FMT is undoubtedly one of the promising cosupplementation strategies for the future treatment of COVID-19, but large-scale studies are lacking and there are no corresponding treatment guidelines. The therapeutic prospects of the gut microbiota in COVID-19 are promising, but there is still a long way to go to realize its potential.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Xiang H and Liu QP contributed equally to this work; Xiang H drafted the manuscript; Xiang H and Liu QP edited the manuscript, conceived and supervised the work; all the authors have read and approved the final manuscript.

Conflict-of-interest statement: There is no conflict of interest associated with any of the senior author or other coauthors contributed their efforts in this manuscript.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article that was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by

external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution NonCommercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: https://creativecommons.org/Licenses/by-nc/4.0/

Country/Territory of origin: China

ORCID number: Hui Xiang 0000-0001-9910-697X; Qi-Ping Liu 0000-0003-0996-0182.

S-Editor: Chen YL
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Chen YL

REFERENCES

1 **Zang R**, Gomez Castro MF, McCune BT, Zeng Q, Rothlauf PW, Sonnek NM, Liu Z, Brulois KF, Wang X, Greenberg HB, Diamond MS, Ciorba MA, Whelan SPJ, Ding S. TMPRSS2 and TMPRSS4 promote SARS-CoV-2 infection of human small intestinal enterocytes. *Sci Immunol* 2020; **5** [PMID: 32404436 DOI: 10.1126/sciimmunol.abc3582]
2 **Ziegler CGK**, Allon SJ, Nyquist SK, Mbano IM, Miao VN, Tzouanas CN, Cao Y, Yousif AS, Bals J, Hauser BM, Feldman J, Muus C, Wadsworth MH 2nd, Kazer SW, Hughes TK, Doran B, Gatter GJ, Vukovic M, Taliaferro F, Mead BE, Guo Z, Wang JP, Gras D, Plaisant M, Ansari M, Angelidis I, Adler H, Sucre JMS, Taylor CJ, Lin B, Waghray A, Mitsialis V, Dwyer DF, Buchheit KM, Boyce JA, Barrett NA, Laidlaw TM, Carroll SL, Colonna L, Tkachev V, Peterson CW, Yu A, Zheng HB, Gideon HP, Winchell CG, Lin PL, Bingle CD, Snapper SB, Kropski JA, Theis FJ, Schiller HB, Zaragosi LE, Barbry P, Leslie A, Kiem HP, Flynn JL, Fortune SM, Berger B, Finberg RW, Kean LS, Garber M, Schmidt AG, Lingwood D, Shalek AK, Ordovas-Montanes J; HCA Lung Biological Network. SARS-CoV-2 Receptor ACE2 Is an Interferon-Stimulated Gene in Human Airway Epithelial Cells and Is Detected in Specific Cell Subsets across Tissues. *Cell* 2020; **181**: 1016-1035.e19 [PMID: 32413319 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2020.04.035]
3 **Hoffmann M**, Kleine-Weber H, Schroeder S, Krüger N, Herrler T, Erichsen S, Schiergens TS, Herrler G, Wu NH, Nitsche A, Müller MA, Drosten C, Pöhlmann S. SARS-CoV-2 Cell Entry Depends on ACE2 and TMPRSS2 and Is Blocked by a Clinically Proven Protease Inhibitor. *Cell* 2020; **181**: 271-280.e8 [PMID: 32142651 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2020.02.052]
4 **Dhar D**, Mohanty A. Gut microbiota and Covid-19- possible link and implications. *Virus Res* 2020; **285**: 198018 [PMID: 32430279 DOI: 10.1016/j.virusres.2020.198018]
5 **Qi F**, Qian S, Zhang S, Zhang Z. Single cell RNA sequencing of 13 human tissues identify cell types and receptors of human coronaviruses. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2020; **526**: 135-140 [PMID: 32199615 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbrc.2020.03.044]
6 **Xiao F**, Tang M, Zheng X, Liu Y, Li X, Shan H. Evidence for Gastrointestinal Infection of SARS-CoV-2. *Gastroenterology* 2020; **158**: 1831-1833.e3 [PMID: 32142773 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2020.02.055]
7 **Cheung KS**, Hung IFN, Chan PPY, Lung KC, Tso E, Liu R, Ng YY, Chu MY, Chung TWH, Tam AR, Yip CCY, Leung KH, Fung AY, Zhang RR, Lin Y, Cheng HM, Zhang AJX, To KKW, Chan KH, Yuen KY, Leung WK. Gastrointestinal Manifestations of SARS-CoV-2 Infection and Virus Load in Fecal Samples From a Hong Kong Cohort: Systematic Review and Meta-analysis. *Gastroenterology* 2020; **159**: 81-95 [PMID: 32251668 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2020.03.065]
8 **Lin W**, Xie Z, Li Y, Li L, Wen C, Cao Y, Chen X, Ou X, Hu F, Li F, Tang X, Cai W. Association between detectable SARS-COV-2 RNA in anal swabs and disease severity in patients with coronavirus disease 2019. *J Med Virol* 2021; **93**: 794-802 [PMID: 32672840 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.26307]
9 **Xu Y**, Li X, Zhu B, Liang H, Fang C, Gong Y, Guo Q, Sun X, Zhao D, Shen J, Zhang H, Liu H, Xia H, Tang J, Zhang K, Gong S. Characteristics of pediatric SARS-CoV-2 infection and potential evidence for persistent fecal viral shedding. *Nat Med* 2020; **26**: 502-505 [PMID: 32284613 DOI: 10.1038/s41591-020-0817-4]
10 **Zuo T**, Zhang F, Lui GCY, Yeoh YK, Li AYL, Zhan H, Wan Y, Chung ACK, Cheung CP, Chen N, Lai CKC, Chen Z, Tso EYK, Fung KSC, Chan V, Ling L, Joynt G, Hui DSC, Chan FKL, Chan PKS, Ng SC. Alterations in Gut Microbiota of Patients With COVID-19 During Time of Hospitalization. *Gastroenterology* 2020; **159**: 944-955.e8 [PMID: 32442562 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2020.05.048]
11 **Villapol S**. Gastrointestinal symptoms associated with COVID-19: impact on the gut microbiome. *Transl Res* 2020; **226**: 57-69 [PMID: 32827705 DOI: 10.1016/j.trsl.2020.08.004]
12 **Yeoh YK**, Zuo T, Lui GC, Zhang F, Liu Q, Li AY, Chung AC, Cheung CP, Tso EY, Fung KS, Chan V, Ling L, Joynt G, Hui DS, Chow KM, Ng SSS, Li TC, Ng RW, Yip TC, Wong GL, Chan FK, Wong CK, Chan PK, Ng SC. Gut microbiota composition reflects disease severity and dysfunctional immune responses in patients with COVID-19. *Gut* 2021; **70**: 698-706 [PMID: 33431578 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2020-323020]
13 **Wade WG**. The oral microbiome in health and disease. *Pharmacol Res* 2013; **69**: 137-143 [PMID: 23201354 DOI: 10.1016/j.phrs.2012.11.006]
14 **Fan Y**, Pedersen O. Gut microbiota in human metabolic health and disease. *Nat Rev Microbiol* 2021; **19**: 55-71 [PMID: 32887946 DOI: 10.1038/s41579-020-0433-9]
15 **Gu S**, Chen Y, Wu Z, Gao H, Lv L, Guo F, Zhang X, Luo R, Huang C, Lu H, Zheng B, Zhang J, Yan R, Zhang H, Jiang H, Xu Q, Guo J, Gong Y, Tang L, Li L. Alterations of the Gut Microbiota in Patients With Coronavirus Disease 2019 or H1N1 Influenza. *Clin Infect Dis* 2020; **71**: 2669-2678 [PMID: 32497191 DOI: 10.1093/cid/ciaa709]
16 **Tao W**, Zhang G, Wang X, Guo M, Zeng W, Xu Z, Cao D, Pan A, Wang Y, Zhang K, Ma X, Chen Z, Jin T, Liu L, Weng

J, Zhu S. Analysis of the intestinal microbiota in COVID-19 patients and its correlation with the inflammatory factor IL-18. *Med Microecol* 2020; **5**: 100023 [PMID: 34173452 DOI: 10.1016/j.medmic.2020.100023]

17 **Tang L**, Gu S, Gong Y, Li B, Lu H, Li Q, Zhang R, Gao X, Wu Z, Zhang J, Zhang Y, Li L. Clinical Significance of the Correlation between Changes in the Major Intestinal Bacteria Species and COVID-19 Severity. *Engineering (Beijing)* 2020; **6**: 1178-1184 [PMID: 33520333 DOI: 10.1016/j.eng.2020.05.013]

18 **Zuo T**, Zhan H, Zhang F, Liu Q, Tso EYK, Lui GCY, Chen N, Li A, Lu W, Chan FKL, Chan PKS, Ng SC. Alterations in Fecal Fungal Microbiome of Patients With COVID-19 During Time of Hospitalization until Discharge. *Gastroenterology* 2020; **159**: 1302-1310.e5 [PMID: 32598884 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2020.06.048]

19 **Wu Y**, Cheng X, Jiang G, Tang H, Ming S, Tang L, Lu J, Guo C, Shan H, Huang X. Altered oral and gut microbiota and its association with SARS-CoV-2 viral load in COVID-19 patients during hospitalization. *NPJ Biofilms Microbiomes* 2021; **7**: 61 [PMID: 34294722 DOI: 10.1038/s41522-021-00232-5]

20 **Zuo T**, Liu Q, Zhang F, Lui GC, Tso EY, Yeoh YK, Chen Z, Boon SS, Chan FK, Chan PK, Ng SC. Depicting SARS-CoV-2 faecal viral activity in association with gut microbiota composition in patients with COVID-19. *Gut* 2021; **70**: 276-284 [PMID: 32690600 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2020-322294]

21 **Lv L**, Gu S, Jiang H, Yan R, Chen Y, Luo R, Huang C, Lu H, Zheng B, Zhang H, Xia J, Tang L, Sheng G, Li L. Gut mycobiota alterations in patients with COVID-19 and H1N1 infections and their associations with clinical features. *Commun Biol* 2021; **4**: 480 [PMID: 33850296 DOI: 10.1038/s42003-021-02036-x]

22 **Suskun C**, Kilic O, Yilmaz Ciftdogan D, Guven S, Karbuz A, Ozkaya Parlakay A, Kara Y, Kacmaz E, Sahin A, Boga A, Kizmaz Isancli D, Gulhan B, Kanik-Yuksek S, Kiral E, Bozan G, Arslanoglu MO, Kizil MC, Dinleyici M, Us T, Varis A, Kaya M, Vandenplas Y, Dinleyici EC. Intestinal microbiota composition of children with infection with severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus 2 (SARS-CoV-2) and multisystem inflammatory syndrome (MIS-C). *Eur J Pediatr* 2022; **181**: 3175-3191 [PMID: 35585256 DOI: 10.1007/s00431-022-04494-9]

23 **Newsome RC**, Gauthier J, Hernandez MC, Abraham GE, Robinson TO, Williams HB, Sloan M, Owings A, Laird H, Christian T, Pride Y, Wilson KJ, Hasan M, Parker A, Senitko M, Glover SC, Gharaibeh RZ, Jobin C. The gut microbiome of COVID-19 recovered patients returns to uninfected status in a minority-dominated United States cohort. *Gut Microbes* 2021; **13**: 1-15 [PMID: 34100340 DOI: 10.1080/19490976.2021.1926840]

24 **Weiser JN**, Ferreira DM, Paton JC. Streptococcus pneumoniae: transmission, colonization and invasion. *Nat Rev Microbiol* 2018; **16**: 355-367 [PMID: 29599457 DOI: 10.1038/s41579-018-0001-8]

25 **Hashimoto T**, Perlot T, Rehman A, Trichereau J, Ishiguro H, Paolino M, Sigl V, Hanada T, Hanada R, Lipinski S, Wild B, Camargo SM, Singer D, Richter A, Kuba K, Fukamizu A, Schreiber S, Clevers H, Verrey F, Rosenstiel P, Penninger JM. ACE2 links amino acid malnutrition to microbial ecology and intestinal inflammation. *Nature* 2012; **487**: 477-481 [PMID: 22837003 DOI: 10.1038/nature11228]

26 **Geva-Zatorsky N**, Sefik E, Kua L, Pasman L, Tan TG, Ortiz-Lopez A, Yanortsang TB, Yang L, Jupp R, Mathis D, Benoist C, Kasper DL. Mining the Human Gut Microbiota for Immunomodulatory Organisms. *Cell* 2017; **168**: 928-943.e11 [PMID: 28215708 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2017.01.022]

27 **Hung YP**, Lee CC, Lee JC, Tsai PJ, Ko WC. Gut Dysbiosis during COVID-19 and Potential Effect of Probiotics. *Microorganisms* 2021; **9** [PMID: 34442684 DOI: 10.3390/microorganisms9081605]

28 **Larsen JM**. The immune response to Prevotella bacteria in chronic inflammatory disease. *Immunology* 2017; **151**: 363-374 [PMID: 28542929 DOI: 10.1111/imm.12760]

29 **Chen Y**, Gu S, Chen Y, Lu H, Shi D, Guo J, Wu WR, Yang Y, Li Y, Xu KJ, Ding C, Luo R, Huang C, Yu L, Xu M, Yi P, Liu J, Tao JJ, Zhang H, Lv L, Wang B, Sheng J, Li L. Six-month follow-up of gut microbiota richness in patients with COVID-19. *Gut* 2022; **71**: 222-225 [PMID: 33833065 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2021-324090]

30 **Guo M**, Tao W, Flavell RA, Zhu S. Potential intestinal infection and faecal-oral transmission of SARS-CoV-2. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2021; **18**: 269-283 [PMID: 33589829 DOI: 10.1038/s41575-021-00416-6]

31 **Wang W**, Xu Y, Gao R, Lu R, Han K, Wu G, Tan W. Detection of SARS-CoV-2 in Different Types of Clinical Specimens. *JAMA* 2020; **323**: 1843-1844 [PMID: 32159775 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2020.3786]

32 **Chan KH**, Sridhar S, Zhang RR, Chu H, Fung AY, Chan G, Chan JF, To KK, Hung IF, Cheng VC, Yuen KY. Factors affecting stability and infectivity of SARS-CoV-2. *J Hosp Infect* 2020; **106**: 226-231 [PMID: 32652214 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhin.2020.07.009]

33 **Hirose R**, Nakaya T, Naito Y, Daidoji T, Watanabe Y, Yasuda H, Konishi H, Itoh Y. Mechanism of Human Influenza Virus RNA Persistence and Virion Survival in Feces: Mucus Protects Virions From Acid and Digestive Juices. *J Infect Dis* 2017; **216**: 105-109 [PMID: 28498998 DOI: 10.1093/infdis/jix224]

34 **Aktas B**, Aslim B. Gut-lung axis and dysbiosis in COVID-19. *Turk J Biol* 2020; **44**: 265-272 [PMID: 32595361 DOI: 10.3906/biy-2005-102]

35 **Qian Q**, Fan L, Liu W, Li J, Yue J, Wang M, Ke X, Yin Y, Chen Q, Jiang C. Direct Evidence of Active SARS-CoV-2 Replication in the Intestine. *Clin Infect Dis* 2021; **73**: 361-366 [PMID: 32638022 DOI: 10.1093/cid/ciaa925]

36 **Choi SM**, Xie H, Campbell AP, Kuypers J, Leisenring W, Boudreault AA, Englund JA, Corey L, Boeckh M. Influenza viral RNA detection in blood as a marker to predict disease severity in hematopoietic cell transplant recipients. *J Infect Dis* 2012; **206**: 1872-1877 [PMID: 23033148 DOI: 10.1093/infdis/jis610]

37 **Hikmet F**, Méar L, Edvinsson Å, Micke P, Uhlén M, Lindskog C. The protein expression profile of ACE2 in human tissues. *Mol Syst Biol* 2020; **16**: e9610 [PMID: 32715618 DOI: 10.15252/msb.20209610]

38 **Harmer D**, Gilbert M, Borman R, Clark KL. Quantitative mRNA expression profiling of ACE 2, a novel homologue of angiotensin converting enzyme. *FEBS Lett* 2002; **532**: 107-110 [PMID: 12459472 DOI: 10.1016/s0014-5793(02)03640-2]

39 **Dang AT**, Marsland BJ. Microbes, metabolites, and the gut-lung axis. *Mucosal Immunol* 2019; **12**: 843-850 [PMID: 30976087 DOI: 10.1038/s41385-019-0160-6]

40 **Katz-Agranov N**, Zandman-Goddard G. Autoimmunity and COVID-19 - The microbiotal connection. *Autoimmun Rev* 2021; **20**: 102865 [PMID: 34118455 DOI: 10.1016/j.autrev.2021.102865]

41 **Wang B**, Zhang L, Wang Y, Dai T, Qin Z, Zhou F. Alterations in microbiota of patients with COVID-19: potential

mechanisms and therapeutic interventions. *Signal Transduct Target Ther* 2022; **7**: 143 [PMID: 35487886 DOI: 10.1038/s41392-022-00986-0]

42 **Viana SD**, Nunes S, Reis F. ACE2 imbalance as a key player for the poor outcomes in COVID-19 patients with age-related comorbidities - Role of gut microbiota dysbiosis. *Ageing Res Rev* 2020; **62**: 101123 [PMID: 32683039 DOI: 10.1016/j.arr.2020.101123]

43 **Penninger JM**, Grant MB, Sung JJY. The Role of Angiotensin Converting Enzyme 2 in Modulating Gut Microbiota, Intestinal Inflammation, and Coronavirus Infection. *Gastroenterology* 2021; **160**: 39-46 [PMID: 33130103 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2020.07.067]

44 **Kowalczuk S**, Bröer A, Tietze N, Vanslambrouck JM, Rasko JE, Bröer S. A protein complex in the brush-border membrane explains a Hartnup disorder allele. *FASEB J* 2008; **22**: 2880-2887 [PMID: 18424768 DOI: 10.1096/fj.08-107300]

45 **de Oliveira AP**, Lopes ALF, Pacheco G, de Sá Guimarães Nolêto IR, Nicolau LAD, Medeiros JVR. Premises among SARS-CoV-2, dysbiosis and diarrhea: Walking through the ACE2/mTOR/autophagy route. *Med Hypotheses* 2020; **144**: 110243 [PMID: 33254549 DOI: 10.1016/j.mehy.2020.110243]

46 **Megyeri K**, Dernovics Á, Al-Luhaibi ZII, Rosztóczy A. COVID-19-associated diarrhea. *World J Gastroenterol* 2021; **27**: 3208-3222 [PMID: 34163106 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v27.i23.3208]

47 **Enaud R**, Prevel R, Ciarlo E, Beaufils F, Wieërs G, Guery B, Delhaes L. The Gut-Lung Axis in Health and Respiratory Diseases: A Place for Inter-Organ and Inter-Kingdom Crosstalks. *Front Cell Infect Microbiol* 2020; **10**: 9 [PMID: 32140452 DOI: 10.3389/fcimb.2020.00009]

48 **Langford BJ**, So M, Raybardhan S, Leung V, Westwood D, MacFadden DR, Soucy JR, Daneman N. Bacterial co-infection and secondary infection in patients with COVID-19: a living rapid review and meta-analysis. *Clin Microbiol Infect* 2020; **26**: 1622-1629 [PMID: 32711058 DOI: 10.1016/j.cmi.2020.07.016]

49 **Gasmi A**, Tippairote T, Mujawdiya PK, Peana M, Menzel A, Dadar M, Benahmed AG, Bjørklund G. The microbiota-mediated dietary and nutritional interventions for COVID-19. *Clin Immunol* 2021; **226**: 108725 [PMID: 33845194 DOI: 10.1016/j.clim.2021.108725]

50 **Sims JT**, Krishnan V, Chang CY, Engle SM, Casalini G, Rodgers GH, Bivi N, Nickoloff BJ, Konrad RJ, de Bono S, Higgs RE, Benschop RJ, Ottaviani S, Cardoso A, Nirula A, Corbellino M, Stebbing J. Characterization of the cytokine storm reflects hyperinflammatory endothelial dysfunction in COVID-19. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2021; **147**: 107-111 [PMID: 32920092 DOI: 10.1016/j.jaci.2020.08.031]

51 **Khanmohammadi S**, Rezaei N. Role of Toll-like receptors in the pathogenesis of COVID-19. *J Med Virol* 2021; **93**: 2735-2739 [PMID: 33506952 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.26826]

52 **Merad M**, Martin JC. Pathological inflammation in patients with COVID-19: a key role for monocytes and macrophages. *Nat Rev Immunol* 2020; **20**: 355-362 [PMID: 32376901 DOI: 10.1038/s41577-020-0331-4]

53 **Effenberger M**, Grabherr F, Mayr L, Schwaerzler J, Nairz M, Seifert M, Hilbe R, Seiwald S, Scholl-Buergi S, Fritsche G, Bellmann-Weiler R, Weiss G, Müller T, Adolph TE, Tilg H. Faecal calprotectin indicates intestinal inflammation in COVID-19. *Gut* 2020; **69**: 1543-1544 [PMID: 32312790 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2020-321388]

54 **Tian W**, Zhang N, Jin R, Feng Y, Wang S, Gao S, Gao R, Wu G, Tian D, Tan W, Chen Y, Gao GF, Wong CCL. Immune suppression in the early stage of COVID-19 disease. *Nat Commun* 2020; **11**: 5859 [PMID: 33203833 DOI: 10.1038/s41467-020-19706-9]

55 **Velikova T**, Snegarova V, Kukov A, Batselova H, Mihova A, Nakov R. Gastrointestinal mucosal immunity and COVID-19. *World J Gastroenterol* 2021; **27**: 5047-5059 [PMID: 34497434 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v27.i30.5047]

56 **Donati Zeppa S**, Agostini D, Piccoli G, Stocchi V, Sestili P. Gut Microbiota Status in COVID-19: An Unrecognized Player? *Front Cell Infect Microbiol* 2020; **10**: 576551 [PMID: 33324572 DOI: 10.3389/fcimb.2020.576551]

57 **Steed AL**, Christophi GP, Kaiko GE, Sun L, Goodwin VM, Jain U, Esaulova E, Artyomov MN, Morales DJ, Holtzman MJ, Boon ACM, Lenschow DJ, Stappenbeck TS. The microbial metabolite desaminotyrosine protects from influenza through type I interferon. *Science* 2017; **357**: 498-502 [PMID: 28774928 DOI: 10.1126/science.aam5336]

58 **Bradley KC**, Finsterbusch K, Schnepf D, Crotta S, Llorian M, Davidson S, Fuchs SY, Staeheli P, Wack A. Microbiota-Driven Tonic Interferon Signals in Lung Stromal Cells Protect from Influenza Virus Infection. *Cell Rep* 2019; **28**: 245-256.e4 [PMID: 31269444 DOI: 10.1016/j.celrep.2019.05.105]

59 **Grayson MH**, Camarda LE, Hussain SA, Zemple SJ, Hayward M, Lam V, Hunter DA, Santoro JL, Rohlfing M, Cheung DS, Salzman NH. Intestinal Microbiota Disruption Reduces Regulatory T Cells and Increases Respiratory Viral Infection Mortality Through Increased IFNγ Production. *Front Immunol* 2018; **9**: 1587 [PMID: 30042764 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.01587]

60 **Ichinohe T**, Pang IK, Kumamoto Y, Peaper DR, Ho JH, Murray TS, Iwasaki A. Microbiota regulates immune defense against respiratory tract influenza A virus infection. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 2011; **108**: 5354-5359 [PMID: 21402903 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1019378108]

61 **Clarke TB**, Davis KM, Lysenko ES, Zhou AY, Yu Y, Weiser JN. Recognition of peptidoglycan from the microbiota by Nod1 enhances systemic innate immunity. *Nat Med* 2010; **16**: 228-231 [PMID: 20081863 DOI: 10.1038/nm.2087]

62 **Stefan KL**, Kim MV, Iwasaki A, Kasper DL. Commensal Microbiota Modulation of Natural Resistance to Virus Infection. *Cell* 2020; **183**: 1312-1324.e10 [PMID: 33212011 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2020.10.047]

63 **Kitazawa H**, Villena J. Modulation of Respiratory TLR3-Anti-Viral Response by Probiotic Microorganisms: Lessons Learned from Lactobacillus rhamnosus CRL1505. *Front Immunol* 2014; **5**: 201 [PMID: 24860569 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2014.00201]

64 **Zelaya H**, Alvarez S, Kitazawa H, Villena J. Respiratory Antiviral Immunity and Immunobiotics: Beneficial Effects on Inflammation-Coagulation Interaction during Influenza Virus Infection. *Front Immunol* 2016; **7**: 633 [PMID: 28066442 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2016.00633]

65 **Zhang D**, Li S, Wang N, Tan HY, Zhang Z, Feng Y. The Cross-Talk Between Gut Microbiota and Lungs in Common Lung Diseases. *Front Microbiol* 2020; **11**: 301 [PMID: 32158441 DOI: 10.3389/fmicb.2020.00301]

66 **Lithander FE**, Neumann S, Tenison E, Lloyd K, Welsh TJ, Rodrigues JCL, Higgins JPT, Scourfield L, Christensen H,

Haunton VJ, Henderson EJ. COVID-19 in older people: a rapid clinical review. *Age Ageing* 2020; **49**: 501-515 [PMID: 32377677 DOI: 10.1093/ageing/afaa093]

67 **Zeng J**, Wang CT, Zhang FS, Qi F, Wang SF, Ma S, Wu TJ, Tian H, Tian ZT, Zhang SL, Qu Y, Liu LY, Li YZ, Cui S, Zhao HL, Du QS, Ma Z, Li CH, Li Y, Si M, Chu YF, Meng M, Ren HS, Zhang JC, Jiang JJ, Ding M, Wang YP. Effect of probiotics on the incidence of ventilator-associated pneumonia in critically ill patients: a randomized controlled multicenter trial. *Intensive Care Med* 2016; **42**: 1018-1028 [PMID: 27043237 DOI: 10.1007/s00134-016-4303-x]

68 **Krautkramer KA**, Fan J, Bäckhed F. Gut microbial metabolites as multi-kingdom intermediates. *Nat Rev Microbiol* 2021; **19**: 77-94 [PMID: 32968241 DOI: 10.1038/s41579-020-0438-4]

69 **Trompette A**, Gollwitzer ES, Yadava K, Sichelstiel AK, Sprenger N, Ngom-Bru C, Blanchard C, Junt T, Nicod LP, Harris NL, Marsland BJ. Gut microbiota metabolism of dietary fiber influences allergic airway disease and hematopoiesis. *Nat Med* 2014; **20**: 159-166 [PMID: 24390308 DOI: 10.1038/nm.3444]

70 **Villena J**, Kitazawa H. The Modulation of Mucosal Antiviral Immunity by Immunobiotics: Could They Offer Any Benefit in the SARS-CoV-2 Pandemic? *Front Physiol* 2020; **11**: 699 [PMID: 32670091 DOI: 10.3389/fphys.2020.00699]

71 **Sencio V**, Barthelemy A, Tavares LP, Machado MG, Soulard D, Cuinat C, Queiroz-Junior CM, Noordine ML, Salomé-Desnoulez S, Deryuter L, Foligné B, Wahl C, Frisch B, Vieira AT, Paget C, Milligan G, Ulven T, Wolowczuk I, Faveeuw C, Le Goffic R, Thomas M, Ferreira S, Teixeira MM, Trottein F. Gut Dysbiosis during Influenza Contributes to Pulmonary Pneumococcal Superinfection through Altered Short-Chain Fatty Acid Production. *Cell Rep* 2020; **30**: 2934-2947.e6 [PMID: 32130898 DOI: 10.1016/j.celrep.2020.02.013]

72 **Scott NA**, Andrusaite A, Andersen P, Lawson M, Alcon-Giner C, Leclaire C, Caim S, Le Gall G, Shaw T, Connolly JPR, Roe AJ, Wessel H, Bravo-Blas A, Thomson CA, Kästele V, Wang P, Peterson DA, Bancroft A, Li X, Grencis R, Mowat AM, Hall LJ, Travis MA, Milling SWF, Mann ER. Antibiotics induce sustained dysregulation of intestinal T cell immunity by perturbing macrophage homeostasis. *Sci Transl Med* 2018; **10** [PMID: 30355800 DOI: 10.1126/scitranslmed.aao4755]

73 **Arpaia N**, Campbell C, Fan X, Dikiy S, van der Veeken J, deRoos P, Liu H, Cross JR, Pfeffer K, Coffer PJ, Rudensky AY. Metabolites produced by commensal bacteria promote peripheral regulatory T-cell generation. *Nature* 2013; **504**: 451-455 [PMID: 24226773 DOI: 10.1038/nature12726]

74 **Furusawa Y**, Obata Y, Fukuda S, Endo TA, Nakato G, Takahashi D, Nakanishi Y, Uetake C, Kato K, Kato T, Takahashi M, Fukuda NN, Murakami S, Miyauchi E, Hino S, Atarashi K, Onawa S, Fujimura Y, Lockett T, Clarke JM, Topping DL, Tomita M, Hori S, Ohara O, Morita T, Koseki H, Kikuchi J, Honda K, Hase K, Ohno H. Commensal microbe-derived butyrate induces the differentiation of colonic regulatory T cells. *Nature* 2013; **504**: 446-450 [PMID: 24226770 DOI: 10.1038/nature12721]

75 **McNabney SM**, Henagan TM. Short Chain Fatty Acids in the Colon and Peripheral Tissues: A Focus on Butyrate, Colon Cancer, Obesity and Insulin Resistance. *Nutrients* 2017; **9** [PMID: 29231905 DOI: 10.3390/nu9121348]

76 **Maslowski KM**, Vieira AT, Ng A, Kranich J, Sierro F, Yu D, Schilter HC, Rolph MS, Mackay F, Artis D, Xavier RJ, Teixeira MM, Mackay CR. Regulation of inflammatory responses by gut microbiota and chemoattractant receptor GPR43. *Nature* 2009; **461**: 1282-1286 [PMID: 19865172 DOI: 10.1038/nature08530]

77 **Kim M**, Qie Y, Park J, Kim CH. Gut Microbial Metabolites Fuel Host Antibody Responses. *Cell Host Microbe* 2016; **20**: 202-214 [PMID: 27476413 DOI: 10.1016/j.chom.2016.07.001]

78 **Corbett AJ**, Eckle SB, Birkinshaw RW, Liu L, Patel O, Mahony J, Chen Z, Reantragoon R, Meehan B, Cao H, Williamson NA, Strugnell RA, Van Sinderen D, Mak JY, Fairlie DP, Kjer-Nielsen L, Rossjohn J, McCluskey J. T-cell activation by transitory neo-antigens derived from distinct microbial pathways. *Nature* 2014; **509**: 361-365 [PMID: 24695216 DOI: 10.1038/nature13160]

79 **Legoux F**, Salou M, Lantz O. MAIT Cell Development and Functions: the Microbial Connection. *Immunity* 2020; **53**: 710-723 [PMID: 33053329 DOI: 10.1016/j.immuni.2020.09.009]

80 **Parrot T**, Gorin JB, Ponzetta A, Maleki KT, Kammann T, Emgård J, Perez-Potti A, Sekine T, Rivera-Ballesteros O; Karolinska COVID-19 Study Group, Gredmark-Russ S, Rooyackers O, Folkesson E, Eriksson LI, Norrby-Teglund A, Ljunggren HG, Björkström NK, Aleman S, Buggert M, Klingström J, Strålin K, Sandberg JK. MAIT cell activation and dynamics associated with COVID-19 disease severity. *Sci Immunol* 2020; **5** [PMID: 32989174 DOI: 10.1126/sciimmunol.abe1670]

81 **Mustafa S**, Balkhy H, Gabere MN. Current treatment options and the role of peptides as potential therapeutic components for Middle East Respiratory Syndrome (MERS): A review. *J Infect Public Health* 2018; **11**: 9-17 [PMID: 28864360 DOI: 10.1016/j.jiph.2017.08.009]

82 **Weingarden AR**, Vaughn BP. Intestinal microbiota, fecal microbiota transplantation, and inflammatory bowel disease. *Gut Microbes* 2017; **8**: 238-252 [PMID: 28609251 DOI: 10.1080/19490976.2017.1290757]

83 **Ford AC**, Sperber AD, Corsetti M, Camilleri M. Irritable bowel syndrome. *Lancet* 2020; **396**: 1675-1688 [PMID: 33049223 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(20)31548-8]

84 **Li Y**, Xia S, Jiang X, Feng C, Gong S, Ma J, Fang Z, Yin J, Yin Y. Gut Microbiota and Diarrhea: An Updated Review. *Front Cell Infect Microbiol* 2021; **11**: 625210 [PMID: 33937093 DOI: 10.3389/fcimb.2021.625210]

85 **Levine MM**, Nasrin D, Acácio S, Bassat Q, Powell H, Tennant SM, Sow SO, Sur D, Zaidi AKM, Faruque ASG, Hossain MJ, Alonso PL, Breiman RF, O'Reilly CE, Mintz ED, Omore R, Ochieng JB, Oundo JO, Tamboura B, Sanogo D, Onwuchekwa U, Manna B, Ramamurthy T, Kanungo S, Ahmed S, Qureshi S, Quadri F, Hossain A, Das SK, Antonio M, Saha D, Mandomando I, Blackwelder WC, Farag T, Wu Y, Houpt ER, Verweij JJ, Sommerfelt H, Nataro JP, Robins-Browne RM, Kotloff KL. Diarrhoeal disease and subsequent risk of death in infants and children residing in low-income and middle-income countries: analysis of the GEMS case-control study and 12-month GEMS-1A follow-on study. *Lancet Glob Health* 2020; **8**: e204-e214 [PMID: 31864916 DOI: 10.1016/S2214-109X(19)30541-8]

86 **Johnson BA**, Hage A, Kalveram B, Mears M, Plante JA, Rodriguez SE, Ding Z, Luo X, Bente D, Bradrick SS, Freiberg AN, Popov V, Rajsbaum R, Rossi S, Russell WK, Menachery VD. Peptidoglycan-Associated Cyclic Lipopeptide Disrupts Viral Infectivity. *J Virol* 2019; **93** [PMID: 31462558 DOI: 10.1128/jvi.01282-19]

87 **Anand S**, Mande SS. Diet, Microbiota and Gut-Lung Connection. *Front Microbiol* 2018; **9**: 2147 [PMID: 30283410 DOI:

10.3389/fmicb.2018.02147]
88 **Tiwari SK**, Dicks LMT, Popov IV, Karaseva A, Ermakov AM, Suvorov A, Tagg JR, Weeks R, Chikindas ML. Probiotics at War Against Viruses: What Is Missing From the Picture? *Front Microbiol* 2020; **11**: 1877 [PMID: 32973697 DOI: 10.3389/fmicb.2020.01877]
89 **Wen B**, Taibi A, Villa CR, Lee SH, Sagaidak S, Comelli EM. Effects of *Bifidobacterium bifidum* in Mice Infected with *Citrobacter rodentium*. *Microorganisms* 2019; **7** [PMID: 30769786 DOI: 10.3390/microorganisms7020051]
90 **Azagra-Boronat I**, Massot-Cladera M, Knipping K, Garssen J, Ben Amor K, Knol J, Franch À, Castell M, Rodríguez-Lagunas MJ, Pérez-Cano FJ. Strain-Specific Probiotic Properties of Bifidobacteria and Lactobacilli for the Prevention of Diarrhea Caused by Rotavirus in a Preclinical Model. *Nutrients* 2020; **12** [PMID: 32075234 DOI: 10.3390/nu12020498]
91 **Gareau MG**, Sherman PM, Walker WA. Probiotics and the gut microbiota in intestinal health and disease. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2010; **7**: 503-514 [PMID: 20664519 DOI: 10.1038/nrgastro.2010.117]
92 **Rocha-Ramírez LM**, Hernández-Ochoa B, Gómez-Manzo S, Marcial-Quino J, Cárdenas-Rodríguez N, Centeno-Leija S, García-Garibay M. Evaluation of Immunomodulatory Activities of the Heat-Killed Probiotic Strain *Lactobacillus casei* IMAU60214 on Macrophages In Vitro. *Microorganisms* 2020; **8** [PMID: 31936101 DOI: 10.3390/microorganisms8010079]
93 **Hu J**, Zhang L, Lin W, Tang W, Chan FKL, Ng SC. Review article: Probiotics, prebiotics and dietary approaches during COVID-19 pandemic. *Trends Food Sci Technol* 2021; **108**: 187-196 [PMID: 33519087 DOI: 10.1016/j.tifs.2020.12.009]
94 **Al Kassaa I**, Hober D, Hamze M, Chihib NE, Drider D. Antiviral potential of lactic acid bacteria and their bacteriocins. *Probiotics Antimicrob Proteins* 2014; **6**: 177-185 [PMID: 24880436 DOI: 10.1007/s12602-014-9162-6]
95 **Murch SH**. Toll of allergy reduced by probiotics. *Lancet* 2001; **357**: 1057-1059 [PMID: 11297952 DOI: 10.1016/s0140-6736(00)04305-1]
96 **Jobin C**. Probiotics and ileitis: could augmentation of TNF/NFκB activity be the answer? *Gut Microbes* 2010; **1**: 196-199 [PMID: 21327025 DOI: 10.4161/gmic.1.3.12485]
97 **Din AU**, Hassan A, Zhu Y, Zhang K, Wang Y, Li T, Wang G. Inhibitory effect of Bifidobacterium bifidum ATCC 29521 on colitis and its mechanism. *J Nutr Biochem* 2020; **79**: 108353 [PMID: 32145470 DOI: 10.1016/j.jnutbio.2020.108353]
98 **Resta-Lenert S**, Barrett KE. Probiotics and commensals reverse TNF-alpha- and IFN-gamma-induced dysfunction in human intestinal epithelial cells. *Gastroenterology* 2006; **130**: 731-746 [PMID: 16530515 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2005.12.015]
99 **Li J**, Zhao J, Wang X, Qayum A, Hussain MA, Liang G, Hou J, Jiang Z, Li A. Novel Angiotensin-Converting Enzyme-Inhibitory Peptides From Fermented Bovine Milk Started by *Lactobacillus helveticus* KLDS.31 and *Lactobacillus casei* KLDS.105: Purification, Identification, and Interaction Mechanisms. *Front Microbiol* 2019; **10**: 2643 [PMID: 31849852 DOI: 10.3389/fmicb.2019.02643]
100 **Gibson GR**, Hutkins R, Sanders ME, Prescott SL, Reimer RA, Salminen SJ, Scott K, Stanton C, Swanson KS, Cani PD, Verbeke K, Reid G. Expert consensus document: The International Scientific Association for Probiotics and Prebiotics (ISAPP) consensus statement on the definition and scope of prebiotics. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2017; **14**: 491-502 [PMID: 28611480 DOI: 10.1038/nrgastro.2017.75]
101 **El-Salhy M**, Hatlebakk JG, Gilja OH, Bråthen Kristoffersen A, Hausken T. Efficacy of faecal microbiota transplantation for patients with irritable bowel syndrome in a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled study. *Gut* 2020; **69**: 859-867 [PMID: 31852769 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2019-319630]
102 **Lima SF**, Gogokhia L, Viladomiu M, Chou L, Putzel G, Jin WB, Pires S, Guo CJ, Gerardin Y, Crawford CV, Jacob V, Scherl E, Brown SE, Hambor J, Longman RS. Transferable Immunoglobulin A-Coated Odoribacter splanchnicus in Responders to Fecal Microbiota Transplantation for Ulcerative Colitis Limits Colonic Inflammation. *Gastroenterology* 2022; **162**: 166-178 [PMID: 34606847 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2021.09.061]
103 **Khoruts A**, Staley C, Sadowsky MJ. Faecal microbiota transplantation for Clostridioides difficile: mechanisms and pharmacology. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2021; **18**: 67-80 [PMID: 32843743 DOI: 10.1038/s41575-020-0350-4]
104 **Liu Q**, Mak JWY, Su Q, Yeoh YK, Lui GC, Ng SSS, Zhang F, Li AYL, Lu W, Hui DS, Chan PK, Chan FKL, Ng SC. Gut microbiota dynamics in a prospective cohort of patients with post-acute COVID-19 syndrome. *Gut* 2022; **71**: 544-552 [PMID: 35082169 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2021-325989]

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Gastroenterol 2022 December 21; 28(47): 6702-6715

DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6702

ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Microbiota in the stomach and application of probiotics to gastroduodenal diseases

Yasuhiro Koga

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Provenance and peer review: Invited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): B, B
Grade C (Good): 0
Grade D (Fair): D
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: Ji G, China; Neelapu NRR, India; Pan WS, China

Received: August 17, 2022
Peer-review started: August 17, 2022
First decision: October 20, 2022
Revised: October 28, 2022
Accepted: November 25, 2022
Article in press: November 25, 2022
Published online: December 21, 2022

Yasuhiro Koga, Japanese Society for Probiotic Science, Isehara 259-1143, Japan

Corresponding author: Yasuhiro Koga, MD, PhD, Professor, Japanese Society for Probiotic Science, Isehara 259-1143, Japan. jpn.probio1998@mbr.nifty.com

Abstract

The stomach is a hostile environment for most microbes because strong gastric acid kills indigenous microorganisms. Thus, the mass of indigenous microbes detected by traditional culturing method in a highly acidic stomach is reported to be very small. However, in a stomach with less acidity due to atrophic changes of the gastric mucosa, the number of live gastric microbiota dramatically increases and their composition changes. A probiotic is defined as a live microorganism that, when administered in adequate amounts, confers a health benefit on the host. The administration of probiotics to the stomach has thus far been considered impractical, mainly due to the strong acidity in the stomach. The identification of candidate probiotic strains with sufficient resistance to acidity and the ability to achieve close proximity to the gastric mucosa could enable the application of probiotics to the stomach. The utilization of probiotics alone for *Helicobacter pylori* (*H. pylori*) infection significantly improves gastric mucosal inflammation and decreases the density of *H. pylori* on the mucosa, although complete eradication of *H. pylori* has not yet been demonstrated. The use of probiotics in combination with antimicrobial agents significantly increases the *H. pylori* eradication rate, especially when the *H. pylori* strains are resistant to antimicrobial agents. While *H. pylori* has been considered the most important pathogenic bacterium for the development of gastric cancer, bacteria other than *H. pylori* are also suggested to be causative pathogens that promote the development of gastric cancer, even after the eradication of *H. pylori*. Increased non-*H. pylori* Gram-negative bacteria in the stomach with weak acidity accompanying atrophic gastritis may perpetuate gastric mucosal inflammation and accelerate carcinogenic progression, even after *H. pylori* eradication. Probiotics restore the acidity in this stomach environment and may therefore prevent the development of gastric cancer by termination of Gram-negative bacteria-induced inflammation. Functional dyspepsia (FD) is defined as the presence of symptoms that are thought to originate in the gastroduodenal region in the absence of any organic, systematic or metabolic diseases. Accumulating evidence has pointed out the duodenum as a target region underlying the pathophysiology of FD. A randomized placebo-controlled clinical trial using a probiotic strain (LG21) demonstrated a significant improving effect on major FD symptoms. One of the possible mechanisms of this effect is

protection of the duodenal mucosa from injurious intestinal bacteria through the resolution of small intestinal bacterial over growth.

Key Words: Stomach; Microbiota; Probiotics; *Helicobacter pylori*; Post-eradication gastric cancers; Functional dyspepsia

©The Author(s) 2022. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core Tip: Gastric microbiota and application of probiotics to the gastroduodenal diseases have so far been unfamiliar because the mass of live microbes is so small in the stomach with high acidity. However, in the subject whose stomach is low acidity due to atrophic gastritis or proton pump inhibitor long-use, the number of live bacteria increases so much in the stomach thus they can significantly influence the pathophysiology of gastroduodenal diseases.

Citation: Koga Y. Microbiota in the stomach and application of probiotics to gastroduodenal diseases. *World J Gastroenterol* 2022; 28(47): 6702-6715
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v28/i47/6702.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6702

INTRODUCTION

The intestine is colonized by a complex and dynamic microbial ecosystem with a high density of bacteria whose cell number can reach as high as approximately 10^{12}/g feces. Their total number is therefore estimated to be 10-times greater than the number of eukaryotic cells in the human body, and the genes of these microbes outnumber human genes more than 100-fold[1]. As the early definition of probiotics emphasized their effects on improving the ecology of intestinal microbiota, their actions on the intestinal tract and gut mucosal immunity have received a great deal of attention.

On the other hand, the size of gastric microbiota, in which probiotic bacteria exert their beneficial effects, is very small [around 10^3 colony-forming units (CFU)/mL gastric fluid (GF)[2]] because of the strong acidity and frequent peristalsis to the intestine in the stomach. Such high acidity due to secreted gastric acid kills probiotic strains as well as gastric commensal microbes. Therefore, the application of probiotics to the stomach or proximal small intestine has historically been considered impractical.

Based on the outline of microbiota and probiotics in the stomach, this article reviews *Helicobacter pylori* (*H. pylori*) infection and functional dyspepsia (FD). The former includes the pathogenicity of *H. pylori*, the suppressive mechanism of probiotics on this bacterium and the present status of the application of probiotics in eradication therapy. In addition, this review argues a possible role of probiotics in the prevention of post-*H. pylori* eradication gastric cancer. In the description, basic and clinical data reported by the author's group are emphasized because they are indispensable for communicating the author's ideas in relation to the theme of this review article.

MICROBIOTA IN THE STOMACH

Probiotics are considered to exert beneficial effects on the host by improving the indigenous microbiota [3]. Thus, a brief description of the gastric microbiota is necessary to understand the effects of probiotics in the stomach. The stomach is a hostile environment for most microbes because strong gastric acid kills indigenous microorganisms. Therefore, when examined using traditional culturing methods, bacterial numbers in the gastric mucosa-associated or GF are reported to contain only approximately 10^3 CFU per g or mL[2]. Moreover, this method can only detect microbes that are able to grow in the media components and the atmospheric conditions of the culturing assay. Thus, in the stomach-where the acidity is high enough to kill indigenous bacteria-the investigation of gastric microbiota by traditional culturing methods makes no sense as the stomach contains few live bacteria. However, the introduction of DNA sequencing using high performance next-generation sequencers has markedly enhanced the analysis of microbiomes in the stomach as well as in the intestine. In a stomach with less acidity due to the continuous use of acid-suppressive agents [*e.g.*, proton-pump inhibitors (PPIs)] or atrophic change of the gastric mucosa, the number of bacteria in the live gastric bacterial mass dramatically increases and the composition changes, respectively[4,5]. In these low acidity settings, the gastric microbiota will exert a significant effect on the pathophysiology of upper gastrointestinal (GI) tract disorders.

The mouth is located at the entrance of the GI tract, and contains complex anatomical sites, including the teeth, gingiva and tongue. The oral microbiota flows downstream into the stomach by swallowing of saliva and mastication of foods. These are expected to exert a great influence on the microbiota in the stomach. While the gut harbors a very large and complex microbial community, it is conceivable that such intestinal microbiota can be significantly affected by the gastric microbiota through continuous inflow. This is especially true after a large increase in the bacterial mass in a stomach with low acidity. This raises the hypothesis that the GI tract has a common microbial ecosystem in which the gastric microbiota plays the role of a relay base between the oral and gut microbiotas. Therefore, in this chapter, the microbiota in the stomach is described and compared to the microbiotas of the oral cavity and gut. *H. pylori* is not an indigenous resident but a pathogen of exogenous origin. Accordingly, it is not described in the present chapter.

In 2006, Bik *et al*[6] identified 128 bacterial phenotypes based on a 16S rRNA gene analysis of gastric microbiomes with 1833 sequences obtained from 23 human gastric endoscopic biopsy specimens. A few years later, Li *et al*[7] also performed a 16S rRNA gene analysis using 1223 non-*H. pylori* sequences of 10 biopsy samples from the stomach, which were then classified into 133 phylotypes. Despite examining racially distinct populations (North America and China, respectively), both studies investigating the gastric mucosa-associated microbiomes revealed similar results. *Streptococcus* and *Prevotella* were the predominant genera, and they accounted for approximately half of the total detected species detected in their studies. In 2015, Tsuda *et al*[2] performed a meta-16S analysis of the gastric luminal microbiome with far greater sequencing depth. Their analysis was performed using GF samples obtained from Japanese subjects in a fasting state in the morning. They obtained roughly 40000 high-quality reads for the analysis from 45 GF specimens and also identified *Streptococcus* and *Prevotella* as the most prevalent genera, accounting for approximately 50% of all the species detected in the stomach (Figure 1). Moreover, in all three of these studies, *Neisseria* and *Rothia* ranked among the top 5 most prevalent genera. This similarity in the bacterial composition between the mucosa-associated[6,7] and luminal[2] samples suggested that the former bacteria moved back into the lumen, while the latter continuously colonized the mucosa. *H. pylori* is a predominant inhabitant of the mucous layer and also inhabits the gastric epithelial cells. Accordingly, it is mainly found in the mucosa-associated specimens.

Tsuda *et al*[2] also compared three different bacterial communities along the alimentary tract (oral cavity, stomach and colon) using stimulated saliva, GF, and feces specimens. There was no significant difference in the degree of species richness (α-diversity) among the three types of specimens. While the median log CFU bacterial number was only 3.4/mL (determined by culturing), the bacterial log genome copy number was as high as 7.8/mL (median) in GF samples. This large discrepancy between the CFU and genome copy numbers implied that > 99.9% of the GF bacteria were dead or viable but non-culturable. The analysis of bacterial genome copies also suggested that-if microbes were alive and metabolically active in the stomach with weak acidity-the mass size of the GF microbiota may be high enough to significantly affect the pathophysiology of the stomach and its downstream organs. A bacterial composition analysis at the genus level showed high similarity between the salivary and GF microbiota (Figure 1). Indeed, the five most prevalent genera in these microbiomes (in descending order) were as follows: *Streptococcus, Prevotella, Neisseria, Rothia* and *Veillonella,* and *Streptococcus Prevotella, Actinomyces, Neisseria* and *Rothia*. In contrast, the composition of the fecal microbiota was markedly different.

In a meta-16S analysis, which was performed to investigate the influence of gastric acidity on the microbiome composition in the stomach without atrophic change of the mucosa, PPI treatment was found to significantly increase the amount of *Streptococcus* in the mucosa-associated gastric microbiota [8]. This increase occurred independently of *H. pylori* infection. The compositions of other bacteria at the genus level showed no significant alteration. In another study, in which a bacterial DNA analysis study was conducted using GF samples, PPI-treated subjects whose GF acidity was > pH 4, showed lower α-diversity than subjects without PPI treatment[9]. No other significant changes in the GF microbiome composition were observed in GF samples with weak acidity. Furthermore, the presence of *H. pylori* was not associated with the difference in the microbiome composition. Moreover, in a study of PPI-users by Tsuda *et al*[2], no significant changes were observed in the bacterial composition (at the genus level) in the GF of PPI users, with the exception that *Streptococcus* tended to be more prevalent (Figure 1). In their study, the average pH values of GF samples obtained from the PPI-users and PPI-nonusers were 3.2 and 1.6, respectively. Of note, the average log copy number of bacterial cells (/mL) in these GF samples (measured by quantitative polymerase chain reaction) was almost the same in PPI-users (8.0) and PPI-nonusers (8.1), while the CFU number (determined by culturing) was > 1000-fold greater in PPI-users with weak acidity. This result implies that PPI-induced low acidity protected the gastric microbiota from strong acid.

Bacterial overgrowth in the stomach with weak acidity has been suggested to occur due to the restoration of active growth of relatively acid-resistant indigenous bacteria, which are kept alive (in small numbers) due to their suppressed growth in the strongly acidic stomach. However, the high similarity in the bacterial community structure between the GF and saliva, and the high similarity of their bacterial genome copy numbers, suggests that no "bacterial overgrowth" occurred. Instead, the bacteria that moved from the oral cavity to the stomach with weak acidity simply avoided being killed by gastric acid. Although PPI use was not associated with any significant alteration in the composition

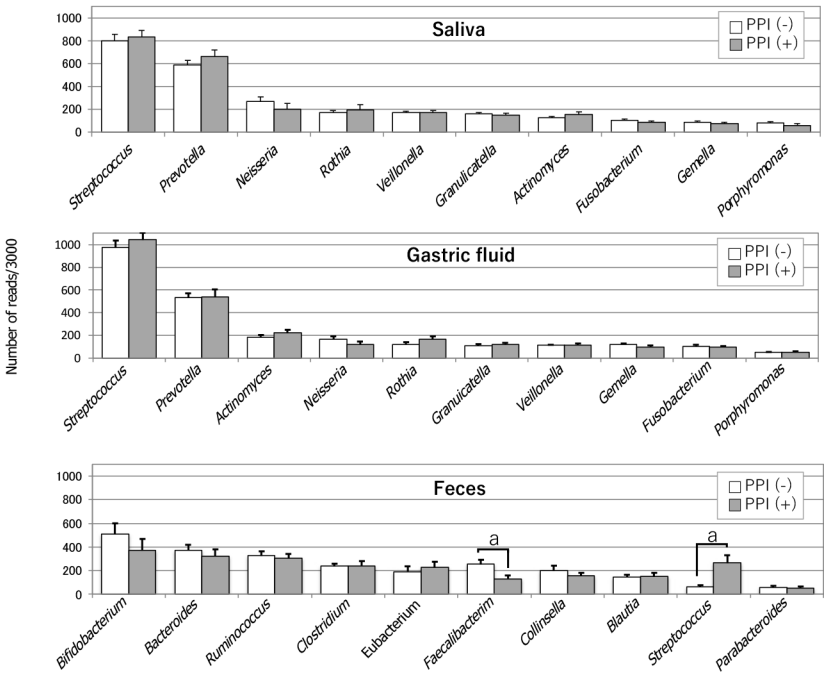


Figure 1 Comparison of the microbiota in the saliva, gastric fluid and feces, and the influence of proton-pump inhibitors. Bacterial compositions at the genus level in saliva (top), gastric fluid (median) and feces (bottom) are shown. The average of read numbers of the top 10 major genera are indicated in each group. Open and filled bars represent proton-pump inhibitor (PPI)-nonusers and PPI-users, respectively. Asterisks show a significant difference according to Student *t*-test. $^{a}P < 0.05$. PPI: Proton-pump inhibitor. Citation: Tsuda A, Suda W, Morita H, Takanashi K, Takagi A, Koga Y, Hattori M. Influence of Proton-Pump Inhibitors on the Luminal Microbiota in the Gastrointestinal Tract. *Clin Transl Gastroenterol* 2015; 6: e89. Copyright ©Wolters Kluwer Health, Inc. 2015. Published by Wolters Kluwer Health, Inc.

of the gastric microbiota, a significant decrease of *Faecalibacterium* and a significant increase of *Streptococcus* were found in the feces of PPI-users (Figure 1). A reduction in the abundance of *Faecalibacterium* was also reported in the feces of dogs treated with PPIs[10]. Whether the large increase of live bacteria induced by PPI treatment significantly influences the intestinal bacterial community structure remains to be elucidated.

PROBIOTICS FOR THE STOMACH

In 1989, Fuller defined probiotics as "a live microbial feed supplement that beneficially affects the host animals by improving its intestinal microbial balance"[3]. This early and influential definition was refined by a standard definition proposed by the Joint (Food and Agricultural Organizations of the United Nations)/World Health Organization Expert Consultation in 2001[11]: "a live microorganism that, when administered in adequate amounts, confers a health benefit on the host". The International Scientific Association for Probiotics and Prebiotics consensus statements reported in 2014 exclusively retained the body of these definitions[12].

The main beneficial effects of probiotics on the host include inhibition of potential pathogens in the GI tract, modulation of immunity, and reinforcement of the mucosal barrier. Competition with bacteria for binding sites on the mucosa by probiotic strains is the dominant mechanisms underlying the protection of the host from pathogenic bacteria in the intestine. Organic acids secreted by probiotic strains (*e.g.*, lactic acid) and short-chain fatty acids (*e.g.*, acetic acid) are considered to exert a significant bactericidal effect on the pathogens. As underlined in the definitions of probiotics, a "living" state is indispensable for probiotics to protect the hosts from pathogens, because dead probiotic strains no longer have the ability to specifically bind to the mucosa or generate organic acids.

Because the early definition of probiotics emphasized their beneficial effects on improving intestinal microbial ecology, it has been considered that probiotics should be exclusively applied to the gut. Actually, the gut is colonized with a high density of bacteria, the cell number of which can reach as high as 10^{12}/g feces[13]. In contrast, the size of bacterial mass in the stomach, in which probiotic strains could work, is small. The number of indigenous bacteria in the gastric fluid of healthy stomach-when examined by culturing methods- is at most 10^{3}/mL[2,4]. The strong acidity in the stomach due to secreted gastric acid, which causes a marked reduction in the size of such resident gastric bacteria also suppresses or terminates the beneficial effects exerted by probiotic strains soon after they move to the stomach. For this reason, the application of probiotics to the stomach or proximal small intestine has so

far been considered impractical.

The proximity of probiotic strains to the mucosa-which will be achieved by bearing affinity to the surface mucus layer, or by adhering to the epithelial cell layers-is crucial for beneficial effects to be exerted in the GI tract[14]. Those effects include competitive inhibition of the pathogenic bacteria's attachment to the mucosa, secretion of organic acids in effective concentrations, and contact-dependent immunomodulation. Peristaltic movements in the stomach are more frequent and active in comparison to the intestine; thus, it is difficult for probiotic strains to come into close proximity to the gastric mucosa. This factor also makes the use of gastric probiotics difficult.

From another point of view, the small size of resident microbiota in the stomach can easily be affected by the introduction of exogenous microorganisms. These transient bacteria (*e.g.*, ingredients of foods or accidental contaminants) exert a much greater effect on the microbiota in the upper GI tract than on the gut microbiota due to its much smaller size. The same situation is encountered with the administration of probiotics to the upper GI tract, where they are not disturbed by large amounts of robust and resilient microbiota, which are present in the gut. The application of probiotics to the upper GI tract may therefore be more advantageous in comparison to application to the gut, as long as the candidate strains are able to resist the strong acidity and achieve close proximity to the gastric mucosa.

The stomach is a harsh environment for most microorganisms because strong gastric acid kills many ingested microbes. In a fasting state in the morning, GF has a peak acidity of pH 1-2. Such strong acidity is quite reasonable because one major physiological role of gastric acid is to kill exogenous pathogenic bacteria that move to the digestive tract through the mouth. At present, the most prevalent probiotic strains belong to genera *Lactobacillus* or *Bifidobacterium*[11]. In general, *Lactobacilli* and *Bifidobacteria* show considerably high resistance to acidity. While both bacterial groups can survive acidic conditions of approximately pH 3 to 4[15], this is not as strong as the peak gastric acidity (pH 1-2). Thus, screening using candidate probiotic strains is necessary to identify a suitable probiotic strain for the stomach that can tolerate approximately pH 2.

Genus *Lactobacillus* is one of the predominant resident bacterial groups found in the stomach (when examined by culturing methods)[16]. Accordingly, *Lactobacillus* strains might be the most appropriate for use as probiotics in the stomach. Furthermore, in adult mice with a specific pathogen-free (SPF) environment, no *H. pylori* infection was found in the stomach after oral inoculation of the bacteria[16]. In contrast, mice bred in a germ-free environment were easily infected by oral inoculation of *H. pylori*. In this animal study, *H. pylori* infection was prevented in SPF mice with a large number of indigenous lactobacilli in the stomach (> 10^8 CFU/g tissue). A representative probiotic strain that can be used for the stomach is *Lactobacillus gasseri* OLL2716 (LG21). This was selected out of approximately 2000 strains of lactobacilli[17]. The criteria for selection were both resistance to acidity and the ability to bind to the gastric mucosa. In the stationary growth phase, LG21 can survive in culture broth at pH 2.5, which is similar to the acidity of GF. LG21 has several defense mechanisms that enable it to withstand acid stress, including the up-regulation of the cation ATP-binding cassette transporter genes and the downregulation of the genes associated with transcription and protein synthesis[18]. The acid stress response is generally indispensable for lactobacilli, because they always secrete large amounts of organic acids to the external environment when they grow with metabolic activity. Without this defense mechanism, the acidic milieu induces the arrest of the growth of lactobacilli and it may even cause their death.

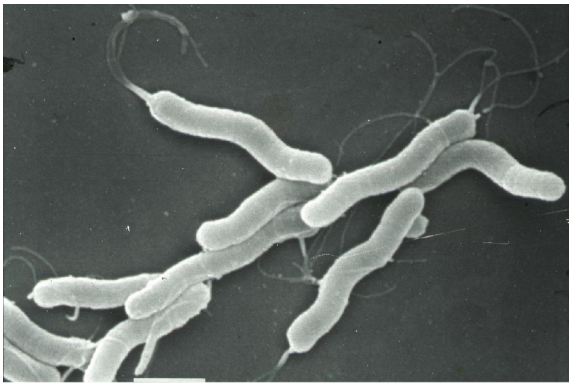
In a handful of trials, endoscopy directly demonstrated mucosal colonization by probiotics. Using biopsy samples obtained by upper GI endoscopy, LG21 strains administered through a yogurt drink were shown to be able to enter the mucous layer of the human stomach[19]. The laser-assisted microdissection and non-contact pressure catapulting method enabled this fine topical analysis.

H. PYLORI INFECTION

H. pylori and its pathogenicity

H. pylori is a gram-negative and microaerophilic bacterium that can move in the mucus layer on the surface epithelial cells of the stomach using several of flagella that are located at one end (Figure 2). As much as half of the people in the world are infected with *H. pylori*[20]. *H. pylori* infection causes inflammation of the gastric mucosa and then leads to a gradual loss of hydrochloric acid-secreting parietal cells of the stomach. This ultimately results in a condition known as atrophic gastritis. Atrophic gastritis is a chronic inflammatory and low gastric acidity state that has a high risk of progressing to gastric cancer[21].

H. pylori can tightly bind to epithelial cells by multiple bacterial-surface components. The best-characterized adhesin, BabA, is a 78 kD outer-membrane protein that binds to the fucosylated Lewis B blood group antigen on the host cell[22]. Firm contact between *H. pylori* and the host cell through adhesion is considered a prerequisite for the *H. pylori* to transport effecter molecules (*e.g.*, CagA) into the host cell using the *cag* PAI-encoded type IV secretion system[23]. This event is regarded as the pathway leading to the generation of proinflammatory cytokines (*e.g.*, IL-8 and IL-1β) by host cells. Thus, the adhesion of *H. pylori* to epithelial cells is a critical event in the development of an inflammatory response and the establishment of infection in the stomach.



DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6702 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2022.

Figure 2 Observation of *Helicobacter pylori* by scanning electron microscopy. The bar at the bottom shows 1 μm.

H. pylori eradication

Mechanism of the suppressive effect of probiotics on *H. pylori*: The major mechanisms of probiotics against *H. pylori* infection are thought to be competition with *H. pylori* for binding sites on gastric epithelial cells, reinforcement of the mucosal barrier, and secretion of bactericidal organic acids (*e.g.*, lactic acid). These are the principle anti-bacterial effects exerted by probiotics. As for the mechanism of competitive binding, *L. reuteri* is reported to inhibit the attachment of *H. pylori* on the epithelial cell surface by competitive binding to asialo-GM1 and surface receptors[24]. Moreover, other probiotic species (*e.g.*, *L. acidophilus*, *L. johnsonii* and *L. salivarius*) were reported to prevent *H. pylori* colonization through specific adhesion molecules[25,26]. Specific binding of *H. pylori* to the host cell then induces the production of IL-8 through the type IV secretion system. Tamura *et al*[27] also demonstrated competition for binding sites between *H. pylori* and a probiotic strain LG21 using a coculture system with MKN45 cells (a human gastric epithelial cell line) and *H. pylori*. Large amounts of IL-8 were produced in the gastric epithelial cells cocultured with *H. pylori* (10^6 CFU) alone. When 10^6 CFU of non-treated live LG21 (equivalent to the number of *H. pylori*) was added to the coculture system, the amount of IL-8 secreted into the culture supernatant significantly decreased. However, UV- or heat-treated LG21 could not exert any suppressive effect on *H. pylori*-induced IL-8 production, even at 10^8 CFU (100 times the amount of non-treated LG21). An adherence assay in their study supported that LG21 competitively inhibited the binding of *H. pylori* to MKN45 cells, which suppressed the production of IL-8. Moreover, they demonstrated that the suppressive effect of LG21 also worked in the human stomach. The measurement of the IL-8 Level in gastric biopsy specimens from *H. pylori*-infected subjects also revealed that the oral intake of probiotic LG21 significantly suppressed the generation of IL-8 in the gastric mucosa[27].

Application of probiotics in the eradication therapy: The clinical application of probiotics in the treatment of *H. pylori* infection has been performed in many countries for more than 20 years. Now the utilization of probiotics alone for *H. pylori* infection has almost been settled. Both early and recent reviews[28,29] concluded that probiotics significantly improved gastric mucosal inflammation, and decreased the density of *H. pylori* on the mucosa. However, to our knowledge, the complete eradication of *H. pylori* colonizing the stomach by probiotic treatment alone has not been demonstrated. One representative trial of probiotics alone for the treatment of *H. pylori* infection was reported by Sakamoto *et al*[17] in 2001. In their study, 31 *H. pylori*-infected subjects (mean age 50 years) ingested yogurt containing 10^9 CFU of LG21 or placebo yogurt without LG21 every day for 8 wk. The results of ^{13}C-urea breath tests (UBT) and assays of serum pepsinogens I and II (PGI/II) showed a significant clinical improvement after LG21 yogurt treatment. The ^{13}C-UBT result and the PGI/II ratio are known to indirectly represent *H. pylori* density and the degree of mucosal inflammation in the stomach, respectively[30,31]. A bacterial examination of gastric mucosal biopsy specimens (by culturing) revealed 2-100-fold decreases in the number of *H. pylori*. However, there were no subjects in whom *H. pylori* was completely eliminated. Pantoflickova *et al*[32] reported the effects of the administration of *L. johnsonii* La1 (LC-1) to 50 *H. pylori*-positive healthy volunteers in a randomized controlled, double-blind study. The subjects received 125 g of fermented milk containing 10^6-10^7 CFU/g of LC-1 or placebo milk without LC-1 every day for 16 wk. The severity/activity of antral gastritis (assessed histologically) and the *H. pylori* density (assesses by a ^{13}C-UBT) showed significant improvement. The histological examination of the mucous mucosa also revealed a significant increase in the mucous thickness in the LC-1-treated group. This suggested that the stabilization of the mucosal barrier by probiotics also enhanced the suppression of *H. pylori*.

Recently, the *H. pylori* eradication rate in patients treated using anti-microbial agents is decreasing. This is mainly due to antimicrobial resistance. In the early 1990s, the standard triple therapy achieved an eradication rate of > 90%. In contrast in the past decade, the effectiveness of this regimen often falls to < 70%[33,34]. According to an ITT analysis by Deguchi *et al*[35] in 2012, the successful eradication rate

using the same regimen was just 69.3%. In those subjects, the rate of infection with clarithromycin-resistant strains of *H. pylori* was as high as 27.1%. This increase in resistance to antimicrobials like clarithromycin is thought to have reduced the eradication rate. Actually, the clarithromycin resistance rates of *H. pylori* isolated from children in North America and Europe were reported to be 10.6%-25% and 1.7%-23.4% respectively[36,37]. These studies also reported the increasing prevalence of *H. pylori* isolates that are resistant to metronidazole, which is frequently used in the first-line regimen.

The use of probiotics in combination with antimicrobial agents significantly increased the eradication rate, especially for bacteria with antimicrobial resistance. Both the suppressive effect on *H. pylori* by probiotics and the compliance-promoting effect of ameliorating the side effects of antimicrobials are thought to significantly increase the eradication rate. Actually, Deguchi *et al*[35] reported that a group treated with one week-triple therapy supplemented with LG21 yogurt and a group with triple therapy alone showed cure rates of 82.6% and 69.3%, respectively. The difference in the intention-to-treat analysis was statistically significant ($P = 0.018$). In their study, 112 g of yogurt containing 10^9 CFU of LG21 was given twice daily for 4 wk (3 wk of pretreatment and 1 wk during eradication therapy). According to a recent meta-analysis of 40 eligible studies with 8924 patients[29], the use of probiotics before and throughout the eradication treatment was associated with a superior eradication effect. Patients who received supplementary probiotics showed a higher eradication rate [relative risk (RR) 1.14, 95%CI: 1.10-1.18, $P < 0.001$] and lower incidence of total side effects (RR 0.47, 95%CI: 0.39-0.57, $P < 0.001$) in comparison to the control group without probiotics. In a sub-analysis, *Lactobacillus* was the best choice among the probiotic strains, and probiotics combined with bismuth quadruple regimen was suggested to be the best combination.

Possible role of probiotics in preventing post-eradication gastric cancer: The lifetime risk of gastric cancers in *H. pylori*-infected individuals is estimated to be 3%-5%[38]. In *H. pylori*-infected patients, colonization with *H. pylori* on the gastric mucosa is known to gradually decrease overtime and often becomes undetectable in patients who develop gastric cancer[39]. Furthermore, during long-term follow-up (up to approximately 20 years) of patients who had been cured of *H. pylori* infection at the start of observation, 0.35% of subjects developed gastric cancer per year. That is, 7% is estimated to have developed gastric cancer at 20 years[40]. These findings strongly suggest that there are some causative factors other than *H. pylori* can also promote the development of gastric cancer even after *H. pylori* eradication. However, *H. pylori* is currently considered the most important pathogen for the development of gastric cancer.

According to the Correa pathway[41], chronic *H. pylori* infection progresses over the decades through the following stages: chronic gastritis, atrophy, intestinal metaplasia, and cancer. Gastric adenocarcinomas are classified as both well-differentiated (intestinal-type) and undifferentiated (diffuse-type) ones[42]. The development of gastric atrophy is recognized as a critical step to the development of intestinal-type gastric cancer in the Correa pathway. Mucosal atrophy is usually accompanied by inflammation, and is thus recognized as atrophic gastritis. Accordingly, atrophic gastritis appears to be the strongest risk factor for gastric cancer[21]. The histological characteristics of the gastric mucosa (*e.g.*, inflammation, atrophy, and intestinal metaplasia) were analyzed to identify risk factors for gastric cancer after *H. pylori* eradication[43]. The mucosal inflammation score of the group who developed gastric cancer after successful *H. pylori* eradication ($n = 61$) was significantly higher than the group without cancer after eradication ($n = 122$). The RR and 95%CI were 5.92 and 2.11-16.6, respectively ($P < 0.01$). Neither atrophy nor intestinal metaplasia itself was a direct risk factor for post-eradication cancer.

The gastric corpus and antrum predominantly contain acid-secreting parietal cells and gastrin-secreting G cells, respectively. Thus, the mucosal atrophy in the corpus caused by *H. pylori* infection rapidly leads to a reduction in the gastric acid production. In contrast, the production of gastrin (an acid secretion stimulating hormone) remains relatively unchanged. Of note, patients who develop *H. pylori*-associated duodenal ulcers seem to be somewhat protected from the occurrence of gastric cancers[44]. The predominant mechanism of this protection in patients with duodenal ulcer from the cancers appears to be a higher basal level of gastric acid secretion. On the contrary, it was reported that the long-term suppression of gastric acid secretion by proton pump inhibitors (PPIs) was associated with a significantly increased risk of gastric cancer in *H. pylori*-infected subjects[45]. During approximately 8 years of follow-up, Cheung *et al*[46] evaluated the gastric cancer risk in patients treated with PPI using a Cox proportional hazards model. The study population consisted of approximately 63000 subjects, who had received clarithromycin-based triple therapy for *H. pylori* eradication. The use of PPIs was associated with an increased gastric cancer risk (HR 2.44, 95%CI: 1.42-4.20). This result demonstrated that the long-term use of PPIs was still associated with an increased risk of gastric cancer, even after *H. pylori* eradication. Accordingly, the stomach with low acidity accompanied by gastritis with atrophy and/or intestinal metaplasia must be considered a high-risk environment that predisposes the gastric mucosa to the development of gastric cancer.

Gastric acid reduction invariably results in a marked increase in the number of non-*H. pylori* bacteria. Due to the low acidity, these bacteria are still viable and show metabolic activity in the stomach. It therefore appears likely that such an enlarged bacterial mass causes the development of gastric cancers even after *H. pylori* eradication. Recent studies on the characteristics of the gastric microbial changes associated with gastric carcinogenesis revealed a reduction of species richness, the enrichment of

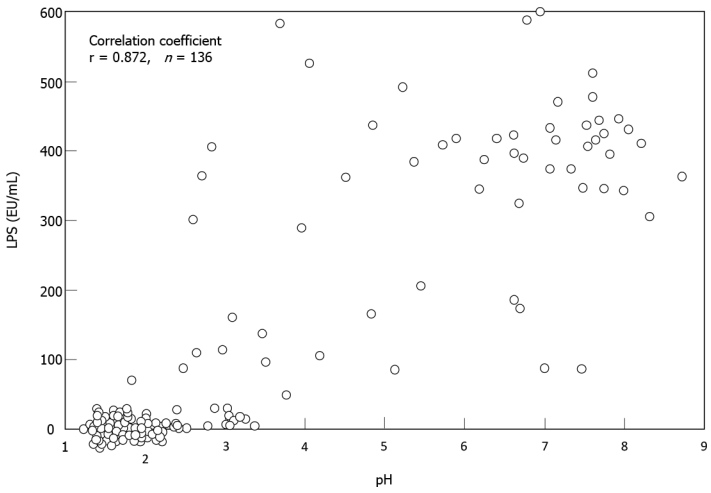
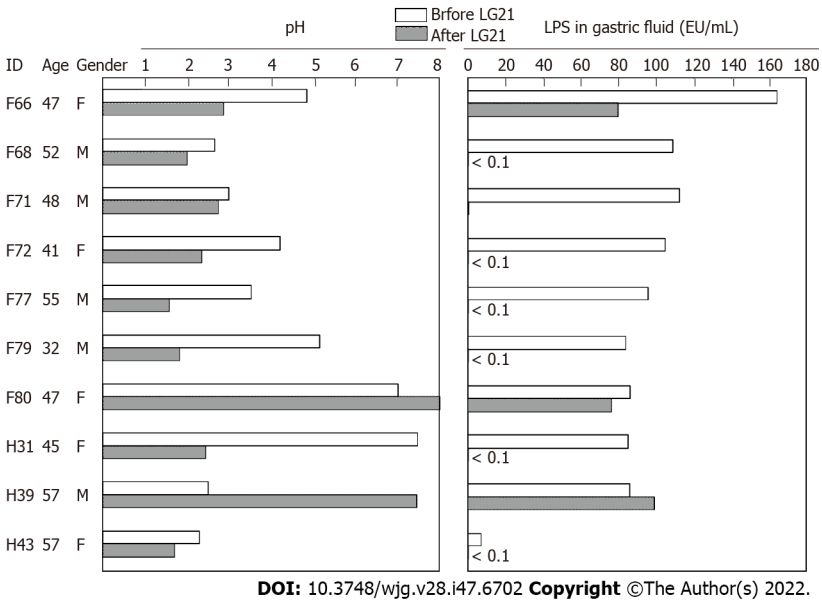


Figure 3 Correlation between pH and lipopolysaccharide activity in gastric fluid. The pH values and lipopolysaccharide activity of gastric fluid samples from 136 subjects were examined using a recombinant factor C assay kit. The correlation coefficients of the both parameters by Spearman test (*r*) is shown on the upper left. LPS: Lipopolysaccharide. Citation: Sano M, Uchida T, Igarashi M, Matsuoka T, Kimura M, Koike J, Fujisawa M, Mizukami H, Monma M, Teramura E, Yoshihara S, Sato H, Morimachi M, Ito A, Ueda T, Shiraishi K, Matsushima M, Suzuki T, Koga Y. Increase in the Lipopolysaccharide Activity and Accumulation of Gram-Negative Bacteria in the Stomach With Low Acidity. *Clin Transl Gastroenterol* 2020; 11: e00190. Copyright ©Wolters Kluwer Health, Inc. 2020. Published by Wolters Kluwer Health, Inc.

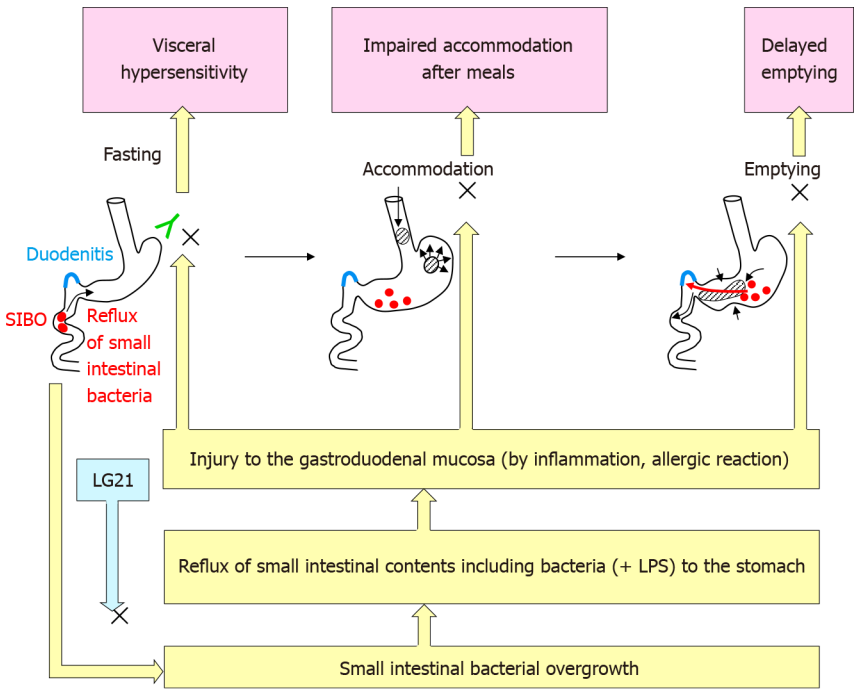


DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6702 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2022.

Figure 4 Effect of LG21 administration on the pH and lipopolysaccharide activity in the gastric fluid. Ten subjects who had gastric fluid (GF) with low acidity and high lipopolysaccharide (LPS) activity consumed yogurt containing 10^9 CFU of LG21 every day for 3 mo. The pH value and LPS activity in the GF were measured before and after LG21 treatment. LPS: Lipopolysaccharide.

intestinal bacteria or an increase of bacterial species of oral cavity origin[47,48]. It seems unlikely that the deoxidization of dietary nitrates to nitrite by such dysbiotic bacteria could rapidly convert dietary amines into carcinogenic N-nitro compounds, because this conversion requires a sufficient amount of acid (which is not present in the stomach with mucosal atrophy)[49].

Sung *et al*[5] analyzed gastric microbes associated with gastric mucosal inflammation-which is considered to be the strongest risk factor for post-eradication gastric cancer-at one year after *H. pylori* eradication. They identified several of bacterial groups that were significantly associated with persistent inflammation. These bacteria included the genera *Acientobacter, Ralstonia, Actinobacillus* and *Erwinia,* which are all Gram-negative bacteria. Miyata *et al*[50] isolated several types of Gram-negative bacteria from the *H. pylori*-infected gastric mucosa, including *Fusobacterium, Haemophilus, Neisseria* and *Veillonella* species. Coculture of a gastric epithelial cell line with the lipopolysaccharide (LPS) specimens extracted from these bacterial groups stimulated a significant amount of IL-8 production. Sano *et al*[51] found high LPS activity in gastric fluid samples with weak acidity (pH > 4), whereas there was little or no activity in those with strong acidity (pH < 2). Spearman's test demonstrated a close correlation between



DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6702 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2022.

Figure 5 Pathophysiology of functional dyspepsia and possible mechanisms of the effects of LG21 treatment. SIBO: Small intestinal bacterial overgrowth; LPS: Lipopolysaccharide.

pH and LPS activity in their 136 samples (r = 0.872) (Figure 3). These findings suggested that LPS from such non-*H. pylori* Gram-negative bacteria may perpetuate gastric inflammation and accelerate neoplastic progression in the hypochlorhydric stomach after *H. pylori* eradication.

To examine a possible preventive effect of probiotics on post-eradication gastric cancer, we administered a probiotic LG21 strain to subjects with successful eradication who still suffered from atrophic gastritis. In a fasting state in the morning, the pH value and LPS activity of their gastric fluids' samples were > 3.0 and > 10 EU/mL, respectively (Figure 4). Then, they received 10^9 CFU of LG21 in yogurt every day for 3 mo. In 8 of 10 subjects, the pH value considerably decreased after LG21 treatment. Lactic acid secreted by the probiotic LG21 strain is thought to restore acidity in the stomach with low acidity. Interestingly, the LPS activity of these subjects, in whom the gastric acidity partially recovered, almost disappeared or markedly decreased. The possible termination of LPS-induced inflammation by LG21 suggests a possible role of probiotics in preventing the development of gastric cancer after *H. pylori* eradication[52].

FD

FD is defined as the presence of symptoms that are thought to originate in the gastroduodenal region, in the absence of any organic, systemic or metabolic disease that is likely explain the symptoms. Because of the high prevalence and recurrent nature of symptoms, FD is a clinical problem of considerable magnitude for healthcare. According to the Rome IV criteria[53], there are two subtypes of FD: Postprandial distress syndrome (PDS) with postprandial fullness or early satiation, and epigastric pain syndrome (EPS) with epigastric pain or epigastric burning. The symptoms must be severe enough to affect daily activities, and must be present for > 3 mo with the onset of symptoms at least 6 mo before the diagnosis. While the exact pathophysiology of FD remains to be clarified, gastric motility disturbance (*e.g.*, impaired gastric accommodation and delayed gastric emptying) and visceral hypersensitivity have been suggested as critical underlying mechanisms (Figure 5)[54]. Recently, accumulating evidence supports that the duodenum is a target region underlying the pathophysiology of FD[55]. Impaired mucosal integrity and low-grade inflammation in the duodenum are thought to be associated with altered neuronal signaling and mucosal immune activation in this region. This eventually result in the uncontrolled motile and sensory mechanisms in FD. In addition, gastric acid, bile, food and microbiota are considered to induce and/or aggravate such underlying disorders in FD.

There is evidence to suggest that dysbiosis of intestinal microbiota is involved in the pathogenesis of irritable bowel syndrome (IBS) [a functional gastrointestinal disorder (FGID) originating in the intestine] [56]. However, the role of the gastroduodenal microbiota in the pathophysiology of FD (an FGID originating from the stomach and possibly the proximal small intestine) remains to be clarified. *H. pylori*

infection had been considered to be involved in the pathogenesis of FD-like symptoms that are often observed in these subjects. While FD-like symptoms in some *H. pylori*-infected patients are alleviated by antimicrobial eradication therapy, the improvement of the symptoms might not be mediated by the elimination of *H. pylori* but by the effect of antimicrobials on non-*H. pylori* bacteria in the stomach and proximal small intestine[57]. Indeed, Miwa *et al*[58] demonstrated that the curative treatment of *H. pylori* infection in eradication therapy was not significantly accompanied by the improvement of symptoms in a double-blind placebo-controlled clinical test. The involvement of an *H. pylori*-independent mechanism in the pathogenesis of FD is also suggested by a clinical study of probiotics. When the effect of an LG21 strain on FD-like symptoms was examined in *H. pylori*-infected patients, the severity of PDS after LG21 treatment was significantly lower than that was before treatment, while laboratory tests indicating the number and activity of *H. pylori* colonizing the stomach showed no significant difference between before and after the treatment[59]. These results suggested that bacteria other than *H. pylori,* which are resident in the GI tract, play an important role in the pathophysiology of FD. Tan *et al*[60] reported that the oral administration of the antimicrobial refaximin to patients with FD induced adequate relief of PDS. This implied the involvement of dysbiotic microbiota in the pathogenesis of FD. Nakae *et al*[61] compared the structure of the microbiota in GF between 44 FD patients and 44 healthy control subjects. A PERMANOVA test showed that the overall bacterial community structures of the two groups were significantly different (P = 0.001). In the bacterial composition analysis using those samples[62], the accumulation of bacteria that usually colonize the intestine, such as *Bacteroides*, *Bifidobacterium* and *Escherichia,* was often found in the GF of FD patients. As bile acids are also detected in these GF samples, the reflux of small intestinal contents, including bile and proximal small intestinal bacteria, to the stomach was suggested to induce such changes in the bacterial composition. Small intestinal bacterial overgrowth (SIBO) is broadly defined as an increase in the number of bacteria in the proximal small intestine together with various types of GI symptoms[63]. More than 60% of Japanese patients with FD have been reported to have overlapping IBS, in which SIBO is considered a critical etiological factor[64]. Thus, FD patients, whose GF contained large numbers of intestinal-type bacteria, might also suffer from SIBO. It is likely that the duodenal mucosa is injured by bile and/or the bacteria-especially Gram-negative bacteria such as *Escherichia*-in the content that is refluxed from the small intestine. Such mucosal damage would cause both deranged duodenal mucosal integrity and low-grade inflammation in the mucosa (Figure 5). Their studies also showed that 12-wk treatment of FD patients with an LG21 strain was effective for significantly improving symptoms, and shifted the composition of the GF microbiota to that observed in healthy subjects, whose GF microbiota no longer included any intestinal-type bacteria[61,62]. Therefore, the disappearance of such dysbiotic intestinal-type bacteria may be attributable to the resolution of SIBO after LG21 treatment.

Interestingly, there was also a significant inverse correlation between the differential abundance of *Prevotella* and the improvement of PDS symptoms in the FD patients treated with LG21[61]. That is; a greater increase in the relative abundance of *Prevotella* in GF after treatment was associated with a higher degree of symptom improvement. A significantly higher abundance of *Prevotella* on the duodenal mucosa was also observed in healthy control subjects in comparison to patients with FD[65]. Given that the genus *Prevotella* is sensitive to bile[66], the increase in the abundance after the treatment in FD patients may reflect a lower frequency of bile reflux, while lower abundance in FD patients may reflect a higher frequency of bile reflux.

To evaluate the clinical efficacy of treatment with a probiotic LG21 strain in FD patients, a randomized placebo-controlled clinical trial was performed using 116 individuals without *H. pylori* infection[67]. Participants were assigned to ingest yogurt containing 10^9 CFU of LG21 (LG21 group) or LG21-free yogurt (placebo group) every day. According to a questionnaire on the severity of FD symptoms, a trend toward a positive overall ameliorative effect on FD symptoms was observed in the LG21 treatment group (P = 0.07). Moreover, after treatment, the elimination rate for 4 major FD symptoms (postprandial fullness, early satiety, epigastric pain and epigastric burning) was 17.3% in the placebo group and 35.3% in the LG21 group, respectively (P = 0.048).

Although the beneficial effect of LG21 on FD was demonstrated by the clinical trial, the underlying mechanism remains to be clarified. One possible mechanism is protection of the duodenal mucosa from injurious intestinal bacteria and bile by through the resolution of SIBO and/or frequent duodeno-gastric reflux, as mentioned above (Figure 5). Considering that acid-suppressive therapy is so effective and has thus been recommended as the first-line treatment for FD[68], another mechanism underlying the effects of LG21 treatment may be a reduction of gastric acid production. Nakae *et al*[61], reported that the mean pH values (IQR) of GF of FD patients (n = 44) before and after the treatment were 1.58 (1.43-1.85) and 1.84 (1.56-3.81), respectively. Although this difference was not so great, it was statistically significant (P = 0.012). Given that hypersensitivity of the gastroduodenal mucosa is a critical pathophysiology underlying FD, it is reasonable that even a small reduction of gastric acidity by LG21 treatment can attenuate the gastric sensory and motor disturbances, which would then lead to an improvement of PDS and EPS symptoms. Similarly, in addition to PPI treatment, H-2 receptor antagonist (H2RA) treatment is effective for FD, although the efficiency of acid suppressive by H2RA is considerably lower in comparison to PPIs[55]. The moderate decrease in the secretion of gastric acid observed with LG21 treatment may be attributable to a reduction in the expression of gastrin (an acid secretion stimulating hormone) as the oral administration of LG21 has been reported to reduce the gastrin exression in the

murine system[69]. However, LG21 treatment did not reduce the serum gastrin concentration at all in long-term PPI users, who showed very high gastrin levels (> 200 pg/mL)[70]. This means that the suppressive effect of LG21 is no longer exerted in subjects with high gastrin levels such as PPI users and possibly patients with corpus-dominant atrophic gastritis, in whom the serum gastrin concentration is abnormally high due to the secondary response to very low intragastric acidity. Emerging data increasingly point toward the role of gastroduodenal microbiota in the pathophysiology of FD. Accordingly, the application of probiotics in the treatment of this regions is expected to be successful.

CONCLUSION

Probiotics for the stomach have been demonstrated to suppress *H. pylori* in the stomach, and thus improve eradication rate in patients who receive antimicrobial treatment. If probiotics strains are sufficiently resistant to the gastric acidity and able to achieve close proximity to the gastric mucosa, they are also expected to prevent the development of gastric cancer, even after *H. pylori* eradication, through the correction of the dysbiotic gastric microbiota. If a deranged gastric bacterial population is involved in the pathophysiology of functional dyspepsia, the use of such probiotics may be useful for the treatment of this functional gastroduodenal disorder.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Koga Y alone designed and wrote the manuscript.

Conflict-of-interest statement: No conflicts of interest to disclose.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article that was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution NonCommercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: https://creativecommons.org/Licenses/by-nc/4.0/

Country/Territory of origin: Japan

ORCID number: Yasuhiro Koga 0000-0002-4175-8315.

S-Editor: Zhang H
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Zhang H

REFERENCES

1 **Human Microbiome Project Consortium**. Structure, function and diversity of the healthy human microbiome. *Nature* 2012; **486**: 207-214 [PMID: 22699609 DOI: 10.1038/nature11234]
2 **Tsuda A**, Suda W, Morita H, Takanashi K, Takagi A, Koga Y, Hattori M. Influence of Proton-Pump Inhibitors on the Luminal Microbiota in the Gastrointestinal Tract. *Clin Transl Gastroenterol* 2015; **6**: e89 [PMID: 26065717 DOI: 10.1038/ctg.2015.20]
3 **Fuller R**. Probiotics in man and animals. *J Appl Bacteriol* 1989; **66**: 365-378 [PMID: 2666378 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2672.1989.tb05105.x]
4 **Ruddell WS**, Axon AT, Findlay JM, Bartholomew BA, Hill MJ. Effect of cimetidine on the gastric bacterial flora. *Lancet* 1980; **1**: 672-674 [PMID: 6103090]
5 **Sung JJY**, Coker OO, Chu E, Szeto CH, Luk STY, Lau HCH, Yu J. Gastric microbes associated with gastric inflammation, atrophy and intestinal metaplasia 1 year after *Helicobacter pylori* eradication. *Gut* 2020; **69**: 1572-1580 [PMID: 31974133 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2019-319826]
6 **Bik EM**, Eckburg PB, Gill SR, Nelson KE, Purdom EA, Francois F, Perez-Perez G, Blaser MJ, Relman DA. Molecular analysis of the bacterial microbiota in the human stomach. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 2006; **103**: 732-737 [PMID: 16407106 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0506655103]
7 **Li XX**, Wong GL, To KF, Wong VW, Lai LH, Chow DK, Lau JY, Sung JJ, Ding C. Bacterial microbiota profiling in gastritis without Helicobacter pylori infection or non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drug use. *PLoS One* 2009; **4**: e7985 [PMID: 19956741 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0007985]
8 **Paroni Sterbini F**, Palladini A, Masucci L, Cannistraci CV, Pastorino R, Ianiro G, Bugli F, Martini C, Ricciardi W, Gasbarrini A, Sanguinetti M, Cammarota G, Posteraro B. Effects of Proton Pump Inhibitors on the Gastric Mucosa-Associated Microbiota in Dyspeptic Patients. *Appl Environ Microbiol* 2016; **82**: 6633-6644 [PMID: 27590821 DOI: 10.1128/aem.01437-16]

9 **von Rosenvinge EC**, Song Y, White JR, Maddox C, Blanchard T, Fricke WF. Immune status, antibiotic medication and pH are associated with changes in the stomach fluid microbiota. *ISME J* 2013; **7**: 1354-1366 [PMID: 23466701 DOI: 10.1038/ismej.2013.33]

10 **Garcia-Mazcorro JF**, Suchodolski JS, Jones KR, Clark-Price SC, Dowd SE, Minamoto Y, Markel M, Steiner JM, Dossin O. Effect of the proton pump inhibitor omeprazole on the gastrointestinal bacterial microbiota of healthy dogs. *FEMS Microbiol Ecol* 2012; **80**: 624-636 [PMID: 22324305 DOI: 10.1111/j.1574-6941.2012.01331.x]

11 **Food and Agricultural Organization of the United Nations and World Health Organization**. Evaluation of health and nutritional properties of probiotics in food including powder milk with live lactic acid bacteria. World Health Organization [Internet]. Available from: http://www.who.int/foodsafety/publications/fs_management/en/probiotics.pdf

12 **Hill C**, Guarner F, Reid G, Gibson GR, Merenstein DJ, Pot B, Morelli L, Canani RB, Flint HJ, Salminen S, Calder PC, Sanders ME. Expert consensus document. The International Scientific Association for Probiotics and Prebiotics consensus statement on the scope and appropriate use of the term probiotic. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2014; **11**: 506-514 [PMID: 24912386 DOI: 10.1038/nrgastro.2014.66]

13 **Simon GL**, Gorbach SL. Intestinal flora in health and disease. *Gastroenterology* 1984; **86**: 174-193 [PMID: 6357937]

14 **Suez J**, Zmora N, Segal E, Elinav E. The pros, cons, and many unknowns of probiotics. *Nat Med* 2019; **25**: 716-729 [PMID: 31061539 DOI: 10.1038/s41591-019-0439-x]

15 **Marteau P**, Minekus M, Havenaar R, Huis in't Veld JH. Survival of lactic acid bacteria in a dynamic model of the stomach and small intestine: validation and the effects of bile. *J Dairy Sci* 1997; **80**: 1031-1037 [PMID: 9201571 DOI: 10.3168/jds.s0022-0302(97)76027-2]

16 **Kabir AM**, Aiba Y, Takagi A, Kamiya S, Miwa T, Koga Y. Prevention of Helicobacter pylori infection by lactobacilli in a gnotobiotic murine model. *Gut* 1997; **41**: 49-55 [PMID: 9274471 DOI: 10.1136/gut.41.1.49]

17 **Sakamoto I**, Igarashi M, Kimura K, Takagi A, Miwa T, Koga Y. Suppressive effect of Lactobacillus gasseri OLL 2716 (LG21) on Helicobacter pylori infection in humans. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2001; **47**: 709-710 [PMID: 11328791 DOI: 10.1093/jac/47.5.709]

18 **Sasaki Y**. Investigation of acid-resistance mechanisms of an anti-H. pylori strain of Lactobacillus gasseri using a DNA microarray technique. *Bioscience and Industry (Japanese)* 2004; **62**: 17-20

19 **Fujimura S**, Kato S, Oda M, Miyahara M, Ito Y, Kimura K, Kawamura T, Ohnuma M, Tateno H, Watanabe A. Detection of Lactobacillus gasseri OLL2716 strain administered with yogurt drink in gastric mucus layer in humans. *Lett Appl Microbiol* 2006; **43**: 578-581 [PMID: 17032235 DOI: 10.1111/j.1472-765X.2006.02017.x]

20 **Suerbaum S**, Michetti P. Helicobacter pylori infection. *N Engl J Med* 2002; **347**: 1175-1186 [PMID: 12374879 DOI: 10.1056/nejmra020542]

21 **Fox JG**, Wang TC. Inflammation, atrophy, and gastric cancer. *J Clin Invest* 2007; **117**: 60-69 [PMID: 17200707 DOI: 10.1172/jci30111]

22 **Guruge JL**, Falk PG, Lorenz RG, Dans M, Wirth HP, Blaser MJ, Berg DE, Gordon JI. Epithelial attachment alters the outcome of Helicobacter pylori infection. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 1998; **95**: 3925-3930 [PMID: 9520469 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.95.7.3925]

23 **Naumann M**, Wessler S, Bartsch C, Wieland B, Covacci A, Haas R, Meyer TF. Activation of activator protein 1 and stress response kinases in epithelial cells colonized by Helicobacter pylori encoding the cag pathogenicity island. *J Biol Chem* 1999; **274**: 31655-62 [PMID: 10531374 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.274.44.31655]

24 **Mukai T**, Asasaka T, Sato E, Mori K, Matsumoto M, Ohori H. Inhibition of binding of Helicobacter pylori to the glycolipid receptors by probiotic Lactobacillus reuteri. *FEMS Immunol Med Microbiol* 2002; **32**: 105-110 [PMID: 11821231 DOI: 10.1016/s0928-8244(01)00284-x]

25 **Canducci F**, Armuzzi A, Cremonini F, Cammarota G, Bartolozzi F, Pola P, Gasbarrini G, Gasbarrini A. A lyophilized and inactivated culture of Lactobacillus acidophilus increases Helicobacter pylori eradication rates. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2000; **14**: 1625-1629 [PMID: 11121911 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2036.2000.00885.x]

26 **Hsieh PS**, Tsai YC, Chen YC, Teh SF, Ou CM, King VA. Eradication of Helicobacter pylori infection by the probiotic strains Lactobacillus johnsonii MH-68 and L. salivarius ssp. salicinius AP-32. *Helicobacter* 2012; **17**: 466-477 [PMID: 23067294 DOI: 10.1111/j.1523-5378.2012.00992.x]

27 **Tamura A**, Kumai H, Nakamichi N, Sugiyama T, Deguchi R, Takagi A, Koga Y. Suppression of Helicobacter pylori-induced interleukin-8 production *in vitro* and within the gastric mucosa by a live Lactobacillus strain. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2006; **21**: 1399-1406 [PMID: 16911683 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2006.04318.x]

28 **Gotteland M**, Brunser O, Cruchet S. Systematic review: are probiotics useful in controlling gastric colonization by Helicobacter pylori? *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2006; **23**: 1077-1086 [PMID: 16611267 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2006.02868.x]

29 **Shi X**, Zhang J, Mo L, Shi J, Qin M, Huang X. Efficacy and safety of probiotics in eradicating Helicobacter pylori: A network meta-analysis. *Medicine (Baltimore)* 2019; **98**: e15180 [PMID: 30985706 DOI: 10.1097/MD.0000000000015180]

30 **Perri F**, Clemente R, Pastore M, Quitadamo M, Festa V, Bisceglia M, Li Bergoli M, Lauriola G, Leandro G, Ghoos Y, Rutgeerts P, Andriulli A. The 13C-urea breath test as a predictor of intragastric bacterial load and severity of Helicobacter pylori gastritis. *Scand J Clin Lab Invest* 1998; **58**: 19-27 [PMID: 9516653 DOI: 10.1080/00365519850186797]

31 **Samloff IM**, Varis K, Ihamaki T, Siurala M, Rotter JI. Relationships among serum pepsinogen I, serum pepsinogen II, and gastric mucosal histology. A study in relatives of patients with pernicious anemia. *Gastroenterology* 1982; **83**: 204-209 [PMID: 7084603]

32 **Pantoflickova D**, Corthésy-Theulaz I, Dorta G, Stolte M, Isler P, Rochat F, Enslen M, Blum AL. Favourable effect of regular intake of fermented milk containing Lactobacillus johnsonii on Helicobacter pylori associated gastritis. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2003; **18**: 805-813 [PMID: 14535874 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2036.2003.01675.x]

33 **Malfertheiner P**, Megraud F, O'Morain C, Bazzoli F, El-Omar E, Graham D, Hunt R, Rokkas T, Vakil N, Kuipers EJ. Current concepts in the management of Helicobacter pylori infection: the Maastricht III Consensus Report. *Gut* 2007; **56**: 772-781 [PMID: 17170018 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2006.101634]

34 **Guevara B**, Cogdill AG. Helicobacter pylori: A Review of Current Diagnostic and Management Strategies. *Dig Dis Sci*

2020; **65**: 1917-1931 [PMID: 32170476 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-020-06193-7]
35 **Deguchi R**, Nakaminami H, Rimbara E, Noguchi N, Sasatsu M, Suzuki T, Matsushima M, Koike J, Igarashi M, Ozawa H, Fukuda R, Takagi A. Effect of pretreatment with Lactobacillus gasseri OLL2716 on first-line Helicobacter pylori eradication therapy. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2012; **27**: 888-892 [PMID: 22098133 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2011.06985.x]
36 **Elitsur Y**, Lawrence Z, Rüssmann H, Koletzko S. Primary clarithromycin resistance to Helicobacter pylori and therapy failure in children: the experience in West Virginia. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2006; **42**: 327-328 [PMID: 16540805 DOI: 10.1097/01.mpg.0000214157.52822.40]
37 **Koletzko S**, Richy F, Bontems P, Crone J, Kalach N, Monteiro ML, Gottrand F, Celinska-Cedro D, Roma-Giannikou E, Orderda G, Kolacek S, Urruzuno P, Martínez-Gómez MJ, Casswall T, Ashorn M, Bodanszky H, Mégraud F. Prospective multicentre study on antibiotic resistance of Helicobacter pylori strains obtained from children living in Europe. *Gut* 2006; **55**: 1711-1716 [PMID: 16603633 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2006.091272]
38 **Björkholm B**, Falk P, Engstrand L, Nyrén O. Helicobacter pylori: resurrection of the cancer link. *J Intern Med* 2003; **253**: 102-119 [PMID: 12542550 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2796.2003.01119.x]
39 **Stewart OA**, Wu F, Chen Y. The role of gastric microbiota in gastric cancer. *Gut Microbes* 2020; **11**: 1220-1230 [PMID: 32449430 DOI: 10.1080/19490976.2020.1762520]
40 **Take S**, Mizuno M, Ishiki K, Kusumoto C, Imada T, Hamada F, Yoshida T, Yokota K, Mitsuhashi T, Okada H. Correction to: Risk of gastric cancer in the second decade of follow-up after Helicobacter pylori eradication. *J Gastroenterol* 2020; **55**: 289-290 [PMID: 31820091 DOI: 10.1007/s00535-019-01654-x]
41 **Correa P**. Helicobacter pylori and gastric carcinogenesis. *Am J Surg Pathol* 1995; **19** Suppl 1: S37-S43 [PMID: 7762738 DOI: 10.1007/s00535-009-0014-1]
42 **Lauren P**. The two histological main types of gastric carcinoma: diffuse and so-called intestinal-type carcinoma. An attempt at a histo-clinical classification. *Acta Pathol Microbiol Scand* 1965; **64**: 31-49 [PMID: 14320675 DOI: 10.1111/apm.1965.64.1.31]
43 **Obayashi Y**, Kawano S, Sakae H, Abe M, Kono Y, Kanzaki H, Iwamuro M, Kawahara Y, Tanaka T, Yanai H, Okada H. Risk Factors for Gastric Cancer after the Eradication of Helicobacter pylori Evaluated Based on the Background Gastric Mucosa: A Propensity Score-matched Case-control Study. *Intern Med* 2021; **60**: 969-976 [PMID: 33162475 DOI: 10.2169/internalmedicine.5486-20]
44 **Hansson LE**, Nyrén O, Hsing AW, Bergström R, Josefsson S, Chow WH, Fraumeni JF Jr, Adami HO. The risk of stomach cancer in patients with gastric or duodenal ulcer disease. *N Engl J Med* 1996; **335**: 242-249 [PMID: 8657240 DOI: 10.1056/nejm199607253350404]
45 **Tran-Duy A**, Spaetgens B, Hoes AW, de Wit NJ, Stehouwer CD. Use of Proton Pump Inhibitors and Risks of Fundic Gland Polyps and Gastric Cancer: Systematic Review and Meta-analysis. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2016; **14**: 1706-1719.e5 [PMID: 27211501 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2016.05.018]
46 **Cheung KS**, Chan EW, Wong AYS, Chen L, Wong ICK, Leung WK. Long-term proton pump inhibitors and risk of gastric cancer development after treatment for *Helicobacter pylori*: a population-based study. *Gut* 2018; **67**: 28-35 [PMID: 29089382 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2017-314605]
47 **Ferreira RM**, Pereira-Marques J, Pinto-Ribeiro I, Costa JL, Carneiro F, Machado JC, Figueiredo C. Gastric microbial community profiling reveals a dysbiotic cancer-associated microbiota. *Gut* 2018; **67**: 226-236 [PMID: 29102920 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2017-314205]
48 **Coker OO**, Dai Z, Nie Y, Zhao G, Cao L, Nakatsu G, Wu WK, Wong SH, Chen Z, Sung JJY, Yu J. Mucosal microbiome dysbiosis in gastric carcinogenesis. *Gut* 2018; **67**: 1024-1032 [PMID: 28765474 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2017-314281]
49 **Engstrand L**, Graham DY. Microbiome and Gastric Cancer. *Dig Dis Sci* 2020; **65**: 865-873 [PMID: 32040665 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-020-06101-z]
50 **Miyata N**, Hayashi Y, Hayashi S, Sato K, Hirai Y, Yamamoto H, Sugano K. Lipopolysaccharides From Non-Helicobacter pylori Gastric Bacteria Potently Stimulate Interleukin-8 Production in Gastric Epithelial Cells. *Clin Transl Gastroenterol* 2019; **10**: e00024 [PMID: 30913125 DOI: 10.14309/ctg.0000000000000024]
51 **Sano M**, Uchida T, Igarashi M, Matsuoka T, Kimura M, Koike J, Fujisawa M, Mizukami H, Monma M, Teramura E, Yoshihara S, Sato H, Morimachi M, Ito A, Ueda T, Shiraishi K, Matsushima M, Suzuki T, Koga Y. Increase in the Lipopolysaccharide Activity and Accumulation of Gram-Negative Bacteria in the Stomach With Low Acidity. *Clin Transl Gastroenterol* 2020; **11**: e00190 [PMID: 32764206 DOI: 10.14309/ctg.0000000000000190]
52 **Koga Y**, Suzuki T and Matsushima M. Gastric microbiota and its role in the carcinogenesis in the stomach. *Jpn J Clin Exp Med (Japanese)* 2021; **98**: 107-114
53 **Drossman DA**, Hasler WL. Rome IV-Functional GI Disorders: Disorders of Gut-Brain Interaction. *Gastroenterology* 2016; **150**: 1257-1261 [PMID: 27147121 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2016.03.035]
54 **Tack J**, Talley NJ, Camilleri M, Holtmann G, Hu P, Malagelada JR, Stanghellini V. Functional gastroduodenal disorders. *Gastroenterology* 2006; **130**: 1466-1479 [PMID: 16678560 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2005.11.059]
55 **Wauters L**, Talley NJ, Walker MM, Tack J, Vanuytsel T. Novel concepts in the pathophysiology and treatment of functional dyspepsia. *Gut* 2020; **69**: 591-600 [PMID: 31784469 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2019-318536]
56 **Barbara G**, Feinle-Bisset C, Ghoshal UC, Quigley EM, Santos J, Vanner S, Vergnolle N, Zoetendal EG. The Intestinal Microenvironment and Functional Gastrointestinal Disorders. *Gastroenterology* 2016 [PMID: 27144620 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2016.02.028]
57 **Blum AL**, Talley NJ, O'Moráin C, van Zanten SV, Labenz J, Stolte M, Louw JA, Stubberöd A, Theodórs A, Sundin M, Bolling-Sternevald E, Junghard O. Lack of effect of treating Helicobacter pylori infection in patients with nonulcer dyspepsia. Omeprazole plus Clarithromycin and Amoxicillin Effect One Year after Treatment (OCAY) Study Group. *N Engl J Med* 1998; **339**: 1875-1881 [PMID: 9862942 DOI: 10.1056/nejm199812243392602]
58 **Miwa H**, Hirai S, Nagahara A, Murai T, Nishira T, Kikuchi S, Takei Y, Watanabe S, Sato N. Cure of Helicobacter pylori infection does not improve symptoms in non-ulcer dyspepsia patients-a double-blind placebo-controlled study. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2000; **14**: 317-324 [PMID: 10735925 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2036.2000.00706.x]

59 **Takagi A**, Yanagi H, Ozawa H, Uemura N, Nakajima S, Inoue K, Kawai T, Ohtsu T, Koga Y. Effects of Lactobacillus gasseri OLL2716 on Helicobacter pylori-Associated Dyspepsia: A Multicenter Randomized Double-Blind Controlled Trial. *Gastroenterol Res Pract* 2016; **2016**: 7490452 [PMID: 27478434 DOI: 10.1155/2016/7490452]

60 **Tan VP**, Liu KS, Lam FY, Hung IF, Yuen MF, Leung WK. Randomised clinical trial: rifaximin versus placebo for the treatment of functional dyspepsia. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2017; **45**: 767-776 [PMID: 28112426 DOI: 10.1111/apt.13945]

61 **Nakae H**, Tsuda A, Matsuoka T, Mine T, Koga Y. Gastric microbiota in the functional dyspepsia patients treated with probiotic yogurt. *BMJ Open Gastroenterol* 2016; **3**: e000109 [PMID: 27752337 DOI: 10.1136/bmjgast-2016-000109]

62 **Igarashi M**, Nakae H, Matsuoka T, Takahashi S, Hisada T, Tomita J, Koga Y. Alteration in the gastric microbiota and its restoration by probiotics in patients with functional dyspepsia. *BMJ Open Gastroenterol* 2017; **4**: e000144 [PMID: 28761692 DOI: 10.1136/bmjgast-2017-000144]

63 **Rao SSC**, Bhagatwala J. Small Intestinal Bacterial Overgrowth: Clinical Features and Therapeutic Management. *Clin Transl Gastroenterol* 2019; **10**: e00078 [PMID: 31584459 DOI: 10.14309/ctg.0000000000000078]

64 **Hori K**, Matsumoto T, Miwa H. Analysis of the gastrointestinal symptoms of uninvestigated dyspepsia and irritable bowel syndrome. *Gut Liver* 2009; **3**: 192-196 [PMID: 20431745 DOI: 10.5009/gnl.2009.3.3.192]

65 **Zhong L**, Shanahan ER, Raj A, Koloski NA, Fletcher L, Morrison M, Walker MM, Talley NJ, Holtmann G. Dyspepsia and the microbiome: time to focus on the small intestine. *Gut* 2017; **66**: 1168-1169 [PMID: 27489239 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2016-312574]

66 **Paster BJ**, Dewhirst FE, Olsen I, Fraser GJ. Phylogeny of Bacteroides, Prevotella, and Porphyromonas spp. and related bacteria. *J Bacteriol* 1994; **176**: 725-732 [PMID: 8300528 DOI: 10.1128/jb.176.3.725-732.1994]

67 **Ohtsu T**, Takagi A, Uemura N, Inoue K, Sekino H, Kawashima A, Uchida M, Koga Y. The Ameliorating Effect of Lactobacillus gasseri OLL2716 on Functional Dyspepsia in Helicobacter pylori-Uninfected Individuals: A Randomized Controlled Study. *Digestion* 2017; **96**: 92-102 [PMID: 28768250 DOI: 10.1159/000479000]

68 **Moayyedi PM**, Lacy BE, Andrews CN, Enns RA, Howden CW, Vakil N. Corrigendum: ACG and CAG Clinical Guideline: Management of Dyspepsia. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2017; **112**: 1484 [PMID: 28762378 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2017.238]

69 **Takahashi H**, Nakano Y, Matsuoka T, Kumaki N, Asami Y, Koga Y. Role of indigenous lactobacilli in gastrin-mediated acid production in the mouse stomach. *Appl Environ Microbiol* 2011; **77**: 6964-6971 [PMID: 21803885 DOI: 10.1128/AEM.05230-11]

70 **Igarashi M**, Nagano J, Tsuda A, Suzuki T, Koike J, Uchida T, Matsushima M, Mine T, Koga Y. Correlation between the Serum Pepsinogen I Level and the Symptom Degree in Proton Pump Inhibitor-Users Administered with a Probiotic. *Pharmaceuticals (Basel)* 2014; **7**: 754-764 [PMID: 24967535 DOI: 10.3390/ph7070754]

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Gastroenterol 2022 December 21; 28(47): 6716-6731

DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6716

ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Liver injury in COVID-19: A minireview

Wen-Shu Hu, Fang-Ying Jiang, Wen Shu, Rong Zhao, Ji-Min Cao, De-Ping Wang

Specialty type: Virology

Provenance and peer review: Invited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): B, B
Grade C (Good): 0
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: Cojocariu C, Romania; Subhani M, United Kingdom

Received: September 12, 2022
Peer-review started: September 12, 2022
First decision: October 19, 2022
Revised: November 2, 2022
Accepted: November 22, 2022
Article in press: November 22, 2022
Published online: December 21, 2022

Wen-Shu Hu, Fang-Ying Jiang, Wen Shu, Rong Zhao, Ji-Min Cao, Key Laboratory of Cellular Physiology at Shanxi Medical University, Ministry of Education, Shanxi Medical University, Taiyuan 030001, Shanxi Province, China

Wen-Shu Hu, Fang-Ying Jiang, Wen Shu, Rong Zhao, Ji-Min Cao, De-Ping Wang, Department of Physiology, Shanxi Medical University, Taiyuan 030001, Shanxi Province, China

Corresponding author: De-Ping Wang, PhD, Lecturer, Department of Physiology, Shanxi Medical University, No. 56 Xinjian Nan Road, Taiyuan 030001, Shanxi Province, China. wangdeping@sxmu.edu.cn

Abstract

Coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19), caused by infection with the severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus-2 (SARS-CoV-2), has escalated into a global tragedy afflicting human health, life, and social governance. Through the increasing depth of research and a better understanding of this disease, it has been ascertained that, in addition to the lungs, SARS-CoV-2 can also induce injuries to other organs including the liver. Liver injury is a common clinical manifestation of COVID-19, particularly in severe cases, and is often associated with a poorer prognosis and higher severity of COVID-19. This review focuses on the general existing information on liver injury caused by COVID-19, including risk factors and subpopulations of liver injury in COVID-19, the association between pre-existing liver diseases and the severity of COVID-19, and the potential mechanisms by which SARS-CoV-2 affects the liver. This review may provide some useful information for the development of therapeutic and preventive strategies for COVID-19-associated liver injury.

Key Words: Liver; SARS-CoV-2; Angiotensin-converting enzyme 2; Transmembrane serine protease 2; Chronic liver disease

©The Author(s) 2022. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core Tip: The global pandemic of coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19) has imposed a great threat to human health and become a medical and social challenge. Although severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus-2 (SARS-CoV-2) mainly affects the respiratory tract, it also frequently damages the liver especially in severe and critical cases. Direct hepatotoxicity of SARS-CoV-2, or indirect hepatic injury caused by immune overactivation and systemic inflammation, drug-induced injury, ischemia/reperfusion and hypoxia/reoxygenation injuries, and worsening of preexisting liver diseases, are potential contributing factors to liver damage in COVID-19.

Citation: Hu WS, Jiang FY, Shu W, Zhao R, Cao JM, Wang DP. Liver injury in COVID-19: A minireview. *World J Gastroenterol* 2022; 28(47): 6716-6731
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v28/i47/6716.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6716

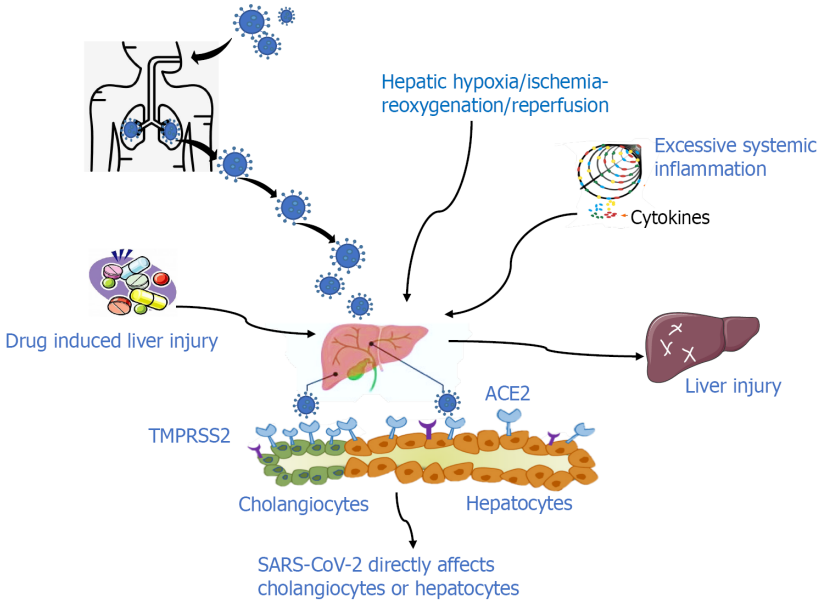
INTRODUCTION

In December 2019, an outbreak of the novel coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19) was reported in Wuhan, Hubei Province, China, induced by the severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus-2 (SARS-CoV-2). COVID-19 has evolved into a global health challenge[1], posing an enormous threat to human health and economic development. Severe COVID-19 patients may present symptoms of acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS), requiring admission to the intensive care unit (ICU) and oxygen ventilation therapy. The shortest time from admission to ARDS is approximately 2 d. At this stage, COVID-19 mortality is extremely high[2]. Global SARS-CoV-2 infection is now widespread, with 601189435 confirmed COVID-19 cases, including 6475346 deaths reported until September 3, 2022 by the WHO[3]. Most COVID-19 patients exhibit mild symptoms (fever, cough, shortness of breath, fatigue, vomiting, diarrhea, anosmia, and headache), whereas critical cases may develop into severe illness and even death due to severe lung injury and respiratory failure, liver injury, cardiac injury, septic shock, and even multi-organ failure[4].

Although COVID-19 mainly affects the respiratory tract, researchers have focused on the impacts of SARS-CoV-2 on other organs[5]. Liver injury is common in COVID-19 and is associated with poor prognoses. Liver test abnormalities, including higher levels of alanine aminotransferase (ALT) and aspartate aminotransferase (AST), are frequently observed in severe and critical COVID-19 cases compared to mild and moderate cases[6]. The most common manifestation of liver injury in COVID-19 is acute hepatitis with elevated AST, ALT, and total bilirubin levels[7]. Moderate microvascular steatosis and slight lobular activity are commonly observed in the liver biopsies[8]. Possible mechanisms include direct SARS-CoV-2 infection in hepatocytes or bile duct epithelial cells, excessive inflammation, drug-induced liver injury (DILI), ischemia/reperfusion syndrome, and liver injury associated with preexisting liver disease. Angiotensin-converting enzyme 2 (ACE2) is known to be the most important receptor for SARS-CoV-2 in contact with the host cell membrane, while transmembrane serine protease 2 (TMPRSS2) also plays an essential role in mediating viral entry. TMPRSS2 can prime the spike protein (S protein), and has been considered as a target for designing TMPRSS2 inhibitors to block virus entry as a new therapeutic approach[9]. When cells are infected by SARS-CoV-2, the S protein of the viral particles must be cleaved by TMPRSS2 and then binds to ACE2, so that viral particles can fuse with the plasma membrane and enter host cells[10]. Lower ACE2 expression has been detected in hepatocytes, while biliary epithelial cells express abundant ACE2 and thus can serve as a binding site for SARS-CoV-2. It has also been shown that most viruses that infect the respiratory tract can damage hepatocytes by affecting the $CD8^+$ mediated immune response[11]. Common risk factors, such as older age, male sex, and a range of potential comorbidities, including hypertension, obesity, diabetes, and underlying liver diseases, can also lead to varying degrees of liver damage, critical illness, and even death. However, the exact connection between comorbidities and liver injury caused by SARS-CoV-2 remains unclear. This review summarizes the pathophysiology, possible mechanisms, clinical manifestations, risk factors, and special populations of liver injury in COVID-19 patients.

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY OF LIVER INJURY IN COVID-19

The mechanism of liver injury in COVID-19 remains largely unknown. SARS-CoV-2 may induce direct hepatotoxicity after entering into the liver *via* bile duct cells which express high levels of the ACE2 receptor. SARS-CoV-2 may also indirectly injure the liver *via* immune overactivation, systemic inflammation, drug toxicity, and hepatic hypoxia/reoxygenation or ischemia/reperfusion due to respiratory failure and endothelial damage (Figure 1). The liver is the main organ for detoxification and metabolism, and liver injury can reflect the severity and clinical course of COVID-19. Therefore, it is



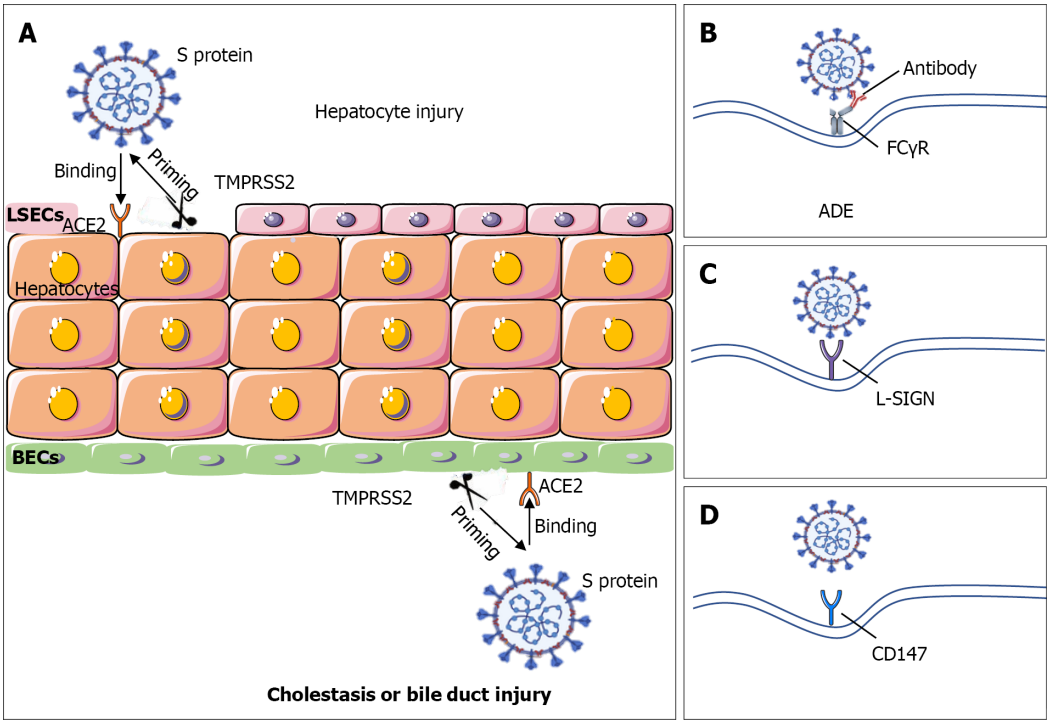
DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6716 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2022.

Figure 1 Mechanisms of liver injury caused by SARS-CoV-2. The mechanisms include direct hepatoxicity (severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus 2 affects cholangiocytes or hepatocytes) or indirect hepatic injury (drug-induced liver injury, excessive systemic inflammation and cytokine storm, and deterioration of pre-existing liver disease). SARS-CoV-2: Severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus 2; ACE2: Angiotensin-converting enzyme 2; TMPRSS2: Transmembrane serine protease 2.

crucial to understand the mechanisms underlying liver injury in COVID-19 to develop effective treatments.

Direct effect of SARS-CoV-2 on the liver

Previous research has established that the ACE2 receptor can specifically bind to the S protein, which has a receptor binding domain (RBD) to mediate SARS-CoV-2 entry into host cells. Although the binding pattern of the SARS-CoV-2 RBD-ACE2 complex is greatly analogous to that of the SARS-CoV RBD-ACE2 complex, ACE2 has a higher affinity for the RBD of SARS-CoV-2[12]. This may be one possible reason why the SARS-CoV-2 is more dangerous than the other emerging SARS-CoVs. However, the level of ACE2 in the liver tissue is much lower than that in the bile duct based on previous data analysis, which suggests that SARS-CoV-2 may bind to ACE2-positive bile duct cells, but not hepatocytes[13]. Another possibility is that ACE2 can sense viral entry and upregulate its expression in hepatocytes[14]. Current evidence indicates that bile duct cells are actively involved in immune defense, inflammatory response, and liver regeneration, which may be a possible explanation for virus-induced liver injury once these cells are damaged. Cholangiocytes can co-express ACE2 and TMPRSS2, and are susceptible to viral infections[13]. Elevated levels of gamma-glutamyl transpeptidase (GGT) and alkaline phosphatase (ALP) are caused by bile duct cell injury[15]. A previous study reported the histological, ultrastructural, and immunohistochemical staining of liver biopsies performed on two patients who died of COVID-19. The researchers discovered a mass of viral particles of SARS-CoV-2 in the hepatocyte cytoplasm, and most of the viral particles had an intact coronoid envelope, indicating that SARS-CoV-2 can not only enter, but also replicate in the hepatocytes[14]. Another report also presented detailed liver histological results from two patients with acute COVID-19, and found extensive mitosis especially in the cholangiocytes, in addition to mixed inflammatory infiltrates in the portal region, endodermatitis, and severe bile duct injury[16]. Another study of three patient cohorts provided evidence of SARS-CoV-2 liver tropism. In autopsy reports from the third cohort of patients, viral RNA was detected in 69% of autopsy liver specimens and SARS-CoV-2 carrying infectiousness was detected in post-mortem liver tissues[17]. Regardless of whether SARS-CoV-2 directly affects cholangiocytes or hepatocytes, all the above studies support that the liver injury caused by SARS-CoV-2 is a direct cytopathic injury[16] (Figure 2A). Furthermore, obvious mitochondrial swelling, endoplasmic reticulum dilatation, and impaired cell membranes were also observed in two COVID-19 cases, suggesting cytopathic damage. However, pathological changes including moderate microvascular steatosis and slight lobular and portal inflammatory infiltration are non-specific in viral infection and can be caused by DILI or chronic liver disease (CLD) such as non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) [18]. In addition, no viral inclusion bodies were observed in the liver tissue of COVID-19 patients. In summary, it is still unclear whether SARS-CoV-2 directly causes cytopathic changes in liver cells.



DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6716 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2022.

Figure 2 Possible pathways of SARS-CoV-2 entering into the liver. A: Severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus 2 (SARS-CoV-2) infects host cells through angiotensin-converting enzyme 2 (ACE2) and transmembrane serine protease 2 (TMPRSS2) receptors by its S protein. Direct SARS-CoV-2 infection targeted to hepatocytes or billiary epithelial cells results in hepatocyte injury or bile duct injury; B and C: CD147 (B) and L-SIGN (C) may be alternative receptors for SARS-CoV-2 entry into the liver; D: Antibody dependent enhancement is a pathway which can enhance interaction of virus-based antibody and the CR and/or FC receptor complements further making virus easily entry and infection. ACE2: Angiotensin-converting enzyme 2; TMPRSS2: Transmembrane serine protease 2; LSECs: Liver sinusoidal endothelial cells; BECs: Biliary epithelial cells.

Systemic inflammatory response and cytokine storm in COVID-19

Severe COVID-19 is characterized by a systemic inflammatory response that may cause a cytokine storm leading to multi-organ failure. Current evidence has shown that serum inflammatory cytokine levels are positively correlated with the indicators of liver dysfunction in COVID-19 patients[19]. This suggests that systemic inflammatory response and cytokine storm are also involved in liver injury, with a possible underlying mechanism between them. A previous study has shown that the activation and dysregulation of $CD8^+$ T cells in severe patients may be an important factor for the pathogenesis of SARS-CoV-2 infection, as $CD8^+$ T cells in critically ill patients express high levels of cytotoxic molecules [20]. A cohort study of 133 COVID-19 patients with liver damage reported high levels of inflammatory cytokines [TNF-α, interleukin (IL)-2, IL-6, and IL-10] and low levels of T lymphocyte subsets ($CD3^+$, $CD4^+$, and $CD8^+$ T cells). IL-2, IL-6, IL-10, $CD4^+$, and $CD8^+$ T cells can be regarded as possible independent predictors of hepatic injury in COVID-19 patients[21]. This is consistent with an alternative study, which also revealed that the elevated levels of IL-2, IL-6, and IL-10 in the serum of COVID-19 patients were associated with the progression of severe disease[22]. Notably, IL-6 is particularly important for liver injury, because IL-6-mediated procoagulant endotheliopathy with increased hepatic von Willebrand factor (vWF) expression and platelet accumulation are linked to liver injury and liver inflammation (elevated ALT and neutrophil infiltration). In addition, IL-6 plays a potential role in hepatic endothelial dysfunction and inflammation because its level is correlated with vWF level[23]. IL-6 is associated with elevated liver enzymes, but the relationship is not necessarily causal, as IL-6 can be used to accurately detect inflammatory responses to liver injury[24]. IL-6 is activated primarily by the pathway of JAK (Janus kinase)/STAT (signal transducer and activator of transcription). Baricitinib, an inhibitor of the JAK/STAT pathway, can improve the clinical outcomes of COVID-19[25]. JAK inhibition can affect the viral entry and inflammation of COVID-19[26]. Previous studies have established an association between increased levels of endotoxin, ILs, and TNF-α in COVID-19 patients with liver function damage compared with those with normal liver function[27]. COVID-19 patients with elevated ALT levels also have increased IL-6, ferritin, lactate dehydrogenase (LDH), and C-reactive protein (CRP) [14]. Furthermore, significantly increased levels of IL-2, IL-7, IL-10, granulocyte colony-stimulating factor (G-CSF), and IP-10 (interferon-inducible protein-10) have been observed in severe patients compared with mild or moderate patients[22]. In conclusion, patients with severe COVID-19 may exhibit intense inflammation and cytokine storm syndrome leading to liver injury.

DILI in COVID-19

An additional opinion is that liver injury in COVID-19 patients is related to hepatotoxicity. DILI cannot be overlooked, as it may contribute to abnormal liver function, such as elevated ALT and ALP levels, and subsequently affect drug metabolism and excretion[28]. In addition, histopathologic findings from liver biopsies of COVID-19 patients, such as microvascular steatosis and liver inflammation, may also be associated with DILI[18]. Recent evidence suggests that DILI may occur secondarily to the drugs commonly used for COVID-19 treatment, such as paracetamol, antiviral therapies, low molecular weight heparin, anti-IL-6 receptor agents, and antibiotic treatments[29]. This is consistent with another study, in which corticosteroids and immune modulators were also mentioned[18]. Notably, NAFLD patients are more likely to develop DILI, because NAFLD can increase the sensitivity of the liver to hepatotoxicants, such as acetaminophen[30]. Antibiotics and nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs are considered one of the most common causes of DILI[31]. One previous study showed that, when receiving glucocorticoid therapy, more patients had a liver injury (58.1%) than those without (39%)[32], and, tocilizumab (TCZ)-induced liver injury was reported in one COVID-19 patient. TCZ, also known as an IL-6 inhibitor, is recommended for the treatment of COVID-19 due to its vital role in inducing cytokines, and increased IL-6 can predict the fatal outcome of COVID-19. In this case, when TCZ was administrated, serum aminotransferase levels increased by nearly 40-fold on the first day, and after 10 d of DILI formation, aminotransferase levels returned to normal. Therefore, it is no doubt that TCZ has positive effects on other clinical and laboratory parameters of cytokine storm, such as CRP, IL-6, fibrinogen, and D-dimer, resulting in transaminase levels close to the normal range[33]. In brief, it is necessary to emphasize the importance of drug-related liver damage in patients with COVID-19, especially in those with underlying liver diseases.

Hypoxia/reoxygenation and ischemia/reperfusion-induced liver damage

COVID-19 is primarily characterized by respiratory failure, thus, severe cases of hypoxic hepatitis are commonly seen, and 10% of the cases suffer from a hypoxic liver injury in the ICU[34]. Hypoxic hepatitis, also known as ischemic hepatitis or shock liver[35], is accompanied by a rapid elevation of aminotransferases in cases of respiratory failure, shock, or heart failure. One possible reason is that the complex vascularization of the liver makes it susceptible to changes in circulation, resulting in decreased liver perfusion[31]. It has been shown that SARS-CoV-2 also causes liver damage by producing diffuse endodermatitis. Viral inclusion structures can also be observed in endothelial cells. Liver ischemia/reperfusion, including ischemia-induced cell injury and reperfusion-induced inflammatory responses resulting from the activation of neutrophils, Kupffer cells, and platelets, can induce the generation of reactive oxygen species (ROS) and calcium overload. Endothelial cells are involved in liver ischemia/reperfusion damage, which can promote oxidative stress through ROS and derivatives of nitric oxide[18]. ROS and lipid peroxidation products can mediate the production of redox-sensitive transcription factors, which in turn induce the release of abundant pro-inflammatory factors, resulting in hepatic injury[31]. Furthermore, hepatic sinusoidal endothelial cell damage has been reported to further aggravate hepatic ischemia and hypoxia by disturbing microcirculation[36]. In addition, a high level of positive end-expiratory pressure may be a possible contributor to liver injury in COVID-19 patients, because it can increase right atrial pressure and obstruct venous return, leading to hepatic stasis[37]. These findings indicate that hepatic hypoxia/reoxygenation and ischemia/reperfusion may be potential etiologies of COVID-19-related liver injury.

The ACE2-independent pathway of liver injury

In addition to receptor-mediated viral entry, antibody dependent enhancement (ADE) may also partially associated with hepatic injury in COVID-19 patients. ADE is a pathway that can enhance the interaction of virus-based antibodies, and the CR and/or FC receptor complements allow the virus to easily come into contact with macrophages, granulocytes, and monocytes. This results in the virus multiplying and increasing production, causing the infection to worsen. It has been identified that ADE can be activated by SARS-CoV antibodies, thus, SARS-CoV can trigger ADE activity in immune cells, even though the immune cells do not express ACE receptors (Figure 2B). However, there is a lack of discussion concerning the ADE pathway of liver injury, thus the ACE2-independent mechanisms of liver damage in COVID-19 remain unclear and warrant further study[27].

There is alternative hypothesis that liver cells express two receptors, CD147 and L-SIGN, which have an affinity for the S protein of SARS-CoV-2, and thus may mediate the infection of liver cells by SARS-CoV-2. The presence of CD147 on the surface of host cells may be a new way for SARS-CoV-2 invasion [38]. It has been experimentally verified that CD147 directly interacts with SARS-CoV-2 and that blocking CD147 can prevent SARS-CoV-2 replication, whereas massive expression of CD147 can promote SARS-CoV-2 replication[39]. These findings suggest that CD147 mediates the entry of SARS-CoV-2 into liver cells. However, this requires further exploration (Figure 2C). Additionally, L-SIGN serves as a liver-specific membrane receptor associated with viral capture. Autopsy studies have shown that L-SIGN receptors were present in SARS-CoV-2-infected sinusoidal cells[40] (Figure 2D). Therefore, L-SIGN may provide an alternative way for SARS-CoV-2 to invade the liver tissue.

Clinical manifestation of liver injury in COVID-19

Liver injury is common in severe COVID-19 cases, as shown by significant circulatory elevations in hepatocyte enzymes including ALT and AST, and a slight increase in cholangiocyte-related enzymes such as GGT and ALP. Mao *et al*[41] analyzed 35 studies involving 6686 COVID-19 patients, among which one in five patients developed liver function abnormalities, especially in severe cases. Therefore, paying close attention to liver function in COVID-19 patients before and during admission is necessary to control the severity of COVID-19. The main findings of the liver biopsy were moderate microvascular steatosis and mild lobular and portal activity. Other specific clinical manifestations of liver injury warrant further investigation.

Abnormal liver function tests

Liver test abnormalities are frequent in COVID-19 patients and often progress to severe illness. Liver function tests include hepatocyte injury markers ALT and AST, cholestasis or bile duct injury markers GGT and ALP, and measures of synthetic capacity [prothrombin time (PT) and albumin (ALB)]. One comprehensive study has described the results of liver tests from 417 patients with COVID-19 and found elevated levels of ALT and GGT (24%), AST and total bilirubin (TBIL, 12% and 15%), and no increase in ALP[42]. Such elevated GGT and normal ALP cannot be attributed to bile duct type but are possibly drug-induced liver injuries. GGT elevation is also considered to be a marker of substitution of excessive oxidative stress and increased inflammation due to acute inflammatory stress. However, by analyzing a small subset of COVID-19 patients with possible persistent abnormalities over 60 d, one study found that the predominant abnormality was a cholestatic pattern, as indicated by elevation of the ALP/GGT ratio[43]. Although GGT is not a specific marker of liver injury, liver damage may result from direct bile duct cell injury and cholestasis induced by SARS-CoV-2[43]. Many studies in China revealed that COVID-19 patients who used lopinavir/ritonavir during hospitalization had liver injuries that influenced liver tests[44]. A cohort study including 1040 COVID-19 patients (mean age 38 years old, 54% men) revealed that drugs used for treatment, such as lopinavir-ritonavir, interferon beta, and/or corticosteroids, are correlated with an elevation in the ALT/AST ratio, which acts as an independent contributor to worse clinical outcomes[45]. Using a random effect method and an inverse variance approach, a meta-analysis was conducted using 128 studies, identifying that the most common abnormalities were hypoalbuminemia [61.27% (48.24-72.87)], increased levels of GGT [27.94% (18.22-40.27)], ALT [23.28% (19.92-27.01)] and AST [23.41% (18.84-28.70)][46]. Notably, hypoalbuminemia is an independent risk predictor of liver dysfunction and mortality upon admission[47]. One previous study analyzed 2623 confirmed COVID-19 cases at different risk levels, including non-critically ill, critically ill, and deceased groups[48]. This study revealed that hypoalbuminemia may be due to hepatotoxicity of the cytokine storm. In addition, low-density lipoprotein (LDL) and high-density lipoprotein (HDL) levels were significantly lower in the critically ill and dead groups than in the non-critically ill group. Furthermore, patients with abnormal liver function had higher inflammatory indices, such as a high level of CRP which is associated with disease severity. Patients with an increased level of ALP have significantly elevated CRP levels, and CRP levels are correlated with ALT levels[49]. Notably, D-dimer, LDH, creatine kinase, and troponin levels are also higher in patients with abnormal liver function tests than in those with normal liver function[50]. A retrospective study analyzed 216 patients diagnosed with COVID-19 and concluded that elevated LDH is an independent contributing factor to ICU admission and may require mechanical ventilation[51]. However, the increase in serum LDH does not specifically reflect cellular damage in the liver, because LDH is present in many organs.

In summary, abnormal liver function tests are frequent in COVID-19 patients, which are secondary to other injuries, mostly ischemia or drug-induced liver damage. Patients with abnormal liver tests have extended hospital stay and are at higher risk of developing severe disease; however, this does not directly leading to death[52].

Hepatic histopathological findings in COVID-19

Hepatic histopathological findings in patients who died from COVID-19 revealed moderate microvascular steatosis in addition to mild lobular and portal activity. This is consistent with other studies suggesting that the changes are non-specific, and liver injury may be due to SARS-Cov-2 or drugs, but not caused by cholestasis[8,53,54]. Some studies have found sinusoidal thrombosis, which is less common and is mostly observed in severe COVID-19, because COVID-19 is a prothrombotic disease [55,56]. A case study of the liver autopsy of an elderly patient with COVID-19 found no obvious inflammation in the portal area, but observed a few hepatocytes with slight vesicular steatosis and watery degeneration, possibly associated with ischemia and hypoxia[42]. Inflammatory cells, including neutrophils, plasma cells, and Kupffer cells, were observed in the hepatic sinuses at a higher magnification. In addition, numerous scattered or apoptotic hepatocytes characterized by nuclear condensation or formation of apoptotic bodies were also observed in liver biopsy tissues, but no viral inclusions were observed[14], similar to the results of Wang *et al*[32]. Based on these studies, direct effect of SARS-CoV-2 on hepatocytes seems less convincing. Notably, a report on the histopathological findings of 40 patients who died from COVID-19 revealed that mild lobular necroinflammation was present in 20 (50%) cases, with few infiltrations of lymphocytes and histiocytes[55]. Hepatocyte

degeneration with focal necrosis and low infiltrations of leukocytes in the lobular and portal areas have also been observed in an alternative liver biopsy study of deceased COVID-19 patients[57]. Liver biopsies from three patients and necropsies from three others revealed striking iron accumulation in hepatocytes, and an abundance of ferritin particles in damaged mitochondria[58], suggesting that hepatic iron overload could have a potential relationship with liver injury. Post-mortem wedge liver tissues from 48 deceased COVID-19 patients suggest that different degrees of liver injuries are present, including liver blood involvement and acute (thrombosis and lumen expansion) and chronic (fibrous thickening of vessel wall and portal vein fibrosis) liver injuries[59]. In conclusion, the most common seen liver histopathological findings were hepatic steatosis, portal inflammation, and varying degrees of liver injury. However, related investigations into the mechanisms and etiologies of hepatic histopathological changes are still lacking.

Other special clinical manifestations

In addition to the elevated liver enzymes and histopathologic changes described above, other specific manifestations of liver damage in COVID-19 patients have also been reported, including a darkened face and pigmentation. Pigmentation may be a result of abnormal liver metabolism *via* the following mechanisms. First, liver dysfunction can increase estrogen levels, thereby damaging the inhibitory effect of thiamine on tyrosinase, so that more tyrosine is transformed into melanin. Second, abnormal liver function may result in hypofunction of adrenocortical hormones, and melanin secretion is increased due to the elevation of the melanocyte-stimulating hormone. In addition, more iron may enter into the blood vessels due to liver damage, increasing the ion level in the blood circulation to the facial skin and resulting in a darkened face[27].

COVID-19-INDUCED LIVER INJURY IN SPECIAL POPULATIONS

Risk factors of severe COVID-19 and liver injury

A growing body of studies suggests that male sex, older age, and potential comorbidities, such as hypertension, obesity, diabetes, cardiovascular diseases, and respiratory diseases, and particularly obesity and type 2 diabetes, are more likely to be associated with critical COVID-19 after infection by SARS-CoV-2[60]. One study involving 174 consecutive COVID-19 patients shows that 24 of them had no other comorbidities but diabetes. By comparing the diabetic group with the non-diabetic group, it was found that COVID-19 patients with diabetes more easily experienced an overactivated inflammatory response and a hypercoagulable state, resulting in a worse COVID-19. The mechanism could be that COVID-19 patients with diabetes are easy to develop inflammatory storm that rapidly worsens COVID-19 due to high blood levels of inflammatory factors, such as IL-6, CRP, serum ferritin, coagulation index, and D-dimer[61]. These proinflammatory cytokines were strongly correlated with liver injury, so it is worth paying attention to whether patients with a history of diabetes are more susceptible to liver injury. Age is by far the most associated risk factor of COVID-19, with the risk increasing gradually after 65 years[62]. This may be due to T cell and B cell functions which show age-dependent defects, as well as inadequate control of viral replication due to overproduction of type 2 cytokines and prolonged inflammatory responses[63]. Compared to infected adults, infected children usually present with mild clinical symptoms, and are mostly asymptomatic[64]. This may be because of their immature immune systems. Past reports have confirmed that children with abnormal liver function tests such as increased ALT usually have a preexisting condition such as an immunocompromised state (including malignancy) or CLD[65]. Patients with poor underlying liver conditions, such as cirrhosis, hyperplasia, non-alcoholic steatohepatitis, and mild steatosis, could have high expression of ACE2 than those without liver diseases[66]. Preexisting liver disease and age ≥ 60 years are risk factors for progressing to severe COVID-19[67]. Besides, male sex is linked to the severity of COVID-19 and has been identified as an important etiology of liver injury, possibly due to the lack of the protective effect of estrogen on the liver [68], or the enhancement of male innate immunity and the activation of T cells[62].

Notably, patients with obesity represent a dysregulated hepatic innate immunity, adaptive immune response, and pro-inflammatory state, thus aggravating the cytokine storm caused by SARS-CoV-2 infection, resulting in worse prognoses of COVID-19[60]. To evaluate the relationship between obesity and COVID-19, a meta-analysis was conducted using 50 studies in total with a total of 18260378 eligible subjects. It was found that obesity increased the chance of contracting SARS-CoV-2 and developing critical COVID-19. In addition, patients with a body mass index (BMI) ≥ 30 were 1.39 times more susceptible to SARS-CoV-2 infection compared with those with normal body weight, and the hospitalization rate of COVID-19 became higher with increasing BMI[69]. However, fatty liver is not a predisposing factor for hepatic injury after SARS-CoV-2 infection compared with the susceptibility rate of the general population[70].

In addition to the above risk factors, chronic heart disease, excessive inflammatory response, extended prothrombin time (PT), elevated liver enzymes, and high levels of bilirubin may also be related to severe COVID-19 and mortality[71]. In conclusion, the sex of the patient (males), older age, and comorbidities were independent risk factors for the rapid aggravation of COVID-19. Patients older

than 60 years with a history of diabetes have an increased risk of mortality[72]. However, the exact association between liver injury and risk factors remains unclear.

Preexisting liver diseases and severity of COVID-19

CLD is deemed to be a major burden of disease and a threat to human worldwide. CLD mainly includes cirrhosis, alcoholic liver disease, non-alcoholic fatty liver disease, and chronic hepatitis B, which affects nearly 300 million people in China. Because of this high burden, it is necessary to carefully assess the relationship between underlying liver disease and liver injury in patients with COVID-19[73]. However, the extent to which CLD affects the liver function and the disease ending in COVID-19 is controversial. On the one hand, patients with CLD are thought to be more susceptible to viral infection and developing liver injury due to an altered immune status. On the other hand, previous studies reveal that CLD is rarely related to the progression of liver injury or critical/fatal outcomes of COVID-19 (Table 1)[74]. Therefore, the connection between the underlying liver disease and COVID-19 requires further investigation.

Cirrhosis and COVID-19

Cirrhotic patients have complex immune disorders and are more susceptible to infection, and the leading causes of mortality are not only respiratory complications but also deterioration of liver function, leading to end-stage liver disease. Patients with cirrhosis are not only at risk of related immune dysfunction, but also are more likely to have comorbidities that predispose them to severe COVID-19, such as diabetes, chronic kidney disease, and heart disease[75]. However, there is a debate about the risk of cirrhosis on the clinical outcomes of COVID-19. A multicenter retrospective study revealed that cirrhotic patients infected with COVID-19 have a high 30-d mortality rate[76]. In this study, elevated transaminases may have had an adverse influence on the process of cirrhosis, and ALT levels in cirrhotic patients were affected by SARS-CoV-2. Additionally, nearly half of the patients who previously had normal transaminases developed to an acute liver injury. Indeed, patients with impaired liver function have a higher 30-d mortality rate and more studies suggested that cirrhotic patients are more susceptible to infection resulting from immune dysfunction. SARS-CoV-2 damages the lymphocytes, especially T cells, resulting in impaired immune function and increased sensitivity to the viruses. Moreover, an elevated neutrophil-to-lymphocyte ratio (NLR) increases the risk of bacterial infection, which is related to stress and sepsis, particularly in decompensated liver cirrhosis leading to a worse outcome[67]. In a study of 386 patients with cirrhosis, 32% had a growing risk of mortality after SARS-CoV-2 infection. Patients with CLD without cirrhosis just have a similar risk of mortality as patients without liver disease[77]. In addition, cirrhotic patients with SARS-CoV-2 infection appear to have a high risk of developing acute hepatic decompensation (46%), as well as a 2-fold increased rate of mortality. These studies suggest that cirrhosis is closely linked to the disease progression from COVID-19.

Contrary opinions argue that CLD and cirrhosis have little correlation with the critical and mortality rates of COVID-19. One study found that there was no increase in liver damage after SARS-CoV-2 infection in CLD patients[18]. However, the results may be relatively low persuasive, because only three patients with cirrhosis were studied.

Hepatitis B and COVID-19

Recent evidence suggests that liver injury in patients co-infected with SARS-CoV-2 and hepatitis B virus (HBV) leads to increased disease severity and worse clinical outcomes[78]. In addition, liver test abnormalities often appear in patients co-infected with SARS-CoV-2 and HBV, with elevated levels of ALT, AST, ALP, and TBIL.

In addition, the largest multicenter retrospective study revealed several novel risk factors such as high levels of LDH, D-dimer, and reduced ALB or ALB/globulin (GLO), which increase the risk of COVID-19 severity and mortality in patients with chronic hepatitis B (CHB)[79]. An alternative study showed similar results: High levels of LDH, D-dimer, and IL-6 were more likely to worsen liver function in COVID-19 patients following HBV coinfection. Two weeks after the onset of symptoms, serum LDH levels were increased only in patients with COVID-19 and HBV coinfection compared with patients without HBV coinfection[80]. The conditions of four chronic HBV-infected patients were further aggravated after SARS-CoV-2 coinfection, as presented by progressive jaundice elevation, coagulation disorders, and ascites, and developed acute-on-chronic liver failure[78]. These findings suggest that SARS-CoV-2 and HBV coinfection is related to disease severity and poor clinical presentation, and affects liver function tests and that HBV inactive carriers have more severe liver damage. This may be due to the altered immune status caused by SARS-CoV-2 coinfection. Other possible reasons include inactive HBV carriers, who are more prone to HBV reactivation and liver injury with ALT flares caused by SARS-CoV-2 coinfection, and these patients have increased sensitivity to hepatotoxic antiviral drugs used for COVID-19 treatment[80].

There are opposing opinions that chronic HBV coinfection is not a predictive factor for the disease severity or poor prognosis of COVID-19. A study using a prognostic model with a nomogram indicated that HBV infection was not linked to the mortality risk of COVID-19[81]. Several studies have supported

this hypothesis. A cohort study of 326 confirmed COVID-19 patients shows that 20 (6.1%) had HBV coinfection, and the outcomes of the 20 patients (including rates of severe/critically ill, mortality, and discharged and hospital stays) showed no difference from those of patients without coinfection, and HBV coinfection did not increase the degree of liver injury[82]. This is consistent with the results of a previous review indicating that the degree of hepatic damage in patients with HBV and SARS-CoV-2 coinfection is not significantly different from that in patients with SARS-CoV-2 infection alone[83]. Therefore, whether or not HBV infection affects the clinical manifestations and outcomes of COVID-19, and how, requires further study.

Metabolic dysfunction-associated fatty liver disease and COVID-19

Metabolic dysfunction-associated fatty liver disease (MAFLD), previously defined as NAFLD, has been reported to be associated with increased ICU admissions and the need for mechanical ventilation after infection with SARS-CoV-2. However, it was not a predictive factor for death in COVID-19[18]. MAFLD is the most frequently occurring chronic disease in the world, with a common incidence of 30%, and is regarded as a liver performance of the metabolic syndrome. There is a distinct lack of research regarding the history of liver disease in COVID-19 patients and the connection between MAFLD and COVID-19[84]. A meta-analysis of COVID-19 comorbidities showed upregulation of ACE2 receptor expression in NAFLD[85]. A cohort study of 202 consecutive COVID-19 patients showed that patients with NAFLD had prolonged virus-shedding time and increased risk of disease severity compared to non-NAFLD patients[86]. In addition, a previous study has shown that younger patients (age < 60 years) with MAFLD have increased disease severity, possibly due to the higher incidence of cytokine storm caused by MAFLD in younger patients[87]. This is consistent with an alternative multicenter study that compared the risks of developing severe COVID-19 between younger and older patients with MAFLD. Results showed that 55.9% of the younger and 24% of the elderly developed severe COVID-19 (P = 0.01)[88], suggesting that younger MAFLD patients have an higher risk of developing severe COVID-19, while MAFLD in older patients appears to have little association with disease severity.

The mechanism underlying age-related disease severity in COVID-19 remains unclear. Possible explanations include: (1) Younger MAFLD patients are more likely to exhibit liver and systemic immune responses, and thereby a cytokine storm after SARS-CoV-2 infection; (2) older MAFLD patients usually have a higher burden of comorbidities which may harm COVID-19 and mask the link between MAFLD and COVID-19 severity[88]; (3) cytokine storm has been shown to increase in obese patients, especially in those with preexisting MAFLD[89]; (4) BMI is much higher in patients with NAFLD than in those without[90]; (5) MAFLD is also linked to abnormal levels of aminotransferases and GGT[89]; and (6) the connection between MAFLD and the severity of COVID-19 may be related to the release of pro-inflammatory mediators, such as, tumor necrosis factor-alpha and IL-6[91]. Notably, one study reported that the prognosis of MAFLD is closely related to the degree of fibrosis, and thus could affect the outcomes of COVID-19[63]. When MAFLD is accompanied by severe advanced liver fibrosis, it may exacerbate the cytokine storm caused by the virus, thus the release of proinflammatory cytokines leads to more severe COVID-19. In conclusion, unhealthy lifestyles contribute to the high morbidity of MAFLD and high risk of severe COVID-19.

Alcoholic liver disease and COVID-19

A previous study revealed an unprecedented increase in both ALD and liver transplant rates during the spread of COVID-19[92]. Therefore, more research focus should be placed on ALD, in relation to the COVID-19 pandemic. It was reported by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention in the US that the mortality due to ALD has increased rapidly during the COVID-19 pandemic. One possible reason for this is the high consumption of alcohol and the increase in alcohol-related comorbidities before and during the COVID-19 pandemic. Other possible reasons include increased obesity/metabolic syndrome and NAFLD, which also contribute to the risk of ALD development. In addition, a study found that females and young adults showed the highest relative increases in ALD-related mortality, while older adults over the age of 85 years presented a smaller increase in overall female mortality and even a decrease in male mortality[93]. A comprehensive study of 978 CLD patients with SARS-CoV-2 infection from 21 institutions in the United States revealed a novel association between ALD and poor survival or COVID-19 related mortality. It has been confirmed that patients with preexisting ALD may be more susceptible to contracting COVID-19 due to immune system dysregulation. ALD is associated with a sterile inflammatory state caused by an injury-related molecular pattern, resulting in the spread of pro-inflammatory cytokines throughout the body. In addition, SARS-CoV-2-induced cytokine storm may exacerbate inflammation in patients with ALD, leading to worse clinical outcomes[94]. In a report on the trends in alcohol consumption and liver disease before and after COVID-19, more than a third of patients with CLD and 50% with ALD consumed alcohol daily, suggesting that high alcohol consumption may indicate a relationship with poor prognosis of COVID-19. There are many possible reasons why alcohol abuse leads to poor outcomes. Alcohol abuse and related liver disease can disrupt the innate and acquired immune systems due to impaired immune cell function and survival, which participate in defending against viral infections. Another reason may be that patients with chronic alcohol consumption are more likely to develop ARDS, thus leading to a worse outcome[95].

Liver transplant and COVID-19

Liver transplant recipients are more likely to develop severe COVID-19, due to chronic immunosuppression and related comorbidities, which may lead to mortality[96]. A systematic search of 15 studies consisting of 223 Liver transplant patients, among which 77.7% required hospitalization, found that 36% experienced more severe disease, with a higher mortality rate observed in the cohort compared with approximately 1%-4% in the general population. In addition, liver transplant recipients often present with fever and dyspnea which are similar to common COVID-19 manifestations; however, liver transplant recipients are more likely to have concurrent diarrhea symptoms. Furthermore, older liver transplant recipients (aged > 60 years) with diabetes are at an increased risk of mortality[72]. Another study compared 151 Liver transplant patients (68% male, median age of 60 years) with 627 non-transplanted patients (52% male, median age of 73 years), showing that groups of liver transplant patients tended to have ICU admission (28% *vs* 8%) and needed treatment with invasive ventilation (20% *vs* 5%), while mortality was lower in the liver transplant cohort than in the non-transplant cohort (19% *vs* 27%). Several statistical analyses have shown age-related mortality among liver transplant recipients[18]. Similarly, the first nationwide study compared the morbidity and outcomes of 111 Liver transplant patients infected with SARS-CoV-2 with those of the general population, matched for age and sex[97]. Liver transplant recipients have a doubled risk of developing COVID-19, but have a lower standardized mortality rate compared to the general population. They conclude that chronic immunosuppression and increased comorbidity make the liver transplant recipients more likely to suffer from the infection of the virus and develop to COVID-19, whereas chronic immunosuppression can resist the most severe forms of COVID-19 and play a protective role against the virus, resulting in reduced mortality rates.

DISCUSSION

COVID-19 caused by SARS-CoV-2 infection is a worldwide epidemic, which has had catastrophic impacts on healthcare systems and social management. Although SARS-CoV-2 mainly affects the respiratory tract, current studies have also focused on multi-organ injury particularly liver injury, with liver test abnormalities identified as an important extrapulmonary manifestation related to SARS-CoV-2 infection[98]. As liver dysfunction is associated with disease severity and poor clinical presentation, understanding the pathogenesis of liver injury and its associated risk factors is extremely important for the prognosis and treatment of the disease. This review briefly summarizes the onset, mechanism, risk factors, susceptible groups, and correlation between liver injury and the clinical outcomes of COVID-19.

According to previous studies, hypoalbuminemia and elevated AST and ALT levels are frequently observed in severe COVID-19 cases, indicating abnormal liver function. These elevations are usually accompanied by elevated LDH. GGT levels were also generally elevated, but ALP elevation was not evident in most studies. Although it is debated whether the pattern of liver injury is hepatocellular or cholestatic, the vast majority of studies support the hepatocellular injury. However, because of the high expression of ACE2 receptors in cholangiocytes, the hypothesis that liver injury results from the direct cytopathic effect of SARS-CoV-2 on hepatocytes seems unconvincing. Liver injuries likely reflect the severity of the disease. Liver histopathological studies predominantly showed moderate microvascular steatosis and slight lobular activity and inflammatory infiltration of the portal area in the biopsy and autopsy of COVID-19 cases. However, the exact mechanisms of liver injury in COVID-19 are still unclear, perhaps more cases are due to indirect liver injury.

Predisposing risk factors for liver damage in COVID-19 include male sex, older age, other comorbidities, and underlying CLDs. Men are more likely to develop liver injury than women because of the stronger innate immune system in men and estrogen protection in women. Patients aged > 65 years appear to exhibit a progressive increase in the risk of developing severe disease. Obesity is also a contributing factor to severe COVID-19, because dysregulated hepatic innate immunity, adaptive immune response, and pro-inflammatory state are usually present in fatty cases, which may aggravate the cytokine storms. Cytokine storms can be enhanced in patients with preexisting MAFLD. The contributions of other preexisting CLDs (including cirrhosis, ALD and chronic hepatitis B) to the progression of disease severity and liver injury in COVID-19 remain controversial. Most studies have emphasized that CLDs are more susceptible to severe COVID-19 due to immune disorders, and CLDs are often associated with abnormal liver function tests. However, CLD is not a predictor of mortality. Liver transplant recipients have many potential risk factors for developing worse outcomes in COVID-19, but it appears that chronic immunosuppression can protect COVID-19 patients from developing severe disease and thus reduce the mortality. Older liver transplant recipients (aged > 60 years) with diabetes are at increased risk of mortality. The exact link between CLD and COVID-19 is unclear, and whether CLD aggravates liver dysfunction and worsens the clinical outcomes of COVID-19 remains ambiguous.

CONCLUSION

Liver injury is frequent in patients with COVID-19 and abnormal liver function tests are more often observed in severe cases. Risk factors and populations for liver dysfunction in COVID-19 patients include male sex, older age, underlying comorbidities (particularly diabetes, hypertension, and obesity) and preexisting liver diseases (CLD and liver transplant). The mechanisms underlying liver injury in COVID-19 patients remain unclear, which are more likely due to the direct effect of the virus on hepatocytes or the biliary epithelium, and the indirect effects of excessive inflammation, drugs, and ischemia/hypoxia syndromes. Collectively, liver injury in COVID-19 patients is associated with increased disease severity and requires additional attention and effective treatments. In addition, targeted therapy is needed for patients with preexisting liver diseases, especially older patients with comorbidities. Further research is needed to determine whether the underlying disease coexists with COVID-19 to cause severe diseases that causes liver damage, or whether the underlying conditions directly contribute to liver damage. Attention should also be paid to DILI during the treatment of COVID-19, especially the conventional and new drugs used for specific groups. The information discussed in this review may aid in establishing recommendations and guidance for the treatment of liver injury in COVID-19 to reduce liver burden.

Table 1 Abnormal liver function with existing liver disease and effects of COVID-19

Ref.	No. of patients included	No. of patients with preexisting liver disease	Liver function markers	Impact on disease
Cirrhosis				
Iavarone *et al* [76], 2020	399	50	Bilirubin and ALT significantly increased, while albumin significantly decreased	Elevated transaminases may have an adverse impact on the process of cirrhosis and the 30-d mortality rate was higher in those patients who had impaired liver function
Marjot *et al* [77], 2021	745	386	-	SARS-CoV-2 infection in patients with cirrhosis appears to be associated with high rates of acute hepatic decompensation (46%) and patients would have a 2-fold increased rate of mortality
Hepatitis B				
Zou *et al*[78], 2021	105	105	Elevated levels of ALT (22, 20.95%), AST (29, 27.62%), total bilirubin (7, 6.67%), GST (7, 6.67%), and ALP (1, 0.95%)	Liver injury in patients with SARS-CoV-2 and chronic HBV co-infection was associated with disease severity
Chen *et al* [82], 2020	376	20	No significant increase	Coinfection with SARS-CoV-2 and HBV slightly affected liver function and had no effect on COVID-19 outcomes
MAFLD				
Zhou *et al* [88], 2020	327	93	-	Younger COVID-19 patients (aged < 60 years) with MAFLD have a more than 2-fold higher prevalence of severe COVID-19 while MAFLD in older patients appears to have no relation to the severity of the disease
Tripon *et al* [89], 2022	719	445	-	SARS-CoV-2-induced cytokine storm can be enhanced in patients with a preexisting liver disease like NAFLD
ALD				
Kim *et al*[94], 2021	367	94	-	Patients with ALD were at higher risk of contracting COVID-19 due to their immune system dysregulation and SARS-CoV-2-induced cytokine storm may exacerbate inflammation in ALD patients
Liver transplant				
Fraser *et al* [72], 2020	223	223	-	In liver transplant recipients with COVID-19, 77.7% required hospitalization, 36% experienced more severe disease, and the mortality rate observed in the cohort was 19.3%
Colmenero *et al*[97], 2021	111	111	-	In liver transplant patients, chronic immune-suppression increases the risk of developing COVID-19 but it could reduce disease severity and the mortality

SARS-CoV-2: severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus 2; ALT: Alanine aminotransferase; AST: Aspartate aminotransferase; GST: Gamma-glutamyl transpeptidase; MAFLD: Metabolic dysfunction-associated fatty liver disease; ALD: Alcoholic liver disease.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Hu WS and Jiang FY contributed equally to this work; Hu WS, Jiang FY, Shu W, and Zhao R reviewed prior publications and drafted the manuscript; Cao JM and Wang DP revised the paper.

Supported by the Key Medical Science and Technology Program of Shanxi Province, No. 2020XM01; Shanxi "1331" Project Quality and Efficiency Improvement Plan, No. 1331KFC; Applied Basic Research Program of Shanxi Province, No. 202103021224234; and National Natural Science Foundation of China, No. 82170523.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors declare no conflicts of interest for this work.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article that was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution NonCommercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: https://creativecommons.org/Licenses/by-nc/4.0/

Country/Territory of origin: China

ORCID number: Ji-Min Cao 0000-0002-6546-555X; De-Ping Wang 0000-0002-8479-5415.

S-Editor: Chen YL
L-Editor: Wang TQ
P-Editor: Chen YL

REFERENCES

1 **Li H**, Liu L, Zhang D, Xu J, Dai H, Tang N, Su X, Cao B. SARS-CoV-2 and viral sepsis: observations and hypotheses. *Lancet* 2020; **395**: 1517-1520 [PMID: 32311318 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(20)30920-X]
2 **Huang C**, Wang Y, Li X, Ren L, Zhao J, Hu Y, Zhang L, Fan G, Xu J, Gu X, Cheng Z, Yu T, Xia J, Wei Y, Wu W, Xie X, Yin W, Li H, Liu M, Xiao Y, Gao H, Guo L, Xie J, Wang G, Jiang R, Gao Z, Jin Q, Wang J, Cao B. Clinical features of patients infected with 2019 novel coronavirus in Wuhan, China. *Lancet* 2020; **395**: 497-506 [PMID: 31986264 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(20)30183-5]
3 **Andersen KG**, Rambaut A, Lipkin WI, Holmes EC, Garry RF. The proximal origin of SARS-CoV-2. *Nat Med* 2020; **26**: 450-452 [PMID: 32284615 DOI: 10.1038/s41591-020-0820-9]
4 **Berlin DA**, Gulick RM, Martinez FJ. Severe Covid-19. *N Engl J Med* 2020; **383**: 2451-2460 [PMID: 32412710 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMcp2009575]
5 **Santana MF**, Guerra MT, Hundt MA, Ciarleglio MM, Pinto RAA, Dutra BG, Xavier MS, Lacerda MVG, Ferreira AJ, Wanderley DC, Borges do Nascimento IJ, Araújo RFA, Pinheiro SVB, Araújo SA, Leite MF, Ferreira LCL, Nathanson MH, Vieira Teixeira Vidigal P. Correlation Between Clinical and Pathological Findings of Liver Injury in 27 Patients With Lethal COVID-19 Infections in Brazil. *Hepatol Commun* 2022; **6**: 270-280 [PMID: 34520633 DOI: 10.1002/hep4.1820]
6 **Zhong P**, Xu J, Yang D, Shen Y, Wang L, Feng Y, Du C, Song Y, Wu C, Hu X, Sun Y. COVID-19-associated gastrointestinal and liver injury: clinical features and potential mechanisms. *Signal Transduct Target Ther* 2020; **5**: 256 [PMID: 33139693 DOI: 10.1038/s41392-020-00373-7]
7 **Osorio Martínez A**, González-Razo VT, Navarro-Sánchez V, Souto Meiriño CA, Ahumada-Ayala M. SARS-CoV-2-Related Subacute Thyroiditis, Myocarditis, and Hepatitis After Full Resolution of COVID-19 Serum Markers. *Am J Case Rep* 2021; **22**: e932321 [PMID: 34138828 DOI: 10.12659/AJCR.932321]
8 **Xu Z**, Shi L, Wang Y, Zhang J, Huang L, Zhang C, Liu S, Zhao P, Liu H, Zhu L, Tai Y, Bai C, Gao T, Song J, Xia P, Dong J, Zhao J, Wang FS. Pathological findings of COVID-19 associated with acute respiratory distress syndrome. *Lancet Respir Med* 2020; **8**: 420-422 [PMID: 32085846 DOI: 10.1016/S2213-2600(20)30076-X]
9 **Hoffmann M**, Kleine-Weber H, Schroeder S, Krüger N, Herrler T, Erichsen S, Schiergens TS, Herrler G, Wu NH, Nitsche A, Müller MA, Drosten C, Pöhlmann S. SARS-CoV-2 Cell Entry Depends on ACE2 and TMPRSS2 and Is Blocked by a Clinically Proven Protease Inhibitor. *Cell* 2020; **181**: 271-280.e8 [PMID: 32142651 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2020.02.052]
10 **Inde Z**, Croker BA, Yapp C, Joshi GN, Spetz J, Fraser C, Qin X, Xu L, Deskin B, Ghelfi E, Webb G, Carlin AF, Zhu YP, Leibel SL, Garretson AF, Clark AE, Duran JM, Pretorius V, Crotty-Alexander LE, Li C, Lee JC, Sodhi C, Hackam DJ, Sun X, Hata AN, Kobzik L, Miller J, Park JA, Brownfield D, Jia H, Sarosiek KA. Age-dependent regulation of SARS-CoV-2 cell entry genes and cell death programs correlates with COVID-19 severity. *Sci Adv* 2021; **7** [PMID: 34407940 DOI: 10.1126/sciadv.abf8609]
11 **Bzeizi K**, Abdulla M, Mohammed N, Alqamish J, Jamshidi N, Broering D. Effect of COVID-19 on liver abnormalities: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Sci Rep* 2021; **11**: 10599 [PMID: 34012016 DOI: 10.1038/s41598-021-89513-9]
12 **Wang MY**, Zhao R, Gao LJ, Gao XF, Wang DP, Cao JM. SARS-CoV-2: Structure, Biology, and Structure-Based Therapeutics Development. *Front Cell Infect Microbiol* 2020; **10**: 587269 [PMID: 33324574 DOI: 10.3389/fcimb.2020.587269]
13 **Lui VC**, Hui KP, Babu RO, Yue H, Chung PH, Tam PK, Chan MC, Wong KK. Human liver organoid derived intra-hepatic bile duct cells support SARS-CoV-2 infection and replication. *Sci Rep* 2022; **12**: 5375 [PMID: 35354880 DOI: 10.1038/s41598-022-09306-6]
14 **Wang Y**, Liu S, Liu H, Li W, Lin F, Jiang L, Li X, Xu P, Zhang L, Zhao L, Cao Y, Kang J, Yang J, Li L, Liu X, Li Y, Nie

R, Mu J, Lu F, Zhao S, Lu J, Zhao J. SARS-CoV-2 infection of the liver directly contributes to hepatic impairment in patients with COVID-19. *J Hepatol* 2020; **73**: 807-816 [PMID: 32437830 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2020.05.002]

15 **Wu Y**, Li H, Guo X, Yoshida EM, Mendez-Sanchez N, Levi Sandri GB, Teschke R, Romeiro FG, Shukla A, Qi X. Incidence, risk factors, and prognosis of abnormal liver biochemical tests in COVID-19 patients: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Hepatol Int* 2020; **14**: 621-637 [PMID: 32710250 DOI: 10.1007/s12072-020-10074-6]

16 **Fiel MI**, El Jamal SM, Paniz-Mondolfi A, Gordon RE, Reidy J, Bandovic J, Advani R, Kilaru S, Pourmand K, Ward S, Thung SN, Schiano T. Findings of Hepatic Severe Acute Respiratory Syndrome Coronavirus-2 Infection. *Cell Mol Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2021; **11**: 763-770 [PMID: 32992052 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcmgh.2020.09.015]

17 **Wanner N**, Andrieux G, Badia-I-Mompel P, Edler C, Pfefferle S, Lindenmeyer MT, Schmidt-Lauber C, Czogalla J, Wong MN, Okabayashi Y, Braun F, Lütgehetmann M, Meister E, Lu S, Noriega MLM, Günther T, Grundhoff A, Fischer N, Bräuninger H, Lindner D, Westermann D, Haas F, Roedl K, Kluge S, Addo MM, Huber S, Lohse AW, Reiser J, Ondruschka B, Sperhake JP, Saez-Rodriguez J, Boerries M, Hayek SS, Aepfelbacher M, Scaturro P, Puelles VG, Huber TB. Molecular consequences of SARS-CoV-2 Liver tropism. *Nat Metab* 2022; **4**: 310-319 [PMID: 35347318 DOI: 10.1038/s42255-022-00552-6]

18 **Gracia-Ramos AE**, Jaquez-Quintana JO, Contreras-Omaña R, Auron M. Liver dysfunction and SARS-CoV-2 infection. *World J Gastroenterol* 2021; **27**: 3951-3970 [PMID: 34326607 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v27.i26.3951]

19 **Zhu DD**, Tan XM, Lu LQ, Yu SJ, Jian RL, Liang XF, Liao YX, Fan W, Barbier-Torres L, Yang A, Yang HP, Liu T. Interplay between nuclear factor erythroid 2-related factor 2 and inflammatory mediators in COVID-19-related liver injury. *World J Gastroenterol* 2021; **27**: 2944-2962 [PMID: 34168400 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v27.i22.2944]

20 **Song JW**, Zhang C, Fan X, Meng FP, Xu Z, Xia P, Cao WJ, Yang T, Dai XP, Wang SY, Xu RN, Jiang TJ, Li WG, Zhang DW, Zhao P, Shi M, Agrati C, Ippolito G, Maeurer M, Zumla A, Wang FS, Zhang JY. Immunological and inflammatory profiles in mild and severe cases of COVID-19. *Nat Commun* 2020; **11**: 3410 [PMID: 32641700 DOI: 10.1038/s41467-020-17240-2]

21 **Liao S**, Zhan K, Gan L, Bai Y, Li J, Yuan G, Cai Y, Zhang A, He S, Mei Z. Inflammatory cytokines, T lymphocyte subsets, and ritonavir involved in liver injury of COVID-19 patients. *Signal Transduct Target Ther* 2020; **5**: 255 [PMID: 33130825 DOI: 10.1038/s41392-020-00363-9]

22 **Gao Y**, Li Q, Shi H, Feng Y, Zhang T, Chen Y, Liang L, Chen D, Wu H, Jin R, Huang X. Preliminary Exploration of the Cause of Liver Disorders During Early Stages in COVID-19 Patients. *Front Med (Lausanne)* 2020; **7**: 501 [PMID: 32903864 DOI: 10.3389/fmed.2020.00501]

23 **McConnell MJ**, Kawaguchi N, Kondo R, Sonzogni A, Licini L, Valle C, Bonaffini PA, Sironi S, Alessio MG, Previtali G, Seghezzi M, Zhang X, Lee AI, Pine AB, Chun HJ, Fernandez-Hernando C, Qing H, Wang A, Price C, Sun Z, Utsumi T, Hwa J, Strazzabosco M, Iwakiri Y. Liver injury in COVID-19 and IL-6 trans-signaling-induced endotheliopathy. *J Hepatol* 2021; **75**: 647-658 [PMID: 33991637 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2021.04.050]

24 **Da BL**, Kushner T, El Halabi M, Paka P, Khalid M, Uberoi A, Lee BT, Perumalswami PV, Rutledge SM, Schiano TD, Friedman SL, Saberi B. Liver Injury in Patients Hospitalized with Coronavirus Disease 2019 Correlates with Hyperinflammatory Response and Elevated Interleukin-6. *Hepatol Commun* 2021; **5**: 177-188 [PMID: 33230491 DOI: 10.1002/hep4.1631]

25 **Stebbing J**, Sánchez Nievas G, Falcone M, Youhanna S, Richardson P, Ottaviani S, Shen JX, Sommerauer C, Tiseo G, Ghiadoni L, Virdis A, Monzani F, Rizos LR, Forfori F, Avendaño Céspedes A, De Marco S, Carrozzi L, Lena F, Sánchez-Jurado PM, Lacerenza LG, Cesira N, Caldevilla Bernardo D, Perrella A, Niccoli L, Méndez LS, Matarrese D, Goletti D, Tan YJ, Monteil V, Dranitsaris G, Cantini F, Farcomeni A, Dutta S, Burley SK, Zhang H, Pistello M, Li W, Romero MM, Andrés Pretel F, Simón-Talero RS, García-Molina R, Kutter C, Felce JH, Nizami ZF, Miklosi AG, Penninger JM, Menichetti F, Mirazimi A, Abizanda P, Lauschke VM. JAK inhibition reduces SARS-CoV-2 Liver infectivity and modulates inflammatory responses to reduce morbidity and mortality. *Sci Adv* 2021; **7** [PMID: 33187978 DOI: 10.1126/sciadv.abe4724]

26 **Mehta P**, McAuley DF, Brown M, Sanchez E, Tattersall RS, Manson JJ; HLH Across Speciality Collaboration, UK. COVID-19: consider cytokine storm syndromes and immunosuppression. *Lancet* 2020; **395**: 1033-1034 [PMID: 32192578 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(20)30628-0]

27 **Mohamed DZ**, Ghoneim ME, Abu-Risha SE, Abdelsalam RA, Farag MA. Gastrointestinal and hepatic diseases during the COVID-19 pandemic: Manifestations, mechanism and management. *World J Gastroenterol* 2021; **27**: 4504-4535 [PMID: 34366621 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v27.i28.4504]

28 **Cao J**, Cai X, Chen M. Liver Injury in COVID-19: Caution and Management. *Liver Cancer* 2020; **9**: 625-626 [PMID: 33083285 DOI: 10.1159/000508696]

29 **Anirvan P**, Bharali P, Gogoi M, Thuluvath PJ, Singh SP, Satapathy SK. Liver injury in COVID-19: The hepatic aspect of the respiratory syndrome - what we know so far. *World J Hepatol* 2020; **12**: 1182-1197 [PMID: 33442447 DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v12.i12.1182]

30 **Boeckmans J**, Rodrigues RM, Demuyser T, Piérard D, Vanhaecke T, Rogiers V. COVID-19 and drug-induced liver injury: a problem of plenty or a petty point? *Arch Toxicol* 2020; **94**: 1367-1369 [PMID: 32266419 DOI: 10.1007/s00204-020-02734-1]

31 **D'Ardes D**, Boccatonda A, Cocco G, Fabiani S, Rossi I, Bucci M, Guagnano MT, Schiavone C, Cipollone F. Impaired coagulation, liver dysfunction and COVID-19: Discovering an intriguing relationship. *World J Gastroenterol* 2022; **28**: 1102-1112 [PMID: 35431501 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i11.1102]

32 **Wang M**, Yan W, Qi W, Wu D, Zhu L, Li W, Wang X, Ma K, Ni M, Xu D, Wang H, Chen G, Yu H, Ding H, Xing M, Han M, Luo X, Chen T, Guo W, Xi D, Ning Q. Clinical characteristics and risk factors of liver injury in COVID-19: a retrospective cohort study from Wuhan, China. *Hepatol Int* 2020; **14**: 723-732 [PMID: 33026573 DOI: 10.1007/s12072-020-10075-5]

33 **Muhović D**, Bojović J, Bulatović A, Vukčević B, Ratković M, Lazović R, Smolović B. First case of drug-induced liver injury associated with the use of tocilizumab in a patient with COVID-19. *Liver Int* 2020; **40**: 1901-1905 [PMID: 32478465 DOI: 10.1111/Liv.14516]

34 **Sun J**, Aghemo A, Forner A, Valenti L. COVID-19 and liver disease. *Liver Int* 2020; **40**: 1278-1281 [PMID: 32251539 DOI: 10.1111/Liv.14470]

35 **Roedl K**, Jarczak D, Drolz A, Wichmann D, Boenisch O, de Heer G, Burdelski C, Frings D, Sensen B, Nierhaus A, Lütgehetmann M, Kluge S, Fuhrmann V. Severe liver dysfunction complicating course of COVID-19 in the critically ill: multifactorial cause or direct viral effect? *Ann Intensive Care* 2021; **11**: 44 [PMID: 33721137 DOI: 10.1186/s13613-021-00835-3]

36 **Cai Y**, Ye LP, Song YQ, Mao XL, Wang L, Jiang YZ, Que WT, Li SW. Liver injury in COVID-19: Detection, pathogenesis, and treatment. *World J Gastroenterol* 2021; **27**: 3022-3036 [PMID: 34168405 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v27.i22.3022]

37 **Chen P**, Zhou B. Clinical Characteristics of COVID-19 in Patients With Liver Injury. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2020; **18**: 2846-2847 [PMID: 32407783 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2020.04.043]

38 **Ulrich H**, Pillat MM. CD147 as a Target for COVID-19 Treatment: Suggested Effects of Azithromycin and Stem Cell Engagement. *Stem Cell Rev Rep* 2020; **16**: 434-440 [PMID: 32307653 DOI: 10.1007/s12015-020-09976-7]

39 **Wang K**, Chen W, Zhang Z, Deng Y, Lian JQ, Du P, Wei D, Zhang Y, Sun XX, Gong L, Yang X, He L, Zhang L, Yang Z, Geng JJ, Chen R, Zhang H, Wang B, Zhu YM, Nan G, Jiang JL, Li L, Wu J, Lin P, Huang W, Xie L, Zheng ZH, Zhang K, Miao JL, Cui HY, Huang M, Zhang J, Fu L, Yang XM, Zhao Z, Sun S, Gu H, Wang Z, Wang CF, Lu Y, Liu YY, Wang QY, Bian H, Zhu P, Chen ZN. CD147-spike protein is a novel route for SARS-CoV-2 infection to host cells. *Signal Transduct Target Ther* 2020; **5**: 283 [PMID: 33277466 DOI: 10.1038/s41392-020-00426-x]

40 **Kondo Y**, Larabee JL, Gao L, Shi H, Shao B, Hoover CM, McDaniel JM, Ho YC, Silasi-Mansat R, Archer-Hartmann SA, Azadi P, Srinivasan RS, Rezaie AR, Borczuk A, Laurence JC, Lupu F, Ahamed J, McEver RP, Papin JF, Yu Z, Xia L. L-SIGN is a receptor on liver sinusoidal endothelial cells for SARS-CoV-2 virus. *JCI Insight* 2021; **6** [PMID: 34291736 DOI: 10.1172/jci.insight.148999]

41 **Mao R**, Qiu Y, He JS, Tan JY, Li XH, Liang J, Shen J, Zhu LR, Chen Y, Iacucci M, Ng SC, Ghosh S, Chen MH. Manifestations and prognosis of gastrointestinal and liver involvement in patients with COVID-19: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Lancet Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2020; **5**: 667-678 [PMID: 32405603 DOI: 10.1016/S2468-1253(20)30126-6]

42 **Cai Q**, Huang D, Yu H, Zhu Z, Xia Z, Su Y, Li Z, Zhou G, Gou J, Qu J, Sun Y, Liu Y, He Q, Chen J, Liu L, Xu L. COVID-19: Abnormal liver function tests. *J Hepatol* 2020; **73**: 566-574 [PMID: 32298767 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2020.04.006]

43 **Nayagam JS**, Jeyaraj R, Mitchell T, Walder DP, Al-Agil M, Shek A, Barker R, Teo J, Maharaj R, Agarwal K, Vlachos S, Joshi D, McPhail MJ. Patterns and prediction of liver injury with persistent cholestasis in survivors of severe SARS-CoV-2 infection. *J Infect* 2021; **82**: e11-e13 [PMID: 33826926 DOI: 10.1016/j.jinf.2021.03.029]

44 **Fan Z**, Chen L, Li J, Cheng X, Yang J, Tian C, Zhang Y, Huang S, Liu Z, Cheng J. Clinical Features of COVID-19-Related Liver Functional Abnormality. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2020; **18**: 1561-1566 [PMID: 32283325 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2020.04.002]

45 **Yip TC**, Lui GC, Wong VW, Chow VC, Ho TH, Li TC, Tse YK, Hui DS, Chan HL, Wong GL. Liver injury is independently associated with adverse clinical outcomes in patients with COVID-19. *Gut* 2021; **70**: 733-742 [PMID: 32641471 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2020-321726]

46 **Kumar-M P**, Mishra S, Jha DK, Shukla J, Choudhury A, Mohindra R, Mandavdhare HS, Dutta U, Sharma V. Coronavirus disease (COVID-19) and the liver: a comprehensive systematic review and meta-analysis. *Hepatol Int* 2020; **14**: 711-722 [PMID: 32623633 DOI: 10.1007/s12072-020-10071-9]

47 **Foley CE**, Mulvey C, Boylan M, Reidy N, Reidy P, Moynan D, Worrall A, Curley G, Boland K, de Barra E, Ryan JD. Liver injury, hypoalbuminaemia and severe SARS-CoV-2 infection. *Gut* 2022; **71**: 225-226 [PMID: 34083385 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2021-324570]

48 **Huang W**, Li C, Wang Z, Wang H, Zhou N, Jiang J, Ni L, Zhang XA, Wang DW. Decreased serum albumin level indicates poor prognosis of COVID-19 patients: hepatic injury analysis from 2,623 hospitalized cases. *Sci China Life Sci* 2020; **63**: 1678-1687 [PMID: 32567003 DOI: 10.1007/s11427-020-1733-4]

49 **Gholizadeh P**, Safari R, Marofi P, Zeinalzadeh E, Pagliano P, Ganbarov K, Esposito S, Khodadadi E, Yousefi M, Samadi Kafil H. Alteration of Liver Biomarkers in Patients with SARS-CoV-2 (COVID-19). *J Inflamm Res* 2020; **13**: 285-292 [PMID: 32669866 DOI: 10.2147/JIR.S257078]

50 **Piano S**, Dalbeni A, Vettore E, Benfaremo D, Mattioli M, Gambino CG, Framba V, Cerruti L, Mantovani A, Martini A, Luchetti MM, Serra R, Cattelan A, Vettor R, Angeli P; COVID-LIVER study group. Abnormal liver function tests predict transfer to intensive care unit and death in COVID-19. *Liver Int* 2020; **40**: 2394-2406 [PMID: 32526083 DOI: 10.1111/Liv.14565]

51 **Gomi K**, Ito T, Yamaguchi F, Kamio Y, Sato Y, Mori H, Endo K, Abe T, Sakakura S, Kobayashi K, Shimada K, Noda J, Hibiki T, Ohta S, Sagara H, Tanaka A, Jinno M, Yamawaki M, Nishimoto F, Inoue K, Nagahama M. Clinical features and mechanism of liver injury in patients with mild or moderate coronavirus disease 2019. *JGH Open* 2021; **5**: 888-895 [PMID: 34386596 DOI: 10.1002/jgh3.12599]

52 **Kumar D**, Srivastava S, Rajnikant T, Dawra S, Tevatia MS, Mukherjee R. Liver function tests in COVID 19: A retrospective record-based study from a tertiary care centre in urban Maharashtra, India. *Med J Armed Forces India* 2022 [PMID: 35582519 DOI: 10.1016/j.mjafi.2022.02.010]

53 **Kulkarni AV**, Kumar P, Tevethia HV, Premkumar M, Arab JP, Candia R, Talukdar R, Sharma M, Qi X, Rao PN, Reddy DN. Systematic review with meta-analysis: liver manifestations and outcomes in COVID-19. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2020; **52**: 584-599 [PMID: 32638436 DOI: 10.1111/apt.15916]

54 **Chew M**, Tang Z, Radcliffe C, Caruana D, Doilicho N, Ciarleglio MM, Deng Y, Garcia-Tsao G. Significant Liver Injury During Hospitalization for COVID-19 Is Not Associated With Liver Insufficiency or Death. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2021; **19**: 2182-2191.e7 [PMID: 34004326 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2021.05.022]

55 **Lagana SM**, Kudose S, Iuga AC, Lee MJ, Fazlollahi L, Remotti HE, Del Portillo A, De Michele S, de Gonzalez AK, Saqi A, Khairallah P, Chong AM, Park H, Uhlemann AC, Lefkowitch JH, Verna EC. Hepatic pathology in patients dying of COVID-19: a series of 40 cases including clinical, histologic, and virologic data. *Mod Pathol* 2020; **33**: 2147-2155 [PMID:

32792598 DOI: 10.1038/s41379-020-00649-x]
56 **Saviano A**, Baumert TF. Unraveling the role of liver sinusoidal endothelial cells in COVID-19 Liver injury. *J Hepatol* 2021; **75**: 503-505 [PMID: 34274367 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2021.07.008]
57 **Lei P**, Zhang L, Han P, Zheng C, Tong Q, Shang H, Yang F, Hu Y, Li X, Song Y. Liver injury in patients with COVID-19: clinical profiles, CT findings, the correlation of the severity with liver injury. *Hepatol Int* 2020; **14**: 733-742 [PMID: 32886333 DOI: 10.1007/s12072-020-10087-1]
58 **Del Nonno F**, Nardacci R, Colombo D, Visco-Comandini U, Cicalini S, Antinori A, Marchioni L, D'Offizi G, Piacentini M, Falasca L. Hepatic Failure in COVID-19: Is Iron Overload the Dangerous Trigger? *Cells* 2021; **10** [PMID: 34064487 DOI: 10.3390/cells10051103]
59 **Sonzogni A**, Previtali G, Seghezzi M, Grazia Alessio M, Gianatti A, Licini L, Morotti D, Zerbi P, Carsana L, Rossi R, Lauri E, Pellegrinelli A, Nebuloni M. Liver histopathology in severe COVID 19 respiratory failure is suggestive of vascular alterations. *Liver Int* 2020; **40**: 2110-2116 [PMID: 32654359 DOI: 10.1111/Liv.14601]
60 **de Jesus RP**, de Carvalho JF, de Oliveira LPM, Cunha CM, Alves TCHS, Vieira STB, Figueiredo VM, Bueno AA. Metabolic and nutritional triggers associated with increased risk of liver complications in SARS-CoV-2. *World J Hepatol* 2022; **14**: 80-97 [PMID: 35126841 DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v14.i1.80]
61 **Guo W**, Li M, Dong Y, Zhou H, Zhang Z, Tian C, Qin R, Wang H, Shen Y, Du K, Zhao L, Fan H, Luo S, Hu D. Diabetes is a risk factor for the progression and prognosis of COVID-19. *Diabetes Metab Res Rev* 2020; e3319 [PMID: 32233013 DOI: 10.1002/dmrr.3319]
62 **Merad M**, Blish CA, Sallusto F, Iwasaki A. The immunology and immunopathology of COVID-19. *Science* 2022; **375**: 1122-1127 [PMID: 35271343 DOI: 10.1126/science.abm8108]
63 **Zhou F**, Yu T, Du R, Fan G, Liu Y, Liu Z, Xiang J, Wang Y, Song B, Gu X, Guan L, Wei Y, Li H, Wu X, Xu J, Tu S, Zhang Y, Chen H, Cao B. Clinical course and risk factors for mortality of adult inpatients with COVID-19 in Wuhan, China: a retrospective cohort study. *Lancet* 2020; **395**: 1054-1062 [PMID: 32171076 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(20)30566-3]
64 **Lu X**, Zhang L, Du H, Zhang J, Li YY, Qu J, Zhang W, Wang Y, Bao S, Li Y, Wu C, Liu H, Liu D, Shao J, Peng X, Yang Y, Liu Z, Xiang Y, Zhang F, Silva RM, Pinkerton KE, Shen K, Xiao H, Xu S, Wong GWK; Chinese Pediatric Novel Coronavirus Study Team. SARS-CoV-2 Infection in Children. *N Engl J Med* 2020; **382**: 1663-1665 [PMID: 32187458 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMc2005073]
65 **Perez A**, Cantor A, Rudolph B, Miller J, Kogan-Liberman D, Gao Q, Da Silva B, Margolis KG, Ovchinsky N, Martinez M. Liver involvement in children with SARS-COV-2 infection: Two distinct clinical phenotypes caused by the same virus. *Liver Int* 2021; **41**: 2068-2075 [PMID: 33826804 DOI: 10.1111/Liv.14887]
66 **Li Y**, Xu Q, Ma L, Wu D, Gao J, Chen G, Li H. Systematic profiling of ACE2 expression in diverse physiological and pathological conditions for COVID-19/SARS-CoV-2. *J Cell Mol Med* 2020; **24**: 9478-9482 [PMID: 32639084 DOI: 10.1111/jcmm.15607]
67 **Bahardoust M**, Heiat M, Khodabandeh M, Karbasi A, Bagheri-Hosseinabadi Z, Ataee MH, Seidalian N, Babazadeh A, Agah S, Abyazi MA. Predictors for the severe coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19) infection in patients with underlying liver disease: a retrospective analytical study in Iran. *Sci Rep* 2021; **11**: 3066 [PMID: 33542426 DOI: 10.1038/s41598-021-82721-3]
68 **Zhang H**, Liao YS, Gong J, Liu J, Zhang H. Clinical characteristics and risk factors for liver injury in COVID-19 patients in Wuhan. *World J Gastroenterol* 2020; **26**: 4694-4702 [PMID: 32884226 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v26.i31.4694]
69 **Yang J**, Ma Z, Lei Y. A meta-analysis of the association between obesity and COVID-19. *Epidemiol Infect* 2020; **149**: e11 [PMID: 33349290 DOI: 10.1017/S0950268820003027]
70 **Wang Q**, Zhao H, Liu LG, Wang YB, Zhang T, Li MH, Xu YL, Gao GJ, Xiong HF, Fan Y, Cao Y, Ding R, Wang JJ, Cheng C, Xie W. Pattern of liver injury in adult patients with COVID-19: a retrospective analysis of 105 patients. *Mil Med Res* 2020; **7**: 28 [PMID: 32507110 DOI: 10.1186/s40779-020-00256-6]
71 **Krishnan A**, Prichett L, Tao X, Alqahtani SA, Hamilton JP, Mezey E, Strauss AT, Kim A, Potter JJ, Chen PH, Woreta TA. Abnormal liver chemistries as a predictor of COVID-19 severity and clinical outcomes in hospitalized patients. *World J Gastroenterol* 2022; **28**: 570-587 [PMID: 35316959 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i5.570]
72 **Fraser J**, Mousley J, Testro A, Smibert OC, Koshy AN. Clinical Presentation, Treatment, and Mortality Rate in Liver Transplant Recipients With Coronavirus Disease 2019: A Systematic Review and Quantitative Analysis. *Transplant Proc* 2020; **52**: 2676-2683 [PMID: 32891405 DOI: 10.1016/j.transproceed.2020.07.012]
73 **Zhang C**, Shi L, Wang FS. Liver injury in COVID-19: management and challenges. *Lancet Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2020; **5**: 428-430 [PMID: 32145190 DOI: 10.1016/S2468-1253(20)30057-1]
74 **Lin J**, Bao B, Khurram NA, Halsey K, Choi JW, Wang L, Tran TML, Liao WH, Feldman MD, Zhang PJ, Wu J, Bai HX. Chronic liver disease not a significant comorbid condition for COVID-19. *Sci Rep* 2021; **11**: 11734 [PMID: 34083670 DOI: 10.1038/s41598-021-91238-8]
75 **Su F**. COVID-19 and Cirrhosis: A Combination We Must Strive to Prevent. *Gastroenterology* 2021; **161**: 1371-1373 [PMID: 34453892 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2021.08.037]
76 **Iavarone M**, D'Ambrosio R, Soria A, Triolo M, Pugliese N, Del Poggio P, Perricone G, Massironi S, Spinetti A, Buscarini E, Viganò M, Carriero C, Fagiuoli S, Aghemo A, Belli LS, Lucà M, Pedaci M, Rimondi A, Rumi MG, Invernizzi P, Bonfanti P, Lampertico P. High rates of 30-day mortality in patients with cirrhosis and COVID-19. *J Hepatol* 2020; **73**: 1063-1071 [PMID: 32526252 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2020.06.001]
77 **Marjot T**, Moon AM, Cook JA, Abd-Elsalam S, Aloman C, Armstrong MJ, Pose E, Brenner EJ, Cargill T, Catana MA, Dhanasekaran R, Eshraghian A, García-Juárez I, Gill US, Jones PD, Kennedy J, Marshall A, Matthews C, Mells G, Mercer C, Perumalswami PV, Avitabile E, Qi X, Su F, Ufere NN, Wong YJ, Zheng MH, Barnes E, Barritt AS 4th, Webb GJ. Outcomes following SARS-CoV-2 infection in patients with chronic liver disease: An international registry study. *J Hepatol* 2021; **74**: 567-577 [PMID: 33035628 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2020.09.024]
78 **Zou X**, Fang M, Li S, Wu L, Gao B, Gao H, Ran X, Bian Y, Li R, ShanshanYu, Ling J, Li D, Tian D, Huang J. Characteristics of Liver Function in Patients With SARS-CoV-2 and Chronic HBV Coinfection. *Clin Gastroenterol*

Hepatol 2021; **19**: 597-603 [PMID: 32553907 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2020.06.017]

79 **Wang J**, Lu Z, Jin M, Wang Y, Tian K, Xiao J, Cai Y, Zhang X, Chen T, Yao Z, Yang C, Deng R, Zhong Q, Deng X, Chen X, Yang XP, Wei G, Wang Z, Tian J, Chen XP. Clinical characteristics and risk factors of COVID-19 patients with chronic hepatitis B: a multi-center retrospective cohort study. *Front Med* 2022; **16**: 111-125 [PMID: 34387851 DOI: 10.1007/s11684-021-0854-5]

80 **Lin Y**, Yuan J, Long Q, Hu J, Deng H, Zhao Z, Chen J, Lu M, Huang A. Patients with SARS-CoV-2 and HBV co-infection are at risk of greater liver injury. *Genes Dis* 2021; **8**: 484-492 [PMID: 33225036 DOI: 10.1016/j.gendis.2020.11.005]

81 **Singh A**, Premkumar M, Singh V. Liver injury in COVID-19 - The culprit may not be COVID-19! *J Hepatol* 2021; **75**: 739-740 [PMID: 33753154 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2021.03.010]

82 **Chen L**, Huang S, Yang J, Cheng X, Shang Z, Lu H, Cheng J. Clinical characteristics in patients with SARS-CoV-2/HBV co-infection. *J Viral Hepat* 2020; **27**: 1504-1507 [PMID: 32668494 DOI: 10.1111/jvh.13362]

83 **Xiang TD**, Zheng X. Interaction between hepatitis B virus and SARS-CoV-2 infections. *World J Gastroenterol* 2021; **27**: 782-793 [PMID: 33727770 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v27.i9.782]

84 **Dongiovanni P**, Meroni M, Longo M, Fracanzani AL. MAFLD in COVID-19 patients: an insidious enemy. *Expert Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2020; **14**: 867-872 [PMID: 32705906 DOI: 10.1080/17474124.2020.1801417]

85 **Singh MK**, Mobeen A, Chandra A, Joshi S, Ramachandran S. A meta-analysis of comorbidities in COVID-19: Which diseases increase the susceptibility of SARS-CoV-2 infection? *Comput Biol Med* 2021; **130**: 104219 [PMID: 33486379 DOI: 10.1016/j.compbiomed.2021.104219]

86 **Xu L**, Liu J, Lu M, Yang D, Zheng X. Author response to Letter to the Editor: Potential implications of COVID-19 in non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. *Liver Int* 2020; **40**: 2569-2570 [PMID: 32558065 DOI: 10.1111/Liv.14564]

87 **Váncsa S**, Hegyi PJ, Zádori N, Szakó L, Vörhendi N, Ocskay K, Földi M, Dembrovszky F, Dömötör ZR, Jánosi K, Rakonczay Z Jr, Hartmann P, Horváth T, Erőss B, Kiss S, Szakács Z, Németh D, Hegyi P, Pár G. Pre-existing Liver Diseases and On-Admission Liver-Related Laboratory Tests in COVID-19: A Prognostic Accuracy Meta-Analysis With Systematic Review. *Front Med (Lausanne)* 2020; **7**: 572115 [PMID: 33282888 DOI: 10.3389/fmed.2020.572115]

88 **Zhou YJ**, Zheng KI, Wang XB, Yan HD, Sun QF, Pan KH, Wang TY, Ma HL, Chen YP, George J, Zheng MH. Younger patients with MAFLD are at increased risk of severe COVID-19 illness: A multicenter preliminary analysis. *J Hepatol* 2020; **73**: 719-721 [PMID: 32348790 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2020.04.027]

89 **Tripon S**, Bilbault P, Fabacher T, Lefebvre N, Lescuyer S, Andres E, Schmitt E, Garnier-KepKA S, Borgne PL, Muller J, Merdji H, Chaffraix F, Mutter D, Baumert TF, Meziani F, Doffoel M. Abnormal liver tests and non-alcoholic fatty liver disease predict disease progression and outcome of patients with COVID-19. *Clin Res Hepatol Gastroenterol* 2022; **46**: 101894 [PMID: 35227956 DOI: 10.1016/j.clinre.2022.101894]

90 **Hashemi N**, Viveiros K, Redd WD, Zhou JC, McCarty TR, Bazarbashi AN, Hathorn KE, Wong D, Njie C, Shen L, Chan WW. Impact of chronic liver disease on outcomes of hospitalized patients with COVID-19: A multicentre United States experience. *Liver Int* 2020; **40**: 2515-2521 [PMID: 32585065 DOI: 10.1111/Liv.14583]

91 **Gao F**, Zheng KI, Wang XB, Yan HD, Sun QF, Pan KH, Wang TY, Chen YP, George J, Zheng MH. Metabolic associated fatty liver disease increases coronavirus disease 2019 disease severity in nondiabetic patients. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2021; **36**: 204-207 [PMID: 32436622 DOI: 10.1111/jgh.15112]

92 **Cholankeril G**, Goli K, Rana A, Hernaez R, Podboy A, Jalal P, Da BL, Satapathy SK, Kim D, Ahmed A, Goss J, Kanwal F. Impact of COVID-19 Pandemic on Liver Transplantation and Alcohol-Associated Liver Disease in the USA. *Hepatology* 2021; **74**: 3316-3329 [PMID: 34310738 DOI: 10.1002/hep.32067]

93 **Deutsch-Link S**, Jiang Y, Peery AF, Barritt AS, Bataller R, Moon AM. Alcohol-Associated Liver Disease Mortality Increased From 2017 to 2020 and Accelerated During the COVID-19 Pandemic. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2022; **20**: 2142-2144.e2 [PMID: 35314353 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2022.03.017]

94 **Kim D**, Adeniji N, Latt N, Kumar S, Bloom PP, Aby ES, Perumalswami P, Roytman M, Li M, Vogel AS, Catana AM, Wegermann K, Carr RM, Aloman C, Chen VL, Rabiee A, Sadowski B, Nguyen V, Dunn W, Chavin KD, Zhou K, Lizaola-Mayo B, Moghe A, Debes J, Lee TH, Branch AD, Viveiros K, Chan W, Chascsa DM, Kwo P, Dhanasekaran R. Predictors of Outcomes of COVID-19 in Patients With Chronic Liver Disease: US Multi-center Study. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2021; **19**: 1469-1479.e19 [PMID: 32950749 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2020.09.027]

95 **Moon AM**, Curtis B, Mandrekar P, Singal AK, Verna EC, Fix OK. Alcohol-Associated Liver Disease Before and After COVID-19-An Overview and Call for Ongoing Investigation. *Hepatol Commun* 2021; **5**: 1616-1621 [PMID: 34510833 DOI: 10.1002/hep4.1747]

96 **Qin J**, Wang H, Qin X, Zhang P, Zhu L, Cai J, Yuan Y, Li H. Perioperative Presentation of COVID-19 Disease in a Liver Transplant Recipient. *Hepatology* 2020; **72**: 1491-1493 [PMID: 32220017 DOI: 10.1002/hep.31257]

97 **Colmenero J**, Rodríguez-Perálvarez M, Salcedo M, Arias-Milla A, Muñoz-Serrano A, Graus J, Nuño J, Gastaca M, Bustamante-Schneider J, Cachero A, Lladó L, Caballero A, Fernández-Yunquera A, Loinaz C, Fernández I, Fondevila C, Navasa M, Iñarrairaegui M, Castells L, Pascual S, Ramírez P, Vinaixa C, González-Dieguez ML, González-Grande R, Hierro L, Nogueras F, Otero A, Álamo JM, Blanco-Fernández G, Fábrega E, García-Pajares F, Montero JL, Tomé S, De la Rosa G, Pons JA. Epidemiological pattern, incidence, and outcomes of COVID-19 in liver transplant patients. *J Hepatol* 2021; **74**: 148-155 [PMID: 32750442 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2020.07.040]

98 **Hundt MA**, Deng Y, Ciarleglio MM, Nathanson MH, Lim JK. Abnormal Liver Tests in COVID-19: A Retrospective Observational Cohort Study of 1,827 Patients in a Major U.S. Hospital Network. *Hepatology* 2020; **72**: 1169-1176 [PMID: 32725890 DOI: 10.1002/hep.31487]

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Gastroenterol 2022 December 21; 28(47): 6732-6742

DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6732

ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Obstructive and secretory complications of diverting ileostomy

Shingo Tsujinaka, Hideyuki Suzuki, Tomoya Miura, Yoshihiro Sato, Chikashi Shibata

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Provenance and peer review: Invited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): B
Grade C (Good): C
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: Pandit R, United States; Zharikov YO, Russia

Received: September 20, 2022
Peer-review started: September 20, 2022
First decision: October 21, 2022
Revised: November 4, 2022
Accepted: November 25, 2022
Article in press: November 25, 2022
Published online: December 21, 2022

Shingo Tsujinaka, Hideyuki Suzuki, Tomoya Miura, Yoshihiro Sato, Chikashi Shibata, Department of Gastroenterological Surgery, Tohoku Medical and Pharmaceutical University, Sendai 983-8536, Miyagi, Japan

Corresponding author: Shingo Tsujinaka, MD, Associate Professor, Department of Gastroenterological Surgery, Tohoku Medical and Pharmaceutical University, 1-15-1 Fukumuro, Miyagino-ku, Sendai 983-8536, Miyagi, Japan. tsujinakas@tohoku-mpu.ac.jp

Abstract

This review aimed to highlight the etiology, diagnosis, treatment, and prevention of obstructive and secretory complications associated with diverting ileostomy (DI). Obstructive complications at the stoma site are termed stoma outlet obstruction (SOO) or stoma-related obstruction (SRO). The incidence of SOO/SRO is 5.4%-27.3%, and the risk factors are multifactorial; however, the configuration of the stoma limb and the thickness of the rectus abdominis muscle (RAM) may be of particular concern. Trans-stomal tube decompression is initially attempted with a success rate of 33%-86%. A thick RAM may carry the risk of recurrence. Surgical refinement, including a wider incision of the anterior sheath and adequate stoma limb length, avoids tension and immobility and may decrease SOO/SRO. Secretory complications of DI are termed high output stoma (HOS). Persistent HOS lead to water and sodium depletion, and secondary hyperaldosteronism, resulting in electrolyte imbalances, such as hypomagnesemia. The incidence of HOS is 14%-24%, with an output of 1000-2000 mL/d lasting up to three days. Treatment of HOS is commenced after excluding postoperative complications or enteritis and includes fluid intake restriction, antimotility and antisecretory drug therapies, and magnesium supplementation. Intensive monitoring and surveillance programs have been successful in decreasing readmissions for dehydration.

Key Words: Small bowel obstruction; Stoma outlet obstruction; Stoma-related obstruction; High output stoma; High output syndrome; Dehydration

©The Author(s) 2022. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core Tip: This review highlights the etiology, diagnosis, treatment, and prevention of obstructive and secretory complications associated with diverting ileostomy (DI). Obstructive complications at the stoma site (stoma outlet obstruction/stoma-related obstruction, SOO/SRO) affect 5.4%-27.3% of patients with DI. Trans-stomal tube decompression is effective in most cases. Surgical refinement is important for reducing SOO/SRO. Secretory complications (high output stoma, HOS) lead to water and sodium depletion and secondary hyperaldosteronism with electrolyte imbalances. The incidence of HOS is 14%-24%, with an output of 1000-2000 mL/d. HOS treatment includes fluid intake restriction, antimotility and antisecretory drug therapies, and magnesium supplementation. Intensive monitoring and surveillance programs may decrease the readmission rates for dehydration.

Citation: Tsujinaka S, Suzuki H, Miura T, Sato Y, Shibata C. Obstructive and secretory complications of diverting ileostomy. *World J Gastroenterol* 2022; 28(47): 6732-6742
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v28/i47/6732.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6732

INTRODUCTION

Diverting ileostomy (DI) is often performed in patients undergoing low anterior resection for rectal cancer or restorative proctocolectomy with ileal-pouch anal anastomosis (IPAA) for ulcerative colitis. The purpose of DI creation is to protect the anastomosis from leakage and mitigate the severity of symptoms relative to anastomotic complications. However, the efficacy of DI is solely limited to a significant decrease in anastomotic leakage, and no other advantages may be found in the short term[1,2]. Moreover, stoma formation significantly increases the risk of small-bowel obstruction, postoperative ileus, dehydration, and electrolyte imbalance[2-4]. Some of these complications are specific to DI and can be classified into "obstructive" and "secretory" complications. The risk factors for developing these complications have been widely discussed, but the fundamental mechanisms and management of these complications are not fully understood. This review aimed to highlight the etiology, diagnosis, treatment, and prevention of obstructive and secretory complications associated with DI.

METHODOLOGY

An electronic English literature search was performed on PubMed/MEDLINE database from the inception to September 15, 2022. The search items included "diverting ileostomy" or "covering ileostomy", "small bowel obstruction", "stoma outlet obstruction" (SOO) or "outlet obstruction", "stoma-related obstruction" (SRO), "high output stoma" (HOS) or "high output syndrome", and "dehydration". Inclusion criteria for the article type were systematic review and meta-analyses, randomized controlled studies, retrospective observational studies, and narrative reviews for nursing aspects. Case reports were not included.

OBSTRUCTIVE COMPLICATIONS

Etiology

Small bowel obstruction (SBO) is one of the most common complications associated with colorectal surgery. The increased incidence of SBO when DI is created at the time of the initial surgery is of particular concern[4-8]. Since DI is brought up extracorporeally through the abdominal wall by splitting the rectus abdominis muscle (RAM), scar formation or tissue inflammation at the anterior rectus sheath (where the incision is made) may lead to stenosis of the stoma opening (outlet). Furthermore, the stoma outlet is physiologically vulnerable to the risk of obstruction, and its underlying mechanisms can be explained by the following speculations. First, the stoma is edematous, and the bowel lumen tends to be narrower in the early postoperative period. Second, the intraluminal pressure of the small bowel is lower than that of the colon, suggesting relative stenosis at the RAM level[9]. Third, if a high volume of bowel content flows into the lumen, the stoma outlet may have a change in caliber, leading to relative narrowing[10].

Obstructive complications at the stoma site have been termed SOO and SRO in the literature. Okita *et al*[11] proposed a definition of SBO at the stoma site that has the following criteria: (1) Radiographically confirmed dilatation of the oral stoma limb; (2) Increase in stomal output and relief of symptoms after trans-stomal tube decompression; and (3) Exclusion of SBO other than that at the stoma site. Some of the subsequent reports have followed these criteria for diagnosis[10,12-14], while others have used more

simplified criteria, such as SBO at the stoma site with radiographic confirmation excluding paralytic ileus[15-17].

Risk factors

SOO/SRO occurs in 5.4%-27.3% of patients with DI[10-18]. Risk factors are classified into the following categories: patient characteristics[10,11,13,16,19] (young age, low body mass index, thick subcutaneous fat, thick RAM, and long distance between the superior mesenteric artery root and the bottom of the external anal sphincter), disease[15] (ulcerative colitis), surgical factors[12,14,20-22] (laparoscopic surgery, rotation of stoma limb, IPAA, two-stage surgery for ulcerative colitis, and short distance from the anastomosis to the stoma site), and stoma functions[10,17] (high output from stoma). The risk factors are summarized in Table 1.

Young age (less than 16 years old) and low body mass index (less than 21 kg/m^2) in patients with ulcerative colitis were reported as risk factors by Okita *et al*[11]. The mechanisms and interpretation of the results were not clearly shown, although they assumed that the small abdominal cavity or small amount of mesenteric fat in these individuals allowed volvulus or kinking. A contradictory result was reported by Tamura *et al*[16], who found that increased subcutaneous fat [vertical distance of 20 mm or more at the stoma site marking on computed tomography (CT)] in obese patients was a significant predictor of SOO/SRO. However, the different pathologies in the study population (inflammatory disease *vs* colorectal cancer) make this comparison difficult. The authors assumed that the tension and twisting in the loop stoma might have been caused by the minimum size of stoma apertures at the skin and tight with a narrow subcutaneous cavity in obese patients, and thus surgeons should be aware of it. Mori *et al*[19] reported that SOO/SRO was more common in patients with a long distance between the superior mesenteric artery root and the bottom of the external anal sphincter (height-adjusted, 191 mm/m on CT), suggesting that the mesentery may be under tension. The authors encouraged surgeons to reduce tension in the mesentery using all applicable surgical techniques. Thick RAM at the stoma passage (vertical length of 10 mm or more on CT) has been shown to increase the risk of SOO/SRO[10,13], and it is speculated that the intraluminal pressure of the stoma may be overwhelmed by the increased pressure of the thick RAM[10]. The authors assumed that surgeons need to create a wider split of the RAM for these patients.

As a disease-related factor, ulcerative colitis has been reported as an independent risk factor for SOO/SRO, but the specific reason remains unclear[15]. It is speculated that the risk may not be due to the disease itself; rather, it refers to the surgical procedure of total proctocolectomy with IPAA with DI (also known as the first of the two-stage surgery)[12,20]. If the length of the diverted bowel (between the stoma and pouch) is too short, strong tension in the mesentery may occur, and it is difficult to revert if bowel twisting or mesenteric torsion occurs. If the length is too long, bowel twisting, kinking, or angulation may occur; however, a spontaneous resolution is expected in such cases[12,18]. Several studies have shown an increased risk of SOO/SRO in laparoscopic surgery[18,22]. Laparoscopic surgery essentially reduces adhesion formation and may induce torsion of the mesentery or bowel as a result of increased bowel mobility. Regarding rotation, the risk of SOO/SRO remains controversial. Forced stoma rotation by 180-degree with IPAA significantly increases the incidence of SBO; bowel kinking at or below the fascia is presumably responsible for the obstruction[21]. In contrast, recent reports have shown that stoma rotation did not increase the incidence of SOO/SRO[11,12,15,18,20]. The reason for the SOO/SRO associated with high output from the stoma has already been described in the *Etiology* section.

Diagnosis

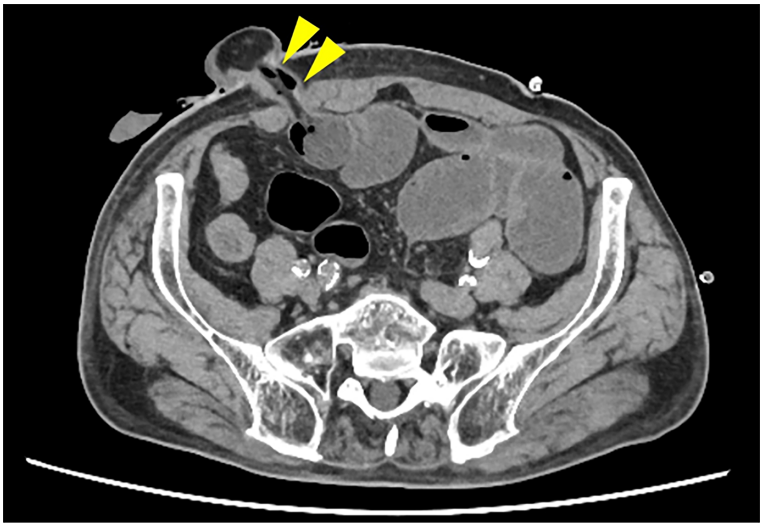
To examine whether the outlet is stenotic or obstructive, clinicians can simply insert their fingers into the stoma[23]. An abdominal CT scan or contrast enema study through the stoma may be useful for precise diagnosis, as they can demonstrate the location responsible for SOO/SRO and exclude other sites of SBO (Figures 1 and 2). Other pathologies causing similar symptoms, such as paralytic ileus, enteritis, volvulus, internal hernia, and parastomal hernia, should also be excluded.

Treatment

In cases of SBO, fasting, bowel rest, and intravenous fluid administration are fundamental recommendations. When nausea, vomiting, or abdominal bloating/distention is present, a nasogastric tube may be placed. Although uncommon in Western societies, long nasointestinal tubes may be indicated to achieve quicker and more effective intraluminal decompression[11,24,25]. Trans-stomal tube decompression is attempted as an initial treatment for SOO/SRO. The success rate of local management using trans-stomal tubes ranges from 33%-86%[11,12,15,17]. Redo treatment may be indicated in cases of recurrent obstructions. It has been shown that thick RAM carries the risk of recurrent obstruction[17]. Importantly, adverse events related to trans-stomal tube decompression have also been reported. Bowel injury occurred in 3.7% of the intubated patients requiring emergency surgery. Stoma closure is the ultimate solution for SOO/SRO in patients for whom non-surgical, conservative management, or repeated tube decompressions were not successful.

Table 1 Risk factors of obstructive complication of diverting ileostomy

Risk factors
Patient characteristics
Young age (less than 16 yr old)[11]
Low body mass index (less than 21 kg/m^2)[11]
Thick subcutaneous fat at the stoma marking site (20 mm or more) [16]
Thick rectus abdominis muscle at the stoma passage (10 mm or more)[10,13]
Long distance between the superior mesenteric artery root and the bottom of the external anal sphincter (height-adjusted, 191 mm/m)[19]
Disease
Ulcerative colitis (compared with colorectal cancer)[15]
Surgical factors
Laparoscopic surgery (compared with open surgery)[18,22]
Rotation of stoma limb (180-degree rotation, the oral limb situated on the caudal side)[21]
Ileal-pouch anal anastomosis (compared with low anterior resection or intersphincteric resection)[12]
Two-stage surgery for ulcerative colitis[20]
Short distance from the ileal pouch to the stoma site (< 30 cm)[12,18]
Stoma functions
High output from stoma (2000 mL or more per day)[10,17]

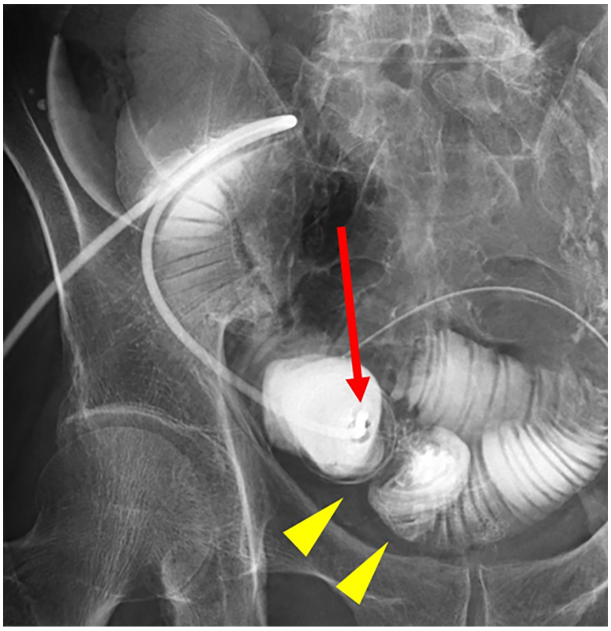


DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6732 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2022.

Figure 1 Computed tomography shows stenosis at the ileostomy site (arrowheads).

Prevention

Some of the risk factors for SOO/SRO, such as patient, disease, anatomical, and stoma function, may not be preventable, and surgical refinement must be fully considered. When creating DI, the anterior sheath is adequately incised, and the RAM is split and dilated to accommodate the stoma limbs. In the case of thick RAM, creating the tunnel by the conventional "two finger breadths rule" may not be sufficient; thus, wider dissection is necessary[13]. Moreover, care must be taken in laparoscopic surgery because the stoma is constructed under the effect of pneumoperitoneum with muscle relaxation[14]. In the case of IPAA, the distance between the ileal pouch and anastomosis must be longer than 30 cm to mitigate the risk of tension in the mesentery[12,18]. Rotation of the stoma limb is carefully performed if necessary. Although they did not advocate stoma rotation, Takehara *et al*[14] proposed that the oral stoma limb should be placed on the cranial side to avoid gravitational compression by the anal stoma limb. Some authors have recommended intra-abdominal suture fixation between the stoma limb and abdominal wall[26,27]; however, it might also carry the risk of immobility, tension, and fecal impaction



DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6732 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2022.

Figure 2 Contrast enema study shows a decompression tube inserted at the stenotic stomal opening (arrow) and dilated small bowel proximal to the stoma site (arrowheads).

in the stoma.

SECRETORY COMPLICATION (HIGH OUTPUT)

Etiology

In healthy adults, approximately 1500 mL of intestinal fluid enters the colon from the ileum[28]. Theoretically, the same amount of fluid is drained from the newly established ileostomy; however, the normal output of ileostomy has been proposed as 600-1200 mL per day and may decrease over time[29-31]. This reduction in the quantity is called "ileostomy adaptation," which suggests a compensatory increase in anti-diuretic hormones such as renin and aldosterone[28]. The consistency of the ileostomy output is generally watery when created and thickens in the next 2-3 mo[29]. Stool consistency, amount, and ileostomy output may be altered by the patient's body weight, disease for the index surgery, liquid and food intake, and volume of gastrointestinal secretions[29,32].

Secretory complications of DI occur when the output exceeds the aforementioned normal limit. It is commonly termed "HOS" in the literature. This term may be considered similar to "dehydration'. Dehydration has been shown to be a cause of readmission in 9.3%-43% of the patients after ileostomy creation without preventive protocols[33-35]. The most recent meta-analysis showed that the pooled incidence of readmission due to dehydration was 6% regardless of HOS prevention and was accompanied by increased medical costs[36]. Moreover, HOS results in electrolyte imbalance and acute kidney injury in the early postoperative period and may lead to malnutrition and chronic renal impairment in the long term[30,37]. The prevalence of *Clostridium difficile* infection in the development of postoperative diarrhea/HOS was investigated, but it was found that the infection rate was low (1.6%) and that the patient outcomes were not affected by the infection[38]. Contradictory results have also been reported[39].

The ileostomy output includes large amounts of sodium (85-180 mmol/L per day)[40]. Persistent HOS can lead to sodium depletion, dehydration, and secondary hyperaldosteronism, which may cause sequential hypokalemia and hypomagnesemia, which are the main features of electrolyte imbalances. As the ileum and colon are the main sites of magnesium absorption, ileostomy patients may be susceptible to hypomagnesemia. Other reasons for hypomagnesemia include free fatty acid malabsorption and the use of proton pump inhibitors[31]. Baker *et al*[29] reported that nearly half of the patients with HOS exhibit hypomagnesemia.

Definitions

The incidence of HOS varies from 14% to 24%[29,41-43] with various definitions. The majority of previous reports have defined using specific values of output volume with a timeframe, such as 2000 mL per day[38,44,45], 1500 mL per day for two days[41], 1000 mL per day for three days[42,46], and

2000 mL per day for three days[29,43]. Some authors have used a combination of output volume with laboratory findings of renal impairment and/or physical signs of dehydration[36,47].

HOS can occur in the early or late postoperative periods[29]. In a study, early HOS occurs within three weeks after stoma creation and resolves spontaneously in 49% of patients with HOS, while 7% receive persistent treatment. Late HOS occurs more than three weeks after stoma creation and resolves spontaneously in 15% of patients with HOS, while 47% receive persistent treatment. In that study, the diagnosis of cancer, followed by perforation and short bowel (less than 200 cm), correlated with the incidence of early HOS, whereas inflammatory bowel and obstruction were deemed to have an impact on late HOS[29]. Therefore, secretory complications of DI are an ongoing problem after stoma creation, and patients are always at risk, even after hospital discharge. This issue has become more relevant in the era of enhanced recovery after surgery.

Causes and risk factors

The causes of HOS are multifactorial, including factors associated with patients[42,48], disease[29,42,43], anatomy[29], surgical procedure[29,42,43,48], medication[29,33], nutrition[29], enteritis/metabolism[29,39] and those related to postoperative complications[29,44,49]. Older age was identified as an independent risk factor of HOS in two studies: however, the cut-off values were not shown because the comparisons were made without dichotomization in their studies[42,48]. The reasons were not specified in either of the studies. Assaf *et al*[48] also showed that higher American Society of Anesthesiologists-physical status and elevated creatine levels were independently associated with HOS. Again, the cut-off values were not shown for the same reason as the older age. The authors assumed that impaired kidney functions resulted in less adaptation to fluids and electrolyte loss in these groups of patients.

Takeda *et al*[43] found that diabetes was one of the risk factors for HOS, with the following explanations. Diabetes may cause autonomic nervous system impairment that decreases the motor function of the bowel, followed by abnormal proliferation of intestinal bacteria and an augmented intestinal pressure with increased gas proliferation. Inflammatory bowel diseases, particularly Crohn's disease, have been shown to be significantly associated with HOS[29,42,43]. Crohn's disease presents an impaired intestinal permeability/barrier increased with altered gut microbiota and inflammatory tissue damage[42]. These factors can lead to HOS. Shortening of the small bowel with a more proximal ileostomy can also lead to HOS, and this may explain the reason why some surgical procedures (right-side colectomy, separate ileostomy, small bowel resection, and IPAA) were independent risk factors of HOS. Takeda *et al*[43] proposed another reason for HOS in patients who underwent IPAA: Inhibition of lipids absorption leads to hydroxylation or desaturation of unabsorbed long-chain acids, which triggers intestinal fluid and electrolyte secretion. Open surgery was significantly associated with HOS compared to laparoscopic surgery[42,48]. The possible explanation is that open surgery itself may not be the direct cause but patients undergoing more complex surgery with open laparotomy[48]. A short bowel (less than 200 cm) frequently causes HOS[29], but this may not be applicable in DI formation, where a stoma is created at the distal ileum.

Perioperative medication is an important underlying pathology for the development of HOS. The use of diuretics may easily result in dehydration because the body fluid balance is vulnerable in patients with ileostomy, even without any medications[33]. Administration of prokinetic drugs (*e.g.*, metoclopramide) induces HOS; therefore, care must be taken when the patients suffer from nausea/vomiting with gastric stasis[31]. Sudden withdrawal of opiates and steroids induces reactive intestinal secretion[29-31]. Diarrhea with dehydration is commonly seen in patients who receive chemotherapy consisting of cytotoxic agents.

Regarding nutritional factors, intake of hypotonic fluids such as water, tea, coffee, fruit juice, and alcohol precipitates dehydration, and thus it is generally restricted or avoided[29-31]. Enteric infections, including *Clostridium difficile* or *Salmonella*, typically present with acute and severe diarrhea[29,50]. Chronic diarrhea may be caused by bacterial overgrowth from diverticula or blind loop fermentation[29,50].

Postoperative complications may induce secondary HOS, including prolonged ileus[44] (presented with nausea, vomiting, intolerance to oral feeding, abdominal distension, or failure to pass flatus or bowel movements within postoperative 7 d), SBO[29], SOO/SRO[49], or intra-abdominal sepsis/deep surgical site infection[29,49]. These postoperative complications must be excluded clinically and radiologically when suspicious of HOS. The details of the causes and risk factors of HOS are summarized in Table 2.

Diagnosis

The key clinical symptoms of HOS are due to the loss of water and sodium and include thirst, cramps, muscle weakness, and faintness[31,50]. Patients may also present with loss of appetite, rapid weight loss, fall in postural blood pressure, or a decrease in urinary output[31]. The stomal output volume is measured every 8 h to facilitate early recognition of HOS. The stoma color and stool consistency should be inspected. Because stenosis or obstruction at the stoma outlet is one of the causes of HOS, a digital examination of the stoma is suitable for diagnosis. Laboratory findings may include elevated serum urea/creatinine ratio, hyponatremia, hypokalemia, and hypomagnesemia. A decrease in urinary sodium (less than 10 mmol/L) reflects sodium depletion more accurately than serum sodium level[31,

Table 2 Causes and risk factors of high output stoma

Causes and risk factors of high output stoma
Patient
[1]Older age[42,48]
[1]Higher ASA-PS[48]
[1]Elevated baseline creatine[48]
Disease
[1]Diabetes[43]
Inflammatory bowel disease (*i.e.*, ulcerative disease, Crohn's disease)[29,42,43]
Anatomy
Short bowel (less than 200 cm)[29]
Surgical procedure
Open surgery (*vs* laparoscopic surgery)[42,48]
Total proctocolectomy (with ileal-pouch anal anastomosis)[42]
Right-side colectomy[42]
Separate ileostomy[42]
Small bowel resection[29,42,43]
Medication
Preoperative use of diuretics[31,33]
Prokinetic drugs (*i.e.*, metoclopramide)[29,31]
Sudden withdrawal of corticosteroids or opiates[29,31]
Postoperative adjuvant chemotherapy[29]
Nutrition
Hypotonic liquids (low sodium): water, tea, coffee, fruit juice, alcohol[29,30,31]
Enteritis/metabolism
Clostridium difficile infection[29,50]
Salmonella infection[29,50]
Bacterial overgrowth from diverticula or blind loop fermentation[29,50]
Relative to postoperative complications
Postoperative ileus (symptoms of nausea, vomiting, intolerance to oral feeding, abdominal distension, or failure to pass flatus or bowel movements within postoperative 7 d)[44]
Intra-abdominal sepsis (pelvic sepsis, organ/space infection)[29,49]
Small bowel obstruction[29]
Stoma outlet obstruction[49]

[1]No specific values or definitions were shown in the referenced articles. ASA-PS: American Society of Anesthesiologists-physical status.

50]. Long-lasting HOS may decrease the absorption of vitamin B12 and folic acid and increase the incidence of renal calculi and gallstones[40].

Treatment

Exclusion of possible causes: As shown in Table 2, HOS occurs secondary to the underlying intra-abdominal complications. CT is useful for identifying these factors, and treatment of the identified cause must be prioritized. The administration or cessation of certain drugs is responsible for HOS and is corrected accordingly after the diagnosis. Enteritis induced by *Clostridium difficile* or *Salmonella* is excluded by taking stool cultures from the output.

Restriction of fluid intake: Since patients with dehydration complain of thirst in the early phase of HOS, increasing fluid intake may be inappropriately advised to relieve symptoms[30]. Consumption of excessive hypotonic fluids (less than 90 mmol/L of sodium) leads to worsening symptoms with sodium depletion caused by a net efflux from the plasma into the bowel lumen[29,50]. Hypertonic fluids containing glucose may also lead to increased stomal output[50]. Previous reports have suggested that hyper- and hypotonic fluid intake must be restricted to 0.5-1.0 mL per day[29,31,50]. Oral intake may not be possible when presenting with nausea/vomiting, and intravenous fluid rehydration containing 100-150 mmol/L of sodium (*e.g.*, normal saline) is necessary to avoid acute kidney injury[31]. If oral intake is possible, it is recommended to sip 1 L or more of a glucose-saline solution containing at least 90 mmol/L sodium in a small quantity at intervals[31,50].

Drug therapies: Antimotility drugs include loperamide and codeine phosphate. Both drugs act against intestinal motility, and it has been shown that the ileotomy output reduces by 20%-30%[31]. Loperamide is preferred over codeine phosphate because it is not addictive. Loperamide can be prescribed at 4 mg/d to 16 mg/d, while codeine phosphate can be prescribed at 15 mg/d to 60 mg/d, and the effect becomes greater if both are taken together[31,41,50].

Antisecretory drugs include H_2 antagonists and proton pump inhibitors that reduce gastric acid secretion. The somatostatin analog, octreotide, reduces gastric and pancreaticobiliary secretions and delays gastric emptying and small-bowel transit. Antisecretory drugs may be used when the stomal output exceeds 2 L/d, but octreotide is not preferred because the proton pump is as effective as octreotide in reducing the stomal output[29,31,41].

Hypomagnesemia in patients with HOS is caused by the chelation of magnesium with unabsorbed fatty acids and increased magnesium secretion due to secondary hyperaldosteronism[50] and reduced absorption of fatty acids. Magnesium is preferably supplemented orally; however, it can be slowly administered intravenously to avoid a flushing sensation.

Stoma closure: HOS may persist in 5.0%-15% of the affected patients until the stoma is reversed[29,35]. Stoma closure is planned for patients who do not respond to non-surgical conservative treatment. In a study, patients with readmission due to dehydration underwent stoma closure earlier than those without readmission[33]. Ihnát *et al*[5] reported that 3.8% of patients with DI underwent acute surgery for HOS.

Prevention

Intensive monitoring and surveillance programs have been proposed recently. Most protocols consist of preoperative patient education, in-hospital monitoring and intervention protocols, post-discharge hospital visits, and surveillance using telephone or telemedicine platforms[51-54]. For example, Shaffer *et al*[54] proposed a pilot program for outpatient follow-ups using regular visits and telephone interviews. The triggers of intervention included tachycardia with > 100 beats/min, ileostomy output > 1200 mL/d, major changes in weight, fever, nausea, poor oral intake, dry mouth, and low urinary output. The response by the team included an assessment of the basic metabolic profile, intravenous hydration at home, and phone calls to the doctor's office. This program successfully reduced the incidence of readmission from 21% to 8.7% and the cost of readmission by more than 80%.

These intense programs have been mostly successful in decreasing readmissions for dehydration (15%-21% before intervention *vs* 5.0%-8.8% after intervention)[52-54]; however, a conflicting result has also been reported, where the program failed to decrease readmissions for dehydration (8.2% *vs* 5.9%) despite obtaining better phone follow-up and an increase in outpatient intravenous fluid in the intervention group[51].

LIMITATIONS

There are several limitations in this review. First, this is a narrative review without a systematic approach where a literature search was performed according to the authors' experiences using their preferred keywords of choice. Furthermore, inclusion for the selection was purely based on the authors' judgment considering their relevance to the topics. Second, the selected articles were mostly non-randomized, retrospective studies resulting in selection bias. Since the causes and risk factors of obstructive and secretory stoma complications are often multifactorial, it may be difficult to design prospective trials to investigate the efficacy of specific surgical or medical interventions. Instead, recent prospective studies have shown that postoperative monitoring and surveillance programs may facilitate early recognition and decrease the adverse events relative to the complications[51-54]. Third, the conclusions of the selected articles were based on their population-based analyses. The research findings may not be instantly applicable or comparable to the current practice of readers due to the differences in the definitions (diagnostic criteria), patient characteristics, disease, surgical settings, social background, and healthcare systems. The research findings must be carefully interpreted, considering these variables in the communities of interest.

CONCLUSION

Obstructive and secretory complications of DI occur both in the early and late postoperative periods and require intensive monitoring and intervention. Non-surgical conservative treatment is mostly effective; however, stoma closure may be considered in recurrent or refractory cases. To facilitate the diagnosis and treatment for patient safety, seamless communication and close collaboration in a multidisciplinary team are necessary.

Interestingly, obstructive and secretory complications may also occur simultaneously. However, the causative factors of these complex pathologies are various and inconsistent: the potential reason is that most evidence has been obtained by retrospective, observational studies with a small sample size. Further prospective randomized trials are needed to assess the efficacy of interventions or protocols to improve the outcomes of obstructive and secretory complications of ileostomy.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Tsujinaka S wrote the manuscript; Suzuki H, Miura T and Sato Y reviewed the manuscript and agreed with submission; Shibata C critically reviewed the manuscript and agreed with submission.

Conflict-of-interest statement: All the authors report no relevant conflicts of interest for this article.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article that was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution NonCommercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: https://creativecommons.org/Licenses/by-nc/4.0/

Country/Territory of origin: Japan

ORCID number: Shingo Tsujinaka 0000-0002-8554-3869; Hideyuki Suzuki 0000-0003-0696-2799; Tomoya Miura 0000-0001-9092-460X; Yoshihiro Sato 0000-0003-3722-6815; Chikashi Shibata 0000-0001-8191-4784.

Corresponding Author's Membership in Professional Societies: The Japanese Society of Gastroenterology, 035652.

S-Editor: Gao CC
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Chen YX

REFERENCES

1 **Mu Y**, Zhao L, He H, Zhao H, Li J. The efficacy of ileostomy after laparoscopic rectal cancer surgery: a meta-analysis. *World J Surg Oncol* 2021; **19**: 318 [PMID: 34732226 DOI: 10.1186/s12957-021-02432-x]
2 **Ahmad NZ**, Abbas MH, Khan SU, Parvaiz A. A meta-analysis of the role of diverting ileostomy after rectal cancer surgery. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 2021; **36**: 445-455 [PMID: 33064212 DOI: 10.1007/s00384-020-03771-z]
3 **Borucki JP**, Schlaeger S, Crane J, Hernon JM, Stearns AT. Risk and consequences of dehydration following colorectal cancer resection with diverting ileostomy. A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Colorectal Dis* 2021; **23**: 1721-1732 [PMID: 33783976 DOI: 10.1111/codi.15654]
4 **Karjalainen EK**, Renkonen-Sinisalo L, Mustonen HK, Lepistö AH. Morbidity related to diverting ileostomy after restorative proctocolectomy in patients with ulcerative colitis. *Colorectal Dis* 2019; **21**: 671-678 [PMID: 30698869 DOI: 10.1111/codi.14573]
5 **Ihnát P**, Guňková P, Peteja M, Vávra P, Pelikán A, Zonča P. Diverting ileostomy in laparoscopic rectal cancer surgery: high price of protection. *Surg Endosc* 2016; **30**: 4809-4816 [PMID: 26902615 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-016-4811-3]
6 **Shimizu H**, Yamaguchi S, Ishii T, Kondo H, Hara K, Takemoto K, Ishikawa S, Okada T, Suzuki A, Koyama I. Who needs diverting ileostomy following laparoscopic low anterior resection in rectal cancer patients? *Surg Endosc* 2020; **34**: 839-846 [PMID: 31111210 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-019-06837-4]
7 **Van Butsele J**, Bislenghi G, D'Hoore A, Wolthuis AM. Readmission after rectal resection in the ERAS-era: is a loop ileostomy the Achilles heel? *BMC Surg* 2021; **21**: 267 [PMID: 34044794 DOI: 10.1186/s12893-021-01242-y]
8 **Suwa K**, Ushigome T, Ohtsu M, Narihiro S, Ryu S, Shimoyama Y, Okamoto T, Yanaga K. Risk Factors for Early Postoperative Small Bowel Obstruction After Anterior Resection for Rectal Cancer. *World J Surg* 2018; **42**: 233-238 [PMID: 28748420 DOI: 10.1007/s00268-017-4152-y]
9 **FINK S**. The intraluminal pressures in the intact human intestine. *Gastroenterology* 1959; **36**: 661-671 [PMID: 13653288]
10 **Abe T**, Nishimura J, Yasui M, Matsuda C, Haraguchi N, Nakai N, Wada H, Takahashi H, Omori T, Miyata H, Ohue M. Risk Factors for Outlet Obstruction in Patients with Diverting Ileostomy Following Rectal Surgery. *J Anus Rectum Colon* 2021; **5**: 254-260 [PMID: 34395937 DOI: 10.23922/jarc.2021-007]
11 **Okita Y**, Araki T, Kondo S, Fujikawa H, Yoshiyama S, Hiro J, Inoue M, Toiyama Y, Kobayashi M, Ohi M, Inoue Y,

Uchida K, Mohri Y, Kusunoki M. Clinical Characteristics of Stoma-Related Obstruction after Ileal Pouch-Anal Anastomosis for Ulcerative Colitis. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2017; **21**: 554-559 [PMID: 27896653 DOI: 10.1007/s11605-016-3329-2]

12 **Maemoto R**, Tsujinaka S, Miyakura Y, Fukuda R, Kakizawa N, Takenami T, Machida E, Kikuchi N, Kanemitsu R, Tamaki S, Ishikawa H, Rikiyama T. Risk factors and management of stoma-related obstruction after laparoscopic colorectal surgery with diverting ileostomy. *Asian J Surg* 2021; **44**: 1037-1042 [PMID: 33549406 DOI: 10.1016/j.asjsur.2021.01.002]

13 **Sasaki S**, Nagasaki T, Oba K, Akiyoshi T, Mukai T, Yamaguchi T, Fukunaga Y, Fujimoto Y. Risk factors for outlet obstruction after laparoscopic surgery and diverting ileostomy for rectal cancer. *Surg Today* 2021; **51**: 366-373 [PMID: 32754842 DOI: 10.1007/s00595-020-02096-2]

14 **Takehara Y**, Nakagawa M, Kobayashi H, Kakisako K, Takano Y, Seki J, Shimada S, Nakahara K, Mukai S, Enami Y, Sawada N, Ishida F, Kudo SE. A technique for constructing diverting loop ileostomy to prevent outlet obstruction after rectal resection and total colectomy: a retrospective single-center study. *Surg Today* 2022; **52**: 587-594 [PMID: 34689284 DOI: 10.1007/s00595-021-02381-8]

15 **Okada S**, Hata K, Emoto S, Murono K, Kaneko M, Sasaki K, Otani K, Nishikawa T, Tanaka T, Kawai K, Nozawa H. Elevated risk of stoma outlet obstruction following colorectal surgery in patients undergoing ileal pouch-anal anastomosis: a retrospective cohort study. *Surg Today* 2018; **48**: 1060-1067 [PMID: 30046881 DOI: 10.1007/s00595-018-1698-8]

16 **Tamura K**, Matsuda K, Yokoyama S, Iwamoto H, Mizumoto Y, Murakami D, Nakamura Y, Yamaue H. Defunctioning loop ileostomy for rectal anastomoses: predictors of stoma outlet obstruction. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 2019; **34**: 1141-1145 [PMID: 31055627 DOI: 10.1007/s00384-019-03308-z]

17 **Kitahara T**, Sato Y, Oshiro T, Matsunaga R, Nagashima M, Okazumi S. Risk factors for postoperative stoma outlet obstruction in ulcerative colitis. *World J Gastrointest Surg* 2020; **12**: 507-519 [PMID: 33437402 DOI: 10.4240/wjgs.v12.i12.507]

18 **Mizushima T**, Kameyama H, Watanabe K, Kurachi K, Fukushima K, Nezu R, Uchino M, Sugita A, Futami K. Risk factors of small bowel obstruction following total proctocolectomy and ileal pouch anal anastomosis with diverting loop-ileostomy for ulcerative colitis. *Ann Gastroenterol Surg* 2017; **1**: 122-128 [PMID: 29863130 DOI: 10.1002/ags3.12017]

19 **Mori R**, Ogino T, Sekido Y, Hata T, Takahashi H, Miyoshi N, Uemura M, Doki Y, Eguchi H, Mizushima T. Long Distance Between the Superior Mesenteric Artery Root and Bottom of the External Anal Sphincter Is a Risk Factor for Stoma Outlet Obstruction After Total Proctocolectomy and Ileal-Pouch Anal Anastomosis for Ulcerative Colitis. *Ann Gastroenterol Surg* 2022; **6**: 249-255 [PMID: 35261950 DOI: 10.1002/ags3.12512]

20 **Kameyama H**, Hashimoto Y, Shimada Y, Yamada S, Yagi R, Tajima Y, Okamura T, Nakano M, Miura K, Nagahashi M, Sakata J, Kobayashi T, Kosugi SI, Wakai T. Small Bowel Obstruction After Ileal Pouch-Anal Anastomosis With a Loop Ileostomy in Patients With Ulcerative Colitis. *Ann Coloproctol* 2018; **34**: 94-100 [PMID: 29742859 DOI: 10.3393/ac.2017.06.14]

21 **Marcello PW**, Roberts PL, Schoetz DJ Jr, Coller JA, Murray JJ, Veidenheimer MC. Obstruction after ileal pouch-anal anastomosis: a preventable complication? *Dis Colon Rectum* 1993; **36**: 1105-1111 [PMID: 8253005 DOI: 10.1007/bf02052257]

22 **Dolejs S**, Kennedy G, Heise CP. Small bowel obstruction following restorative proctocolectomy: affected by a laparoscopic approach? *J Surg Res* 2011; **170**: 202-208 [PMID: 21474147 DOI: 10.1016/j.jss.2011.03.004]

23 **Babakhanlou R**, Larkin K, Hita AG, Stroh J, Yeung SC. Stoma-related complications and emergencies. *Int J Emerg Med* 2022; **15**: 17 [PMID: 35534817 DOI: 10.1186/s12245-022-00421-9]

24 **Li de C**, Li RH, Tian Q. Efficacy of intestinal decompression with long nasointestinal tube and selective contrast radiography in the treatment of small bowel obstruction in elderly patients. *Minerva Chir* 2016; **71**: 85-90 [PMID: 25517262]

25 **Shi Y**, Zhang XP, Qin H, Yu YJ. Naso-intestinal tube is more effective in treating postoperative ileus than naso-gastric tube in elderly colorectal cancer patients. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 2017; **32**: 1047-1050 [PMID: 28101658 DOI: 10.1007/s00384-017-2760-5]

26 **Anderson DN**, Driver CP, Park KG, Davidson AI, Keenan RA. Loop ileostomy fixation: a simple technique to minimise the risk of stomal volvulus. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 1994; **9**: 138-140 [PMID: 7814987 DOI: 10.1007/bf00290190]

27 **Ng KH**, Ng DC, Cheung HY, Wong JC, Yau KK, Chung CC, Li MK. Obstructive complications of laparoscopically created defunctioning ileostomy. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2008; **51**: 1664-1668 [PMID: 18536966 DOI: 10.1007/s10350-008-9351-z]

28 **Kennedy HJ**, Al-Dujaili EA, Edwards CR, Truelove SC. Water and electrolyte balance in subjects with a permanent ileostomy. *Gut* 1983; **24**: 702-705 [PMID: 6347830 DOI: 10.1136/gut.24.8.702]

29 **Baker ML**, Williams RN, Nightingale JM. Causes and management of a high-output stoma. *Colorectal Dis* 2011; **13**: 191-197 [PMID: 19888956 DOI: 10.1111/j.1463-1318.2009.02107.x]

30 **Goodey A**, Colman S. Safe management of ileostomates with high-output stomas. *Br J Nurs* 2016; **25**: S4-S9 [PMID: 27935344 DOI: 10.12968/bjon.2016.25.22.S4]

31 **Nightingale JMD**. How to manage a high-output stoma. *Frontline Gastroenterol* 2022; **13**: 140-151 [PMID: 35300464 DOI: 10.1136/flgastro-2018-101108]

32 **Hill GL**, Millward SF, King RF, Smith RC. Normal ileostomy output: close relation to body size. *Br Med J* 1979; **2**: 831-832 [PMID: 509117 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.2.6194.831-a]

33 **Messaris E**, Sehgal R, Deiling S, Koltun WA, Stewart D, McKenna K, Poritz LS. Dehydration is the most common indication for readmission after diverting ileostomy creation. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2012; **55**: 175-180 [PMID: 22228161 DOI: 10.1097/DCR.0b013e31823d0ec5]

34 **Chan DKH**, Ng J, Koh FH, Lim T, Yeo D, Tan KY, Tan KK. Journey for patients following ileostomy creation is not straightforward. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 2019; **34**: 2075-2080 [PMID: 31707557 DOI: 10.1007/s00384-019-03428-6]

35 **Hayden DM**, Pinzon MC, Francescatti AB, Edquist SC, Malczewski MR, Jolley JM, Brand MI, Saclarides TJ. Hospital readmission for fluid and electrolyte abnormalities following ileostomy construction: preventable or unpredictable? *J Gastrointest Surg* 2013; **17**: 298-303 [PMID: 23192425 DOI: 10.1007/s11605-012-2073-5]

36 **Vogel I**, Shinkwin M, van der Storm SL, Torkington J, A Cornish J, Tanis PJ, Hompes R, Bemelman WA. Overall readmissions and readmissions related to dehydration after creation of an ileostomy: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Tech Coloproctol* 2022; **26**: 333-349 [PMID: 35192122 DOI: 10.1007/s10151-022-02580-6]

37 **Fielding A**, Woods R, Moosvi SR, Wharton RQ, Speakman CTM, Kapur S, Shaikh I, Hernon JM, Lines SW, Stearns AT. Renal impairment after ileostomy formation: a frequent event with long-term consequences. *Colorectal Dis* 2020; **22**: 269-278 [PMID: 31562789 DOI: 10.1111/codi.14866]

38 **Gaertner WB**, Madoff RD, Mellgren A, Kwaan MR, Melton GB. Postoperative diarrhea and high ostomy output impact postoperative outcomes after elective colon and rectal operations regardless of Clostridium difficile infection. *Am J Surg* 2015; **210**: 759-765 [PMID: 26117432 DOI: 10.1016/j.amjsurg.2015.03.032]

39 **Williams RN**, Hemingway D, Miller AS. Enteral Clostridium difficile, an emerging cause for high-output ileostomy. *J Clin Pathol* 2009; **62**: 951-953 [PMID: 19447832 DOI: 10.1136/jcp.2008.062901]

40 **Shabbir J**, Britton DC. Stoma complications: a literature overview. *Colorectal Dis* 2010; **12**: 958-964 [PMID: 19604288 DOI: 10.1111/j.1463-1318.2009.02006.x]

41 **Arenas Villafranca JJ**, López-Rodríguez C, Abilés J, Rivera R, Gándara Adán N, Utrilla Navarro P. Protocol for the detection and nutritional management of high-output stomas. *Nutr J* 2015; **14**: 45 [PMID: 25956387 DOI: 10.1186/s12937-015-0034-z]

42 **Seifarth C**, Augustin LN, Lehmann KS, Stroux A, Lauscher JC, Kreis ME, Holmer C. Assessment of Risk Factors for the Occurrence of a High-Output Ileostomy. *Front Surg* 2021; **8**: 642288 [PMID: 34095201 DOI: 10.3389/fsurg.2021.642288]

43 **Takeda M**, Takahashi H, Haraguchi N, Miyoshi N, Hata T, Yamamoto H, Matsuda C, Mizushima T, Doki Y, Mori M. Factors predictive of high-output ileostomy: a retrospective single-center comparative study. *Surg Today* 2019; **49**: 482-487 [PMID: 30594951 DOI: 10.1007/s00595-018-1756-2]

44 **Lee N**, Lee SY, Kim CH, Kwak HD, Ju JK, Kim HR. The Relationship Between High-Output Stomas, Postoperative Ileus, and Readmission After Rectal Cancer Surgery With Diverting Ileostomy. *Ann Coloproctol* 2021; **37**: 44-50 [PMID: 32972101 DOI: 10.3393/ac.2020.08.03]

45 **Ohta H**, Miyake T, Ueki T, Kojima M, Kawasaki M, Tatsuta T, Iuchi T, Kamitani S, Shimizu T, Mekata E, Tani M. Predictors and clinical impact of postoperative diarrhea after colorectal cancer surgery: a prospective, multicenter, observational study (SHISA-1602). *Int J Colorectal Dis* 2022; **37**: 657-664 [PMID: 35080636 DOI: 10.1007/s00384-022-04097-8]

46 **Fujino S**, Miyoshi N, Ohue M, Takahashi Y, Yasui M, Sugimura K, Akita H, Takahashi H, Kobayashi S, Yano M, Sakon M. Prediction model and treatment of high-output ileostomy in colorectal cancer surgery. *Mol Clin Oncol* 2017; **7**: 468-472 [PMID: 28894582 DOI: 10.3892/mco.2017.1336]

47 **Li W**, Stocchi L, Cherla D, Liu G, Agostinelli A, Delaney CP, Steele SR, Gorgun E. Factors associated with hospital readmission following diverting ileostomy creation. *Tech Coloproctol* 2017; **21**: 641-648 [PMID: 28819783 DOI: 10.1007/s10151-017-1667-z]

48 **Assaf D**, Hazzan D, Ben-Yaacov A, Laks S, Zippel D, Segev L. Predisposing Factors for High Output Stoma in Patients With a Diverting Loop Ileostomy After Colorectal Surgeries. *Ann Coloproctol* 2021 [PMID: 34364318 DOI: 10.3393/ac.2021.00241.0034]

49 **Hara Y**, Miura T, Sakamoto Y, Morohashi H, Nagase H, Hakamada K. Organ/space infection is a common cause of high output stoma and outlet obstruction in diverting ileostomy. *BMC Surg* 2020; **20**: 83 [PMID: 32345295 DOI: 10.1186/s12893-020-00734-7]

50 **Mountford CG**, Manas DM, Thompson NP. A practical approach to the management of high-output stoma. *Frontline Gastroenterol* 2014; **5**: 203-207 [PMID: 28839771 DOI: 10.1136/flgastro-2013-100375]

51 **Grahn SW**, Lowry AC, Osborne MC, Melton GB, Gaertner WB, Vogler SA, Madoff RD, Kwaan MR. System-Wide Improvement for Transitions After Ileostomy Surgery: Can Intensive Monitoring of Protocol Compliance Decrease Readmissions? *Dis Colon Rectum* 2019; **62**: 363-370 [PMID: 30489324 DOI: 10.1097/DCR.0000000000001286]

52 **Hsu AT**, Crawford TC, Zhou X, Safar B, Efron J, Atallah C, Najjar PA, Girard AL, Glover JC, Warczynski T, Cowell NA, Cwik CL, Fang SH. Decreasing Readmissions After Ileostomy Creation Through a Perioperative Quality Improvement Program. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2022; **65**: e797-e804 [PMID: 35421028 DOI: 10.1097/DCR.0000000000002256]

53 **Nagle D**, Pare T, Keenan E, Marcet K, Tizio S, Poylin V. Ileostomy pathway virtually eliminates readmissions for dehydration in new ostomates. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2012; **55**: 1266-1272 [PMID: 23135585 DOI: 10.1097/DCR.0b013e31827080c1]

54 **Shaffer VO**, Owi T, Kumarusamy MA, Sullivan PS, Srinivasan JK, Maithel SK, Staley CA, Sweeney JF, Esper G. Decreasing Hospital Readmission in Ileostomy Patients: Results of Novel Pilot Program. *J Am Coll Surg* 2017; **224**: 425-430 [PMID: 28232058 DOI: 10.1016/j.jamcollsurg.2016.12.030]

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Gastroenterol 2022 December 21; 28(47): 6743-6751

DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6743

ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Role of the combination of biologics and/or small molecules in the treatment of patients with inflammatory bowel disease

Domingo Balderramo

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Provenance and peer review: Invited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): B, B
Grade C (Good): C
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: Gravina AG, Italy; M'Koma AE, United States; Parra RS, Brazil

Received: September 22, 2022
Peer-review started: September 22, 2022
First decision: October 18, 2022
Revised: October 26, 2022
Accepted: November 27, 2022
Article in press: November 27, 2022
Published online: December 21, 2022

Domingo Balderramo, Department of Gastroenterology, Hospital Privado Universitario de Córdoba, Instituto Universitario de Ciencias Biomédicas de Córdoba, Córdoba 5016, Argentina

Corresponding author: Domingo Balderramo, MD, PhD, Professor, Department of Gastroenterology, Hospital Privado Universitario de Córdoba, Instituto Universitario de Ciencias Biomédicas de Córdoba, Naciones Unidas 346, Córdoba 5016, Argentina.
dbalderramo@hospitalprivadosa.com.ar

Abstract

Inflammatory bowel disease (IBD) is a group of chronic diseases that includes ulcerative colitis, Crohn's disease, and indeterminate colitis. Patients with IBD require prolonged treatment and high utilization of healthcare resources for proper management. The treatment of patients with IBD is focused on achieving therapeutic goals including clinical, biochemical, and endoscopic variables that result in improvement of the quality of life and prevention of disability. Advanced IBD treatment includes tumor necrosis factor inhibitors, integrin antagonist, antagonist of the p40 subunit of interleukin 12/23, and small molecule drugs. However, despite the multiple treatments available, about 40% of patients are refractory to therapy and present with persistent symptoms that have a great impact on their quality of life, with hospitalization and surgery being necessary in many cases. Dual therapy, a strategy sometimes applicable to refractory IBD patients, includes the combination of two biologics or a biologic in combination with a small molecule drug. There are two distinct scenarios in IBD patients in which this approach can be used: (1) Refractory active luminal disease without extraintestinal manifestations; and (2) patients with IBD in remission, but with active extraintestinal manifestations or immune-mediated inflammatory diseases. This review provides a summary of the results (clinical response and remission) of different combinations of advanced drugs in patients with IBD, both in adults and in the pediatric population. In addition, the safety profile of different combinations of dual therapy is analyzed. The use of newer combinations, including recently approved treatments, the application of new biomarkers and artificial intelligence, and clinical trials to establish effectiveness during long-term follow-up, are needed to establish new strategies for the use of advanced treatments in patients with refractory IBD.

Key Words: Inflammatory bowel disease; Ulcerative colitis; Crohn's disease; Dual-therapy biologic therapy; Small molecule drugs; Clinical remission

©The Author(s) 2022. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core Tip: Patients with inflammatory bowel disease (IBD) require prolonged treatment and high utilization of healthcare resources. About 40% of patients are refractory to different treatments with an increase need for hospitalization and surgery. Dual therapy, a strategy applicable to refractory IBD patients, includes the combination of two biologics or a biologic in combination with a small molecule drug. There are two distinct scenarios in IBD therapy in which this approach can be used: (1) Refractory active luminal disease without extraintestinal manifestations; and (2) patients with IBD in remission, but with active extraintestinal manifestations or immune-mediated inflammatory diseases.

Citation: Balderramo D. Role of the combination of biologics and/or small molecules in the treatment of patients with inflammatory bowel disease. *World J Gastroenterol* 2022; 28(47): 6743-6751
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v28/i47/6743.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6743

INTRODUCTION

Inflammatory bowel disease (IBD) is a group of chronic diseases that includes ulcerative colitis (UC), Crohn's disease (CD), and indeterminate colitis. Patients with IBD require prolonged treatment and high utilization of healthcare resources for its proper management[1]. Medical treatment includes the use of so-called conventional drugs (mesalazine, immunosuppressants such as azathioprine or methotrexate and corticosteroids) and biologics [anti-tumor necrosis factor (anti-TNF), anti-integrins, and anti-interleukins (IL)], with small molecules (Janus kinase inhibitors and sphingosine 1-phosphate receptor modulators) having recently been added to the possible advanced treatments[2-5].

After the onset of therapy, the treatment of patients with IBD is focused on achieving therapeutic goals, which include improvement or normalization of clinical, biochemical, endoscopic variables, and also the quality of life and disability[6]. Despite the multiple treatments available, about 40% of patients are refractory to several treatments with different mechanisms of action, and these patients present with persistent symptoms that often have a great impact on their quality of life, due to the need for hospitalization and the requirement of surgery, which has to be carried out several times in some cases[7].

Extraintestinal manifestations (EIM) are present in about one-third of patients after diagnosis[8]. These mainly involve osteoarticular and dermatological manifestations. Some EIM are independent of IBD activity and require independent therapeutic management. In addition, some patients have multiple comorbidities throughout the course of the disease associated with prolonged corticosteroid treatment (diabetes, osteoporosis, adrenal insufficiency, and others), which is frequently used in these patients with a suboptimal response to advanced treatments[9].

Different studies have described a therapeutic window of opportunity, which implies the early use of advanced treatment in patients with IBD, especially in patients with early CD (< 2 years)[10]. These interventions are associated with a decrease in the progression of intestinal damage and complications such as stenosis and fistulas, and consequently reducing the need for hospitalization and surgery[10]. Finally, patients with long-standing IBD with persistent inflammatory activity represent a group at higher risk for the development of colorectal cancer, which develops by a different sequence to that of non-IBD colorectal cancer[11]. It has also been described that a better control of inflammatory activity may have an impact the development of this complication during long-term evolution[12,13].

DEFINITION AND INDICATIONS OF DUAL THERAPY

The development of new molecules and the implementation of new strategies are necessary to achieve better control of IBD activity in patients who are refractory to currently available treatments[14]. However, there are multiple pathways of inflammatory activity activated in patients with IBD, and for this reason, treatment with monotherapies may not be sufficient for the management of all patients[15]. Related to this, there are many scenarios in medicine in which dual therapy is used in both the induction and maintenance of treatment. This strategy involves the combination of two or more treatments with the aim of achieving optimal control of pathologies with different therapeutic targets. Indeed, this modality has seen great development in oncological or hematological treatments[14]. Similarly, in patients with rheumatologic pathologies, this approach is used in some patient subgroups [16]. This approach is also applicable to patients with refractory IBD to advanced treatments (dual therapy) by using two biologics simultaneously or a biologic in combination with a small molecule[16,17]. In patients with IBD, there are two distinct scenarios in which it can be used: (1) Patients with

refractory IBD without EIM; and (2) patients with IBD in remission, but with active EIM or immune-mediated inflammatory diseases (IMID)[18].

EVIDENCE RELATED TO DUAL THERAPY

The first clinical trial that assessed a combination of biologics was developed in 2007[19,20]. Later, in 2010, the SONIC trial demonstrated that the association of infliximab and azathioprine is more effective compared with either infliximab or azathioprine monotherapy in CD patients, since which time multiple publications have described the results of different combinations of advanced drugs in patients with UC and CD, both in adults and in the pediatric population[21-35] (Figure 1). These combinations have varied according to the availability and practical experience of the drugs that were approved after the anti-TNFs. Table 1 shows the data from publications related to drug combination in patients with IBD. A major limitation of the dual therapy data is that they are mostly retrospective[19]. For this reason, the definitions of response evaluation (clinical, endoscopic and biochemical) are abbreviated and with the exception of few series are only described for short periods[33]. In addition, the definition of complications and the requirement for hospitalization and surgery can be subject to biases related to the follow-up time and the clinical condition prior to the start of the combined treatment[16]. Also, the differential evaluation of this strategy in patients with UC *vs* CD is not reported in many publications, which makes assessment difficult in some cases. Finally, some series include data on patients who received more than one combination, and it is possible that the effectiveness and adverse events could be different depending on the sequencing order of these combinations.

Effectiveness

The partial or complete response in patients with indication for dual therapy for refractory IBD has been evaluated using different meta-analyses[16,19,36]. In these studies, the patients included were mainly those with CD (70%), and in the great majority, the indication for dual therapy was for refractory endoluminal activity[16]. Overall, the observed clinical response varied between 60% and 84% in most of the publications[16,19]. However, clinical remission, which is a difficult clinical situation to achieve considering that these are multi-refractory patients, ranged between 47% and 80% of the patients who received combined therapy[16,18]. The therapeutic response of the different combinations has not been reported to reveal significant variation with respect to the main indication (refractory luminal activity *vs* active EIM or IMID)[16]. Persistence in the treatment of dual therapy varies according to the follow-up period. It has been published that globally 45% of patients may discontinue the dual scheme during its evolution, with loss of response being the main cause (64%) and intolerance together with adverse effects representing a smaller percentage (12%)[33]. It is noteworthy that in a recent study, 21% of patients were able to discontinue one of the drugs in the combination without impacting the subsequent evolution[33]. It is important to mention that many series have included a recycling strategy. This involves the use in the combination of a drug, which the patient did not respond to[14]. Several publications have mentioned such a situation, and have observed that the response in these patients was similar to that observed in those who had not been previously exposed to that drug[18]. This strategy requires further evolution, especially in areas with limited resources for access to new advanced treatments.

Safety

The combination of two biologics or a biologic plus a small molecule has been associated with a higher rate of complications in other indications[17,18]. This has been observed in studies of patients with rheumatologic diseases who received combination therapy[14]. However, in these series, a significant percentage of patients received different treatments with medications that present a higher rate of adverse events, such as the use of rituximab, abatacept, and tocilizumab[18]. On the other hand, in patients with IBD, most of the proposed combinations include drugs with a high relevant safety profile such as vedolizumab or ustekinumab, which are used in both the pediatric and adult populations[25,29]. In a recent meta-analysis, the presence of adverse events varied from 6%-24% according to the combinations[16]. However, the presence of severe adverse events with indication for hospitalization or surgery was only present in 0%-12% of patients[16]. Within these severe adverse events, 75% were due to both intestinal and soft tissue infections[16]. In a recently published European series, a higher number of infections requiring hospitalization was observed in patients who received anti-TNF, corticosteroids, and immunomodulators, and who had a concomitant diagnosis of IMID/EIM (most frequently ankylosing spondylitis)[33]. Nevertheless, in this series, these complications developed only in patients with CD. Importantly, no case of reactivation of herpes zoster has been reported in any publication. Although one case of herpetic meningoencephalitis was diagnosed in a 43-year-old patient with CD who had received a combination including certolizumab, vedolizumab, and methotrexate, this was resolved after treatment[33]. Finally, one incident case of benign skin neoplasia (clear cell acanthoma) and one case of recurrence of basal cell skin cancer were reported[33,35]. No other cancers or treatment-related deaths have been reported.

Table 1 Publications including 2 or more adult or pediatric inflammatory bowel disease patients with use of combination therapy

Ref.	Study type (type of patients)	Disease (number of patients)	Combinations	Efficacy	Adverse events
Sands *et al* [20], 2007	Randomized controlled trial (adults)	CD (52)	NAT + IFX	Remission 37%	Headache, CD exacerbation, nausea, nasopharyngitis
Buer *et al* [22], 2018	Prospective cohort (adults)	CD (4), UC (6)	9 IFX + VDZ, 1 ADA + UST	Remission 100 %	3 upper airway infections
Mao *et al* [23], 2018	Case series (adults)	CD (4)	1 TNFi + UST/VDZ, 1 VDZ + UST, 2 VDZ + GOL	Remission 3/4	1 hand, foot and mouth disease, 1 influenza, 1 *Clostridiodes difficile*
Kwapisz *et al*[24], 2020	Retrospective cohort (adults)	CD (14), UC (1)	8 VDZ + TNFi, 5 VDZ + UST, 2 UST + TNFi	Improvement 11/15	*Salmonella, Clostridiodes difficile*, 4 infections, arthralgia
Olbjørn *et al* [25], 2020	Retrospective cohort (pediatrics)	CD (9), UC (4)	8 IFX + VDZ, 5 IFX + UST	Remission 9/13	Elevated transaminases, eczema, skin infection
Fumery *et al* [26], 2020	Case series (adults)	CD (5), UC (2)	5 TNFi + UST, 2 TNF + VDZ	Remission 6/7	No
Glassner *et al*[27], 2020	Retrospective cohort (adults)	CD (30), UC (18), IBD-U (1)	7 VDZ + TNFi, 25 VDZ + UST, 9 TOF + TNFi, 8 TOF + VDZ, 3 TOF + UST	Remission 50%	3 bacterial enteric infections (*E. coli*), 3 *Clostridiodes difficile*, 1 peristomal cellulitis, 2 abdominal wall abscesses
Privitera *et al*[28], 2020	Retrospective cohort (adults)	CD (11), UC (5)	3 VDZ + UST, 9 VDZ + TNFi/other, 3 VDZ + UST	Clinical response 43%	1 cutaneous reaction, 1 drug-induced liver injury, 1 perianal abscess
Yang *et al* [29], 2020	Retrospective cohort (adults)	CD (22)	8 VDZ + UST, 13 VDZ + TNFi, 3 UST + TNFi	Remission 41%	1 drug induced lupus, 1 pneumonia, 1 *Clostridiodes difficile*, 1 acinetobacter bacteremia
Alayo *et al* [30], 2021	Retrospective cohort (adults)	CD (10), UC (25)	24 VDZ + TOF, 5 TOF + UST	Remission 70% at 26 wk	1 *Clostridiodes difficile*, 1 candida esophagitis, 1 abnormal lipid profile
Dolinger *et al*[31], 2021	Retrospective cohort (pediatrics)	CD (7), UC (8), IBD-U (1)	9 VDZ + TOF, 4 VDZ + UST, 3 UST + TOF	Remission 12/16	1 septic arthritis, 1 deep vein thrombosis
Llano *et al* [32], 2021	Retrospective cohort (adults)	CD (3), UC (10), IBD-U (1)	3 UST + VDZ, 2 VDZ + TNFi, 9 VDZ + TOF	Clinical or biochemical remission 50%	2 *Clostridiodes difficile*, 2 pneumonia, 3 abnormal lipid profile
Goessens *et al*[33], 2021	Retrospective cohort (adults)	CD (58), UC (40)	41 VDZ + TNFi, 21 VDZ + UST, 11 UST + TNFi, 1 TOF + TNFi, 13 TOF + VDZ, 17 other	Clinical response 44%	10 serious or opportunistic infections
Howard *et al* [34], 2022	Case series (pediatrics)	CD (3)	3 VDZ + UST	Clinical remission 100%	Not reported
Lee *et al*[35], 2022	Retrospective cohort (adults)	CD (19)	7 TOF + VDZ, 11 TOF + UST, 1 TOF + TNFi	Remission 60%	1 basal cell carcinoma

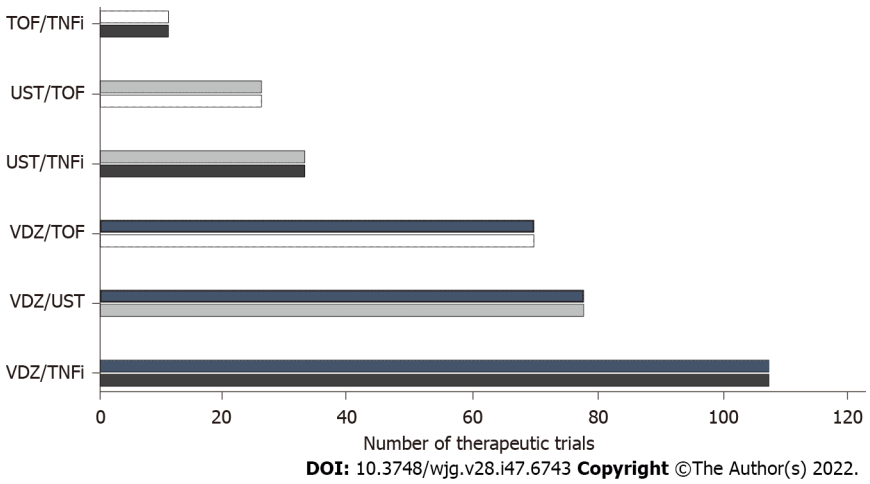
ADA: Adalimumab; CD: Crohn's disease; GOL: Golimumab; IBD-U: Inflammatory bowel disease-unclassified; IFX: Infliximab; NAT: Natalizumab; TNFi: Tumor necrosis factor inhibitor; TOF: Tofacitinib; UC: Ulcerative colitis; UST: Ustekinumab; VDZ: Vedolizumab.

Data in pediatric population

Different case series in pediatric patients have reported results with various combinations in both CD and UC[37]. In one study, 75% of patients with luminal activity achieved a clinical remission free of corticosteroids at 6 mo, with the median time to achieve this goal being 88 d[31]. Interestingly, another potential indication that has been described in pediatric patients is the use of dual therapy (vedolizumab and tofacitinib) in patients with acute severe UC[31]. Nevertheless, more data are needed to explore this indication in an urgent and severe situation in patients with IBD. Different adverse events have been described in pediatric patients, but in general there are less frequent than in adult patients[25]. In a series of 16 pediatric patients, 1 (6%) patient presented septic arthritis and subsequent deep vein thrombosis[31].

NEW HORIZONS

It is necessary to establish new strategies for the use of advanced treatments in patients with refractory IBD, which must take into account health costs in order to be sustainable[14]. The sequencing of



DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6743 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2022.

Figure 1 Number of therapeutic trials described in studies including 2 or more inflammatory bowel disease patients. TNFi: Tumor necrosis factor inhibitor; TOF: Tofacitinib; UST: Ustekinumab; VDZ: Vedolizumab.

biologics or small molecules in patients in remission is a strategy that probably results in a better cost balance. Related to this, some series described patients who achieved remission with two biologics, with the subsequent suspension of one of these (usually anti-TNF) not leading to the presence of disease reactivation during follow-up[22]. In addition, other studies have shown that patients in remission on infliximab were able to maintain their clinical status after initiation of vedolizumab and discontinuation of anti-TNF[38]. The implementation of these strategies requires further research, and in particular, clinical trials are needed to establish their effectiveness during long-term follow-up.

The use of artificial intelligence and the implementation of new biomarkers in the future will possibly be able to differentiate the patients who will benefit from certain combination schemes. Artificial intelligence may also enable remote monitoring to provide new data as well as algorithms to ensure better decision making in refractory patients[39]. In addition, biomarkers might improve patient stratification. Recent data have shown that HLA-DQA1*05 is non-uniformly distributed in patients with or without anti-TNF failure[40]. Likewise, IL-23 receptor expansion is a mechanism of anti-TNF resistance and is reflected as a secondary loss of response[41]. According to this, the use of ustekinumab may allow to regained response in patients with prior anti-TNF.

It is possible that in the near future new combinations with different effectiveness and safety profile will be described, with the use of ozanimod, upadacitinib, risankizumab, guselkumab, and mirikizumab, among others, expanding the current options[18]. In this regard, it is important to note that future clinical trials will be developed to compare current therapy with the combination of two biologic treatments (golimumab and guselkumab) or the combination of two biologics (vedolizumab and adalimumab) and an immunomodulator (methotrexate)[42-44]. Moreover, the design of the new pivotal studies has been modified. Recently, a phase 2 study in patients with CD compared different doses of guselkumab with placebo but also included a ustekinumab arm as this provides better comparative information[45].

Another point to consider is that some good results have been reported after the change of formulation (from intravenous to subcutaneous) of the same drug such is the case of as infliximab or vedolizumab[46,47]. This could be important in future combinations, since it would facilitate logistics and reduce associated costs. In addition to the combination of biological drugs or small molecules, the future role of other approaches should be determined, such as the use of probiotics and gut flora regulators as well as the role of microbiota transplantation[48,49].

Finally, the development of more real-life evidence will be of great importance. Currently most of the data comes from Europe and North America[16]. In this sense, it would be very useful to develop international registries involving several countries currently experiencing a clear increase in the incidence of IBD, such as Latin America and Asia, and which have greater difficulty in accessing advanced treatments[50-52]. In this regard, the costs associated with dual therapy are the main limitation to access, which restrict the provision of a personalized treatment in patients with indication for this strategy[53]. Moreover, it is of great relevance to inform the health insurance of these patients about the objectives and advantages of the dual therapy strategy to obtain the appropriate approval in a timely manner for the indication.

CONCLUSION

The combination of biologics and/or small molecules is a strategy applicable to refractory IBD patients in two distinct scenarios: (1) Refractory active luminal disease without extraintestinal manifestations; and (2) patients with IBD in remission, but with active extraintestinal manifestations or immune-mediated inflammatory diseases. The observed clinical response using this strategy varied between 60% and 84% in most of the publications, and severe adverse events were observed in a few patients. However, most of the data on dual therapy are retrospective and with short-term follow-up. New clinical trials are needed to establish dual therapy effectiveness and safety during long-term follow-up. Finally, it is expected that new combinations using new drugs with different efficacy and safety profiles will be described in the coming years, expanding the current options.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The author thanks Dr. Paul Hobson, a native speaker, for the English edition of the manuscript.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Balderramo D performed the writing and editing of the manuscript and prepared the figure and table.

Conflict-of-interest statement: Balderramo D reports receiving payment for speaker´s fee from AbbVie, Takeda, and Janssen, and receiving consulting fees from AbbVie, Takeda, Janssen, and Amgen.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article that was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution NonCommercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: https://creativecommons.org/Licenses/by-nc/4.0/

Country/Territory of origin: Argentina

ORCID number: Domingo Balderramo 0000-0001-9598-2577.

S-Editor: Zhang H
L-Editor: Filipodia
P-Editor: Zhang H

REFERENCES

1 **van der Have M**, Mangen MJ, van der Valk ME, Smeets HM, van Bodegraven A, Dijkstra G, Fidder HH, de Jong DJ, Pierik M, Ponsioen CY, van der Meulen-de Jong AE, van der Woude CJ, van de Meeberg PC, Romberg-Camps MJ, Clemens CH, Jansen JM, Mahmmod N, Bolwerk CJ, Vermeijden JR, Siersema PD, Leenders M, Oldenburg B; COIN Study Group; Dutch Initiative on Crohn and Colitis. Effect of aging on healthcare costs of inflammatory bowel disease: a glimpse into the future. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2014; **20**: 637-645 [PMID: 24518606 DOI: 10.1097/01.MIB.0000442677.55051.03]

2 **Feuerstein JD**, Isaacs KL, Schneider Y, Siddique SM, Falck-Ytter Y, Singh S; AGA Institute Clinical Guidelines Committee. AGA Clinical Practice Guidelines on the Management of Moderate to Severe Ulcerative Colitis. *Gastroenterology* 2020; **158**: 1450-1461 [PMID: 31945371 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2020.01.006]

3 **Raine T**, Bonovas S, Burisch J, Kucharzik T, Adamina M, Annese V, Bachmann O, Bettenworth D, Chaparro M, Czuber-Dochan W, Eder P, Ellul P, Fidalgo C, Fiorino G, Gionchetti P, Gisbert JP, Gordon H, Hedin C, Holubar S, Iacucci M, Karmiris K, Katsanos K, Kopylov U, Lakatos PL, Lytras T, Lyutakov I, Noor N, Pellino G, Piovani D, Savarino E, Selvaggi F, Verstockt B, Spinelli A, Panis Y, Doherty G. ECCO Guidelines on Therapeutics in Ulcerative Colitis: Medical Treatment. *J Crohns Colitis* 2022; **16**: 2-17 [PMID: 34635919 DOI: 10.1093/ecco-jcc/jjab178]

4 **Torres J**, Bonovas S, Doherty G, Kucharzik T, Gisbert JP, Raine T, Adamina M, Armuzzi A, Bachmann O, Bager P, Biancone L, Bokemeyer B, Bossuyt P, Burisch J, Collins P, El-Hussuna A, Ellul P, Frei-Lanter C, Furfaro F, Gingert C, Gionchetti P, Gomollon F, González-Lorenzo M, Gordon H, Hlavaty T, Juillerat P, Katsanos K, Kopylov U, Krustins E, Lytras T, Maaser C, Magro F, Marshall JK, Myrelid P, Pellino G, Rosa I, Sabino J, Savarino E, Spinelli A, Stassen L, Uzzan M, Vavricka S, Verstockt B, Warusavitarne J, Zmora O, Fiorino G. ECCO Guidelines on Therapeutics in Crohn's Disease: Medical Treatment. *J Crohns Colitis* 2020; **14**: 4-22 [PMID: 31711158 DOI: 10.1093/ecco-jcc/jjz180]

5 **Feuerstein JD**, Ho EY, Shmidt E, Singh H, Falck-Ytter Y, Sultan S, Terdiman JP; American Gastroenterological Association Institute Clinical Guidelines Committee. AGA Clinical Practice Guidelines on the Medical Management of Moderate to Severe Luminal and Perianal Fistulizing Crohn's Disease. *Gastroenterology* 2021; **160**: 2496-2508 [PMID:

34051983 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2021.04.022]
6 **Turner D**, Ricciuto A, Lewis A, D'Amico F, Dhaliwal J, Griffiths AM, Bettenworth D, Sandborn WJ, Sands BE, Reinisch W, Schölmerich J, Bemelman W, Danese S, Mary JY, Rubin D, Colombel JF, Peyrin-Biroulet L, Dotan I, Abreu MT, Dignass A; International Organization for the Study of IBD. STRIDE-II: An Update on the Selecting Therapeutic Targets in Inflammatory Bowel Disease (STRIDE) Initiative of the International Organization for the Study of IBD (IOIBD): Determining Therapeutic Goals for Treat-to-Target strategies in IBD. *Gastroenterology* 2021; **160**: 1570-1583 [PMID: 33359090 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2020.12.031]
7 **Peyrin-Biroulet L**, Lémann M. Review article: remission rates achievable by current therapies for inflammatory bowel disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2011; **33**: 870-879 [PMID: 21323689 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2011.04599.x]
8 **Balderramo D**, Trakal J, Herrera Najum P, Vivas M, Gonzalez R, Benavidez A, López Villa D, Daino D, Raiden K, Germán A, Corzo MA, Ponce de León J, Ferrer L, Germán C, Bálzola S, Idoeta A, Zárate F, Defagó MR; Grupo Córdoba de Cooperación para el Manejo y Estudio de la Enfermedad Inflamatoria Intestinal (CEMEI Group). High ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease ratio in a population-based registry from Córdoba, Argentina. *Dig Liver Dis* 2021; **53**: 852-857 [PMID: 33531211 DOI: 10.1016/j.dld.2021.01.006]
9 **McDonnell M**, Harris RJ, Borca F, Mills T, Downey L, Dharmasiri S, Patel M, Zare B, Stammers M, Smith TR, Felwick R, Cummings JRF, Phan HTT, Gwiggner M. High incidence of glucocorticoid-induced hyperglycaemia in inflammatory bowel disease: metabolic and clinical predictors identified by machine learning. *BMJ Open Gastroenterol* 2020; **7**: e000532 [PMID: 33187976 DOI: 10.1136/bmjgast-2020-000532]
10 **Ungaro RC**, Aggarwal S, Topaloglu O, Lee WJ, Clark R, Colombel JF. Systematic review and meta-analysis: efficacy and safety of early biologic treatment in adult and paediatric patients with Crohn's disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2020; **51**: 831-842 [PMID: 32202328 DOI: 10.1111/apt.15685]
11 **Rajamäki K**, Taira A, Katainen R, Välimäki N, Kuosmanen A, Plaketti RM, Seppälä TT, Ahtiainen M, Wirta EV, Vartiainen E, Sulo P, Ravantti J, Lehtipuro S, Granberg KJ, Nykter M, Tanskanen T, Ristimäki A, Koskensalo S, Renkonen-Sinisalo L, Lepistö A, Böhm J, Taipale J, Mecklin JP, Aavikko M, Palin K, Aaltonen LA. Genetic and Epigenetic Characteristics of Inflammatory Bowel Disease-Associated Colorectal Cancer. *Gastroenterology* 2021; **161**: 592-607 [PMID: 33930428 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2021.04.042]
12 **Bonovas S**, Fiorino G, Lytras T, Nikolopoulos G, Peyrin-Biroulet L, Danese S. Systematic review with meta-analysis: use of 5-aminosalicylates and risk of colorectal neoplasia in patients with inflammatory bowel disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2017; **45**: 1179-1192 [PMID: 28261835 DOI: 10.1111/apt.14023]
13 **Wijnands AM**, de Jong ME, Lutgens MWMD, Hoentjen F, Elias SG, Oldenburg B; Dutch Initiative on Crohn and Colitis (ICC). Prognostic Factors for Advanced Colorectal Neoplasia in Inflammatory Bowel Disease: Systematic Review and Meta-analysis. *Gastroenterology* 2021; **160**: 1584-1598 [PMID: 33385426 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2020.12.036]
14 **Privitera G**, Pugliese D, Lopetuso LR, Scaldaferri F, Neri M, Guidi L, Gasbarrini A, Armuzzi A. Novel trends with biologics in inflammatory bowel disease: sequential and combined approaches. *Therap Adv Gastroenterol* 2021; **14**: 17562848211006669 [PMID: 33995579 DOI: 10.1177/17562848211006669]
15 **Graham DB**, Xavier RJ. Pathway paradigms revealed from the genetics of inflammatory bowel disease. *Nature* 2020; **578**: 527-539 [PMID: 32103191 DOI: 10.1038/s41586-020-2025-2]
16 **Alayo QA**, Fenster M, Altayar O, Glassner KL, Llano E, Clark-Snustad K, Patel A, Kwapisz L, Yarur AJ, Cohen BL, Ciorba MA, Thomas D, Lee SD, Loftus EV Jr, Fudman DI, Abraham BP, Colombel JF, Deepak P. Systematic Review With Meta-analysis: Safety and Effectiveness of Combining Biologics and Small Molecules in Inflammatory Bowel Disease. *Crohns Colitis 360* 2022; **4**: otac002 [PMID: 35310082 DOI: 10.1093/crocol/otac002]
17 **Abreu MT**. Combining Biologic Agents in Inflammatory Bowel Disease. *Gastroenterol Hepatol (N Y)* 2019; **15**: 549-551 [PMID: 31802979]
18 **Gold SL**, Steinlauf AF. Efficacy and Safety of Dual Biologic Therapy in Patients With Inflammatory Bowel Disease: A Review of the Literature. *Gastroenterol Hepatol (N Y)* 2021; **17**: 406-414 [PMID: 34602905]
19 **Ahmed W**, Galati J, Kumar A, Christos PJ, Longman R, Lukin DJ, Scherl E, Battat R. Dual Biologic or Small Molecule Therapy for Treatment of Inflammatory Bowel Disease: A Systematic Review and Meta-analysis. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2022; **20**: e361-e379 [PMID: 33798711 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2021.03.034]
20 **Sands BE**, Kozarek R, Spainhour J, Barish CF, Becker S, Goldberg L, Katz S, Goldblum R, Harrigan R, Hilton D, Hanauer SB. Safety and tolerability of concurrent natalizumab treatment for patients with Crohn's disease not in remission while receiving infliximab. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2007; **13**: 2-11 [PMID: 17206633 DOI: 10.1002/ibd.20014]
21 **Colombel JF**, Sandborn WJ, Reinisch W, Mantzaris GJ, Kornbluth A, Rachmilewitz D, Lichtiger S, D'Haens G, Diamond RH, Broussard DL, Tang KL, van der Woude CJ, Rutgeerts P; SONIC Study Group. Infliximab, azathioprine, or combination therapy for Crohn's disease. *N Engl J Med* 2010; **362**: 1383-1395 [PMID: 20393175 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa0904492]
22 **Buer LCT**, Høivik ML, Warren DJ, Medhus AW, Moum BA. Combining Anti-TNF-α and Vedolizumab in the Treatment of Inflammatory Bowel Disease: A Case Series. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2018; **24**: 997-1004 [PMID: 29668901 DOI: 10.1093/ibd/izx110]
23 **Mao EJ**, Lewin S, Terdiman JP, Beck K. Safety of dual biological therapy in Crohn's disease: a case series of vedolizumab in combination with other biologics. *BMJ Open Gastroenterol* 2018; **5**: e000243 [PMID: 30538822 DOI: 10.1136/bmjgast-2018-000243]
24 **Kwapisz L**, Raffals LE, Bruining DH, Pardi DS, Tremaine WJ, Kane SV, Papadakis KA, Coelho-Prabhu N, Kisiel JB, Heron V, Faubion WA, Loftus EV Jr. Combination Biologic Therapy in Inflammatory Bowel Disease: Experience From a Tertiary Care Center. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2021; **19**: 616-617 [PMID: 32068149 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2020.02.017]
25 **Olbjørn C**, Rove JB, Jahnsen J. Combination of Biological Agents in Moderate to Severe Pediatric Inflammatory Bowel Disease: A Case Series and Review of the Literature. *Paediatr Drugs* 2020; **22**: 409-416 [PMID: 32378002 DOI: 10.1007/s40272-020-00396-1]
26 **Fumery M**, Yzet C, Brazier F. Letter: combination of biologics in inflammatory bowel diseases. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2020; **52**: 566-567 [PMID: 32656825 DOI: 10.1111/apt.15891]

27 **Glassner K**, Oglat A, Duran A, Koduru P, Perry C, Wilhite A, Abraham BP. The use of combination biological or small molecule therapy in inflammatory bowel disease: A retrospective cohort study. *J Dig Dis* 2020; **21**: 264-271 [PMID: 32324969 DOI: 10.1111/1751-2980.12867]

28 **Privitera G**, Onali S, Pugliese D, Renna S, Savarino E, Viola A, Ribaldone DG, Buda A, Bezzio C, Fiorino G, Fantini MC, Scaldaferri F, Guidi L, Danese S, Gasbarrini A, Orlando A, Armuzzi A. Dual Targeted Therapy: a possible option for the management of refractory Inflammatory Bowel Disease. *J Crohns Colitis* 2020 [PMID: 32674156 DOI: 10.1093/ecco-jcc/jjaa149]

29 **Yang E**, Panaccione N, Whitmire N, Dulai PS, Vande Casteele N, Singh S, Boland BS, Collins A, Sandborn WJ, Panaccione R, Battat R. Efficacy and safety of simultaneous treatment with two biologic medications in refractory Crohn's disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2020; **51**: 1031-1038 [PMID: 32329532 DOI: 10.1111/apt.15719]

30 **Alayo QA**, Khatiwada A, Patel A, Zulfiqar M, Gremida A, Gutierrez A, Rood RP, Ciorba MA, Christophi G, Deepak P. Effectiveness and Safety of Combining Tofacitinib With a Biologic in Patients With Refractory Inflammatory Bowel Diseases. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2021; **27**: 1698-1702 [PMID: 34037225 DOI: 10.1093/ibd/izab112]

31 **Dolinger MT**, Spencer EA, Lai J, Dunkin D, Dubinsky MC. Dual Biologic and Small Molecule Therapy for the Treatment of Refractory Pediatric Inflammatory Bowel Disease. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2021; **27**: 1210-1214 [PMID: 33125058 DOI: 10.1093/ibd/izaa277]

32 **Llano EM**, Shrestha S, Burstein E, Boktor M, Fudman DI. Favorable outcomes combining vedolizumab with other biologics or tofacitinib for treatment of inflammatory bowel disease. *Crohns Colitis 360* 2021; **3**: otab030 [DOI: 10.1093/crocol/otab030]

33 **Goessens L**, Colombel JF, Outtier A, Ferrante M, Sabino J, Judge C, Saeidi R, Rabbitt L, Armuzzi A, Domenech E, Michalopoulos G, Cremer A, García-Alonso FJ, Molnar T, Karmiris K, Gecse K, Van Oostrom J, Löwenberg M, Farkas K, Atreya R, Ribaldone DG, Selinger C, Hoentjen F, Bihin B, Sebastian S; European COMBIO study group, Rahier JF. Safety and efficacy of combining biologics or small molecules for inflammatory bowel disease or immune-mediated inflammatory diseases: A European retrospective observational study. *United European Gastroenterol J* 2021; **9**: 1136-1147 [PMID: 34694746 DOI: 10.1002/ueg2.12170]

34 **Howard G**, Weiner D, Bar-Or I, Levine A. Dual biologic therapy with Vedolizumab and Ustekinumab for refractory Crohn's disease in children. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2022; **34**: 372-374 [PMID: 34034281 DOI: 10.1097/MEG.0000000000002203]

35 **Lee SD**, Singla A, Harper J, Barahimi M, Jacobs J, Kamp KJ, Clark-Snustad KD. Safety and Efficacy of Tofacitinib in Combination With Biologic Therapy for Refractory Crohn's Disease. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2022; **28**: 309-313 [PMID: 34347103 DOI: 10.1093/ibd/izab176]

36 **Ribaldone DG**, Pellicano R, Vernero M, Caviglia GP, Saracco GM, Morino M, Astegiano M. Dual biological therapy with anti-TNF, vedolizumab or ustekinumab in inflammatory bowel disease: a systematic review with pool analysis. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2019; **54**: 407-413 [PMID: 30945576 DOI: 10.1080/00365521.2019.1597159]

37 **Wlazlo M**, Kierkuś J. Dual Biologic Therapy for the Treatment of Pediatric Inflammatory Bowel Disease: A Review of the Literature. *J Clin Med* 2022; **11** [PMID: 35407612 DOI: 10.3390/jcm11072004]

38 **Wang Y**, Wang J, Pekow J, Dalal S, Cohen RD, Ollech J, Israel A, Shogan BD, Micic D, Cannon L, Umanskiy K, Hurst R, Hyman N, Rubin DT, Sakuraba A. Outcome of elective switching to vedolizumab in inflammatory bowel disease patients under tumor necrosis factor antagonist-maintained clinical remission. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2019; **34**: 2090-2095 [PMID: 31169926 DOI: 10.1111/jgh.14751]

39 **Gubatan J**, Levitte S, Patel A, Balabanis T, Wei MT, Sinha SR. Artificial intelligence applications in inflammatory bowel disease: Emerging technologies and future directions. *World J Gastroenterol* 2021; **27**: 1920-1935 [PMID: 34007130 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v27.i17.1920]

40 **Sazonovs A**, Kennedy NA, Moutsianas L, Heap GA, Rice DL, Reppell M, Bewshea CM, Chanchlani N, Walker GJ, Perry MH, McDonald TJ, Lees CW, Cummings JRF, Parkes M, Mansfield JC, Irving PM, Barrett JC, McGovern D, Goodhand JR, Anderson CA, Ahmad T; PANTS Consortium. HLA-DQA1*05 Carriage Associated With Development of Anti-Drug Antibodies to Infliximab and Adalimumab in Patients With Crohn's Disease. *Gastroenterology* 2020; **158**: 189-199 [PMID: 31600487 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2019.09.041]

41 **Schmitt H**, Billmeier U, Dieterich W, Rath T, Sonnewald S, Reid S, Hirschmann S, Hildner K, Waldner MJ, Mudter J, Hartmann A, Grützmann R, Neufert C, Münster T, Neurath MF, Atreya R. Expansion of IL-23 receptor bearing TNFR2+ T cells is associated with molecular resistance to anti-TNF therapy in Crohn's disease. *Gut* 2019; **68**: 814-828 [PMID: 29848778 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2017-315671]

42 Efficacy and Safety of Combination Induction Therapy With Guselkumab and Golimumab in Participants With Moderately to Severely Active Ulcerative Colitis: Results Through Week 12 of a Phase 2a Randomized, Double-Blind, Active-Controlled, Parallel-Group, Multicenter, Proof-of-Concept Study. *Gastroenterol Hepatol (N Y)* 2022; **18**: 9-10 [PMID: 35610992]

43 A Study of Combination Therapy with Guselkumab and Golimumab in Participants with Moderately to Severely Active Ulcerative Colitis. [accessed 2022 Sept 10]. In: ClinicalTrials.gov [Internet]. Bethesda (MD): U.S. National Library of Medicine. Available from: http://clinicaltrials.gov/show/NCT05242484 ClinicalTrials.gov Identifier: NCT05242484

44 Triple Combination Therapy in High-Risk Crohn's Disease. [accessed 2022 Sept 10]. In: ClinicalTrials.gov [Internet]. Bethesda (MD): U.S. National Library of Medicine. Available from: http://clinicaltrials.gov/show/NCT02764762 ClinicalTrials.gov Identifier: NCT02764762

45 **Sandborn WJ**, D'Haens GR, Reinisch W, Panés J, Chan D, Gonzalez S, Weisel K, Germinaro M, Frustaci ME, Yang Z, Adedokun OJ, Han C, Panaccione R, Hisamatsu T, Danese S, Rubin DT, Sands BE, Afzali A, Andrews JM, Feagan BG; GALAXI-1 Investigators. Guselkumab for the Treatment of Crohn's Disease: Induction Results From the Phase 2 GALAXI-1 Study. *Gastroenterology* 2022; **162**: 1650-1664.e8 [PMID: 35134323 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2022.01.047]

46 **Buisson A**, Nachury M, Reymond M, Yzet C, Wils P, Payen K, Laugie M, Manlay L, Mathieu N, Pereira B, Fumery M. Effectiveness of Switching From Intravenous to Subcutaneous Infliximab in Patients With Inflammatory Bowel Diseases: the REMSWITCH Study. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2022 [PMID: 35987302 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2022.08.011]

47 **Sandborn WJ**, Baert F, Danese S, Krznarić Ž, Kobayashi T, Yao X, Chen J, Rosario M, Bhatia S, Kisfalvi K, D'Haens G, Vermeire S. Efficacy and Safety of Vedolizumab Subcutaneous Formulation in a Randomized Trial of Patients With Ulcerative Colitis. *Gastroenterology* 2020; **158**: 562-572.e12 [PMID: 31470005 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2019.08.027]

48 **Parada Venegas D**, De la Fuente MK, Landskron G, González MJ, Quera R, Dijkstra G, Harmsen HJM, Faber KN, Hermoso MA. Short Chain Fatty Acids (SCFAs)-Mediated Gut Epithelial and Immune Regulation and Its Relevance for Inflammatory Bowel Diseases. *Front Immunol* 2019; **10**: 277 [PMID: 30915065 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.00277]

49 **Pu D**, Zhang Z, Feng B. Alterations and Potential Applications of Gut Microbiota in Biological Therapy for Inflammatory Bowel Diseases. *Front Pharmacol* 2022; **13**: 906419 [PMID: 35734396 DOI: 10.3389/fphar.2022.906419]

50 **Windsor JW**, Kaplan GG. Evolving Epidemiology of IBD. *Curr Gastroenterol Rep* 2019; **21**: 40 [PMID: 31338613 DOI: 10.1007/s11894-019-0705-6]

51 **Kaplan GG**. The global burden of IBD: from 2015 to 2025. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2015; **12**: 720-727 [PMID: 26323879 DOI: 10.1038/nrgastro.2015.150]

52 **Kotze PG**, Underwood FE, Damião AOMC, Ferraz JGP, Saad-Hossne R, Toro M, Iade B, Bosques-Padilla F, Teixeira FV, Juliao-Banos F, Simian D, Ghosh S, Panaccione R, Ng SC, Kaplan GG. Progression of Inflammatory Bowel Diseases Throughout Latin America and the Caribbean: A Systematic Review. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2020; **18**: 304-312 [PMID: 31252191 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2019.06.030]

53 **Santiago M**, Dias CC, Alves C, Ministro P, Gonçalves R, Carvalho D, Portela F, Correia L, Lago P, Magro F. The Magnitude of Crohn's Disease Direct Costs in Health Care Systems (from Different Perspectives): A Systematic Review. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2022; **28**: 1527-1536 [PMID: 35179190 DOI: 10.1093/ibd/izab334]

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Gastroenterol 2022 December 21; 28(47): 6752-6768

DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6752

ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Basic Study

Interleukin-34 deficiency aggravates development of colitis and colitis-associated cancer in mice

Zhao-Xiu Liu, Wei-Jie Chen, Yang Wang, Bing-Qian Chen, Yi-Cun Liu, Tiao-Chun Cheng, Lei-Lei Luo, Lin Chen, Lin-Ling Ju, Yuan Liu, Ming Li, Nan Feng, Jian-Guo Shao, Zhao-Lian Bian

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Provenance and peer review: Unsolicited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): 0
Grade C (Good): C, C
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: Sahin Y, Turkey; Sitkin S, Russia

Received: August 29, 2022
Peer-review started: August 29, 2022
First decision: October 20, 2022
Revised: November 2, 2022
Accepted: November 22, 2022
Article in press: November 22, 2022
Published online: December 21, 2022

Zhao-Xiu Liu, Department of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Affiliated Hospital of Nantong University, Nantong 226001, Jiangsu Province, China

Wei-Jie Chen, Yang Wang, Bing-Qian Chen, Yi-Cun Liu, Tiao-Chun Cheng, Medical School, Nantong University, Nantong 226001, Jiangsu Province, China

Lei-Lei Luo, Jian-Guo Shao, Zhao-Lian Bian, Department of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Nantong Third People's Hospital, Affiliated Nantong Hospital 3 of Nantong University, Nantong 226006, Jiangsu Province, China

Lin Chen, Lin-Ling Ju, Nantong Institute of Liver Diseases, Nantong Third People's Hospital, Affiliated Nantong Hospital 3 of Nantong University, Nantong 226006, Jiangsu Province, China

Yuan Liu, Department of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, The Sixth People's Hospital Affiliated to Shanghai Jiaotong University, Shanghai 200233, China

Ming Li, Department of Traditional Chinese Medicine, Nantong Third People's Hospital, Affiliated Nantong Hospital 3 of Nantong University, Nantong 226006, Jiangsu Province, China

Nan Feng, Division of Emergency, Ren Ji Hospital, School of Medicine, Shanghai Jiao Tong University, Shanghai 200120, China

Corresponding author: Zhao-Lian Bian, MD, PhD, Associate Chief Physician, Associate Professor, Doctor, Department of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Nantong Third People's Hospital, Affiliated Nantong Hospital 3 of Nantong University, No. 60 Middle Qingnian Road, Nantong 226006, Jiangsu Province, China. bianzhaolian1998@163.com

Abstract

BACKGROUND

Although expression of interleukin (IL)-34 is upregulated in active ulcerative colitis (UC), the molecular function and underlying mechanism are largely unclear.

AIM

To investigate the function of IL-34 in acute colitis, in a wound healing model and

in colitis-associated cancer in IL-34-deficient mice.

METHODS

Colitis was induced by administration of dextran sodium sulfate (DSS), and carcinogenesis was induced by azoxymethane (AOM). Whether the impact of IL-34 on colitis was dependent on macrophages was validated by depletion of macrophages in a murine model. The association between IL-34 expression and epithelial proliferation was studied in patients with active UC.

RESULTS

IL-34 deficiency aggravated murine colitis in acute colitis and in wound healing phase. The effect of IL-34 on experimental colitis was not dependent on macrophage differentiation and polarization. IL-34-deficient mice developed more tumors than wild-type mice following administration of AOM and DSS. No significant difference was shown in degree of cellular differentiation in tumors between wild-type and IL-34-deficient mice. IL-34 was dramatically increased in the active UC patients as previously reported. More importantly, expression of IL-34 was positively correlated with epithelial cell proliferation in patients with UC.

CONCLUSION

IL-34 deficiency exacerbates colonic inflammation and accelerates colitis-associated carcinogenesis in mice. It might be served as a potential therapeutic target in UC.

Key Words: Interleukin-34; Ulcerative colitis; Mucosal healing; Colitis-associated cancer; Macrophage; Murine model

©The Author(s) 2022. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core Tip: This study highlights the role of interleukin (IL)-34 in acute experimental colitis and wound healing phase in mice. We found that IL-34 did not drive inflammatory response and tissue destruction in physiological conditions, but protects the host from inflammatory injury and reduces the risk of colitis-associated cancer. IL-34 might serve as a potential therapeutic target for inducing mucosal healing in treatment of ulcerative colitis (UC) and reducing colitis-associated cancer in UC.

Citation: Liu ZX, Chen WJ, Wang Y, Chen BQ, Liu YC, Cheng TC, Luo LL, Chen L, Ju LL, Liu Y, Li M, Feng N, Shao JG, Bian ZL. Interleukin-34 deficiency aggravates development of colitis and colitis-associated cancer in mice. *World J Gastroenterol* 2022; 28(47): 6752-6768

URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v28/i47/6752.htm

DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6752

INTRODUCTION

Ulcerative colitis (UC) is a chronic progressive recurrent intestinal inflammatory disorder characterized by bloody diarrhea and abdominal pain[1]. UC is an important promoter of colorectal cancer[2]. The exact pathogenesis of UC remains unclear. It is currently assumed that it involves immunological derangement of the gut microbiota in genetically predisposed individuals after exposure to environmental factors[1]. Cytokines exert multiple effects and participate in the pathogenesis of colitis[3]. Identification of distinctive cytokines involved in immunopathogenesis of UC has become a hot spot for the development of biological therapies[4].

Colony-stimulating factor-1 receptor (CSF-1R) signaling regulates intestinal and colon development, gut homeostasis and inflammatory reaction[5]. Interleukin (IL)-34 was discovered in 2008 as a specific ligand for CSF-1R independent of CSF-1[6,7]. Human IL-34 is a homodimeric glycoprotein that consists of 242 amino acids produced by various cell types including epithelial, endothelial and immune cells, and fibroblasts[8]. Secreted IL-34 binds to the extracellular domains of CSF-1R and protein-tyrosine phosphatase, the other receptor for IL-34, which is regulated by syndecan-1, which results in autophosphorylation of its intracellular tyrosine residues and activates several signaling pathways controlling cell biological function[8,9]. IL-34 functions as a pivotal regulator in cell differentiation, proliferation and survival in the mononuclear phagocyte system[10]. Additionally, IL-34 mediates the crosstalk between the innate and adaptive immune systems during inflammation[8,11].

Under normal circumstances, IL-34 is primarily expressed in a tissue-specific manner in keratinocytes and neurons[8]. In pathological status, the expression pattern is changed. Increased IL-34 expression positively associates with disease progression, severity and chronicity in autoimmune diseases such as

rheumatoid arthritis and Sjogren's syndrome[12]. In contrast, IL-34 has demonstrated beneficial effects in other diseases. IL-34 has been identified as a new mediator to induce transplant tolerance by targeting suppressive T regulatory cells[13]. Therefore, the multiple function of IL-34 in different diseases is complex, disputable, and context-dependent[8].

The involvement of IL-34 in inflammatory bowel disease (IBD) has also drawn attention recently. Higher expression of IL-34 in human ileum compared with colon has been revealed[14]. In human and experimental colitis, the mRNA and protein level of IL-34 is markedly increased in inflamed mucosa compared to that in the matched normal mucosa and in healthy controls[14]. Recently, it has been proposed that IL-34 plays a prominent role in intestinal fibrogenesis *via* a p38 mitogen-activated-protein-kinase-dependent mechanism in Crohn's disease[15]. *In vitro,* tumor necrosis factor (TNF)-α significantly upregulates expression of IL-34 in lamina propria mononuclear cells (LPMCs) *via* NF-kB signaling. Intriguingly, LPMCs treated with IL-34 increase expression of proinflammatory cytokines such as IL-6, TNF-α and chemokine CC ligand 20[14]. Accordingly, IL-34 neutralization decreases synthesis of TNF-α and IL-6 in IBD mucosal explants[14]. Therefore, it has been noted that IL-34 sustains gut inflammation *via* regulating positive feedback of proinflammatory cytokine production *in vitro*[8, 14]. On the contrary, IL-34 has previously demonstrated immunosuppressive characteristics that contribute to inflammation improvement by inducing differentiation of monocytes into M2 phenotype [16]. M2 macrophages mediate immunotolerance and promote wound healing in experimental colitis *in vivo*[17,18]. IL-34 is upregulated in colon cancer and sustains the protumorigenic signals by inducing proliferation of cancer cells *via* extracellular signal-regulated kinase (ERK) 1/2 or cancer-associated fibroblasts[19,20]. Whether IL-34 is "friend or foe" in the pathogenesis of UC remains to be explored. In this study, we investigated the potential role of IL-34 in experimental colitis, colitis-associated carcinogenesis and UC.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Animal experiment

IL-34-deficient mice were generated in C57BL/6J mice by using CRISPR/Cas9 technology (Beijing Cas Gene Biotech, Beijing, China). Gene targeting technology was applied to delete exons 3-5 in the *IL-34* gene and led to frameshift mutation of *IL-34* gene. IL-34-deficient and C57BL/6J wild-type mice were bred and maintained in a specific-pathogen-free animal facility in the Laboratory Animal Center of Nantong University. All animal experiments were approved by the Institutional Ethics Committee of Nantong University (Date: 21/12/2015, Number: S20151221-908).

Acute colitis was induced by oral administration of 3% (M/V) dextran sulfate sodium (DSS, MW: 36 000-50 000; MP Biologicals, LLC, California, United States) in drinking water for 7 d. The mice were killed to obtain colon tissues at the indicated time or until day 16 to record the mortality. The murine wound healing model was established by oral administration of 3% DSS for 5 d and then switched to normal water for the following 5 d. The mice were killed on day 8 or 10. Colitis-associated cancer was induced by administration of the carcinogen azoxymethane (AOM; Sigma, Darmstadt, Germany) and repeated administration of DSS. The mice were given a single injection of AOM (10 mg/kg). Seven days later, mice were administrated 1.25% DSS (w/v) in drinking water for seven consecutive days, and fresh drinking water for 14 d. Seven days of DSS and 14 d of fresh water was repeated four times as a cycle [21]. The mice were killed, and the incidence rate of tumors was analyzed. Macrophage depletion from murine colons *in vivo* was performed as described previously[22]. In brief, 200 μL clodronate liposomes (Liposoma Research, Amsterdam, Netherlands) were intraperitoneally injected into mice 2 d prior to onset of experimental colitis and every 2 d during the process.

The percentage of body weight change of each mouse was recorded throughout the duration of DSS administration. Fresh feces from mice were collected for occult blood tests using a fecal occult blood kit (Nanjing Jiancheng Bioengineering, Jiangsu, China). The clinical score index of the murine model consisted of stool consistency and fecal occult blood, as previously described[23].

Human tissue

Human tissue specimens were obtained from 40 adult patients with active UC and 20 healthy controls during colonoscopy in Nantong Third People's Hospital Affiliated to Nantong University and Affiliated Hospital of Nantong University between January 2014 and August 2015. Histopathology was evaluated by an experienced pathologist. This study was approved by the Ethics Committee of Nantong Third People's Hospital Affiliated to Nantong University and Affiliated Hospital of Nantong University, and all people signed an informed consent form. All patients met the diagnostic criteria that were in line with the Consensus on Diagnosis and Management of Inflammatory Bowel Disease (2018, Beijing, China). The patients did not receive any therapy before colonoscopy. More details on the patients' characteristics can be found in Supplementary Table 1.

Histopathology

The entire colon was harvested for measuring the length. The colon was washed in phosphate-buffer saline and fixed in 10% formaldehyde solution for 24 h. Hematoxylin-eosin (H&E) staining was performed on the tissue sections. The inflammatory score was as follows: Presence of occasional inflammatory cells in the lamina propria was scored as 0; increased numbers of inflammatory cells in the lamina propria was scored as 1; confluence of inflammatory cells extending into the submucosa was scored as 2; and transmural extension of the infiltrate was scored as 3. For tissue damage score, no mucosal damage was scored as 0; lymphoepithelial lesions were scored as 1; surface mucosal erosion or focal ulceration was scored as 2; and extensive mucosal damage and extension into deeper structures of the bowel wall was scored as 3. The combined histological score was calculated by inflammatory and tissue damage score, and ranged from 0 (no changes) to 6 (extensive infiltration and tissue damage).

Immunohistochemistry

The colonic tissues were sectioned into 4-μm slices following fixation with 10% formaldehyde and embedded in paraffin. Immunohistochemical staining was conducted as in our previous study[24]. Tissue slices were incubated with 3% H_2O_2 for 15 min after deparaffinization. Antigen was retrieved in citrate buffer (pH 6.0; Maxim Biotechnologies, Fuzhou, China) in a microwave for 10 min. Nonimmune 10% goat serum (Jackson ImmunoResearch Laboratories, West Grove, PA, United States) was used to block nonspecific reactions. The sections were incubated with primary antibodies: rabbit anti human/mouse IL34, 1:100 (Abcam, Cambridge, MA, United States); rabbit anti human/mouse Ki-67 antibody, 1:200 (Abcam); rabbit anti mouse CSF1-R 1:1000 (Abcam); and rabbit anti-mouse CD68, 1:100 (Boster Biological Technology, Wuhan, China) overnight at 4 °C. On the second day, the sections were incubated with horseradish-peroxidase-conjugated secondary antibody (Shanghai Long Island Biotechnology, Shanghai, China) for 30 min at room temperature. 3, 3′-diaminobenzidine (Maxim Biotechnologies) was applied for 30 s. Hematoxylin was applied for contrast staining. Proliferation index of Ki-67 was defined as the percentage of Ki-67-positive cells in crypts (CK4) within the random visual scope. Positive index of CSF1-R was defined as the percentage of CSF1-R-positive cells in colonic mucosa within the random visual scope. All the tissue sections were analyzed by optical microscopy (IX73; Olympus, Tokyo, Japan) by experienced pathologists.

TUNEL assay

Colonic tissue sections were prepared as described above. Apoptosis was analyzed by fluorescence microscopy according to standard procedure using *in situ* cell death detection (Roche, Basel, Switzerland). Five randomly optical fields were chosen for further analysis.

RNA isolation and quantitative real-time PCR

Total RNA was extracted from the indicated murine colonic tissues by Trizol Reagent (TaKaRa Bio, Dalian, China). RNA samples were reverse-transcribed into cDNA with a PrimeScript™RT Master Mix kit (TaKaRa Bio). cDNA samples were detected using a SYBR®Premix Ex Taq™II kit (TaKaRa Bio) on CFX96 Real-Time PCR Detection System (Bio-Rad Laboratories, Hercules, CA, United States). PCR was performed at 95 °C for 30 s, and the samples were subjected to 40 cycles of amplification at 95 °C for 5 s and 60 °C for 30 s. Expression of target genes was normalized to β-actin. Gene expression was calculated using the $2^{-\Delta\Delta Ct}$ method. All the primers are listed in Supplementary Table 2.

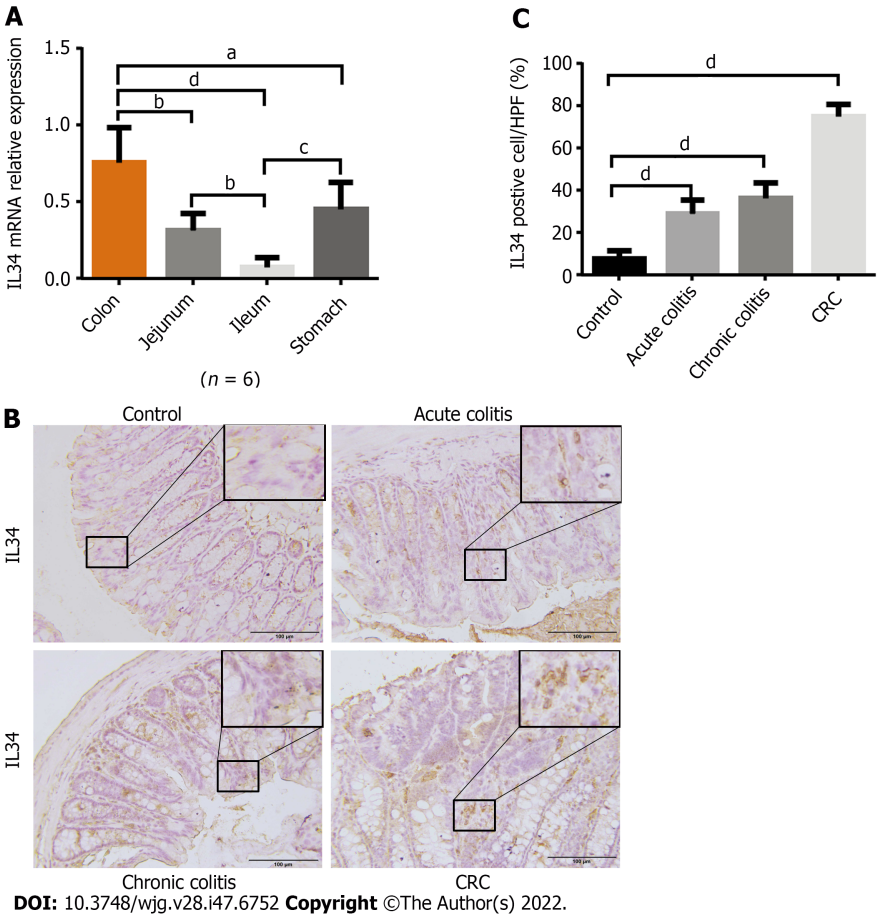
Statistical analysis

Data are presented as mean ± SD. The difference between more than two groups was analyzed using one-way analysis of variance and comparison of two groups was carried out using a *t*-test. Differences in survival between two groups were analyzed by Kaplan-Meier test. All statistical analyses were performed using GraphPad Prism 6.0 (San Diego, CA, United States). $P < 0.05$ was considered statistically significantly.

RESULTS

IL-34 is elevated in colitis and colitis-related cancer

We analyzed IL-34 mRNA expression in gastrointestinal mucosal epithelium in wild-type C57BL/6J mice. Expression of IL-34 was highest in the colon compared with other parts of the digestive tract (Figure 1A). We investigated expression of IL-34 in DSS-induced colitis and AOM-DSS-induced colitis-associated cancer in wild-type mice. Immunohistochemical staining of murine colon tissue revealed that expression of IL-34 was elevated in both acute and chronic colitis, with the highest expression in colitis-associated cancer (Figure 1B and C).

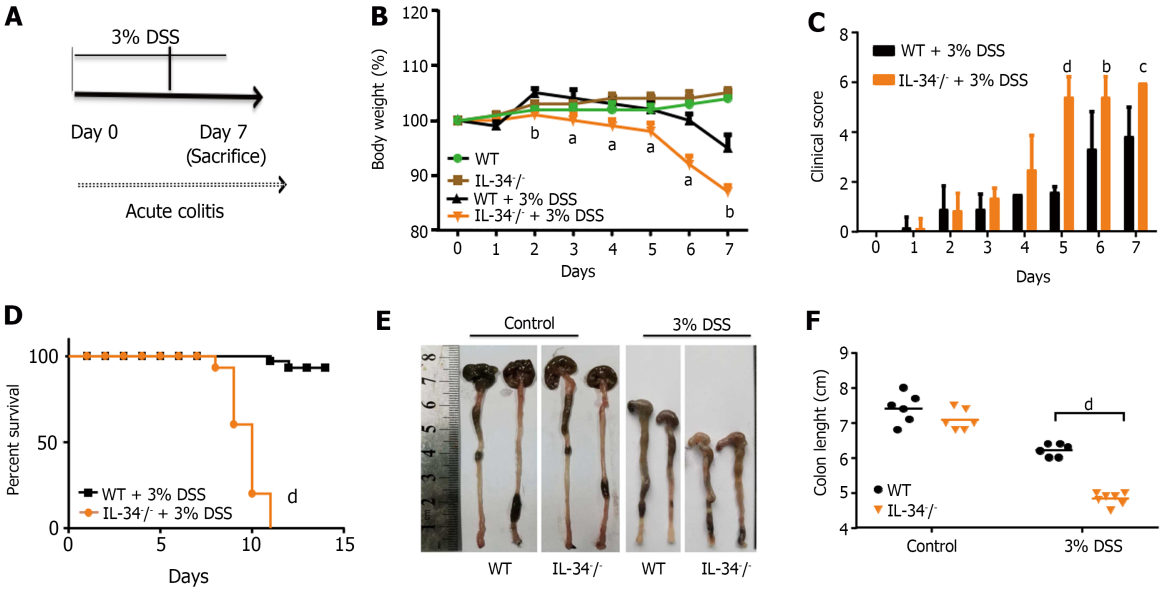


DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6752 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2022.

Figure 1 Interleukin-34 is elevated in colitis and colitis-related cancers. A: Interleukin-34 (IL-34) relative mRNA expression in stomach, jejunum, ileum and colon in wild-type mice (C57BL/6J) (n = 6); B and C: The dynamic of IL-34 expression in dextran sodium sulfate (DSS)-induced colitis and azoxymethane-DSS-induced colorectal cancer in wild-type mice (n = 6 per group); representative IL-34 immunohistochemical staining for healthy control, acute colitis, chronic colitis and colorectal cancer mice (B); the percentage of IL-34-positive cells per high-power field were quantified in colonic tissue of four groups of mice (n = 6 per group) (C). AOM: Azoxymethane; CRC: Colorectal cancer; DSS: Dextran sodium sulfate; IL-34: Interleukin-34. Scale bars = 100 μm. Data depict the mean ± SD. $^{a}P < 0.05$, $^{b}P < 0.01$, $^{c}P < 0.005$, $^{d}P < 0.001$.

IL-34 deficiency increases susceptibility to acute DSS-induced colitis

To determine the role of IL-34 in murine acute experimental colitis, IL-34$^{-/-}$ and wild-type mice were fed with 3% DSS in drinking water for 7 d and then killed (Figure 2A). DSS-fed IL-34$^{-/-}$ mice showed significantly greater body weight loss compared to DSS-fed wild-type mice. The average weight loss in DSS-fed IL-34$^{-/-}$ mice was approximately double than that in the wild-type mice (Figure 2B). IL-34$^{-/-}$ mice displayed a significantly higher clinical score compared to wild-type mice (Figure 2C). Strikingly, the mortality of IL-34$^{-/-}$ mice was 100% (10/10), whereas only 20% (2/10) of the wild-type mice died during the experiment, as illustrated by Kaplan-Meier curves (Figure 2D, $P < 0.001$). Following DSS administration, IL-34$^{-/-}$ mice showed remarkably shorter colon compared to wild-type mice (4.83 cm ± 0.13 cm *vs* 6.27 cm ± 0.14 cm, $P < 0.001$), suggesting more severe colitis in IL-34$^{-/-}$ mice (Figure 2E and F). DSS-fed IL-34$^{-/-}$ mice exhibited more severe inflammation with ulceration and necrotic lesions compared to wild-type mice, while there was no difference in the wild-type or IL-34$^{-/-}$ mice fed with normal water. More inflammatory cells infiltrated the lamina propria and submucosa in DSS-fed IL-34$^{-/-}$ mice. More importantly, the normal tissue architecture damage was more severe in DSS-fed IL-34$^{-/-}$ mice compared with wild-type mice (Figure 3A). Semiquantitative score of histopathology confirmed more severe colitis in DSS-fed IL-34$^{-/-}$ mice compared to DSS-fed wild-type mice (9.17 ± 0.31 *vs* 5.60 ± 1.10, $P < 0.001$) (Figure 3B). The expression of CD68, which serves as a characteristic marker for macrophages, was indistinguishable between IL-34$^{-/-}$ and wild-type mice untreated with DSS (Figure 3C and D). CD68 expression was significantly increased in DSS-fed IL-34$^{-/-}$ mice compared to DSS-fed wild-type controls (Figure 3C and D), which indicated worsening colitis. IL-1β, IL-23, and macrophage colony-stimulating factor levels were significantly upregulated in DSS-treated IL-34$^{-/-}$ mice compared to wild-type mice treated with DSS (Figure 3E).



DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6752 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2022.

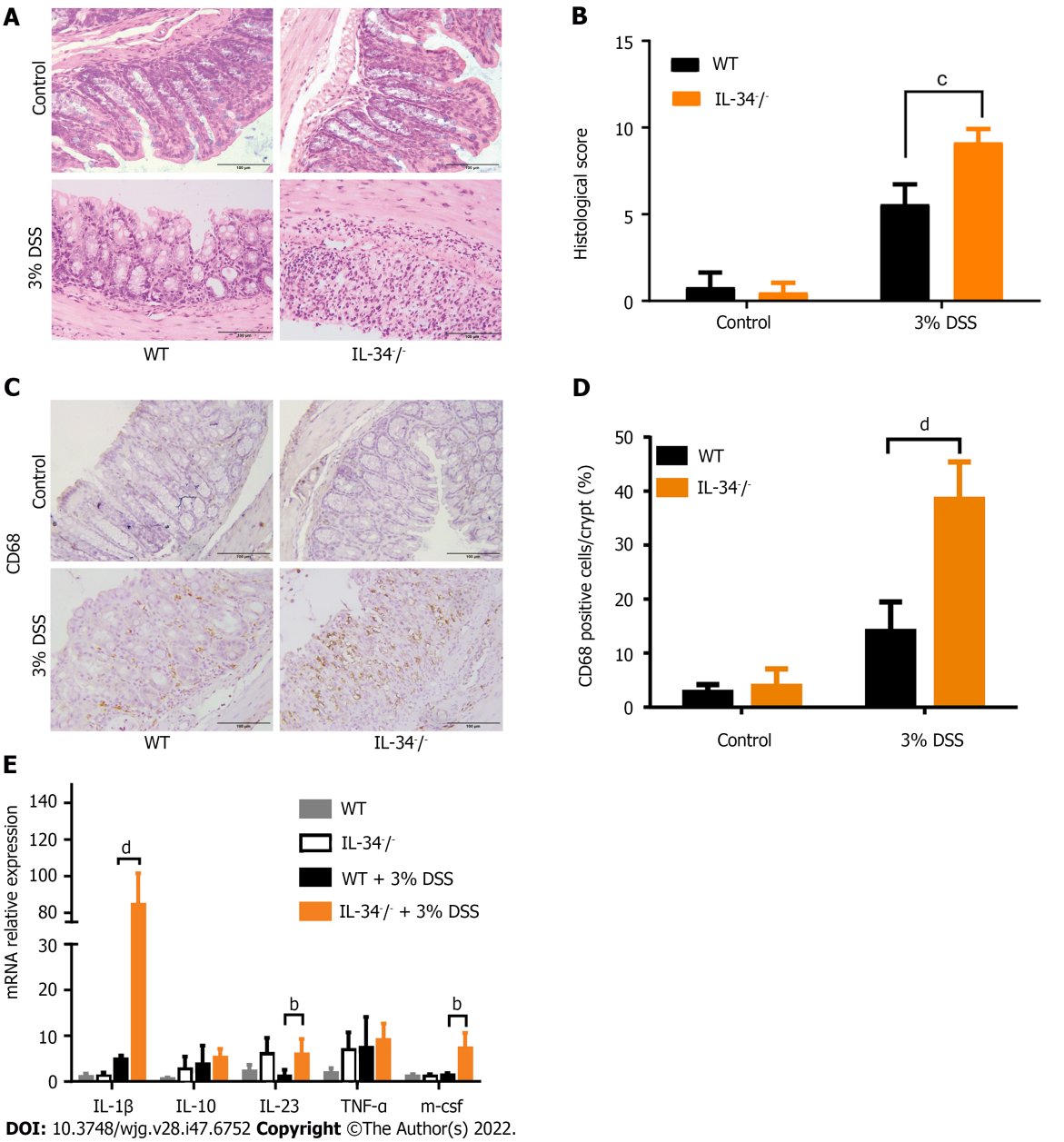
Figure 2 Interleukin-34 deficiency aggravates acute colitis induced by dextran sodium sulfate. A: Schematic of the design of acute dextran sodium sulfate (DSS)-induced colitis model. IL-34$^{-/-}$ and WT mice were fed with a 3% DSS solution in drinking water for 7 d and then sacrificed (n = 6 or 7 per group); B: Body weight was represented as a percentage of starting weight in IL-34$^{-/-}$ and WT mice after administration of 3% DSS (n = 6 or 7 per group); C: The clinical score of IL-34$^{-/-}$ and WT mice treated with 3% DSS (n = 6 or 7 per group). Data depict the mean ± SD; D: Kaplan-Meier survival curves were plotted in IL-34$^{-/-}$ and WT mice administrated with 3% DSS for 15 d (n = 10 per group); E and F: Colon length was measured in IL-34$^{-/-}$ and WT mice fed with 3% DSS for 7 d (n = 6 or 7 per group). DSS: Dextran sodium sulfate; IL-34: Interleukin-34; WT: Wild-type. Data depict the mean ± SD. $^{a}P < 0.05$, $^{b}P < 0.01$, $^{c}P < 0.005$, $^{d}P < 0.001$.

IL-34 deficiency inhibits proliferation and promotes apoptosis of colonic epithelium in DSS-induced colitis

Prior to DSS administration, the levels of colonic epithelium proliferation and apoptosis were both comparable between wild-type and IL-34$^{-/-}$ mice (Figure 4A-D). A marked reduction in colonic epithelial cells stained positive for Ki-67 was detected in DSS-fed IL-34$^{-/-}$ mice compared to DSS-fed wild-type mice (Figure 4A and B). A marked increased in colonic epithelial cell apoptosis was noted in DSS-fed IL-34$^{-/-}$ mice compared to the DSS-fed wild-type mice (Figure 4C and D). We detected expression of three receptors of IL-34 in mouse colonic tissue by real-time quantitative PCR. In DSS-fed IL-34$^{-/-}$ mice, we only observed an increase in the expression of CSF1-R, but the other two receptors of IL34, ptprz1, and syndecan-1, did not change significantly (Figure 4E). By immunohistochemical staining of the mouse colonic tissues, we found that CSF1-R was expressed in epithelial and mesenchymal cells. Compared to the control group, the mice in the DSS-fed group showed an increasing positive index of CSF1-R. Expression of CSF1-R did not show a significant difference between IL-34$^{-/-}$ and wild-type mice untreated with DSS ($P > 0.05$, Figure 4F and G). DSS-fed IL-34$^{-/-}$ mice exhibited a higher index of CSF1-R positivity compared to DSS-fed wild-type mice ($P < 0.01$, Figure 4F and G). CSF1-R acts as a receptor for IL-34 and was compensatorily increased when colitis developed and IL-34 was absent. The results were consistent with the results of quantitative real-time PCR of CSF1R.

Protective effect of IL-34 against acute DSS-induced colitis is not dependent on macrophages

Macrophages were increased in the IL-34$^{-/-}$ mice treated with 3% DSS compared with the wild-type mice. We investigated whether the protective effect of IL-34 in colitis was dependent on macrophages. It is known that IL-34 plays a role in macrophage polarization. We studied the potential role of IL-34 in macrophage polarization by examining the selected markers for M1 and M2 macrophages. Most importantly, there was no difference in the ratio of colonic M2/M1 macrophage markers between DSS-treated wild-type and IL-34$^{-/-}$ mice (Figure 5A). It was speculated that the effect of IL-34 on experimental colitis was not attributed to macrophage polarization. In order to confirm that the protective effect of IL-34 in colitis was not dependent on macrophages, we depleted macrophages by intraperitoneal injection of clodronate liposomes (Clo-lips) in IL-34$^{-/-}$ and wild-type mice (Figure 5B). The macrophage cell marker F4/80 was significantly reduced in colonic mucosa of mice treated with Clo-lips, which confirmed that the liposomes effectively depleted macrophages in the colon (Figure 5C). Despite macrophage depletion, DSS-fed IL-34$^{-/-}$ mice still showed significantly higher clinical score and shorter colon length compared with DSS-fed wild-type mice (Figure 5D-F). Similarly, the histopathological manifestation showed that colitis severity in DSS-fed IL-34$^{-/-}$ mice was more pronounced compared to that in DSS-fed wild-type mice (Figure 5G and H). The inflammatory cytokines remained significantly higher in colonic mucosa of DSS-fed IL-34$^{-/-}$ mice compared with DSS-fed wild-type mice (Figure 5I).

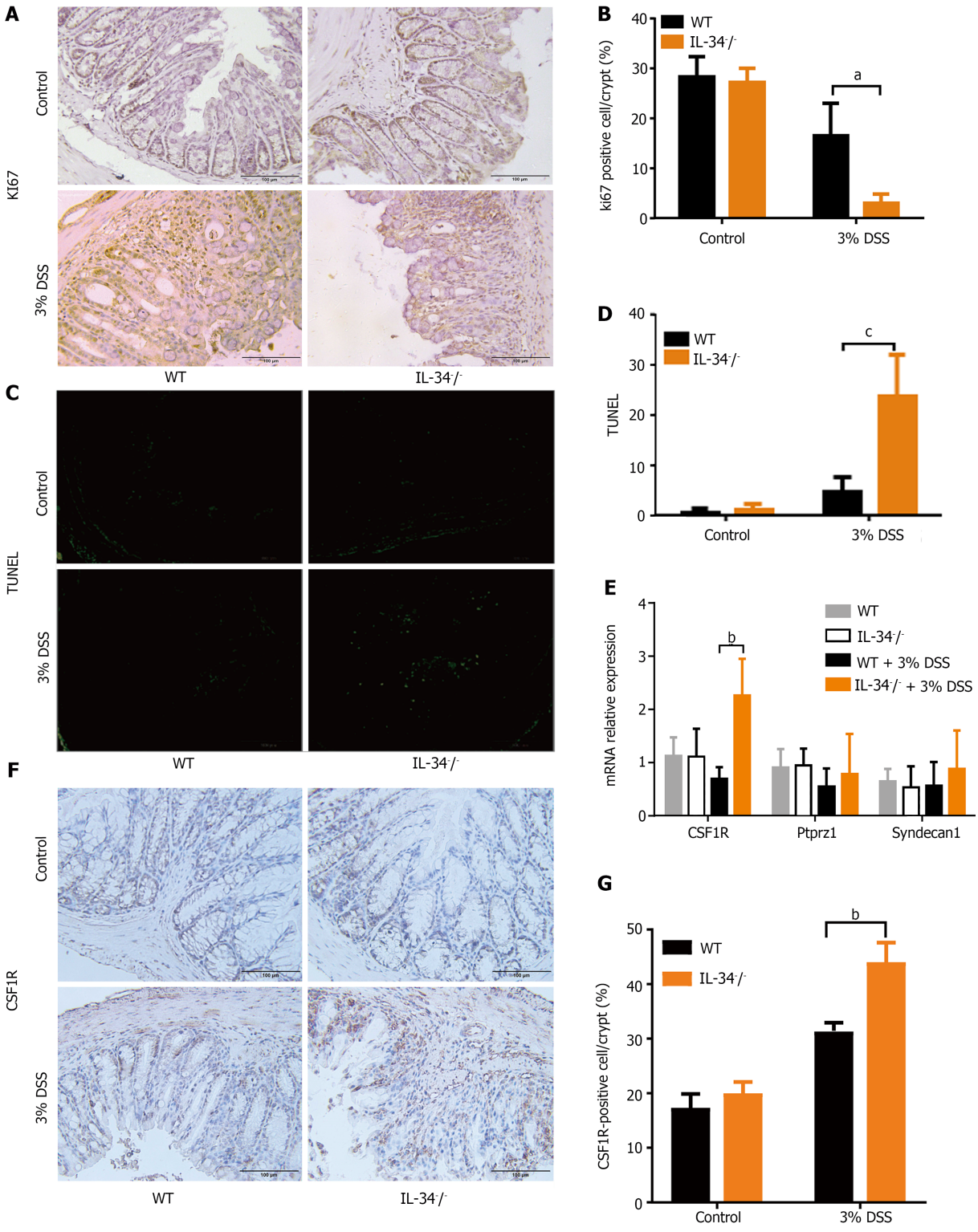


DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6752 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2022.

Figure 3 Interleukin-34 deficiency aggravates acute colitis and increase proinflammatory cytokines. A: Representative microscopic pictures of hematoxylin and eosin-stained colon sections of Interleukin-34 (IL-34)$^{-/-}$ and WT mice fed with 3% DSS for 7 d (n = 6 or 7 per group); B: Histological score for IL-34$^{-/-}$ and WT mice fed with 3% dextran sodium sulfate (DSS); C: Representative photomicrographs of macrophage staining in colon sections of IL-34$^{-/-}$ and WT mice treated with DSS; D: Statistical analysis of CD68-positive cells in IL-34$^{-/-}$ and WT mice treated with DSS; E: mRNA expression of proinflammatory cytokines including IL-1β, IL-10, IL-23, TNF-α, and M-CSF in IL-34$^{-/-}$ and WT mice fed with 3% DSS. DSS: Dextran sodium sulfate; IL: Interleukin; M-CSF: Macrophage colony-stimulating factor; TNF-α: Tumor necrosis factor-α; WT: Wild-type. Scale bars = 100 μm. Data depict the mean ± SD. $^{b}P < 0.01$, $^{c}P < 0.005$, $^{d}P < 0.001$.

IL-34 deficiency delays mucosal healing in a murine model induced by DSS

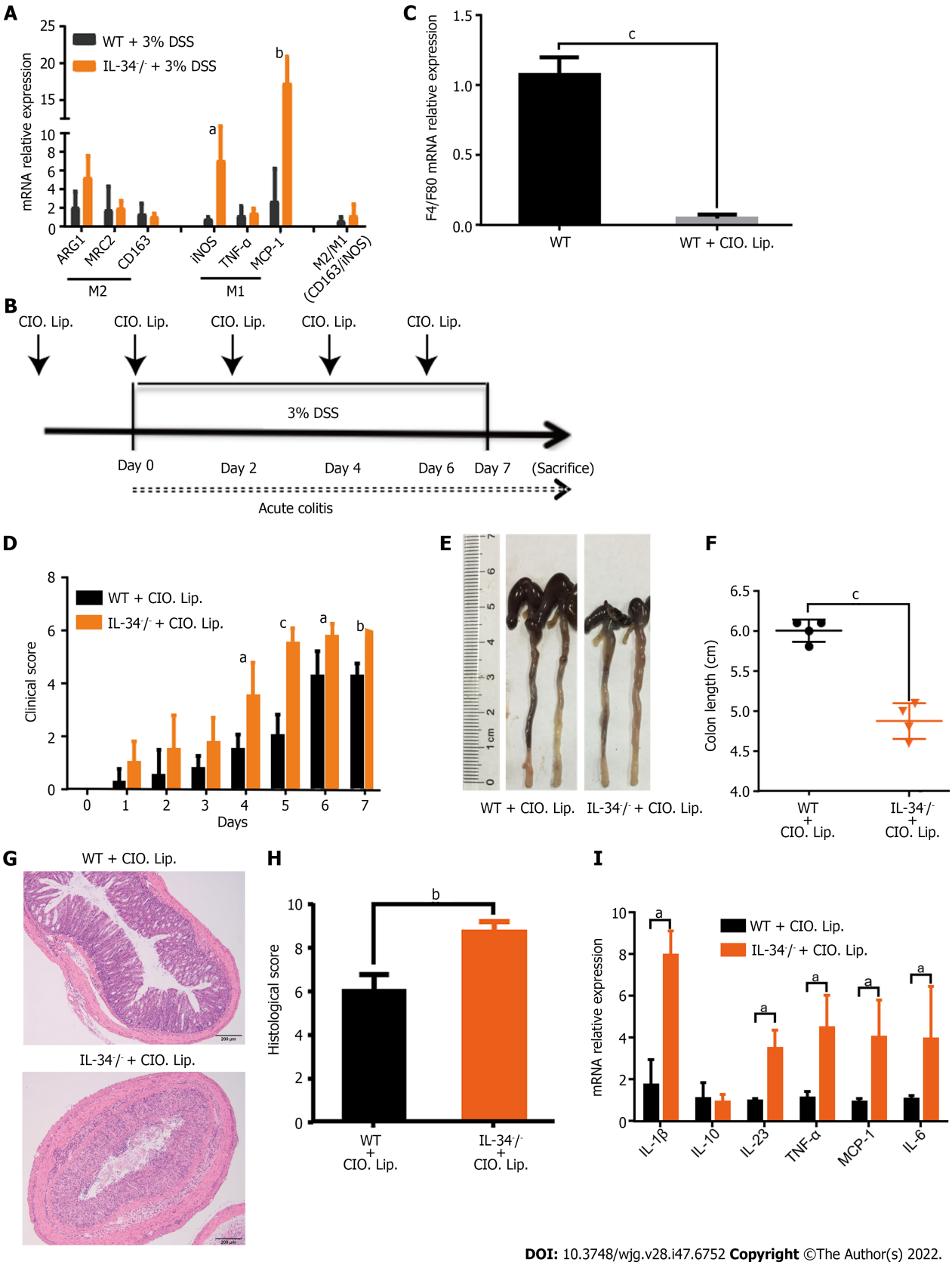
IL-34$^{-/-}$ and wild-type mice were fed with 3% DSS for 5 d and then switched to normal water for the following 5 d to establish a mucosal healing model. The mice in both groups were killed on day 8 or 10 (Figure 6A). The body weight loss was significantly greater in IL-34$^{-/-}$ mice compared to the wild-type control mice. The body weight increased quickly on day 8 in wild-type mice, while it did not recover until day 10 in IL-34$^{-/-}$ mice (Figure 6B). The clinical score was higher in IL-34$^{-/-}$ mice compared to wild-type mice from day 5. The clinical score decreased rapidly from day 7 in wild-type mice, while it was falling slowly from day 8 in IL-34$^{-/-}$ mice (Figure 6C). IL-34$^{-/-}$ mice showed remarkably shorter colon length compared to wild-type controls on day 8 (5.25 cm ± 0.32 cm *vs* 6.30 cm ± 0.25 cm, $P < 0.01$) and day 10 (5.03 cm ± 0.49 cm *vs* 7.30 cm ± 0.47 cm, $P < 0.005$) (Figure 6D and E). Histopathological analysis showed that IL-34$^{-/-}$ mice exhibited more severe inflammation and tissue damage compared to wild-type mice on days 8 and 10, respectively (Figure 6F). Semiquantitative scoring of histopathology showed that colitis severity in IL-34$^{-/-}$ mice was significantly higher than that in wild-type mice on day 8 (8.13 ± 0.66 *vs* 3.63 ± 0.58, $P < 0.01$) and day 10 (8.45 ± 061 *vs* 2.60 ± 0.58, $P < 0.01$), respectively (Figure 6G). The



DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6752 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2022.

Figure 4 Interleukin-34 deficiency inhibits proliferation and promotes apoptosis of colonic epithelium in dextran sodium sulfate-induced colitis. A: Representative photomicrographs of Ki-67 immunohistochemical staining for colon sections of IL-34$^{-/-}$ and WT mice treated with dextran sodium sulfate (DSS); B: Percentage of proliferation marker Ki-67 per crypt; C and D: Representative microscopic pictures of TUNEL staining (C) and quantification of TUNEL-positive cells per field (D) in IL-34$^{-/-}$ and WT mice treated with DSS as before; E: mRNA expression of three receptors for IL-34 (CSF1R, ptprz1 and syndecan-1) was detected in IL-34$^{-/-}$ and WT mice treated with DSS (n = 6 or 7 per group); F and G: Representative photomicrographs of CSF1R immunohistochemical staining (F) and percentage of CSF1R-positive cells (G) in colon sections of IL-34$^{-/-}$ and WT mice treated with 3% DSS. CSF1R: Colony-stimulating factor-1 receptor; DSS: Dextran sodium sulfate; IL-34: Interleukin-34; WT: Wild-type. Scale bars = 100 μm. Data depict mean ± SD. $^{a}P < 0.05$, $^{b}P < 0.01$, $^{c}P < 0.005$.

number of colonic epithelial cells positive for Ki-67 was markedly decreased in IL-34$^{-/-}$ mice compared to wild-type mice on days 8 and 10 (Figure 6H and I).



DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6752 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2022.

Figure 5 Protective effect of interleukin-34 against acute dextran-sodium-sulfate-induced colitis is not dependent on macrophages. A: mRNA expression levels of M1 macrophage markers (iNOS, TNF-α and MCP-1) and M2 macrophage markers [ARG1, MRC2 (CD163)] in the colonic mucosa of IL-34$^{-/-}$ and WT mice treated with 3% DSS. M2/M1 ratio (CD163/iNOS) was calculated; B: Experimental design. To deplete macrophages, IL-34$^{-/-}$ and WT mice were treated with Clo-lips 2 d prior to 3% dextran sodium sulfate (DSS) administration and continuing once every 2 d until death (n = 4 per group); C: mRNA expression of macrophage cell marker (F4/80) was detected in colonic mucosa of WT mice treated with Clo-lips (n = 4 per group); D: Clinical score of IL-34$^{-/-}$ and WT mice treated with 3% DSS and Clo-lips (n = 4 per group); E and F: Colon length of IL-34$^{-/-}$ and WT mice treated with 3% DSS and Clo-lips (n = 4 per group); G and H: Representative microscopic pictures (G) and histological scores (H) of IL-34$^{-/-}$ and WT mice fed with 3% DSS and Clo-lips (n = 4 per group); I: mRNA expression of

inflammatory cytokines was detected in IL-34$^{-/-}$ and WT mice treated with 3% DSS and Clo-lips (n = 4 per group). ARG1: Arginase; Clo-lip: Clodronate liposome; CSF1R: Colony-stimulating factor-1 receptor; DSS: Dextran sodium sulfate; IL-34: Interleukin-34; iNOS: Inducible nitric oxide synthase; MCP-1: Monocyte chemoattractant protein-1; MRC2: Mannose receptor C type 2; TNF-α: Tumor necrosis factor-α; WT: Wild-type. Scale bars = 200 μm. Data depict mean ± SD. ^{a}P < 0.05, ^{b}P < 0.01, ^{c}P < 0.005.

IL-34 deficiency promotes AOM/DSS-induced colitis-associated tumorigenesis

To investigate the role of IL-34 in colitis-associated tumorigenesis, wild-type and IL-34$^{-/-}$ mice were treated with AOM and DSS (Figure 7A). No wild-type mice died, whereas a mortality rate of 30% was noted in IL-34$^{-/-}$ mice (Figure 7B). More importantly, a marked difference in tumor number was observed between the two groups. IL-34$^{-/-}$ mice developed a greater number of colon tumors than wild-type mice (Figure 7C and D). Representative H&E staining of colitis-associated cancer in wild-type and IL-34$^{-/-}$ mice is shown in Figure 7E.

IL-34 expression was elevated in inflamed mucosa and was associated with colonic epithelium proliferation in UC patients

We investigated the IL-34 expression pattern and its relationship with colonic epithelium proliferation in active UC patients. There was no age or sex difference between the groups (Supplementary Table 1). Consistent with previous studies, we also observed elevated expression of IL-34 in diseased mucosa of UC patients compared with the normal controls as detected by immunohistochemistry. Importantly, IL-34 was suspected to be predominantly expressed in the colonic stromal tissue (Figure 8A and B). Significantly enhanced colonic expression of proliferation index Ki-67 was detected in UC patients with higher IL-34 expression in colonic mucosa (Figure 8C). There was a positive correlation between IL-34 and Ki-67 expression in UC-inflamed mucosa with a correlation coefficient of 0.60 (P < 0.0001) (Figure 8D). No correlation was found between IL-34-positive and TUNEL-positive cells (data not shown).

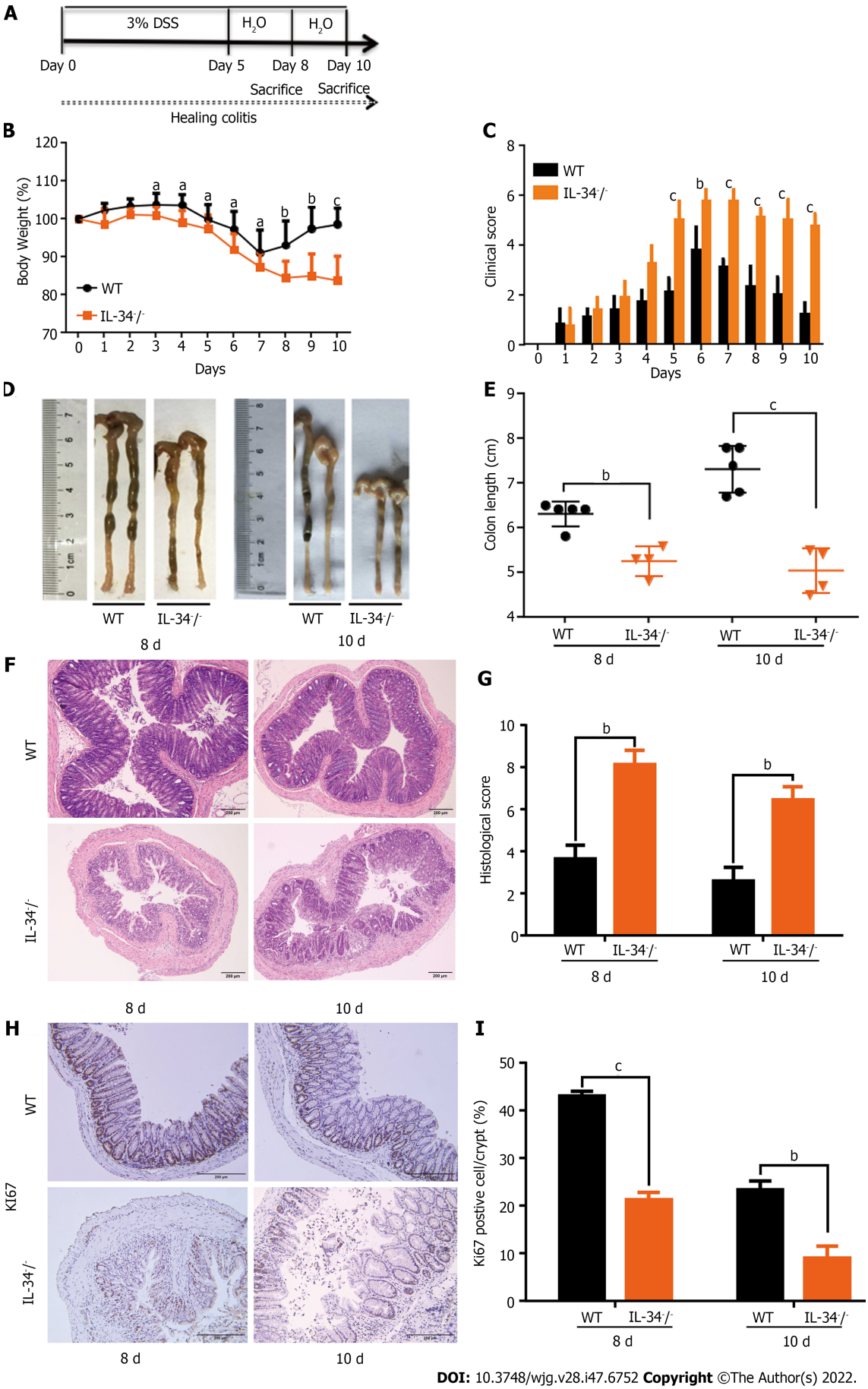
DISCUSSION

Mucosal healing has become the goal of therapy because of its association with better prognosis and improved quality of life[25]. However, the underlying molecular mechanism is unclear. Here, we revealed that IL-34 deficiency strongly increased susceptibility to acute DSS-induced colitis and intestinal wounding. Additionally, IL-34 deficiency enhanced AOM/DSS-induced colitis-associated tumorigenesis. Different from the previous reports, our findings suggest the protective role of IL-34 in UC- and colitis-associated cancer and may help to establish a new potential approach for management of UC.

The IL-34 knockout mice used in our study facilitated us to illustrate the role of IL-34 in pathogenesis of UC. Prior to DSS administration, no difference in colon morphological and histological manifestations was observed between IL-34-deficient and wild-type control mice. The results suggest that IL-34 is dispensable for colon homoeostasis under steady state.

In past studies, overexpression of IL-34 stimulated by inflammatory cytokines augmented the production of proinflammatory cytokines *in vitro*, probably raising IL-34 as a pathogenic contributor to sustained colon inflammation[14]. However, the increased expression of IL-34 might be a consequence of inflammation as a protective mechanism rather than a disease cause[16]. Indeed, IL-34 transgenic mice do not display aggravating inflammatory responses in the colon[26]. The precise mechanistic role of IL-34 during colon inflammation has not been clarified yet. Until now, there has been a lack of research on IL-34 involved in UC *in vivo*. A recent study has reported that IL-34 is critical for the suppressive function of CD4^{+} T regulatory cells, and its deficiency leads to increased susceptibility to autoimmunity[27]. We demonstrated for the first time that IL-34 deficiency exacerbates DSS-induced colitis during acute and delayed mucosal healing process and is associated with high colitis-related mortality. We assumed that significantly increased expression of IL-34 in mucosa from patients with active UC might act as an urgent requirement for alleviating inflammation and promoting mucosal healing. Our findings support the protective characteristic of IL-34 during DSS-induced colitis and early healing stage.

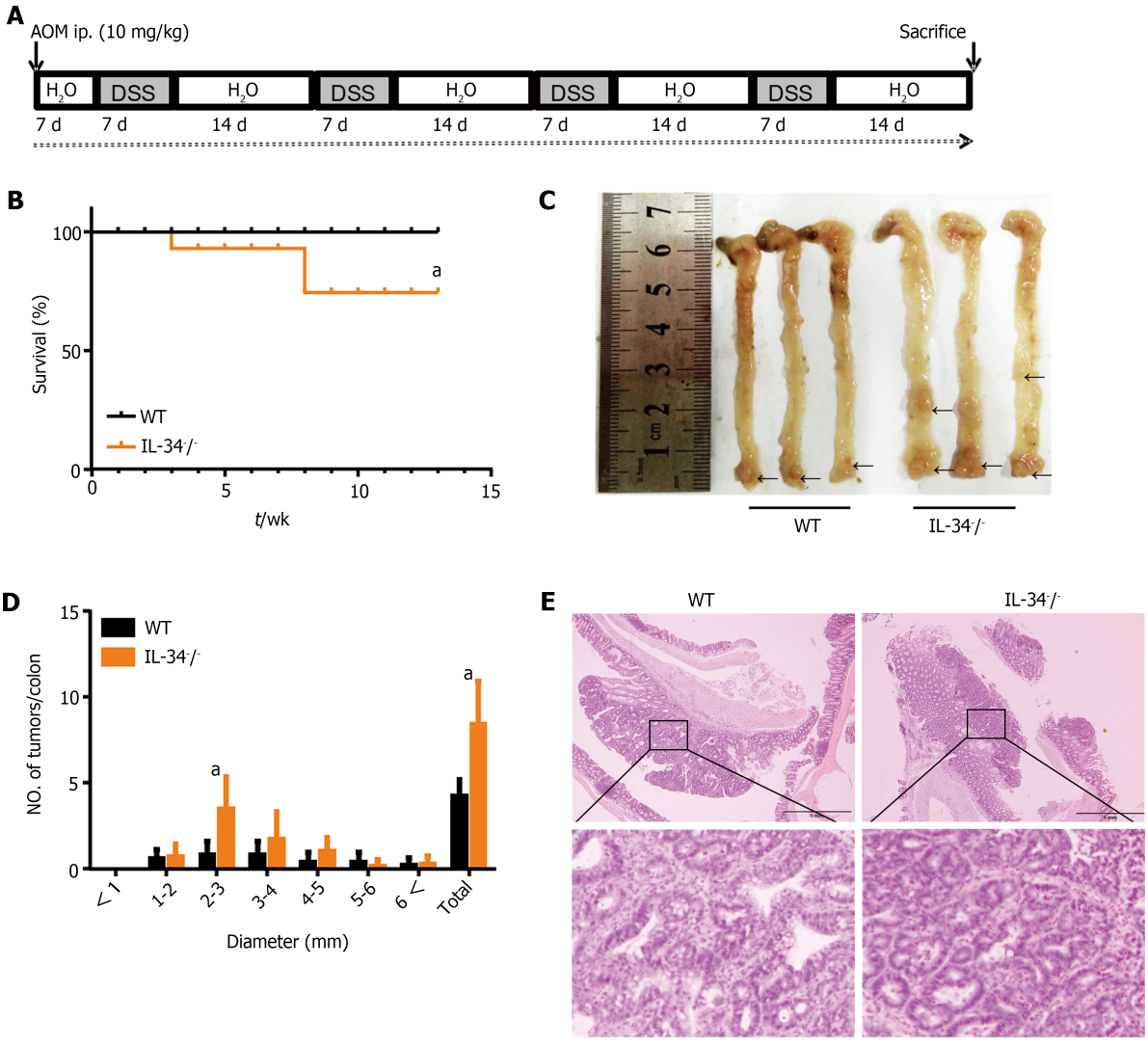
Macrophages are critical to mucosal homeostasis in orchestrating innate and adaptive immunity[28]. Depending on the local microenvironment, macrophages differentiated from the peripheral blood monocytes develop towards M1-like or M2-like phenotype macrophages[29]. M1 macrophages secreting proinflammatory cytokines such as TNF-α or IL-12 are considered to amplify the inflammatory response, whereas M2 macrophages producing anti-inflammatory mediators such transforming growth factor-β or IL-10 suppress the inflammatory response[29]. IL-34 has been identified to trigger CSF-1R signaling and induce macrophage differentiation to M2 phenotype *via* activation of the ERK1/2/AKT/AMPK signaling pathway[8], which contributes to mucosal homeostasis maintenance and



DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6752 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2022.

Figure 6 Interleukin-34 deficiency delays the mucosal healing in murine model induced by dextran sodium sulfate. A: Establishing healing

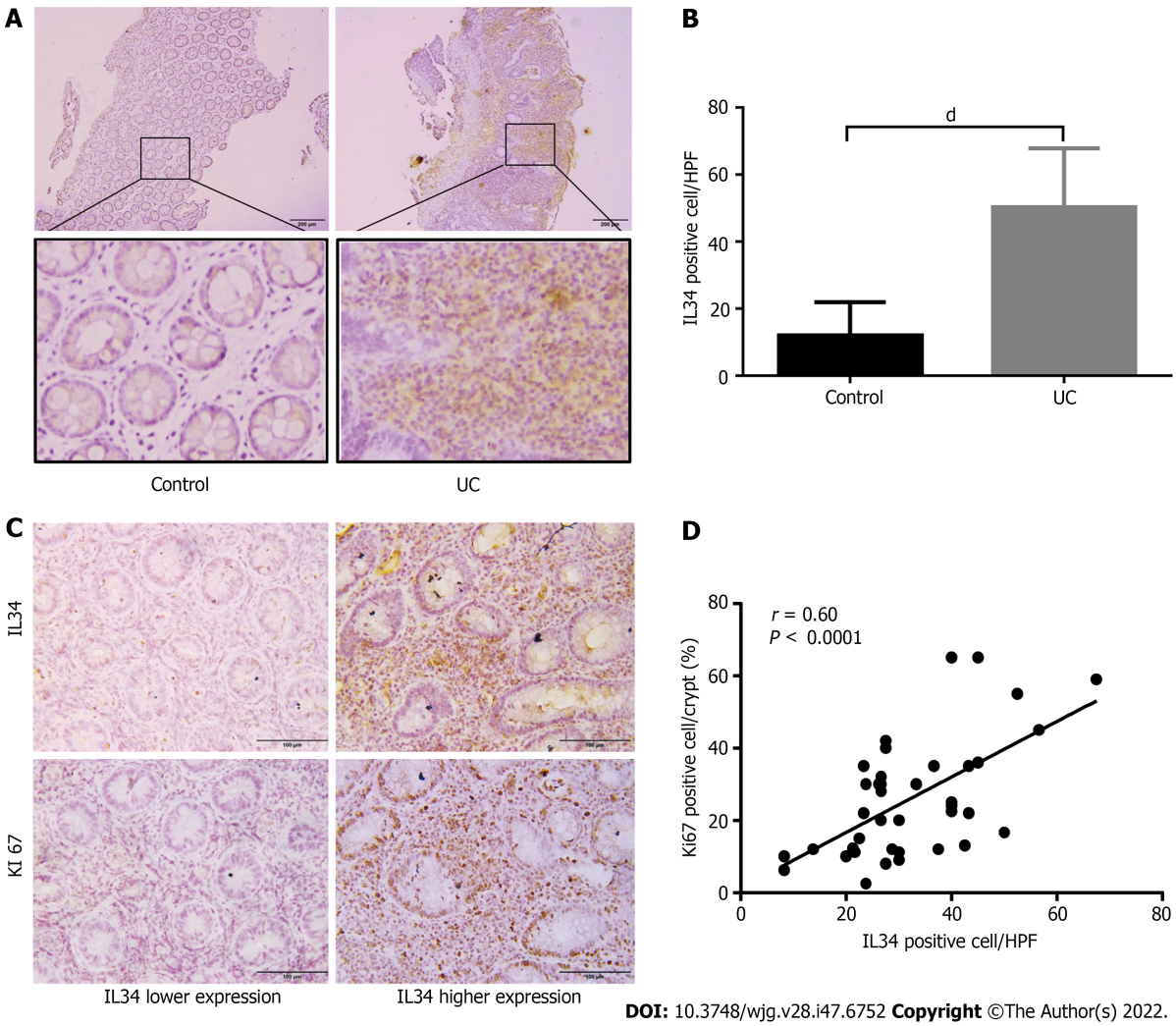
model chart. The Interleukin-34 (IL-34)$^{-/-}$ and WT mice were fed with 3% dextran sodium sulfate (DSS) for 5 d and switched to normal drinking water for the following 5 d. The mice in both groups were killed on day 8 or 10 (n = 4 or 5 per group); B and C: Body weight (B) and clinical score (C) were determined daily in IL-34$^{-/-}$ and WT mice until day 10 (n = 4 or 5 per group); D and E: The colon length was measured in IL-34$^{-/-}$ and WT mice on day 8 and 10, respectively (n = 4 or 5 per group); F and G: Representative microscopic pictures (F) and semiquantitative histological scores (G) of IL-34$^{-/-}$ and WT mice on day 8 and 10, respectively (n = 4 or 5 per group); H and I: Representative photomicrographs of Ki-67 immunohistochemical staining (H) and percentage of Ki-67-positive per crypt (I) in IL-34$^{-/-}$ and WT mice on day 8 and 10, respectively. DSS: Dextran sodium sulfate; IL-34: Interleukin-34; WT: Wild type. Scale bars = 200 μm. Data depict the mean ± SD. $^{a}P < 0.05$, $^{b}P < 0.01$, $^{c}P < 0.005$.



DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6752 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2022.

Figure 7 Interleukin-34 deficiency promotes azoxymethane /dextran-sodium-sulfate-induced colitis-associated tumorigenesis. A: Experimental design was shown as diagram. WT and Interleukin-34 (IL-34)$^{-/-}$ mice were given a single injection of azoxymethane (AOM, 10 mg/kg). Seven days later, mice were treated with 1.25% dextran sodium sulfate (DSS) (w/v) in drinking water for seven consecutive days, and given fresh drinking water for 14 d. Seven days of DSS and 14 d of fresh water as a cycle, repeated four times; B: Kaplan-Meier survival curves were plotted in IL-34$^{-/-}$ and WT mice treated with AOM/DSS (n = 10 per group); C and D: Representative photo of colon (C) and tumor number in colon (D) in IL-34$^{-/-}$ and WT mice treated with AOM/DSS (n = 10 per group); E: Representative hematoxylin and eosin-stained colon sections in IL-34$^{-/-}$ and WT mice treated with AOM/DSS (n = 10 per group). AOM: Azoxymethane; DSS: Dextran sodium sulfate; WT: Wild type. Bars: 1 mm (top) and 100 μm (bottom). Data depict mean ± SD. $^{a}P < 0.05$.

tissue remodeling[17]. Regulation of M1 to M2 phenotype switch has been confirmed to promote the proliferative phase of wound healing and ameliorates DSS-induced colitis, indicating a possible role of IL-34 in alleviation of colonic inflammation[17,18]. In our study, IL-34-deficient mice treated with DSS presented with worse colitis with significant accumulation of macrophages compared to DSS-treated wild-type control mice. It is speculated that downregulation of the M1 to M2 macrophage phenotypic switch results in more severe colitis. However, M2/M1 macrophage ratio was not significantly decreased in DSS-treated IL-34-deficient mice. We subsequently depleted the macrophages in the murine colitis model by administration of Clo-lips, which is a well-established method for macrophage



DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6752 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2022.

Figure 8 Interleukin-34 expression was elevated in inflamed mucosa and associated with colonic epithelium proliferation in active ulcerative colitis. A: Representative microscopic pictures of interleukin-34 (IL-34) immunohistochemical staining in colonic biopsies of healthy controls or individuals with active ulcerative colitis (UC); B: Percentage of IL-34-positive cells per high-power field were quantified in colonic biopsies of healthy controls (n = 20) and active UC patients (n = 40); C: Representative photomicrographs of immunostaining of Ki67 in colonic biopsies of active UC patients in IL-34 Lower expression and higher expression groups; D: Correlation analysis of colonic IL-34 expression and Ki 67-positive cells in active UC patients. IL-34: Interleukin-34; UC: Ulcerative colitis. Scale bar indicates 100 μm or 200 μm. $^{d}P < 0.001$.

depletion[30], showing that IL-34 deficiency aggravated murine colitis whether or not macrophages were depleted. Our results suggested that the protective effect of IL-34 on experimental colitis was not primarily dependent on macrophage polarization.

Mucosal healing largely relies on controlled colonic epithelial proliferation and apoptosis, which are manipulated by multiple growth factors, gut peptides, cytokines, as well as signaling pathways[25]. Given different DSS-induced injury levels in normal and IL-34-deficient colonic mucosa, we should be cautious to draw the conclusion that IL-34 deficiency inhibits the mucosal healing process *in vivo*. Based upon immunohistochemical staining, IL-34 was predominantly localized in the colon stromal tissue in our study. The specific cellular source of IL-34 needs to be further explored. In the acute colitis model, epithelial cell proliferation was inhibited but epithelial cell apoptosis was induced in IL-34$^{-/-}$ mice. CSF-1R was compensatorily increased in the IL-34$^{-/-}$ mice treated with DSS. Furthermore, it has been proved that IL-34 expression is positively correlated with epithelial proliferation in mucosal biopsies from UC patients. No correlation was shown between IL-34 expression level and apoptosis in UC patients. It is speculated that IL-34 might be produced from colon stromal tissue and promote colonic epithelial cell growth and wound closure by binding to CSF-1R in inflammatory conditions. Further studies are warranted to investigate the potential function of IL-34 in colonic epithelial cells.

Emerging data have demonstrated the multidimensional role of IL-34 in tumor progression and metastasis. The function of IL-34 in cancer may vary among different types of tumors[31]. A recent study on the relationship between IL-34 and gastric cancer proposed that the reduction of IL-34 in gastric cancer was inversely related to the degree of tumor differentiation and was closely related to the poor survival rate of patients[32]. However, the relationship of IL-34 to colorectal cancer remains contro-

versial. It has been recently reported that IL-34 stimulates colorectal adenocarcinoma cell proliferation *via* an ERK1/2-dependent pathway. The connection between chronic colon inflammation and colitis-associated cancer has been documented in UC patients. Repeated mucosal damage and repair in the inflamed microenvironment can result in uncontrolled epithelial cell proliferation and induce cancer events[33]. In a cohort study, Wang *et al*[34] showed that low expression of IL-34 is associated with poor survival in colorectal cancer. Accumulating evidence suggests that chronic inflammation enhances the development of colitis-associated cancer through multiple mechanisms, including oxidative stress, DNA damage, abnormal immune response, and gut microbiome dysbiosis[35]. In our study, tumor burden was markedly enhanced in IL-34$^{-/-}$ mice treated with AOM/DSS compared to wild-type control mice. We assumed that IL-34 deficiency worsened the colonic inflammation response and tissue damage, and thus sustained inflammatory injury increased the risk of colitis-associated cancer.

CONCLUSION

In summary, our work has highlighted the role of IL-34 during acute experimental colitis and wound healing. We found that IL-34 does not drive the inflammatory response and tissue destruction under physiological conditions, but protects the host from inflammatory injury and reduces the risk of colitis-associated cancer. IL-34 might serve as a potential therapeutic target for inducing mucosal healing in treatment for UC and reducing colitis-associated cancer in UC.

ARTICLE HIGHLIGHTS

Research background

The exact pathogenesis of ulcerative colitis (UC) remains unclear. Identification of distinctive cytokines involved in immunopathogenesis of UC has become a hot spot for the development of biological therapies. The expression of interleukin (IL)-34 is upregulated in active UC but the molecular function and underlying mechanism are largely unknown.

Research motivation

Whether IL-34 is a "friend or foe" in the pathogenesis of UC remains be explored. In this study, we investigated the potential role of IL-34 in experimental colitis, colitis-associated carcinogenesis and UC.

Research objectives

To investigate the function of IL-34 in acute colitis, in a wound healing model and in colitis-associated cancer, and the IL-34 expression pattern and its relationship with colonic epithelium proliferation in active UC patients.

Research methods

We conducted a controlled study using IL-34 knockout mice and wild-type mice (C57BL/6J). Colitis was induced by administration of dextran sodium sulfate, and carcinogenesis was induced by azoxymethane. Whether the impact of IL-34 on colitis was dependent on macrophages was validated by depletion of macrophages in a murine model. The association between IL-34 expression and epithelial cell proliferation was determined in patients with active UC.

Research results

IL-34 deficiency *in vivo* exacerbated colitis in mice during acute and wound healing phases and increased tumor susceptibility in the mouse colon. The effect was independent of macrophage differentiation and polarization. IL-34 was markedly increased in patients with active UC and the expression was positively correlated with epithelial cell proliferation in UC.

Research conclusions

IL-34 deficiency exacerbates colonic inflammation and accelerates colitis-associated carcinogenesis in mice.

Research perspectives

IL-34 might serve as a potential therapeutic target for inducing mucosal healing in treatment of UC and reducing colitis-associated cancer in UC.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Liu ZX performed the main part of the study; Chen WJ and Wang Y performed the main part of the study and wrote original draft; Liu YC, Cheng TC, Luo LL, Chen L, and Ju LL provided technical support and analyzed the data; Chen BQ, Liu Y, Li M, and Feng N contributed to part of the experiments; Shao JG designed the study and guided the manuscript writing; Bian ZL Conceived and designed the study; Liu ZX, Chen WJ, and Wang Y contributed equally to this work; all authors have read and approve the final manuscript.

Supported by the Science and Technology Bureau, No. MS22018007; Six Peak Talents in Jiangsu Province, No. YY-177; Project of Jiangsu Province Youth Medical Talent Development, No. QNRC2016400 and No. QNRC2016697; Project of Nantong Youth Medical Talent Development, No. 05; Youth Fund of the National Natural Science Foundation of China, No. 82000497; Youth Fund of the Natural Science Foundation of Jiangsu Province, No. BK20200965; and Scientific Research Fund of Nantong Health Commission, No. MB2020037.

Institutional review board statement: This study was reviewed and approved by the Ethics Committee of Nantong Third People's Hospital Affiliated to Nantong University and Affiliated Hospital of Nantong University.

Institutional animal care and use committee statement: All procedures involving animals were reviewed and approved by the Institutional Ethics Committee of Nantong University (No: S20151221-908).

Informed consent statement: All patients and healthy people signed an informed consent form.

Conflict-of-interest statement: All authors confirm that there are no conflicts of interest.

Data sharing statement: No additional data are available.

ARRIVE guidelines statement: The authors have read the ARRIVE guidelines, and the manuscript was prepared and revised according to the ARRIVE guidelines.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article that was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution NonCommercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: https://creativecommons.org/Licenses/by-nc/4.0/

Country/Territory of origin: China

ORCID number: Zhao-Xiu Liu orcid.org/0000-0003-0154-5232; Wei-Jie Chen 0000-0002-6370-7615; Tiao-Chun Cheng 0000-0002-9167-219X; Lin Chen 0000-0002-1108-4735; Lin-Ling Ju 0000-0002-9541-0533; Jian-Guo Shao 0000-0002-4840-5512; Zhao-Lian Bian 0000-0002-0802-6497.

S-Editor: Chen YL
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Cai YX

REFERENCES

1 **Ungaro R**, Mehandru S, Allen PB, Peyrin-Biroulet L, Colombel JF. Ulcerative colitis. *Lancet* 2017; **389**: 1756-1770 [PMID: 27914657 DOI: 10.1016/s0140-6736(16)32126-2]
2 **Tang B**, Zhu J, Fang S, Wang Y, Vinothkumar R, Li M, Weng Q, Zheng L, Yang Y, Qiu R, Xu M, Zhao Z, Ji J. Pharmacological inhibition of MELK restricts ferroptosis and the inflammatory response in colitis and colitis-propelled carcinogenesis. *Free Radic Biol Med* 2021; **172**: 312-329 [PMID: 34144192 DOI: 10.1016/j.freeradbiomed.2021.06.012]
3 **Scheibe K**, Backert I, Wirtz S, Hueber A, Schett G, Vieth M, Probst HC, Bopp T, Neurath MF, Neufert C. IL-36R signalling activates intestinal epithelial cells and fibroblasts and promotes mucosal healing in vivo. *Gut* 2017; **66**: 823-838 [PMID: 26783184 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2015-310374]
4 **Colombel JF**, D'haens G, Lee WJ, Petersson J, Panaccione R. Outcomes and Strategies to Support a Treat-to-target Approach in Inflammatory Bowel Disease: A Systematic Review. *J Crohns Colitis* 2020; **14**: 254-266 [PMID: 31403666 DOI: 10.1093/ecco-jcc/jjz131]
5 **Freuchet A**, Salama A, Remy S, Guillonneau C, Anegon I. IL-34 and CSF-1, deciphering similarities and differences at steady state and in diseases. *J Leukoc Biol* 2021; **110**: 771-796 [PMID: 33600012 DOI: 10.1002/JLB.3RU1120-773r]
6 **Dai XM**, Ryan GR, Hapel AJ, Dominguez MG, Russell RG, Kapp S, Sylvestre V, Stanley ER. Targeted disruption of the mouse colony-stimulating factor 1 receptor gene results in osteopetrosis, mononuclear phagocyte deficiency, increased primitive progenitor cell frequencies, and reproductive defects. *Blood* 2002; **99**: 111-120 [PMID: 11756160 DOI: 10.1182/blood.v99.1.111]
7 **Lin H**, Lee E, Hestir K, Leo C, Huang M, Bosch E, Halenbeck R, Wu G, Zhou A, Behrens D, Hollenbaugh D, Linnemann T, Qin M, Wong J, Chu K, Doberstein SK, Williams LT. Discovery of a cytokine and its receptor by functional screening

of the extracellular proteome. *Science* 2008; **320**: 807-811 [PMID: 18467591 DOI: 10.1126/science.1154370]
8 **Baghdadi M**, Umeyama Y, Hama N, Kobayashi T, Han N, Wada H, Seino KI. Interleukin-34, a comprehensive review. *J Leukoc Biol* 2018; **104**: 931-951 [PMID: 30066957 DOI: 10.1002/jlb.Mr1117-457r]
9 **Monteleone G**, Franzè E, Troncone E, Maresca C, Marafini I. Interleukin-34 Mediates Cross-Talk Between Stromal Cells and Immune Cells in the Gut. *Front Immunol* 2022; **13**: 873332 [PMID: 35529879 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2022.873332]
10 **Muñoz-Garcia J**, Cochonneau D, Télétchéa S, Moranton E, Lanoe D, Brion R, Lézot F, Heymann MF, Heymann D. The twin cytokines interleukin-34 and CSF-1: masterful conductors of macrophage homeostasis. *Theranostics* 2021; **11**: 1568-1593 [PMID: 33408768 DOI: 10.7150/thno.50683]
11 **Ge Y**, Huang M, Yao YM. Immunomodulation of Interleukin-34 and its Potential Significance as a Disease Biomarker and Therapeutic Target. *Int J Biol Sci* 2019; **15**: 1835-1845 [PMID: 31523186 DOI: 10.7150/ijbs.35070]
12 **Xu WD**, Huang AF, Fu L, Liu XY, Su LC. Targeting IL-34 in inflammatory autoimmune diseases. *J Cell Physiol* 2019; **234**: 21810-21816 [PMID: 31173370 DOI: 10.1002/jcp.28946]
13 **Bézie S**, Picarda E, Ossart J, Tesson L, Usal C, Renaudin K, Anegon I, Guillonneau C. IL-34 is a Treg-specific cytokine and mediates transplant tolerance. *J Clin Invest* 2015; **125**: 3952-3964 [PMID: 26389674 DOI: 10.1172/JCI81227]
14 **Zwicker S**, Martinez GL, Bosma M, Gerling M, Clark R, Majster M, Söderman J, Almer S, Boström EA. Interleukin 34: a new modulator of human and experimental inflammatory bowel disease. *Clin Sci (Lond)* 2015; **129**: 281-290 [PMID: 25896238 DOI: 10.1042/cs20150176]
15 **Franzè E**, Dinallo V, Laudisi F, Di Grazia A, Di Fusco D, Colantoni A, Ortenzi A, Giuffrida P, Di Carlo S, Sica GS, Di Sabatino A, Monteleone G. Interleukin-34 Stimulates Gut Fibroblasts to Produce Collagen Synthesis. *J Crohns Colitis* 2020; **14**: 1436-1445 [PMID: 32271873 DOI: 10.1093/ecco-jcc/jjaa073]
16 **Guillonneau C**, Bézie S, Anegon I. Immunoregulatory properties of the cytokine IL-34. *Cell Mol Life Sci* 2017; **74**: 2569-2586 [PMID: 28258292 DOI: 10.1007/s00018-017-2482-4]
17 **Cosín-Roger J**, Ortiz-Masiá D, Calatayud S, Hernández C, Esplugues JV, Barrachina MD. The activation of Wnt signaling by a STAT6-dependent macrophage phenotype promotes mucosal repair in murine IBD. *Mucosal Immunol* 2016; **9**: 986-998 [PMID: 26601901 DOI: 10.1038/mi.2015.123]
18 **Song WJ**, Li Q, Ryu MO, Ahn JO, Ha Bhang D, Chan Jung Y, Youn HY. TSG-6 Secreted by Human Adipose Tissue-derived Mesenchymal Stem Cells Ameliorates DSS-induced colitis by Inducing M2 Macrophage Polarization in Mice. *Sci Rep* 2017; **7**: 5187 [PMID: 28701721 DOI: 10.1038/s41598-017-04766-7]
19 **Franzè E**, Dinallo V, Rizzo A, Di Giovangiulio M, Bevivino G, Stolfi C, Caprioli F, Colantoni A, Ortenzi A, Grazia AD, Sica G, Sileri PP, Rossi P, Monteleone G. Interleukin-34 sustains pro-tumorigenic signals in colon cancer tissue. *Oncotarget* 2018; **9**: 3432-3445 [PMID: 29423057 DOI: 10.18632/oncotarget.23289]
20 **Franzè E**, Di Grazia A, Sica GS, Biancone L, Laudisi F, Monteleone G. Interleukin-34 Enhances the Tumor Promoting Function of Colorectal Cancer-Associated Fibroblasts. *Cancers (Basel)* 2020; **12** [PMID: 33260828 DOI: 10.3390/cancers12123537]
21 **Li J**, Qu C, Li F, Chen Y, Zheng J, Xiao Y, Jin Q, Jin G, Huang X, Jin D. *Inonotus obliquus* Polysaccharide Ameliorates Azoxymethane/Dextran Sulfate Sodium-Induced Colitis-Associated Cancer in Mice *via* Activation of the NLRP3 Inflammasome. *Front Pharmacol* 2020; **11**: 621835 [PMID: 33603669 DOI: 10.3389/fphar.2020.621835]
22 **Weisser SB**, Brugger HK, Voglmaier NS, McLarren KW, van Rooijen N, Sly LM. SHIP-deficient, alternatively activated macrophages protect mice during DSS-induced colitis. *J Leukoc Biol* 2011; **90**: 483-492 [PMID: 21685246 DOI: 10.1189/jlb.0311124]
23 **Su L**, Nalle SC, Shen L, Turner ES, Singh G, Breskin LA, Khramtsova EA, Khramtsova G, Tsai PY, Fu YX, Abraham C, Turner JR. TNFR2 activates MLCK-dependent tight junction dysregulation to cause apoptosis-mediated barrier loss and experimental colitis. *Gastroenterology* 2013; **145**: 407-415 [PMID: 23619146 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2013.04.011]
24 **Li YK**, Li YM, Li Y, Wei YR, Zhang J, Li B, You ZR, Chen Y, Huang BY, Miao Q, Wang QX, Peng YS, Gershwin ME, Tang RQ, Bian ZL, Ma X. CTHRC1 expression in primary biliary cholangitis. *J Dig Dis* 2019; **20**: 371-376 [PMID: 31102333 DOI: 10.1111/1751-2980.12791]
25 **Neurath MF**, Travis SP. Mucosal healing in inflammatory bowel diseases: a systematic review. *Gut* 2012; **61**: 1619-1635 [PMID: 22842618 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2012-302830]
26 **Wang Y**, Colonna M. Interkeukin-34, a cytokine crucial for the differentiation and maintenance of tissue resident macrophages and Langerhans cells. *Eur J Immunol* 2014; **44**: 1575-1581 [PMID: 24737461 DOI: 10.1002/eji.201344365]
27 **Freuchet A**, Salama A, Bézie S, Tesson L, Rémy S, Humeau R, Règue H, Sérazin C, Flippe L, Peterson P, Vimond N, Usal C, Ménoret S, Heslan JM, Duteille F, Blanchard F, Giral M, Colonna M, Anegon I, Guillonneau C. IL-34 deficiency impairs FOXP3$^+$ Treg function in a model of autoimmune colitis and decreases immune tolerance homeostasis. *Clin Transl Med* 2022; **12**: e988 [PMID: 36030499 DOI: 10.1002/ctm2.988]
28 **Huang Y**, Chen Z. Inflammatory bowel disease related innate immunity and adaptive immunity. *Am J Transl Res* 2016; **8**: 2490-2497 [PMID: 27398134]
29 **Daskalaki MG**, Vyrla D, Harizani M, Doxaki C, Eliopoulos AG, Roussis V, Ioannou E, Tsatsanis C, Kampranis SC. Neorogioltriol and Related Diterpenes from the Red Alga *Laurencia* Inhibit Inflammatory Bowel Disease in Mice by Suppressing M1 and Promoting M2-Like Macrophage Responses. *Mar Drugs* 2019; **17** [PMID: 30717366 DOI: 10.3390/md17020097]
30 **Bader JE**, Enos RT, Velázquez KT, Carson MS, Nagarkatti M, Nagarkatti PS, Chatzistamou I, Davis JM, Carson JA, Robinson CM, Murphy EA. Macrophage depletion using clodronate liposomes decreases tumorigenesis and alters gut microbiota in the AOM/DSS mouse model of colon cancer. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2018; **314**: G22-G31 [PMID: 29025731 DOI: 10.1152/ajpgi.00229.2017]
31 **Lelios I**, Cansever D, Utz SG, Mildenberger W, Stifter SA, Greter M. Emerging roles of IL-34 in health and disease. *J Exp Med* 2020; **217** [PMID: 31940023 DOI: 10.1084/jem.20190290]
32 **Liu Q**, Zhang Y, Zhang J, Tao K, Hambly BD, Bao S. Inverse correlation between Interleukin-34 and gastric cancer, a potential biomarker for prognosis. *Cell Biosci* 2020; **10**: 94 [PMID: 32765828 DOI: 10.1186/s13578-020-00454-8]

33 **Cooks T**, Pateras IS, Tarcic O, Solomon H, Schetter AJ, Wilder S, Lozano G, Pikarsky E, Forshew T, Rosenfeld N, Harpaz N, Itzkowitz S, Harris CC, Rotter V, Gorgoulis VG, Oren M. Mutant p53 prolongs NF-κB activation and promotes chronic inflammation and inflammation-associated colorectal cancer. *Cancer Cell* 2013; **23**: 634-646 [PMID: 23680148 DOI: 10.1016/j.ccr.2013.03.022]

34 **Wang B**, Xu W, Tan M, Xiao Y, Yang H, Xia TS. Integrative genomic analyses of a novel cytokine, interleukin-34 and its potential role in cancer prediction. *Int J Mol Med* 2015; **35**: 92-102 [PMID: 25395235 DOI: 10.3892/ijmm.2014.2001]

35 **Nagao-Kitamoto H**, Kitamoto S, Kamada N. Inflammatory bowel disease and carcinogenesis. *Cancer Metastasis Rev* 2022; **41**: 301-316 [PMID: 35416564 DOI: 10.1007/s10555-022-10028-4]

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Gastroenterol 2022 December 21; 28(47): 6769-6787

DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6769

ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Basic Study

Dickkopf-related protein 1/cytoskeleton-associated protein 4 signaling activation by *Helicobacter pylori*-induced activator protein-1 promotes gastric tumorigenesis *via* the PI3K/AKT/mTOR pathway

Mei Luo, Yuan-Jia Chen, Yuan Xie, Qin-Rong Wang, Yi-Ning Xiang, Ni-Ya Long, Wen-Xiu Yang, Yan Zhao, Jian-Jiang Zhou

Specialty type: Biochemistry and molecular biology

Provenance and peer review: Unsolicited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): A
Grade B (Very good): B
Grade C (Good): 0
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: Gao YL, China; Keikha M, Iran

Received: October 12, 2022
Peer-review started: October 12, 2022
First decision: October 20, 2022
Revised: November 5, 2022
Accepted: November 30, 2022
Article in press: November 30, 2022
Published online: December 21, 2022

Mei Luo, Yuan-Jia Chen, Yuan Xie, Qin-Rong Wang, Yan Zhao, Jian-Jiang Zhou, Key Laboratory of Endemic and Ethnic Diseases, Ministry of Education & Key Laboratory of Medical Molecular Biology of Guizhou Province, Guizhou Medical University, Guiyang 550004, Guizhou Province, China

Yi-Ning Xiang, Wen-Xiu Yang, Department of Pathology of Affiliated Hospital, Guizhou Medical University, Guiyang 550004, Guizhou Province, China

Ni-Ya Long, Department of Neurology of Affiliated Hospital, Guizhou Medical University, Guiyang 550004, Guizhou Province, China

Corresponding author: Jian-Jiang Zhou, Doctor, Professor, Key Laboratory of Endemic and Ethnic Diseases, Ministry of Education & Key Laboratory of Medical Molecular Biology of Guizhou Province, Guizhou Medical University, No. 9 Beijing Road, Guiyang 550004, Guizhou Province, China. 851827202@qq.com

Abstract

BACKGROUND

Gastric cancer (GC) is a common malignant tumor with high incidence and mortality rates globally, especially in East Asian countries. *Helicobacter pylori* (*H. pylori*) infection is a significant and independent risk factor for GC. However, its underlying mechanism of action is not fully understood. Dickkopf-related protein (DKK) 1 is a Wnt signaling antagonist, and cytoskeleton-associated protein (CKAP) 4 is a newly identified DKK1 receptor. Recent studies found that the binding of DKK1 to CAKP4 mediated the procancer signaling of DKK1 independent of Wnt signaling. We hypothesize that *H. pylori*-induced activation of DKK1/CKAP4 signaling contributes to the initiation and progression of GC.

AIM

To investigate the interaction of *H. pylori* infection, DKK1 and CAKP4 in GC, as well as the underlying molecular mechanisms.

METHODS

RNA sequencing was used to identify differentially expressed genes (DEGs) between *H. pylori*-infected and uninfected primary GC cells. Gain- and loss-of-

function experiments were performed to verify the *H. pylori*-induced upregulation of activator protein-1 (AP-1) in GC cells. A dual-luciferase reporter assay and co-immunoprecipitation were used to determine the binding of AP-1 to the DKK1 promoter and DKK1 to CKAP4. Western blotting and immunohistochemistry detected the expression of DKK1, CKAP4, and phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase (PI3K) pathway-related proteins in GC cells and tissues. Functional experiments and tumorigenicity in nude mice detected malignant behavior of GC cells *in vitro* and *in vivo*.

RESULTS

We identified 32 DEGs between primary GC cells with and without *H. pylori* infection, including JUN, fos-like antigen-1 (FOSL1), and DKK1, and confirmed that the three proteins and CKAP4 were highly expressed in *H. pylori*-infected GC cells, *H. pylori*-infected gerbil gastric tissues, and human GC tissues. JUN and FOSL1 form AP-1 to transcriptionally activate DKK1 expression by binding to the DKK1 promoter. Activated DKK1 bound to CKAP4, but not the most common Wnt coreceptor low-density lipoprotein receptor-related protein 5/6, to promote GC cell growth, colony formation, migration, invasion, and xenograft tumor growth in nude mice. All these effects were driven by activation of the PI3K/AKT/mammalian target of rapamycin (mTOR) pathway. Targeting the PI3K signaling pathway by LY294002 inhibited DKK1-mediated CKAP4/PI3K signaling activity and the malignant behavior of GC cells.

CONCLUSION

H. pylori induces JUN and FOSL1 expression to form AP-1, which transcriptionally activates DKK1. Binding of DKK1 to KAKP4 contributes to gastric tumorigenesis *via* the PI3K/AKT/mTOR pathway.

Key Words: Gastric cancer; *Helicobacter pylori*; Dickkopf-related protein 1; Cytoskeleton-associated protein 4; Phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase pathway

©The Author(s) 2022. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core Tip: *Helicobacter pylori* (*H. pylori*) infection is the most significant risk factor for gastric cancer (GC). More than half of the global population has *H. pylori* infection, and 1%-3% of the infected individuals develop GC, but the mechanism behind this link remains unclear. Here, we identified 32 highly expressed genes in *H. pylori*-infected GC cells and demonstrated that *H. pylori*-induced high expression of JUN and fos-like antigen-1 formed activator protein-1 to transcriptionally activate dickkopf-related protein (DKK) 1, which by binding to cytoskeleton-associated protein 4 (CKAP4) receptor activated the PI3K/AKT/mammalian target of rapamycin pathway and, consequently, gastric tumorigenesis. Targeting the DKK1/CKAP4 interaction may be a novel strategy to treat GC.

Citation: Luo M, Chen YJ, Xie Y, Wang QR, Xiang YN, Long NY, Yang WX, Zhao Y, Zhou JJ. Dickkopf-related protein 1/cytoskeleton-associated protein 4 signaling activation by *Helicobacter pylori*-induced activator protein-1 promotes gastric tumorigenesis *via* the PI3K/AKT/mTOR pathway. *World J Gastroenterol* 2022; 28(47): 6769-6787

URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v28/i47/6769.htm

DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6769

INTRODUCTION

Gastric cancer (GC) is the fifth most prevalent tumor and fourth leading cause of tumor-related mortality worldwide[1]. Although the incidence and mortality rates of this malignancy have steadily decreased over the past several decades, GC remains a significant health problem in developing nations [2]. Most patients with GC present at an advanced stage when diagnosed, and metastasis and recurrence in individuals are commonly noted[3]. *Helicobacter pylori* (*H. pylori*) are Gram-negative and microaerophilic pathogenic bacteria. *H. pylori* infection is the most significant risk factor for GC. The International Agency for Research on Cancer designated it a Group I carcinogen for GC in 1994[4]. More than half of the global population has *H. pylori* infection, and 1%-3% of infected individuals develop GC [5]. Globally, an estimated 89.4% and 20% of new noncardia and cardia GC cases were attributable to *H. pylori* infection in 2018[6]. However, this figure was 78.5% for noncardia GC and 62.1% for cardia GC in China[7]. Although many studies have investigated the link between *H. pylori* infection and GC[8], the

molecular mechanisms are not fully understood.

By RNA sequencing, we discovered that JUN (also known as c-JUN), fos-like antigen-1 (FOSL1, a FOS family member encoding FRA-1), and Dickkopf-related protein (DKK) 1 were elevated in primary GC cells infected with *H. pylori*. JUN and FOSL1 are the transcription factor activator protein (AP)-1 complex components and form the JUN::JUN homodimer and the JUN::FOSL1 heterodimer to regulate target gene transcription *via* binding to the promoters and enhancers of target genes[9]. *In vitro* and *in vivo* studies showed that activator protein-1 (AP-1) controlled tumor growth, progression and drug resistance[10,11]. DKK1 is a potent antagonist that suppresses oncogenic Wnt/β-catenin signaling and tumors by binding to the Wnt coreceptor: low-density lipoprotein receptor-related protein (LRP) 5/6[12,13]. However, recent studies demonstrated that DKK1 behaved like an oncogene in a variety of cancers [14,15]. Several studies consistently indicated that DKK1 levels were elevated in GC patient cancer tissues and serum, and higher DKK1 levels were significantly associated with worse outcomes[16-18]. However, little is known about the transcriptional regulation of DKK1, its relationship with *H. pylori*, and the mechanism of DKK1 promotion of gastric carcinogenesis.

Cytoskeleton-associated protein (CKAP) 4 is a newly identified DKK1 receptor[19]. The binding of DKK1 to CKAP4 recruits phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase (PI3K) *via* association between the proline-rich region of CKAP4 and the Src homology 3 domain of PI3K, which leads to the activation of serine/threonine-protein kinase AKT[20]. Although there is no evidence that the DKK1/CKAP4 axis exists in GC, the PI3K pathway involved in the malignant transformation of cells is activated in most GC patients[21]. AKT and p-AKT were overexpressed in > 74% of GC patients[22], and phosphorylated mammalian target of rapamycin (p-mTOR) expression was found in 60% of gastric adenocarcinoma specimens[23]. Therefore, we postulate that DKK1 contributes to GC through the PI3K pathway but not the Wnt pathway.

Here, we revealed that *H. pylori* infection induced high expression of JUN and FOSL1, which formed AP-1 to activate DKK1 transcriptionally. DKK1 binding to CKAP4, but not the most common Wnt coreceptor LRP5/6, promoted GC growth and invasion by triggering the PI3K/AKT/mTOR pathway. The results provide novel insight into the molecular mechanism underlying *H. pylori*-induced gastric carcinogenesis.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

H. pylori strains and cell lines

H. pylori GZ7 is a typical East Asian strain (*cagA*$^+$) that was isolated from the gastric mucosa of a GC patient by our group[24]. *H. pylori* 26695 (ATCC 700392) is a typical western strain (*cagA*$^+$) that was purchased from the American Type Culture Collection (ATCC, Manassas, VA, United States). Two strains were cultured on Columbia agar plates supplemented with *H. pylori* selective supplement (Oxoid, United Kingdom) and 10% sheep blood at 37 °C in a microaerobic environment (5% O_2, 10% CO_2, 85% N_2).

The human GC cell lines AGS, NCI-N87 and SNU-16 cells were purchased from ATCC, and SGC-7901 and BGC823 cells were obtained from the tissue bank in Shanghai, China. Primary GC cells were separated and identified in our laboratory[25]. All cell lines were grown in 5% CO2 at 37 °C in RPMI-1640 with 10% FCS (Gibco, United States).

Human GC tissues

From June to December 2021, 12 pairs of GC and paracancer normal tissues were collected during surgery at the Affiliated Hospital of Guizhou Medical University in China. Tissues were immediately formalin-fixed and paraffin-embedded for pathological evaluation and immunohistochemistry. All subjects provided their written informed consent. The study was performed following the Declaration of Helsinki. The Guizhou Medical University Ethics Committee approved the study protocol, No. 2017(43).

Mongolian gerbil stomach tissues

In our earlier work, Mongolian gerbils were intragastrically infected with *H. pylori* NCTC 11637 (ATCC 43504, *cagA*$^+$) for 2 years. At 3-24 mo after infection, gerbils developed erosion, atrophy, intestinal metaplasia, and well-differentiated GC in the gastric mucosa[26]. The stomach tissues of gerbils (n = 3 at each timepoint) were removed after decapitation and immediately fixed and embedded. The embedded tissues were sliced into sections (5 μm thick) and stained for immunohistochemistry.

RNA-sequencing

Three primary GC cell lines (5 × 10^7) were cultured with 50 multiplicity of infection (MOI) *H. pylori* GZ7 for 6 h before being harvested. TRIzol (Invitrogen, Carlsbad, CA, United States) was used to extract overall RNA, which was then purified by DNase I treatment. After being enriched by Oligo (dT) beads, eukaryotic mRNA was interrupted into short fragments and synthesized into cDNA. Using the Illumina

TruSeq library construction kit, purified cDNA was amplified by PCR to construct the RNA-sequencing (RNA-seq) library. After the library was tested for quality using the Agilent 2100 Bioanalyzer and ABI StepOnePlus Real-Time PCR System, the library was sequenced on the Illumina HiSeqX10 platform by Beijing Genomics Institute (China). Sequence reads were mapped to the reference human genome (hg19), and the gene and transcript expression levels were calculated. Differentially expressed genes (DEGs) with a fold-change > 2 and false discovery rate (FDR) < 0.05 were identified between *H. pylori*-infected and uninfected cells. The DEGs shared by three datasets were selected for further bioinformatics analysis. The R heatmap package (version 0.7.7) was used to generate a heatmap. Gene Ontology (GO), Kyoto Encyclopedia of Genes and Genomes (KEGG), and protein-protein interaction (PPI) analyses were performed using the Gene Ontology Consortium (http://geneontology.org/), KOBAS (http://kobas.cbi.pku.edu.cn/), and the STRING tool (https://string-db.org/), respectively. KEGG pathways and PPI networks were visualized using Cytoscape software (version 3.7.2). Gene set enrichment analysis (GSEA) was carried out using GSEA software (version 4.1.0). A significant gene set was defined as having an FDR < 0.25 and $P < 0.01$.

Dual-luciferase reporter assay

The expression vectors of JUN and FOSL1 were purchased from Hanheng Biotech (Shanghai, China). The human DKK1 promoter region from -1100 to + 1 bp was cloned into the luciferase reporter vector pGL4.29 (Promega, Charbonnières-les-Bains, France), which was cotransfected with pcDNA3.1-JUN and/or pcDNA3.1-FOSL1 into AGS cells for 48 h using Lipofectamine 2000 (Invitrogen). The activities of firefly luciferase and Renilla luciferase were determined using the dual luciferase reporter system (Promega). The ratio of firefly luciferase activities to Renilla luciferase activities (Fluc/Rluc) was used to describe the reporter activities.

Western blotting

Proteins (25 g) were resolved *via* SDS-PAGE and transferred by electroblotting onto the PVDF membrane (Millipore, Billerica, MA, United States). After blocking with 5% nonfat milk, primary antibodies were used to probe the membrane overnight at 4 °C. The membrane was incubated with horseradish-peroxidase-conjugated secondary antibodies. The bands were visualized using electro-chemiluminescence. Details of the antibodies are provided in Supplementary Table 1.

RT-qPCR

RNA isolation was performed by TRIzol reagent. cDNA was synthesized through the process of reverse transcription (RT) using a standard protocol according to the manufacturer's instructions. Quantitative PCR (qPCR) was performed using fluorogenic SYBR Green (BioRad, Hercules, CA, United States). The $2^{-\Delta\Delta CT}$ method was used for relative mRNA quantitation of target genes. GAPDH gene served as the loading control. RT-qPCR primers are listed in Supplemental Table 2.

Immunohistochemistry and immunofluorescence

Gerbil stomachs, nude mouse xenografts, and human GC tissues were cut into 5-μm thick sections. Immunohistochemistry was used to detect expression of JUN, DKK1, CKAP4 and Ki67 in these tissues, and immunofluorescence imaging was used to assess β-catenin expression and nuclear translocation in DKK1-silenced AGS cells, as described previously[25]. The quantification of immunohistochemical staining was performed by Image J software. Immunohistochemistry score was determined by multiplying the intensity score and the percentage score[27]. Details of the antibodies are provided in Supplementary Table 1.

Cell growth curve

Cell viability was determined using Cell Counting Kit-8 kit (CCK-8, Dojindo, Japan) in accordance with the kit instructions. Cells (1000 cells per well) were placed in a 96-well plate in sextuplicate per condition and cultured for 1-6 d. CCK-8 solution (10 μL) was added to each well at the corresponding time points, and the cells were cultured for an additional 2 h. CCK-8 was used to detect cell viability.

Colony formation assay

Cells (500 cells per well) were placed in a 6-well plate in triplicate per condition and cultured for 2 wk. The growth medium was changed once every 4 d. Two weeks later, 0.1% crystal violet (Solarbio, China) was used to stain the colonies after being fixed with 4% paraformaldehyde. Colony count was performed using a microscope.

Transwell assay

Transwell migration and invasion assays were performed using a 24-well Transwell insert (pore size of 8 μm) with and without Matrigel (Biosciences, San Jose, CA, United States). A total of 1×10^4 cells in medium with 1% FBS was added to the upper chamber of the Transwell, and 800 μL of medium with 10% FBS was added in lower chamber. At 24 h and 72 h after culture, 4% paraformaldehyde was used to fix the inserts for 30 min at room temperature before being stained in a 0.1% crystal violet solution and

imaged. Cells that migrated or invaded to the lower chamber were counted using a microscope.

Cell cycle and apoptosis

Cell cycle and apoptosis analyses were performed using flow cytometry, as previously described[25]. Cell cycle distribution and apoptosis were analyzed using FloJo software.

Co-immunoprecipitation

Co-immunoprecipitation (Co-IP) was performed using an Absin Co-IP kit (Shanghai, China). BGC823 cells (3×10^6) with or without *H. pylori* infection were sonicated three times for 20 s each in ice-cold lysis buffer before being centrifuged at 14000 × g for 10 min at 4 °C. The supernatant was then collected as whole-cell lysates. Cell lysates were incubated overnight at 4 °C with a CKAP4 antibody (2 μg) and control IgG (1 μg). Protein A- and protein G-Sepharose (10 μL) (Sigma-Aldrich, St. Louis, MO, United States) were added to the cell lysates and left on for 8 h at 4 °C. After 1 min of centrifugation at 12000 × g, the beads were collected and washed three times with wash buffer. The beads were boiled in 2 × Laemmeli sample buffer for 5 min and centrifugated for 1 min at 14000 × g and 4 °C. SDS-PAGE was used to resolve proteins in the supernatants (15 μL) after being collected. Western blotting was used to detect DKK1 by an anti-DKK1 antibody (1:400).

Tumorigenicity in nude mice

The ARRIVE (Animal Research: Reporting In Vivo Experiments) guidelines (https://www.nc3rs.org.uk/arrive-guidelines) were followed for all animal experiments to minimize pain and discomfort for the animals. Guizhou Medical University Animal Care Welfare Committee approved the animal study (No. 1702155). Ten BALB/c nude mice (male, age 3-4 wk) were provided by Chongqing Tengxin Biotechnology (Chongqing, China). Mice were accustomed to the laboratory environment that was a 12-h light/12-h dark cycle at 23 °C with 50% humidity and were given water and food *ad libitum*. After 2 wk, BGC823 cells (2×10^6) stably overexpressing DKK1 and negative control cells were transplanted subcutaneously into the flanks of the mice (5 mice per group), and the tumor size was measured every 3 d. After 16 d, all mice were killed by intravenous injection of barbiturate overdose (150 mg/kg), and the tumors were removed. Tumor weights and volumes were determined using the formula (length × width^2)/2.

Lentivirus infection

The lentiviruses containing shJUN and shDKK1, overexpression lentiviruses for JUN and DKK1, and control lentiviruses were obtained from Shanghai Jikai Gene Co. Ltd. (China). These lentiviruses were used to infect AGS, SGC-7901, NCT-N87, SNU-16 and BGC823 cells (2×10^5) in a 12-well plate at MOI 10-30 for 48 h. Polybrene (8 μg/mL; Sigma) was added to the 12-well plate to increase the efficiency of lentivirus infection. After 24 h, the medium containing lentiviruses and polybrene was changed with fresh medium and cultured for a further 48 h. After that, the stable cell lines were selected for 2 wk using 2 μg/mL puromycin, in which the medium containing puromycin was changed every 2-3 d. The cells were maintained in 1 μg/mL puromycin. Western blotting and RT-qPCR were used to ensure that target genes were stably knocked down or overexpressed.

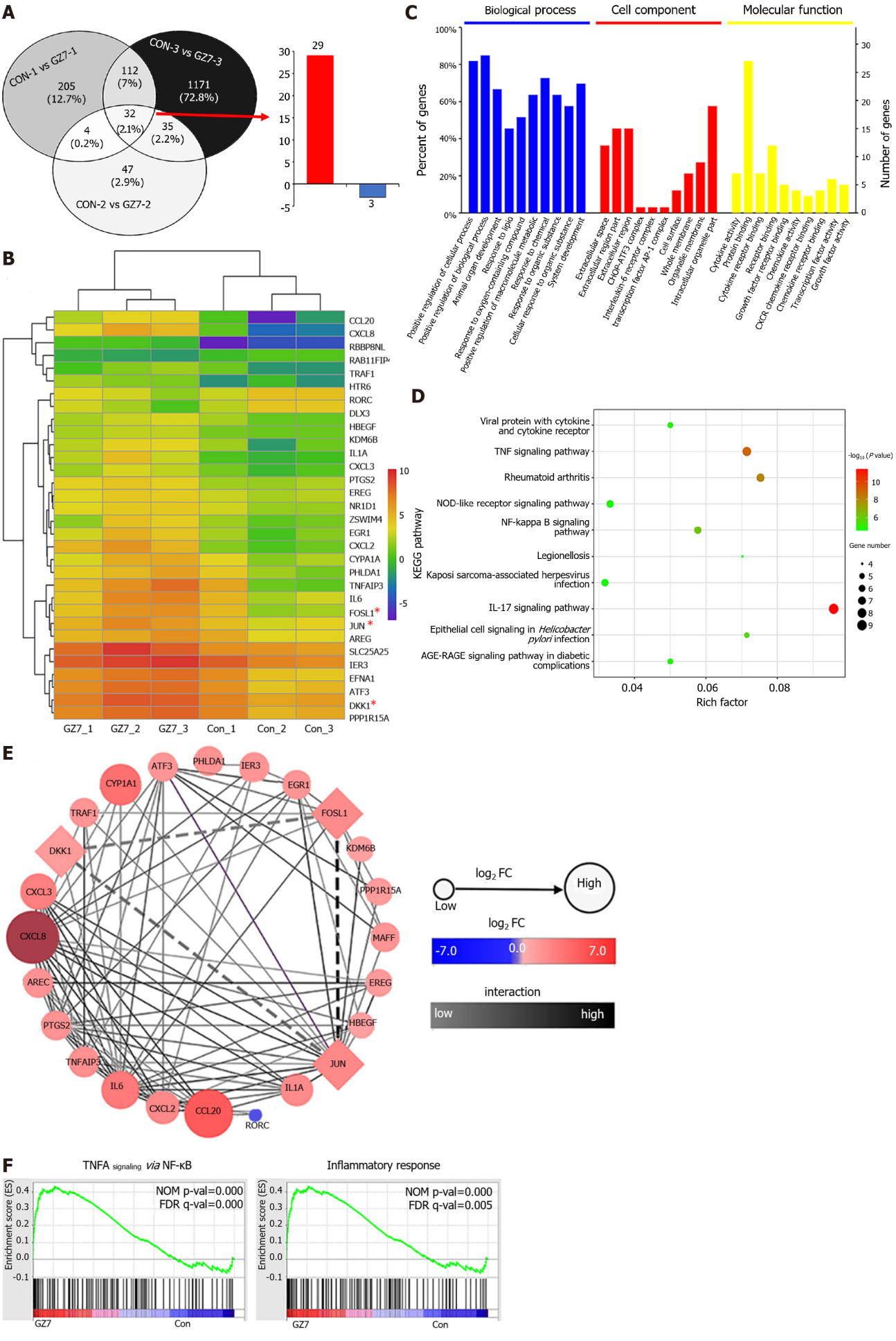
Statistical analysis

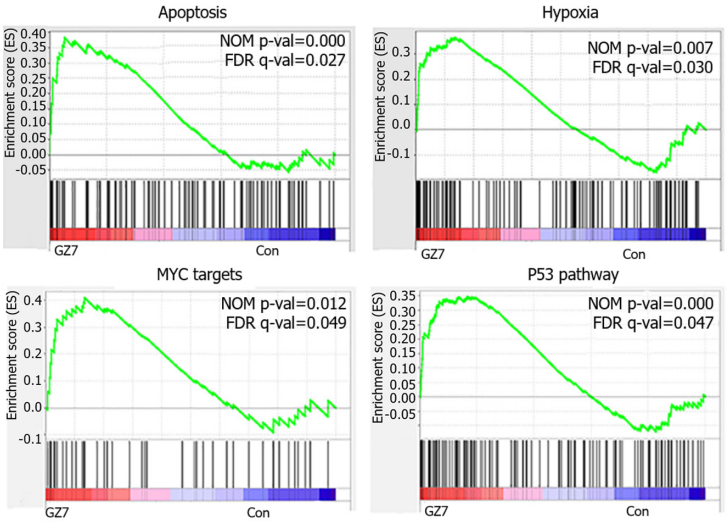
SPSS 22.0 (IBM, Armonk, NY, United States) was used for all statistical analyses. ImageJ software (National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD, United States) was used for the quantification of images from immunohistochemistry. GraphPad Prism 8.0 (La Jolla, CA, United States) was used to create statistical figures. All presented images were representative of three or more individual experiments. One-way or two-way analysis of variance was performed for comparisons between multiple groups. All results were expressed as mean ± SD. $P < 0.05$ indicated statistically significant differences.

RESULTS

Analysis of DEGs between primary GC cells with and without H. pylori infection

RNA-seq analysis identified 32 DEGs, including 29 upregulated and three downregulated genes that were shared by three pairs of primary GC cells infected with or without *H. pylori* (Figure 1A and B). These DEGs were mostly enriched in the regulation of biological processes, cytokine activity, protein binding, and tumor necrosis factor (TNF), nuclear factor (NF)-κB, and interleukin (IL)-17 pathways according to GO and KEGG pathway enrichment analysis (Figure 1C and D). The PPI network identified the hub genes *JUN*, *CXCL8*, *CCL20*, and *FOSL1* and their interactions, and JUN and FOLS1 were directly connected to DKK1 (Figure 1E). Based on the GSEA of DEGs, TNFA signaling *via* NF-κB, the inflammatory response, apoptosis, hypoxia, MYC targets, and the P53 pathway were enriched in *H. pylori*-infected GC cells (Figure 1F). These molecular events are closely associated with GC development and progression. JUN, FOLS1, and DKK1 were selected for further investigation.


A
CON-1 vs GZ7-1
CON-3 vs GZ7-3
CON-2 vs GZ7-2
205 (12.7%)
112 (7%)
1171 (72.8%)
32 (2.1%)
4 (0.2%)
35 (2.2%)
47 (2.9%)
29
3
B
CCL20
CXCL8
RBBP8NL
RAB11FIP4
TRAF1
HTR6
RORC
DLX3
HBEGF
KDM6B
IL1A
CXCL3
PTGS2
EREG
NR1D1
ZSWIM4
EGR1
CXCL2
CYPA1A
PHLDA1
TNFAIP3
IL6
FOSL1*
JUN*
AREG
SLC25A25
IER3
EFNA1
ATF3
DKK1*
PPP1R15A
GZ7_1
GZ7_2
GZ7_3
Con_1
Con_2
Con_3
C
Biological process
Cell component
Molecular function
Percent of genes
Number of genes
Positive regulation of cellular process
Positive regulation of biological process
Animal organ development
Response to lipid
Response to oxygen-containing compound
Positive regulation of macromolecule metabolic
Response to chemical
Response to organic substance
Cellular response to organic substance
System development
Extracellular space
Extracellular region part
Extracellular region
CHOP-ATF3 complex
Interleukin-6 receptor complex
transcription factor AP-1 complex
Cell surface
Whole membrane
Organelle membrane
Intracellular organelle part
Cytokine activity
Protein binding
Cytokine receptor binding
Receptor binding
Growth factor receptor binding
Chemokine activity
CXCR chemokine receptor binding
Chemokine receptor binding
Transcription factor activity
Growth factor activity
D
KEGG pathway
Viral protein with cytokine and cytokine receptor
TNF signaling pathway
Rheumatoid arthritis
NOD-like receptor signaling pathway
NF-kappa B signaling pathway
Legionellosis
Kaposi sarcoma-associated herpesvirus infection
IL-17 signaling pathway
Epithelial cell signaling in Helicobacter pylori infection
AGE-RAGE signaling pathway in diabetic complications
Rich factor
-log10 (P value)
Gene number
E
ATF3
PHLDA1
IER3
CYP1A1
EGR1
TRAF1
FOSL1
DKK1
KDM6B
CXCL3
PPP1R15A
CXCL8
MAFF
AREC
EREG
PTGS2
HBEGF
TNFAIP3
JUN
IL6
IL1A
CXCL2
CCL20
RORC
log2 FC
Low
High
-7.0
0.0
7.0
interaction
low
high
F
TNFA signaling via NF-κB
NOM p-val=0.000
FDR q-val=0.000
Inflammatory response
NOM p-val=0.000
FDR q-val=0.005
Enrichment score (ES)
GZ7
Con



DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6769 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2022.

Figure 1 Comparison of differentially expressed genes between primary gastric cancer cells with and without *Helicobacter pylori* infection. A: Venn diagram of differentially expressed genes (>DEGs); B: DEGs heatmap analysis by R heatmap package. Asterisks indicate the genes investigated in this study; C: Gene Ontology analysis of the DEGs; D: Kyoto Encyclopedia of Genes and Genomes pathway enrichment analysis of the DEGs; E: Protein-protein interaction network of the DEGs; F: Gene set enrichment analysis (GSEA) enrichment analyses of the DEGs with GSEA version 4.1.0. Con: Control; GZ7: *Helicobacter pylori* GZ7. TNF: Tumor necrosis factor; FOSL1: Fos-like antigen-1; DKK1: Dickkopf-related protein 1.

H. pylori infection induces JUN and FOSL1 upregulation to activate DKK1 expression via binding to the DKK1 promoter

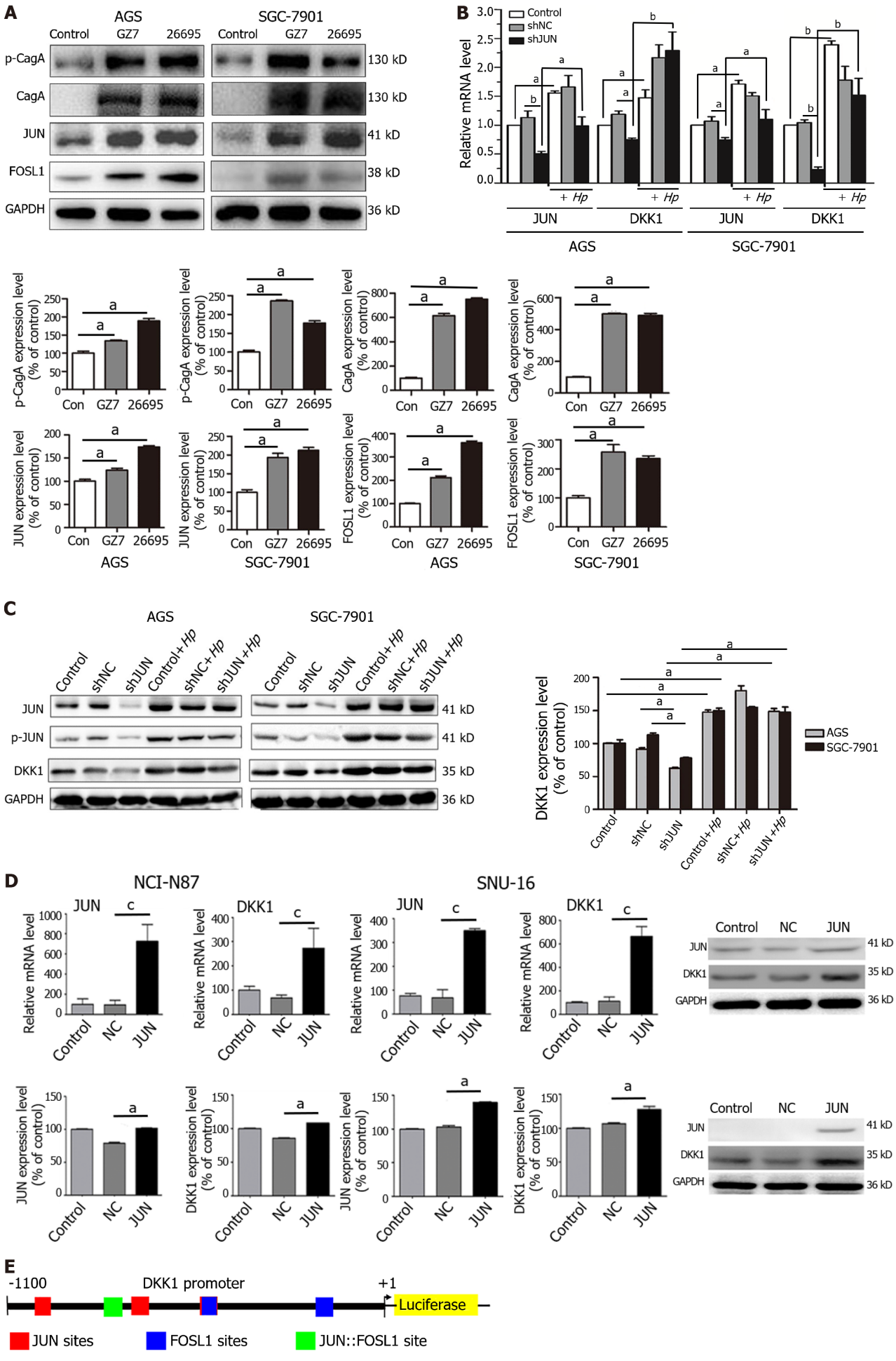
To confirm the results of RNA-seq, AGS and SGC-7901 cells were infected with *H. pylori* GZ7 and 26695. We discovered that JUN and FOSL1 proteins were highly expressed in *H. pylori*-infected cells compared to the control cells, which supported the RNA-seq resultss (Figure 2A). The *H. pylori* virulence factor CagA and its phosphorylation levels were dramatically elevated in *H. pylori*-infected cells (Figure 2A).

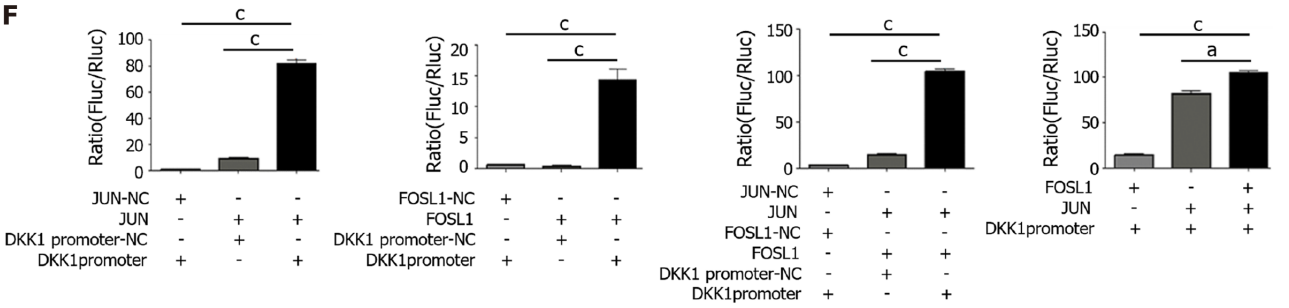
We determined JUN expression in eight GC cell lines. JUN was highly expressed in AGS and SGC-7901 cells but weakly expressed in NCI-N87 and SNU-16 cells (Supplementary Figure 1). JUN was knocked down using short hairpin RNA (shRNA) in AGS and SGC-7901 cells and overexpressed using lentivirus infection in NCI-N87 and SNU-16 cells. RT-qPCR and western blotting revealed a substantial decrease in DKK1 expression after JUN knockdown. When the JUN-knockdown cells were infected with *H. pylori*, the mRNA and protein levels of DKK1 recovered and JUN expression and phosphorylation increased (Figure 2B and C). In contrast, the mRNA and protein level of DKK1 was significantly increased in SNU-16 and NCI-N87 cells after JUN overexpression (Figure 2D). These findings revealed that *H. pylori*-induced JUN enhanced DKK1 expression.

JUN and FOSL1 comprise AP-1 *via* their basic leucine zipper domain[28]. AP-1-binding sites include the 5′-TGA(C/G) TCA-3′ (TRE motif), 5′-TCACGTCA-3′ (CRE motif), and their single-base variants[29]. To confirm that AP-1 transcriptionally regulated DKK1 expression, we predicted AP-1-binding sites in the promoter region from -1100 to + 1 bp upstream of the DKK1 transcription site, which is highly conserved in mammalian genomic DNA[30]. Three JUN sites, two FOSL1 sites, and a JUN::FOSL site were observed in the DKK1 promoter (Figure 2E). The DKK1 promoter region from -1100 to + 1 bp was inserted into a luciferase reporter plasmid, which was cotransfected into AGS cells with JUN and/or FOSL1 vectors. The dual-luciferase reporter assay indicated that transfection of AGS cells with JUN and FOSL1 markedly increased the luciferase activity, and the effect of the JUN vector was stronger. JUN and FOSL1 cotransfection exhibited the highest luciferase activity in AGS cells (Figure 2F). This result confirmed that AP-1, including the JUN::JUN and JUN::FOSL1 complexes, bound to the DKK1 promoter to initiate DKK1 transcription.

High JUN and DKK1 expression in gerbil gastric tissues infected with H. pylori and human GC tissues

We successfully established GC models in Mongolian gerbils *via H. pylori* infection in a previous study, in which erosion, atrophy, intestinal metaplasia, and well-differentiated GC were progressively detected in the stomach mucosa[26]. Positive JUN and DKK1 staining increased progressively in gerbil gastric epithelium with *H. pylori* infection from 3 mo to 24 mo in the present study (Figure 3A), which suggested that the expression of JUN and DKK1 was linked to the pathological development of GC in gerbils. Human GC genomic data were extracted from the TCGA-Stomach Adenocarcinoma database (TCGA-STAD), which included 375 cancer and 391 normal tissues. The expression of DKK1 mRNA was


A
AGS
SGC-7901
Control
GZ7
26695
p-CagA
CagA
JUN
FOSL1
GAPDH
130 kD
130 kD
41 kD
38 kD
36 kD
B
Control
shNC
shJUN
Relative mRNA level
+ Hp
JUN
DKK1
AGS
SGC-7901
p-CagA expression level (% of control)
CagA expression level (% of control)
JUN expression level (% of control)
FOSL1 expression level (% of control)
Con
C
Control
shNC
shJUN
Control+Hp
shNC+Hp
shJUN+Hp
p-JUN
DKK1
41 kD
35 kD
DKK1 expression level (% of control)
D
NCI-N87
SNU-16
Relative mRNA level
NC
E
-1100
DKK1 promoter
+1
Luciferase
JUN sites
FOSL1 sites
JUN::FOSL1 site



DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6769 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2022.

Figure 2 *Helicobacter pylori* infection increases JUN and fos-like antigen-1 expression to activate the dickkopf-related protein 1 promoter. A: Western blotting for CagA, p-CagA, JUN, and fos-like antigen-1 (FOSL1) in AGS and SGC-7901 cells infected with *Helicobacter pylori* (*H. pylori*) for 6 h. $^{a}P < 0.05$; B: RT-qPCR for JUN and dickkopf-related protein 1 (DKK1) in JUN knockdown and/or *H. pylori*-infected AGS and SGC-7901 cells. $^{a}P < 0.05$; $^{b}P < 0.01$; C: Western blotting for JUN, p-JUN, and DKK1 in JUN knockdown and/or *H. pylori*-infected AGS and SGC-7901 cells. $^{a}P < 0.05$; D: RT-qPCR (top) and Western blotting (bottom) for JUN and DKK1 in NCI-N87 and SNU-16 cells with JUN overexpression. $^{a}P < 0.05$; $^{c}P < 0.001$; E: Prediction of AP-1 binding sites in the DKK1 promoter (from -1100 to + 1 bps) by JASPAR; F: JUN and/or FOSL1 promotes DKK1 promoter activity in AGS cells by dual-luciferase reporter assay. The ratio of firefly to Renilla luciferase (Fluc/Rluc) is used to display the results. $^{a}P < 0.01$; $^{c}P < 0.001$; Con: Control; *Hp*: *H. pylori*; GZ7: *H. pylori* GZ7; 26695: *H. pylori* 26695. FOSL1: Fos-like antigen-1; DKK1: Dickkopf-related protein 1; *H. pylori*: *Helicobacter pylori*.

significantly higher in GC tissues than normal tissues, and GC patients with a higher DKK1 expression had a shorter overall and disease-free survival (Figure 3B). Human GC tissues showed stronger positive staining for JUN and DKK1 than pericancer tissues (Figure 3C). However, no distinction was observed in the levels of JUN mRNA between GC and normal tissues in the TCGA-STAD database (Supplementary Figure 2).

Knockdown or overexpression of DKK1 suppresses or promotes malignant behavior of GC cells

To investigate the function of DKK1 in GC, we first established DKK1-knockdown AGS cells using two independent shRNAs (Supplementary Figure 3A) and found that cell proliferation and colony formation were significantly inhibited in AGS cells (Figure 4A and B). DKK1 knockdown also suppressed AGS cell migration and invasion (Figure 4C). Flow cytometry showed that the knockdown of DKK1 greatly increased apoptosis in AGS cells, especially early apoptosis (Figure 4D).

We generated stable DKK1-overexpressing AGS and BGC823 cells (Supplementary Figure 3B). In contrast to DKK1 knockdown, DKK1 overexpression promoted AGS and BGC823 cell growth, colony formation, migration, and invasion (Figure 4E and F). We subcutaneously implanted the DKK1-overexpressing BGC823 cells into nude mice and found that DKK1 overexpression in cancer cells increased the growth of xenograft tumors in mice. The tumor weight and volume in DKK1-overexpressing nude mice were significantly greater than normal control mice (Figure 4G). The mice were killed, and the subcutaneous tumors were removed. Immunohistochemical staining confirmed that DKK1 and Ki67 (cell proliferation marker) were expressed at higher levels in DKK1-overexpressing than control tumors (Figure 4H). These findings verified the tumor-promoting effects of DKK1 in GC.

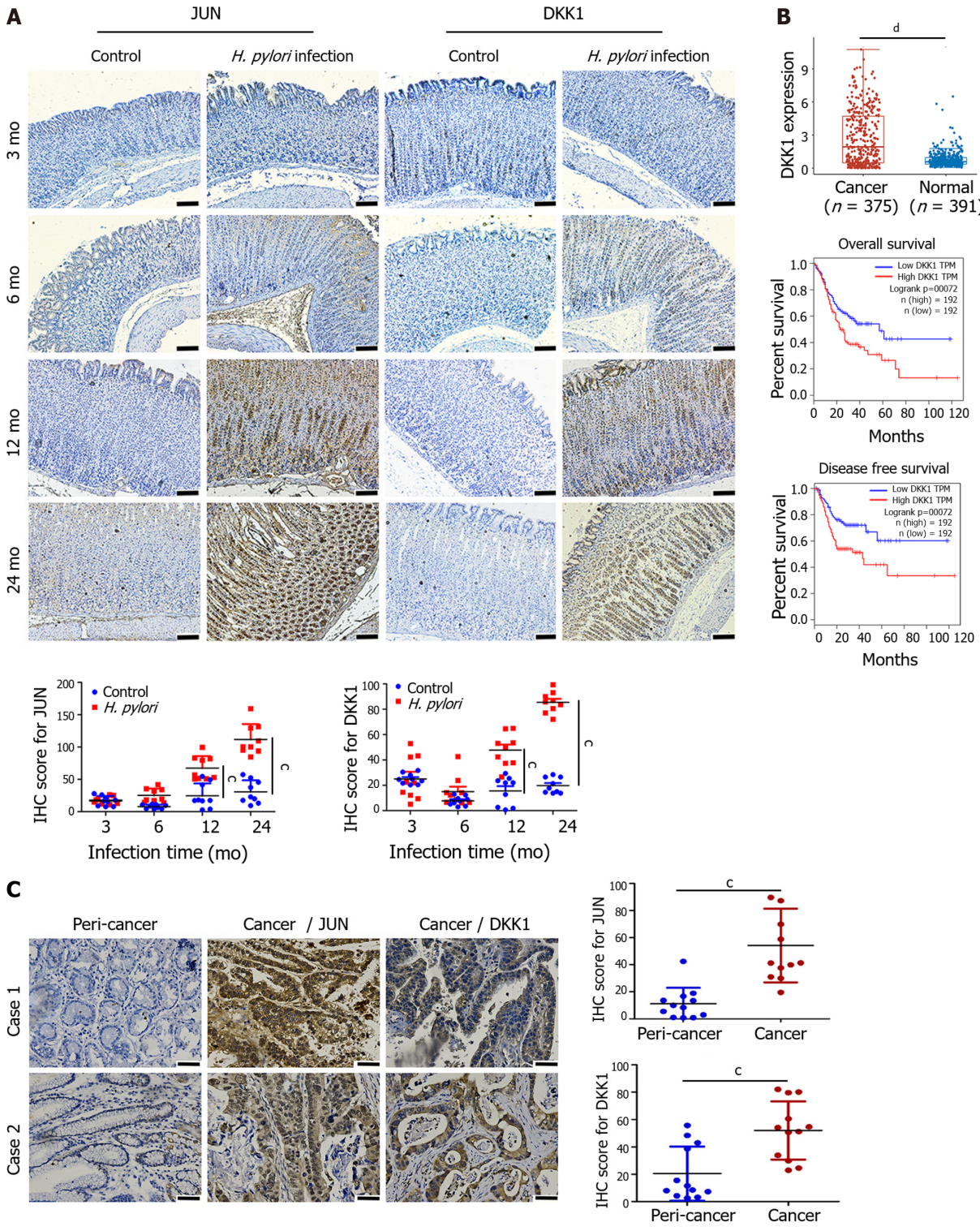
Binding of DKK1 to CKAP4, but not LRP5/6, in GC tissues and cells

DKK1 suppresses the Wnt/β-catenin pathway by interacting with Wnt coreceptors LRP5/6. Therefore, we detected β-catenin expression and nuclear translocation in DKK1-knockdown AGS cells and discovered that the levels of β-catenin mRNA and protein were reduced by DKK1 knockdown without significant change in β-catenin nuclear translocation, which was even lower in shDKK1-2# cells (Figure 5A-C). In contrast, DKK1 overexpression enhanced β-catenin mRNA levels in AGS and BGC823 cells (Figure 5D). The expression of β-catenin in GC tissues was greater than in normal tissues, but there is no correlation between β-catenin expression and GC patients' survival in the TCGA-STAD dataset (Figure 5E). The findings suggest that the effects of DKK1 are independent of Wnt/β-catenin signaling in GC.

CKAP4 was recently discovered as a DKK1 receptor. We found that CKAP4 mRNA and protein expression was increased in 12 clinical GC samples, especially in the cell surface membrane (red arrow), and 375 GC specimens from the TCGA-STAD database (Figure 5F-H). Infection with *H. pylori* also upregulated CKAP4 expression in GC cells (Figure 5I). Higher CKAP4 expression was linked to lower overall survival in GC patients (Figure 5F). The binding of endogenous DKK1 to CKAP4 was detected in *H. pylori*-infected and uninfected BGC823 cells (Figure 5J).

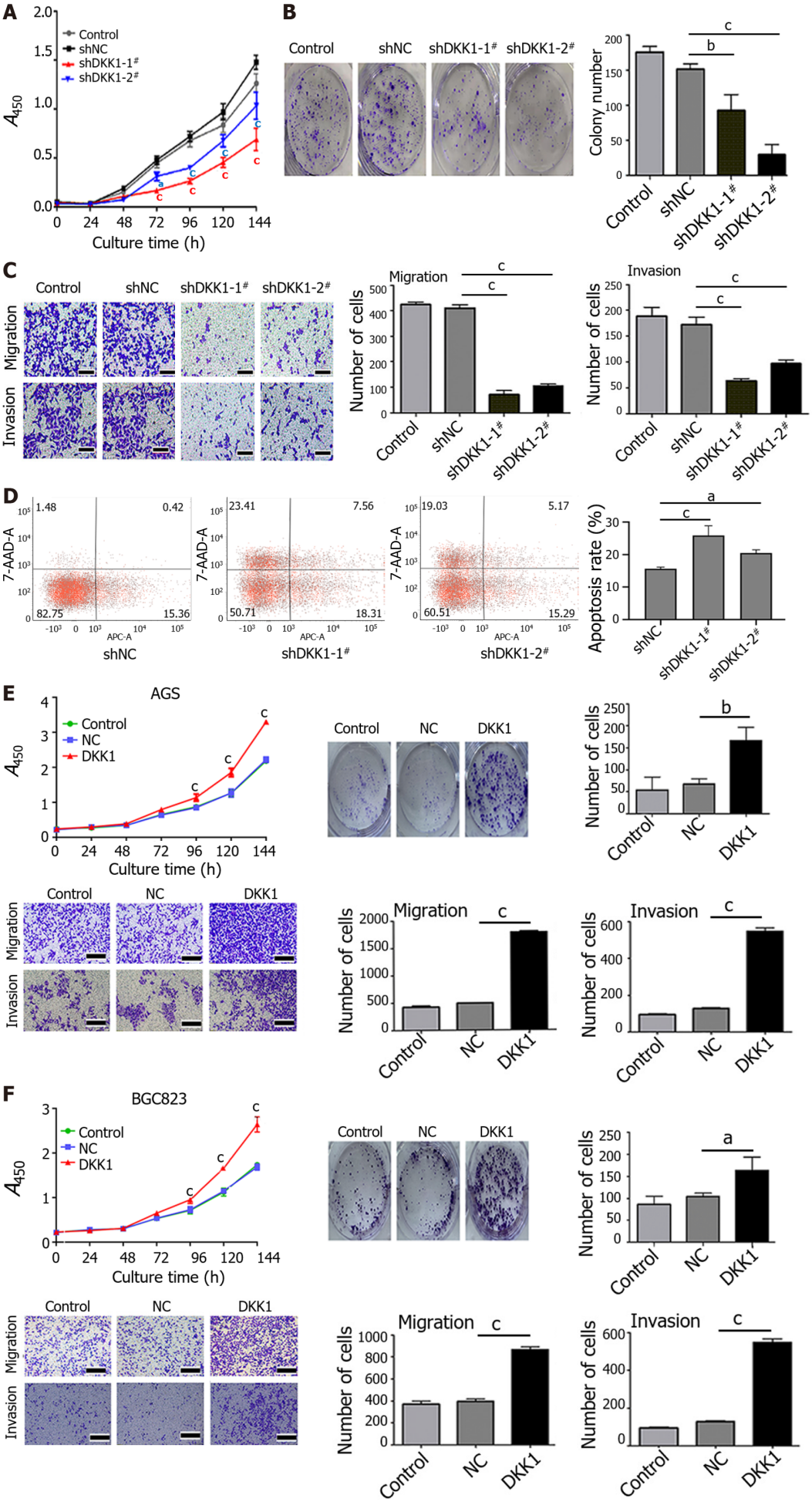
DKK1 promotes the malignant phenotype of GC cells via the PI3K/AKT/mTOR pathway

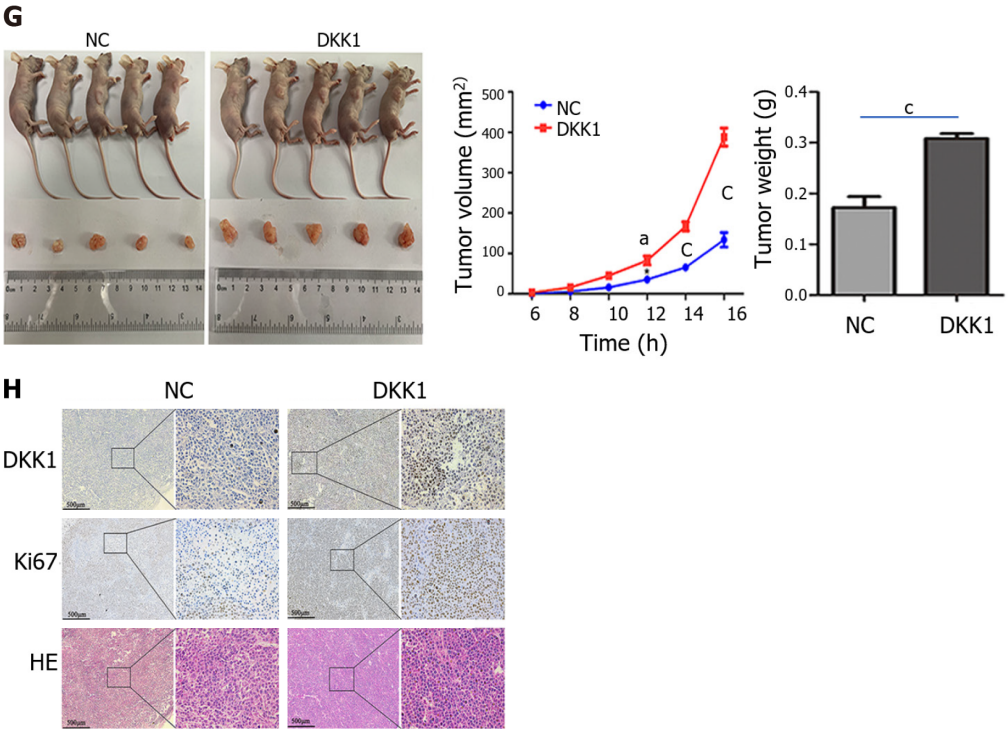
After confirming the DKK1/CKAP4 axis in GC cells, we evaluated whether DKK1 knockdown and overexpression affected the PI3K/AKT/mTOR pathway. DKK1 knockdown markedly inhibited the



DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6769 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2022.

Figure 3 Immunohistochemistry for JUN and dickkopf-related protein 1 in gerbil stomach infected with *Helicobacter pylori* and gastric cancer tissues. A: Immunohistochemical analysis of JUN and dickkopf-related protein 1 (DKK1) proteins in *Helicobacter pylori* (*H. pylori*)-infected gerbil stomach tissues at 3 mo, 6 mo, 12 mo, and 24 mo post-infection (n = 3). Dot diagrams show the quantification of JUN and DKK1 staining in immunohistochemical samples. Nine sections were chosen randomly from three different samples and used to determine mean ± SD of the immunohistochemistry (IHC) score, which was calculated as described in the methods. Scale bar = 100 μm. $^{c}P < 0.001$; B: DKK1 expression and survival analysis in gastric cancer patients from the TCGA-STAD dataset. $^{d}P < 0.0001$; C: Representative images of immunohistochemical staining of JUN and DKK1 proteins in human gastric cancer specimens. Dot diagrams show the quantitation of JUN and DKK1 staining. Scale bar = 50 μm. Data from 12 clinical samples of gastric cancer patients are expressed as mean ± SD. $^{c}P < 0.001$. DKK1: Dickkopf-related protein 1; *H. pylori*: *Helicobacter pylori*.


A
Control
shNC
shDKK1-1#
shDKK1-2#
A450
Culture time (h)
B
Control
shNC
shDKK1-1#
shDKK1-2#
Colony number
C
Migration
Invasion
Number of cells
D
7-AAD-A
APC-A
1.48
0.42
82.75
15.36
23.41
7.56
50.71
18.31
19.03
5.17
60.51
15.29
Apoptosis rate (%)
E
AGS
NC
DKK1
F
BGC823



DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6769 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2022.

Figure 4 The effects of dickkopf-related protein 1 knockdown and overexpression on gastric cancer cell growth, migration, invasion, apoptosis, and xenograft growth in nude mice. A: Growth curve of dickkopf-related protein 1 (DKK1) knockdown AGS cells using CCK8 assay. $^{a}P < 0.05$; $^{c}P < 0.001$; B: Colony formation assay of AGS cells with DKK1 knockdown. $^{b}P < 0.01$; $^{c}P < 0.001$; C: Migration and invasion assay of DKK1 knockdown AGS cells using Transwell system. Bar graphs show the number of migrated or invaded cells (right). $^{c}P < 0.001$. Scale bar = 200 μm; D: Flow cytometry analysis for apoptosis in DKK1 knockdown AGS cells. Bar graphs show the percentage of apoptotic cells (right). $^{a}P < 0.05$; $^{c}P < 0.001$; E and F: CCK8, colony formation, and Transwell assays were used to measure the growth curve, colony formation, migration, and invasion of AGS (E) and BGC823 (F) cells with DKK1 overexpression. $^{a}P < 0.05$; $^{b}P < 0.01$; $^{c}P < 0.001$; Scale bar = 200 μm; G: DKK1 overexpression promotes xenograft tumor growth in nude mice. Line dot and bar graph show tumor volume and weight, respectively (n = 5 mice per group). $^{a}P < 0.05$; $^{c}P < 0.001$; H: Hematoxylin eosin staining of xenograft tumors and immunohistochemical analysis of DKK1 and Ki67 in xenograft tumors from nude mice. The boxed regions are magnified to the right. Scale bar = 500 μm. DKK1: Dickkopf-related protein 1; HE: Hematoxylin eosin.

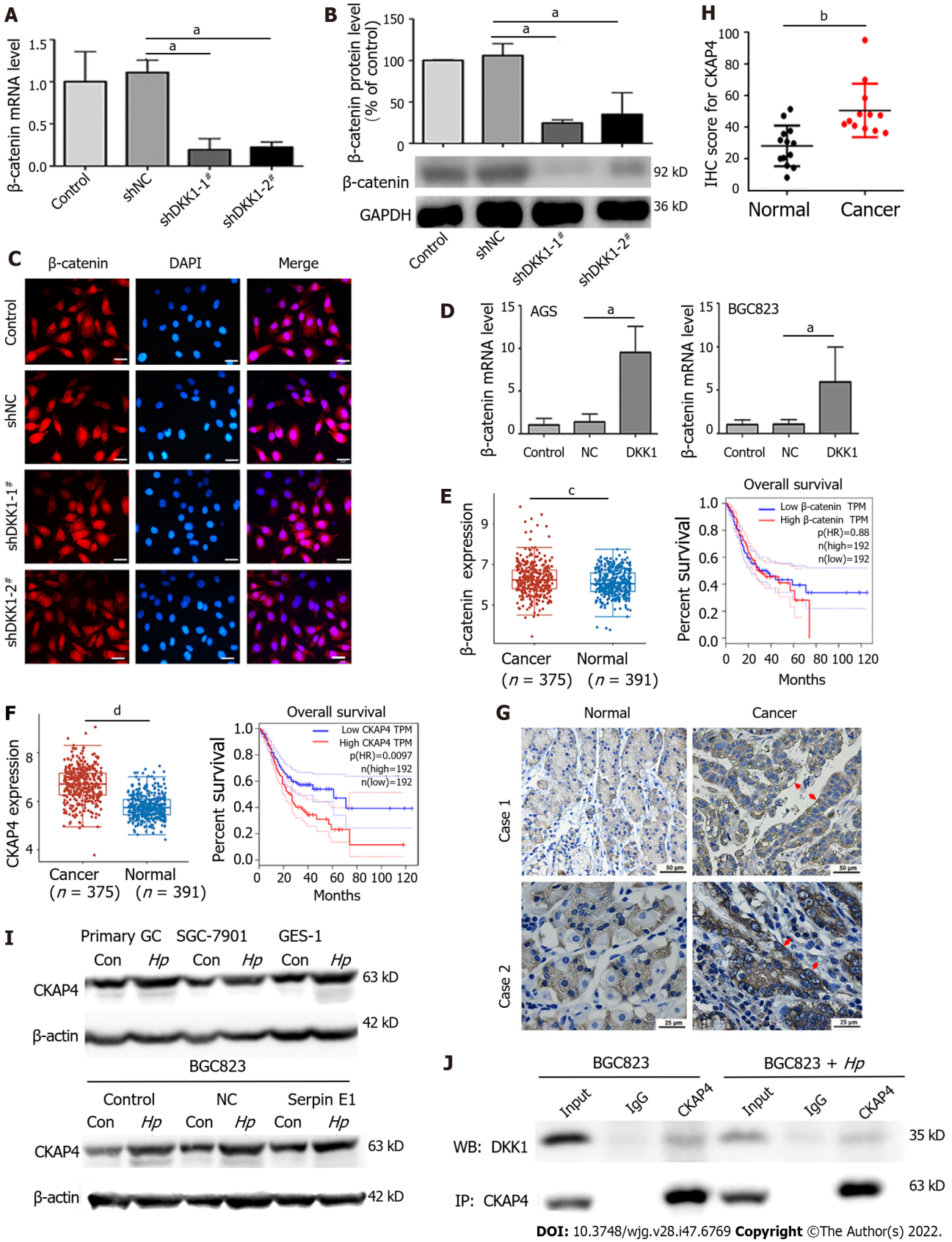
expression of p-PI3K, PI3K, p-AKT, AKT, p-mTOR, and mTOR, and p-PI3K, p-AKT, and p-mTOR were more inhibited. *H. pylori* infection restored the expression of DKK1 and increased PI3K/AKT/mTOR signaling in DKK1 knockdown cells (Figure 6A). Conversely, DKK1 overexpression increased PI3K, AKT and mTOR phosphorylation, and a specific inhibitor of PI3K, LY294002, inhibited the DKK1-induced increase in the three phosphorylated proteins in AGS and BGC823 cells (Figure 6B). These findings suggest that *H. pylori*-upregulated DKK1 activated the PI3K/AKT/mTOR pathway.

Next, we examined the effects of LY294002 in DKK1-overexpressing AGS and BGC823 cells and found that blockade of PI3K/AKT/mTOR signaling with LY294002 significantly decreased cell proliferation, colony formation, migration and invasion (Figure 6C and D), which further confirmed our hypothesis that DKK1 promoted the malignant phenotypes of GC cells *via* activation of the PI3K/AKT/mTOR pathway.

DISCUSSION

Our current study revealed that *H. pylori* infection upregulated the expression of JUN and FOSL1, which formed AP-1 to activate DKK1 transcription. Gain- and loss-of-function studies showed that DKK1 had important tumor-promoting functions in *H. pylori*-related GC *via* activation of the CKAP4/PI3K/AKT/mTOR pathway.

The gene expression profiles obtained by independent research groups using RNA-seq were inconsistent due to the use of diverse cell lines, GC tissues, *H. pylori* strains, and whole-genome expression arrays[31-33]. The upregulated expression of JUN and FOLS1 was noted in *H. pylori* NCTC11639-infected AGS cells, but not experimentally verified[34]. DKK1 was also downregulated in *H. pylori* 26695-infected AGS cells, but this observation was not tested experimentally[35]. Using RNA-seq, we identified 32 DEGs that were shared by all three models of primary GC cells infected with *H. pylori* GZ7. Of the 32 DEGs, JUN, FOSL1 and DKK1 were highly expressed in *H. pylori*-infected cells, which was confirmed in GC tissues and *H. pylori*-infected gerbil stomach tissues. The enrichment



DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6769 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2022.

Figure 5 Dickkopf-related protein 1 promotes β-catenin and cytoskeleton-associated protein 4 expression and the binding of dickkopf-related protein 1 to cytoskeleton-associated protein 4 in gastric cancer tissues and cells but does not affect the nuclear translocation of β-catenin. A-C: Dickkopf-related protein 1 (DKK1) knockdown decreases β-catenin expression without changing β-catenin nuclear translocation in AGS cells, as determined using RT-qPCR (A), Western blotting (B), and immunofluorescence (C). Scale bar = 25 μm; $^{a}P < 0.05$; D: RT-qPCR for β-catenin in AGS and BGC823 cells with DKK1 overexpression. $^{a}P < 0.05$; E: β-catenin expression and its association with 10-year overall survival in gastric cancer (GC) samples of the TCGA-STAD database. $^{c}P < 0.001$; F: Cytoskeleton-associated protein 4 (CKAP4) expression and its positive association with 10-year overall survival in GC samples of the

TCGA-STAD database. [d]*P* < 0.0001; G: Immunohistochemical staining of CKAP4 in clinical GC tissues and matched normal tissues. The red arrow indicates CKAP4 expression in the cell membrane; H: CKAP4 staining quantification in G. Data from 12 independent samples are expressed as means ± SD. [b]*P* < 0.01; I: Western blotting for CKAP4 in GC cells with or without *Helicobacter pylori* (*H. pylori*) infection for 72 h; J: Co-IP of DKK1 and CKAP4 in BGC823 cells with and without *H. pylori* infection for 72 h. Con: Control; *Hp*: *H. pylori*. DKK1: Dickkopf-related protein 1; *H. pylori*: *Helicobacter pylori*; CKAP4: Cytoskeleton-associated protein 4; GC: Gastric cancer.

analysis of KEGG pathways suggested that DEGs were primarily involved in inflammatory signalings such as TNF, NF-κB and IL-17. GESA also revealed that *H. pylori* infection activates the TNFA pathway, the P53 pathway, apoptosis, hypoxia, and the inflammatory response.

DKK1 was recently found to be epigenetically downregulated by promoter hypermethylation, which resulted in the nuclear translocation of β-catenin and activation of the Wnt/β-catenin pathway in gastric intestinal metaplasia, high-grade adenoma, and adenocarcinoma[36,37]. Conversely, Kikuchi *et al*[38] observed that DKK1 promoted the proliferation, invasion and metastasis of cancer cells independent of Wnt signaling. Other studies also suggested that DKK1 was often overexpressed in diverse tumor tissues, including GC, and DKK1 overexpression strongly correlated with poor cancer patient survival [39,40]. However, the mechanism underlying this association was not clear. Our study explained, for the first time, why DKK1 was upregulated in GC. *H. pylori* infection upregulates JUN and FOSL1 expression to form AP-1. AP-1 binds to the TRE and CRE motifs in the DKK1 promoter region to transcriptionally activate DKK1 expression in GC. This finding is contradictory to two earlier studies[36,37]. We speculate that decreased expression of DKK1 *via* promotor methylation, as reported by Lu *et al*[36], is more prevalent in gastric precancerous lesions and early-stage adenocarcinoma, and increased expression of DKK1 *via* promotor binding of AP-1, as observed in our study, is more likely to occur in *H. pylori*-infected and advanced GC. Two observations provide support for our assertion. First, we discovered that high expression of JUN and DKK1 was mostly observed in the stomach tissues of gerbils at least 12 mo after *H. pylori* infection. Second, DKK1 is frequently overexpressed in GC patients with lymph node invasion and distant metastasis[41].

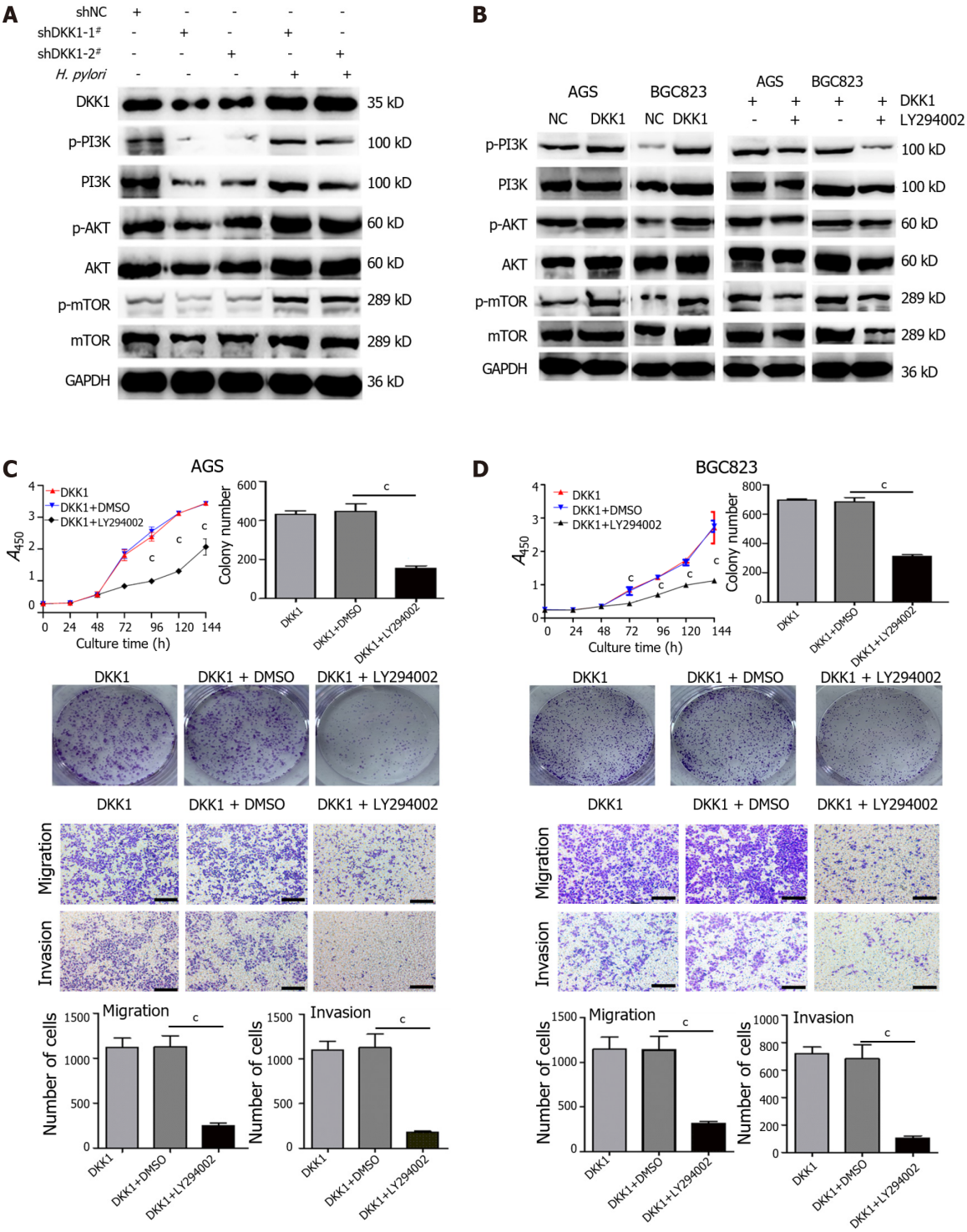
We demonstrated that the cancer-promoting function of DKK1 in GC was independent of Wnt/β-catenin signaling by observing that β-catenin expression and nuclear translocation were inhibited in DKK1-knockdown cells. CKAP4 was initially identified as an endoplasmic reticulum protein that was trafficked to the cell surface membrane after palmitoylation[42]. The combination of CKAP4 and DKK1 on the cell surface triggers pro-oncogenic or tumor-suppressive DKK1 signaling in different tumors[43, 44]. Although CKAP4 expression is high in many tumors[45,46], there is no information on CKAP4 expression in GC. We discovered that *H. pylori* infection simultaneously increased the expression of DKK1 and CKAP4 in GC cells, particularly CKAP4 expression on the cell membrane. High levels of DKK1 and CKAP4 expression were also consistently observed in GC tissues from the TCGA-STAD database and clinical GC specimens and were linked to a poor prognosis for GC patients. Notably, the interaction between DKK1 and CKAP4 was detected in GC cells. These results show that the DKK1/CKAP4 axis is present in *H. pylori*-infected GC cells and GC tissues.

There are two tandem cysteine-rich domains in the DKK1 promoter region, CRD1 and CRD2. DKK1 CRD1 domain binding to LPR6 inhibits Wnt signaling, and DKK1 CRD2 domain binding to CKAP4 activates PI3K/AKT signaling[38]. CKAP4 overexpression on the surface of cancer cells likely prevents DKK1 binding to LRP6, resulting in subsequent suppression of Wnt/β-catenin signaling[47]. This presumption is partially supported by our experimental results that *H. pylori*-induced DKK1 activated the CKAP4/PI3K/AKT/mTOR pathway rather than inhibiting LRP6/Wnt/β-catenin signaling in GC cells. Infection with *H. pylori* reversed the PI3K/AKT/mTOR signaling inhibition caused by DKK1 knockdown. PI3K inhibition with LY294002 also suppressed the DKK1-mediated activation of the PI3K pathway and the malignant phenotype of GC cells. Recent evidence has shown that the PI3K/AKT/mTOR and Wnt/β-catenin signalings are commonly activated in GC[48,49]. However, the reason for DKK1 selective activation of the CKAP4/PI3K/AKT/mTOR pathway in *H. pylori*-related GC is not known and requires further study.

There were several limitations to this study. First, the number of clinical samples was small. Therefore, further study with larger sample sizes is required to determine the expression of the DKK1/CAKP4 axis in GC tissues and its association with *H. pylori* infection in cancer tissues. Second, only two strains of *H. pylori* were used in this study: An East Asian strain (*H. pylori* GZ7) and a western strain (*H. pylori* 26695). However, *H. pylori* exhibit intrastrain and interstrain heterogeneity. More *H. pylori* strains will be required to verify our findings.

CONCLUSION

H. pylori infection upregulated JUN and FOSL1 expression, which formed AP-1 to promote DKK1 transcription that resulted in gastric tumorigenesis *via* activation of the CKAP4/PI3K/AKT/mTOR pathway. DKK1/CKAP4 interaction could become an attractive target for *H. pylori*-related GC therapy.



DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6769 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2022.

Figure 6 Dickkopf-related protein 1 promotes the growth, migration, and invasion of AGS and BGC823 cells by activating the phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase/AKT/ mammalian target of rapamycin pathway. A and B: Western blotting for phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase (PI3K), p-PI3K, AKT, p-AKT, mammalian target of rapamycin (mTOR), and p-mTOR in dickkopf-related protein 1 (DKK1) knockdown and/or *Helicobacter pylori*-infected AGS cells (A) and DKK1 overexpression and/or LY294002 (50 μmol/L)-treated AGS and BGC823 cells (B); C and D: LY294002 treatment (50 μmol/L) decreases cell proliferation, colony formation, migration, and invasion in DKK1 overexpression AGS (C) and BGC823 (D) cells. Bar graphs show the quantitation of colony numbers or migrated and invaded cell numbers. Scale bar = 200 μm. $^{c}P < 0.001$. DKK1: Dickkopf-related protein 1; *H. pylori*: *Helicobacter pylori*; PI3K: Phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase; mTOR: Mammalian target of rapamycin.

The identification of small compounds and drugs targeting the DKK1/CKAP4 axis will be a crucial aspect of future studies. We will also investigate this possibility further.

ARTICLE HIGHLIGHTS

Research background

Gastric cancer (GC) is one of the most common malignant tumors with a high morbidity and mortality rate globally, especially in East Asian countries. *Helicobacter pylori* (*H. pylori*) infection is the most significant risk factor for GC. Studying their interaction can reveal the potential pathogenesis and therapeutic targets of GC.

Research motivation

Although substantial efforts have been done to link *H. pylori* infection and GC over the past decades, the molecular mechanisms of *H. pylori*-induced GC are not fully understood, which results in reduced treatment benefits.

Research objectives

The present study aimed to study the interaction of *H. pylori* infection, dickkopf-related protein (DKK) 1, and cytoskeleton-associated protein (CAKP) 4 in GC and the underlying molecular mechanisms.

Research methods

RNA sequencing identified differentially expressed genes (DEGs) between *H. pylori*-infected and uninfected primary GC cells. Dual-luciferase reporter assay and co-immunoprecipitation determined the interaction of activator protein (AP)-1, DKK1 and CKAP4. Western blotting and immunohistochemistry detected the expression of DKK1, CKAP4 and phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase (PI3K) pathway-related proteins in GC cells and tissues. Functional experiments and tumorigenicity in nude mice detected the malignant behavior of GC cells *in vitro* and *in vivo*.

Research results

H. pylori infection upregulated JUN, FOSL1, DKK1 and CKAP4 expression in GC cells, *H. pylori*-infected gerbil gastric tissues, and human GC samples. JUN and FOSL1 formed activator protein-1 (AP-1) to transcriptionally activate DKK1. DKK1 bound to CKAP4, but not Wnt coreceptor, to promote GC cell growth, migration, invasion, and xenograft tumor growth in nude mice *via* activating the PI-3K/AKT/mammalian target of rapamycin (mTOR) pathway. Targeting PI3K inhibited DKK1-mediated CKAP4/PI3K signaling activity and the malignant behavior of GC cells.

Research conclusions

H. pylori-induced AP-1 promotes the binding of DKK1 to CAKP4, which contributes to gastric tumorigenesis *via* the PI3K/AKT/mTOR pathway.

Research perspectives

The findings suggest that the DKK1/CKAP4 interaction may be a therapeutic target for *H. pylori*-induced GC. The identification of small compounds and drugs targeting the DKK1/CKAP4 axis will be a crucial aspect of future studies. We will also investigate this possibility further.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

We thank Mrs. Hai-Yan Liu from Guizhou Medical University for his expert review of statistical analysis. We also appreciate The Cancer Genome Atlas (TCGA) database.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Luo M and Chen YJ contributed equally to this work; Zhou JJ and Xie Y designed the research study; Luo M, Chen YJ, Zhao Y, and Long NY performed the research; Wang QR, Xiang YN, and Yang WX collected samples and analysis data; Zhou JJ and Zhao Y wrote the manuscript; all authors have read and approve the final manuscript.

Supported by the National Natural Science Foundation of China, No. 32160166, No. 31760328, and No. 31960028; Natural Science Foundation of Guizhou Province, No. ZC[2020]4Y026, No. JC[2020]1Z010, No. JC[2020]1Y333, and No. ZK[2022]041; and Scientific Research Project of Guizhou Medical University, No. 20NSP068.

Institutional review board statement: The study was reviewed and approved by the Guizhou Medical University Ethics Committee [Approval No. 2017(43)].

Institutional animal care and use committee statement: All procedures involving animal subjects were reviewed and

approved by the Animal Care Welfare Committee of Guizhou Medical University (No: 1702155).

Informed consent statement: All study participants provided informed written consent.

Conflict-of-interest statement: All authors declare no competing interests for this article.

Data sharing statement: All the data presented in the study are included in the article/supplementary materials. The datasets analyzed in the study can be found online, and the names of the datasets can be found in the article. Other data are available from the corresponding author on reasonable request.

ARRIVE guidelines statement: The authors have read the ARRIVE guidelines, and the manuscript was prepared and revised according to the ARRIVE guidelines.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article that was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution NonCommercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: https://creativecommons.org/Licenses/by-nc/4.0/

Country/Territory of origin: China

ORCID number: Jian-Jiang Zhou 0000-0002-0506-7955.

S-Editor: Chen YL
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Chen YX

REFERENCES

1 **Sung H**, Ferlay J, Siegel RL, Laversanne M, Soerjomataram I, Jemal A, Bray F. Global Cancer Statistics 2020: GLOBOCAN Estimates of Incidence and Mortality Worldwide for 36 Cancers in 185 Countries. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2021; **71**: 209-249 [PMID: 33538338 DOI: 10.3322/caac.21660]
2 **Smyth EC**, Nilsson M, Grabsch HI, van Grieken NC, Lordick F. Gastric cancer. *Lancet* 2020; **396**: 635-648 [PMID: 32861308 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(20)31288-5]
3 **Ajani JA**, Lee J, Sano T, Janjigian YY, Fan D, Song S. Gastric adenocarcinoma. *Nat Rev Dis Primers* 2017; **3**: 17036 [PMID: 28569272 DOI: 10.1038/nrdp.2017.36]
4 **Crowe SE**. Helicobacter pylori Infection. *N Engl J Med* 2019; **380**: 1158-1165 [PMID: 30893536 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMcp1710945]
5 **Wroblewski LE**, Peek RM Jr, Wilson KT. Helicobacter pylori and gastric cancer: factors that modulate disease risk. *Clin Microbiol Rev* 2010; **23**: 713-739 [PMID: 20930071 DOI: 10.1128/CMR.00011-10]
6 **de Martel C**, Georges D, Bray F, Ferlay J, Clifford GM. Global burden of cancer attributable to infections in 2018: a worldwide incidence analysis. *Lancet Glob Health* 2020; **8**: e180-e190 [PMID: 31862245 DOI: 10.1016/S2214-109X(19)30488-7]
7 **Cao W**, Chen HD, Yu YW, Li N, Chen WQ. Changing profiles of cancer burden worldwide and in China: a secondary analysis of the global cancer statistics 2020. *Chin Med J (Engl)* 2021; **134**: 783-791 [PMID: 33734139 DOI: 10.1097/CM9.0000000000001474]
8 **Sexton RE**, Al Hallak MN, Diab M, Azmi AS. Gastric cancer: a comprehensive review of current and future treatment strategies. *Cancer Metastasis Rev* 2020; **39**: 1179-1203 [PMID: 32894370 DOI: 10.1007/s10555-020-09925-3]
9 **Bejjani F**, Evanno E, Zibara K, Piechaczyk M, Jariel-Encontre I. The AP-1 transcriptional complex: Local switch or remote command? *Biochim Biophys Acta Rev Cancer* 2019; **1872**: 11-23 [PMID: 31034924 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbcan.2019.04.003]
10 **Atsaves V**, Leventaki V, Rassidakis GZ, Claret FX. AP-1 Transcription Factors as Regulators of Immune Responses in Cancer. *Cancers (Basel)* 2019; **11** [PMID: 31340499 DOI: 10.3390/cancers11071037]
11 **Trop-Steinberg S**, Azar Y. AP-1 Expression and its Clinical Relevance in Immune Disorders and Cancer. *Am J Med Sci* 2017; **353**: 474-483 [PMID: 28502334 DOI: 10.1016/j.amjms.2017.01.019]
12 **Jiang X**, Hui F, Qin X, Wu Y, Liu H, Gao J, Li X, Xu Y, Zhang Y. Diagnosis Accuracy and Prognostic Significance of the Dickkopf-1 Protein in Gastrointestinal Carcinomas: Systematic Review and Network Meta-analysis. *J Cancer* 2020; **11**: 7091-7100 [PMID: 33193872 DOI: 10.7150/jca.49970]
13 **Ahn VE**, Chu ML, Choi HJ, Tran D, Abo A, Weis WI. Structural basis of Wnt signaling inhibition by Dickkopf binding to LRP5/6. *Dev Cell* 2011; **21**: 862-873 [PMID: 22000856 DOI: 10.1016/j.devcel.2011.09.003]
14 **Menezes ME**, Devine DJ, Shevde LA, Samant RS. Dickkopf1: a tumor suppressor or metastasis promoter? *Int J Cancer* 2012; **130**: 1477-1483 [PMID: 21953410 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.26449]
15 **Jiang H**, Zhang Z, Yu Y, Chu HY, Yu S, Yao S, Zhang G, Zhang BT. Drug Discovery of DKK1 Inhibitors. *Front Pharmacol* 2022; **13**: 847387 [PMID: 35355709 DOI: 10.3389/fphar.2022.847387]
16 **Gao C**, Xie R, Ren C, Yang X. Dickkopf-1 expression is a novel prognostic marker for gastric cancer. *J Biomed Biotechnol*

2012; **2012**: 804592 [PMID: 22496615 DOI: 10.1155/2012/804592]
17 **Hong SA**, Yoo SH, Lee HH, Sun S, Won HS, Kim O, Ko YH. Prognostic value of Dickkopf-1 and ß-catenin expression in advanced gastric cancer. *BMC Cancer* 2018; **18**: 506 [PMID: 29720122 DOI: 10.1186/s12885-018-4420-8]
18 **Lee HS**, Lee HE, Park DJ, Kim HH, Kim WH, Park KU. Clinical significance of serum and tissue Dickkopf-1 levels in patients with gastric cancer. *Clin Chim Acta* 2012; **413**: 1753-1760 [PMID: 22796372 DOI: 10.1016/j.cca.2012.07.003]
19 **Bhavanasi D**, Speer KF, Klein PS. CKAP4 is identified as a receptor for Dickkopf in cancer cells. *J Clin Invest* 2016; **126**: 2419-2421 [PMID: 27322056 DOI: 10.1172/JCI88620]
20 **Kimura H**, Fumoto K, Shojima K, Nojima S, Osugi Y, Tomihara H, Eguchi H, Shintani Y, Endo H, Inoue M, Doki Y, Okumura M, Morii E, Kikuchi A. CKAP4 is a Dickkopf1 receptor and is involved in tumor progression. *J Clin Invest* 2016; **126**: 2689-2705 [PMID: 27322059 DOI: 10.1172/JCI84658]
21 **Baghery Saghchy Khorasani A**, Pourbagheri-Sigaroodi A, Pirsalehi A, Safaroghli-Azar A, Zali MR, Bashash D. The PI3K/Akt/mTOR signaling pathway in gastric cancer; from oncogenic variations to the possibilities for pharmacologic interventions. *Eur J Pharmacol* 2021; **898**: 173983 [PMID: 33647255 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejphar.2021.173983]
22 **Nam SY**, Lee HS, Jung GA, Choi J, Cho SJ, Kim MK, Kim WH, Lee BL. Akt/PKB activation in gastric carcinomas correlates with clinicopathologic variables and prognosis. *APMIS* 2003; **111**: 1105-1113 [PMID: 14678019 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-0463.2003.apm1111205.x]
23 **Lang SA**, Gaumann A, Koehl GE, Seidel U, Bataille F, Klein D, Ellis LM, Bolder U, Hofstaedter F, Schlitt HJ, Geissler EK, Stoeltzing O. Mammalian target of rapamycin is activated in human gastric cancer and serves as a target for therapy in an experimental model. *Int J Cancer* 2007; **120**: 1803-1810 [PMID: 17230506 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.22442]
24 **Zeng X**, Xiong L, Wang W, Zhao Y, Xie Y, Wang Q, Zhang Q, Li L, Jia C, Liao Y, Zhou J. Whole-genome sequencing and comparative analysis of Helicobacter pylori GZ7 strain isolated from China. *Folia Microbiol (Praha)* 2022; **67**: 923-934 [PMID: 35829852 DOI: 10.1007/s12223-022-00989-y]
25 **Chen X**, Chen W, Zhao Y, Wang Q, Wang W, Xiang Y, Yuan H, Xie Y, Zhou J. Interplay of Helicobacter pylori, fibroblasts, and cancer cells induces fibroblast activation and serpin E1 expression by cancer cells to promote gastric tumorigenesis. *J Transl Med* 2022; **20**: 322 [PMID: 35864535 DOI: 10.1186/s12967-022-03537-x]
26 **Zhao Y**, Xie Y, Chen X, Xu W, Wang Y, Zhou J. [Establishment of Mongolian gerbil model of gastric cancer induced by Helicobacter pylori infection and its proteomics analysis]. *Zhonghua Bing Li Xue Za Zhi* 2014; **43**: 820-826 [PMID: 25623979]
27 **Varghese F**, Bukhari AB, Malhotra R, De A. IHC Profiler: an open source plugin for the quantitative evaluation and automated scoring of immunohistochemistry images of human tissue samples. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e96801 [PMID: 24802416 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0096801]
28 **Fan F**, Podar K. The Role of AP-1 Transcription Factors in Plasma Cell Biology and Multiple Myeloma Pathophysiology. *Cancers (Basel)* 2021; **13** [PMID: 34066181 DOI: 10.3390/cancers13102326]
29 **Zhou H**, Zarubin T, Ji Z, Min Z, Zhu W, Downey JS, Lin S, Han J. Frequency and distribution of AP-1 sites in the human genome. *DNA Res* 2005; **12**: 139-150 [PMID: 16303745 DOI: 10.1093/dnares/12.2.139]
30 **Park SB**, Seo KW, So AY, Seo MS, Yu KR, Kang SK, Kang KS. SOX2 has a crucial role in the lineage determination and proliferation of mesenchymal stem cells through Dickkopf-1 and c-MYC. *Cell Death Differ* 2012; **19**: 534-545 [PMID: 22015605 DOI: 10.1038/cdd.2011.137]
31 **Liu D**, Zhu J, Ma X, Zhang L, Wu Y, Zhu W, Xing Y, Jia Y, Wang Y. Transcriptomic and Metabolomic Profiling in Helicobacter pylori-Induced Gastric Cancer Identified Prognosis- and Immunotherapy-Relevant Gene Signatures. *Front Cell Dev Biol* 2021; **9**: 769409 [PMID: 35004676 DOI: 10.3389/fcell.2021.769409]
32 **Sharma CM**, Hoffmann S, Darfeuille F, Reignier J, Findeiss S, Sittka A, Chabas S, Reiche K, Hackermüller J, Reinhardt R, Stadler PF, Vogel J. The primary transcriptome of the major human pathogen Helicobacter pylori. *Nature* 2010; **464**: 250-255 [PMID: 20164839 DOI: 10.1038/nature08756]
33 **Zhang J**, Wei J, Wang Z, Feng Y, Wei Z, Hou X, Xu J, He Y, Yang D. Transcriptome hallmarks in Helicobacter pylori infection influence gastric cancer and MALT lymphoma. *Epigenomics* 2020; **12**: 661-671 [PMID: 32129675 DOI: 10.2217/epi-2019-0152]
34 **Sepulveda AR**, Tao H, Carloni E, Sepulveda J, Graham DY, Peterson LE. Screening of gene expression profiles in gastric epithelial cells induced by Helicobacter pylori using microarray analysis. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2002; **16** Suppl 2: 145-157 [PMID: 11966535 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2036.16.s2.4.x]
35 **Kim SH**, Sierra RA, McGee DJ, Zabaleta J. Transcriptional profiling of gastric epithelial cells infected with wild type or arginase-deficient Helicobacter pylori. *BMC Microbiol* 2012; **12**: 175 [PMID: 22889111 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2180-12-175]
36 **Lu W**, Ni Z, Tong M, Jiang S, Zhang J, Feng C, Han C, Yuan T, Wang N, Zhao J, Sun N, Liu C, Jia Q, Wu Q, Ning H, Shi Y. DKK1 is epigenetically downregulated by promoter methylation and inhibits bile acid-induced gastric intestinal metaplasia. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2020; **523**: 780-786 [PMID: 31952791 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbrc.2019.12.109]
37 **Wang Z**, Ye Y, Liu D, Yang X, Wang F. Hypermethylation of multiple Wnt antagonist genes in gastric neoplasia: Is H pylori infection blasting fuse? *Medicine (Baltimore)* 2018; **97**: e13734 [PMID: 30593147 DOI: 10.1097/MD.0000000000013734]
38 **Kikuchi A**, Matsumoto S, Sada R. Dickkopf signaling, beyond Wnt-mediated biology. *Semin Cell Dev Biol* 2022; **125**: 55-65 [PMID: 34801396 DOI: 10.1016/j.semcdb.2021.11.003]
39 **Igbinigie E**, Guo F, Jiang SW, Kelley C, Li J. Dkk1 involvement and its potential as a biomarker in pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma. *Clin Chim Acta* 2019; **488**: 226-234 [PMID: 30452897 DOI: 10.1016/j.cca.2018.11.023]
40 **Liu Y**, Tang W, Xie L, Wang J, Deng Y, Peng Q, Zhai L, Li S, Qin X. Prognostic significance of dickkopf-1 overexpression in solid tumors: a meta-analysis. *Tumour Biol* 2014; **35**: 3145-3154 [PMID: 24258111 DOI: 10.1007/s13277-013-1411-x]
41 **Liu QR**, Li YF, Deng ZQ, Cao JQ. Prognostic Significance of Dickkopf-1 in Gastric Cancer Survival: A Meta-Analysis. *Genet Test Mol Biomarkers* 2016; **20**: 170-175 [PMID: 27023747 DOI: 10.1089/gtmb.2015.0154]
42 **Sada R**, Kimura H, Fukata Y, Fukata M, Yamamoto H, Kikuchi A. Dynamic palmitoylation controls the microdomain localization of the DKK1 receptors CKAP4 and LRP6. *Sci Signal* 2019; **12** [PMID: 31744930 DOI:

10.1126/scisignal.aat9519]
43 **Li SX**, Liu LJ, Dong LW, Shi HG, Pan YF, Tan YX, Zhang J, Zhang B, Ding ZW, Jiang TY, Hu HP, Wang HY. CKAP4 inhibited growth and metastasis of hepatocellular carcinoma through regulating EGFR signaling. *Tumour Biol* 2014; **35**: 7999-8005 [PMID: 24838946 DOI: 10.1007/s13277-014-2000-3]
44 **Li MH**, Dong LW, Li SX, Tang GS, Pan YF, Zhang J, Wang H, Zhou HB, Tan YX, Hu HP, Wang HY. Expression of cytoskeleton-associated protein 4 is related to lymphatic metastasis and indicates prognosis of intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma patients after surgery resection. *Cancer Lett* 2013; **337**: 248-253 [PMID: 23665508 DOI: 10.1016/j.canlet.2013.05.003]
45 **Li SX**, Li J, Dong LW, Guo ZY. Cytoskeleton-Associated Protein 4, a Promising Biomarker for Tumor Diagnosis and Therapy. *Front Mol Biosci* 2020; **7**: 552056 [PMID: 33614703 DOI: 10.3389/fmolb.2020.552056]
46 **Luo T**, Ding K, Ji J, Zhang X, Yang X, Chen A, Huang B, Zhang D, Wang J, Li X. Cytoskeleton-associated protein 4 (CKAP4) promotes malignant progression of human gliomas through inhibition of the Hippo signaling pathway. *J Neurooncol* 2021; **154**: 275-283 [PMID: 34476666 DOI: 10.1007/s11060-021-03831-6]
47 **Kikuchi A**, Fumoto K, Kimura H. The Dickkopf1-cytoskeleton-associated protein 4 axis creates a novel signalling pathway and may represent a molecular target for cancer therapy. *Br J Pharmacol* 2017; **174**: 4651-4665 [PMID: 28514532 DOI: 10.1111/bph.13863]
48 **Fattahi S**, Amjadi-Moheb F, Tabaripour R, Ashrafi GH, Akhavan-Niaki H. PI3K/AKT/mTOR signaling in gastric cancer: Epigenetics and beyond. *Life Sci* 2020; **262**: 118513 [PMID: 33011222 DOI: 10.1016/j.lfs.2020.118513]
49 **Wang Y**, Zheng L, Shang W, Yang Z, Li T, Liu F, Shao W, Lv L, Chai L, Qu L, Xu Q, Du J, Liang X, Zeng J, Jia J. Wnt/beta-catenin signaling confers ferroptosis resistance by targeting GPX4 in gastric cancer. *Cell Death Differ* 2022; **29**: 2190-2202 [PMID: 35534546 DOI: 10.1038/s41418-022-01008-w]

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Gastroenterol 2022 December 21; 28(47): 6788-6790

DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6788

ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

LETTER TO THE EDITOR

The potential role of the three-dimensional-bioprinting model in screening and developing drugs

Chao-Lin Deng, Bin Wu

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Provenance and peer review: Unsolicited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): A
Grade B (Very good): 0
Grade C (Good): C
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: Diez-Alonso M, Spain; Imai Y, Japan

Received: October 15, 2022
Peer-review started: October 15, 2022
First decision: October 26, 2022
Revised: October 28, 2022
Accepted: December 5, 2022
Article in press: December 5, 2022
Published online: December 21, 2022

Chao-Lin Deng, Bin Wu, Department of General Surgery, Peking Union Medical College Hospital, Chinese Academy of Medical Sciences and Peking Union Medical College, Beijing 100730, China

Corresponding author: Bin Wu, MD, PhD, Chief Doctor, Department of General Surgery, Peking Union Medical College Hospital, Chinese Academy of Medical Sciences and Peking Union Medical College, No. 1 Shuaifuyuan Road, Wangfujing, Dongcheng District, Beijing 100730, China. wubin0279@hotmail.com

Abstract

Recently, we have read with great interest the original article used different spatial configuration models of colorectal cancer (CRC) for validating the anti-tumor efficacy with Diiminoquinone. We feel obliged to provide new insight into the drug screening models by integrating and analyzing the original method and result. These comments may provide comprehensive insights into three-dimensional drug screening models and the difference between pathologic subtypes in CRC.

Key Words: Colorectal cancer; three-dimensional-bioprinting; Mucinous adenocarcinoma; Drug screening models

©The Author(s) 2022. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core Tip: Chemotherapy is the main treatment option for inoperable colorectal cancer (CRC). We recently read an article about the anti-cancer effects of Diiminoquinone. We feel obliged to express our opinion on this article on drug screening models and the difference between pathologic subtypes in CRC and hope it could deepen understanding for the reader.

Citation: Deng CL, Wu B. The potential role of the three-dimensional-bioprinting model in screening and developing drugs. *World J Gastroenterol* 2022; 28(47): 6788-6790
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v28/i47/6788.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v28.i47.6788

TO THE EDITOR

We have read with great interest the article by Monzer *et al*[1]. The authors present a novel drug, Diiminoquinone (DIQ), with inhibitory effects for colorectal cancer (CRC) in different spatial configuration models. In vivo tests, Similar results have been obtained for drug effectiveness. In conclusion, the authors showed that DIQ may through suppresses Wnt/-catenin, AKT, and ERK pathways to the tumor and thereby inhibits tumor progression with significant potential to be translated into clinical practice.

The highlight of this study is that the authors used multiple three-dimensional (3D) models to verify the effectiveness of DIQ. The two-dimensional (2D) monolayer model has long been used *in vitro* cancer research for novel drug development and screening. However, 2D cancer cell models dramatically differ from cancer in vivo. Without spatial configurations, oncometabolite around the tumor microenvironment (TME)[2,3], and intercellular signaling between the cancer cell and other cells, the result from the 2D module may be unable to draw correct conclusions, and this causes further challenges for clinic translation. In this research, sphere formation assays with tumor cell lines and derived organoids were established and used to prove the safety and efficacy of DIQ and to reflect more accurately drug sensitivity measurements result.

We found some details through in-depth analysis and hope to express some relevant views. 3D culture models should ideally recapitulate the native TME. Despite sphere formation as a classic approach for 3D models, the limitation of this method is the lack of intercellular communication in multiple cell types. However, 3D-bioprinting provides several critical advantages over sphere formation assay in drug development or screening, such as using bio-ink to simulate the cytoskeleton or partial tumor tissue with multi-cell to a highly complex hierarchical 3D structure. These configurational were able to enhance intercellular communication and signaling factors transportation and provide a more accurate result for novel drug development[4,5]. Although the authors used organoid cultures to verify the drug's effectiveness at a later stage, the success rate of organ-like laboratory cultures is too low, which significantly limits the possibility of large-scale experimental validation. If 3D bioprinting is used, the required tissue size and culture conditions are lower than those of organoid cultures, which seems to provide more experimental samples for drug validation and enhance the data grade of this drug for clinical validation. Various 3D-bioprinting models were established, which aimed at disease modeling, novel drug development, and biological function evaluation[3,6]. Therefore, based on the current research data, tumor modeling using 3D bioprinting technology after primary cell cultures seems to be more beneficial for chemotherapy drug sensitivity screening.

Another interesting finding was that the DIQ showed chemotherapy effectivity in mucinous adenocarcinoma (MC), a unique pathological subtype of CRC[7]. In a previous study, the chemosensitivity of MC was poor either irinotecan- or oxaliplatin-based therapeutic strategies than in non-mucinous tumors[8]. One MC patient tissue was successfully grown as an organoid model in the paper, which does not seem to provide sufficient evidence for the effectiveness of DIQ for colorectal MC. Nevertheless, the authors' experimental results provide a possible research direction for chemotherapy targeting pathological subtypes.

This original article uses multiple models of CRC to demonstrate DQI as a potential novel drug for chemotherapy. However, further research is needed to support the safety and efficacy of clinical translation.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Wu B designed and revised the manuscript; Deng CL wrote the manuscript.

Supported by CAMS Innovation Fund for Medical Sciences, No. 2021-1-I2M-015, and National High Level Hospital Clinical Research Funding, No. 2022-PUMCH-B-003.

Conflict-of-interest statement: All authors declare that they have no conflicts of interest.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article that was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution NonCommercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: https://creativecommons.org/Licenses/by-nc/4.0/

Country/Territory of origin: China

ORCID number: Chao-Lin Deng 0000-0003-2314-5934; Bin Wu 0000-0003-0413-6987.

S-Editor: Liu GL
L-Editor: A

P-Editor: Liu GL

REFERENCES

1 **Monzer A**, Wakimian K, Ballout F, Al Bitar S, Yehya A, Kanso M, Saheb N, Tawil A, Doughan S, Hussein M, Mukherji D, Faraj W, Gali-Muhtasib H, Abou-Kheir W. Novel therapeutic diiminoquinone exhibits anticancer effects on human colorectal cancer cells in two-dimensional and three-dimensional *in vitro* models. *World J Gastroenterol* 2022; **28**: 4787-4811 [PMID: 36156922 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i33.4787]

2 **Habanjar O**, Diab-Assaf M, Caldefie-Chezet F, Delort L. 3D Cell Culture Systems: Tumor Application, Advantages, and Disadvantages. *Int J Mol Sci* 2021; **22** [PMID: 34830082 DOI: 10.3390/ijms222212200]

3 **Ramzy GM**, Koessler T, Ducrey E, McKee T, Ris F, Buchs N, Rubbia-Brandt L, Dietrich PY, Nowak-Sliwinska P. Patient-Derived In Vitro Models for Drug Discovery in Colorectal Carcinoma. *Cancers (Basel)* 2020; **12** [PMID: 32486365 DOI: 10.3390/cancers12061423]

4 **Sbirkov Y**, Molander D, Milet C, Bodurov I, Atanasov B, Penkov R, Belev N, Forraz N, McGuckin C, Sarafian V. A Colorectal Cancer 3D Bioprinting Workflow as a Platform for Disease Modeling and Chemotherapeutic Screening. *Front Bioeng Biotechnol* 2021; **9**: 755563 [PMID: 34869264 DOI: 10.3389/fbioe.2021.755563]

5 **Neufeld L**, Yeini E, Reisman N, Shtilerman Y, Ben-Shushan D, Pozzi S, Madi A, Tiram G, Eldar-Boock A, Ferber S, Grossman R, Ram Z, Satchi-Fainaro R. Microengineered perfusable 3D-bioprinted glioblastoma model for *in vivo* mimicry of tumor microenvironment. *Sci Adv* 2021; **7** [PMID: 34407932 DOI: 10.1126/sciadv.abi9119]

6 **Ma K**, Zhao T, Yang L, Wang P, Jin J, Teng H, Xia D, Zhu L, Li L, Jiang Q, Wang X. Application of robotic-assisted *in situ* 3D printing in cartilage regeneration with HAMA hydrogel: An *in vivo* study. *J Adv Res* 2020; **23**: 123-132 [PMID: 32099674 DOI: 10.1016/j.jare.2020.01.010]

7 **Taieb J**, Shi Q, Pederson L, Alberts S, Wolmark N, Van Cutsem E, de Gramont A, Kerr R, Grothey A, Lonardi S, Yoshino T, Yothers G, Sinicrope FA, Zaanan A, André T. Prognosis of microsatellite instability and/or mismatch repair deficiency stage III colon cancer patients after disease recurrence following adjuvant treatment: results of an ACCENT pooled analysis of seven studies. *Ann Oncol* 2019; **30**: 1466-1471 [PMID: 31268130 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdz208]

8 **Kwon M**, Rubio G, Nolan N, Auteri P, Volmar JA, Adem A, Javidian P, Zhou Z, Verzi MP, Pine SR, Libutti SK. FILIP1L Loss Is a Driver of Aggressive Mucinous Colorectal Adenocarcinoma and Mediates Cytokinesis Defects through PFDN1. *Cancer Res* 2021; **81**: 5523-5539 [PMID: 34417201 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-21-0897]

Published by **Baishideng Publishing Group Inc**
7041 Koll Center Parkway, Suite 160, Pleasanton, CA 94566, USA
Telephone: +1-925-3991568
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: https://www.f6publishing.com/helpdesk
https://www.wjgnet.com

© 2022 Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.